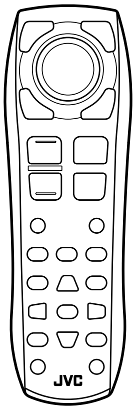
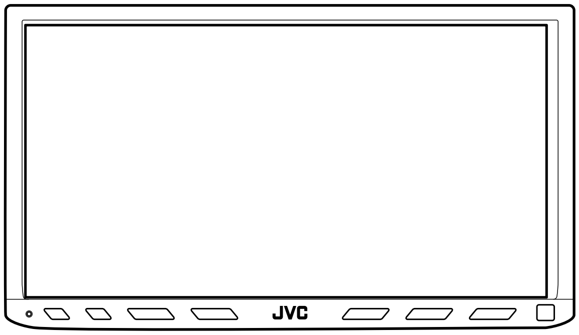
JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
KW-ADV790
KW-AVX710

RECEPTOR DVD CON MONITOR
KW-ADV790
KW-AVX710

RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR
KW-ADV790
KW-AVX710





For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Para cancelar la demonstración en pantalla, consulte la página 8.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. ____________________
Serial No. ____________________

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1778-001A
[J]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** (For U.S.A.) Visible and/or invisible class II laser radiation when open. Do not stare into beam.
   (For Canada) Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス１Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

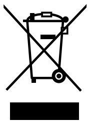
INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



[European Union only]

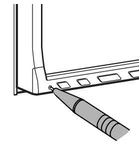
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

CAUTION

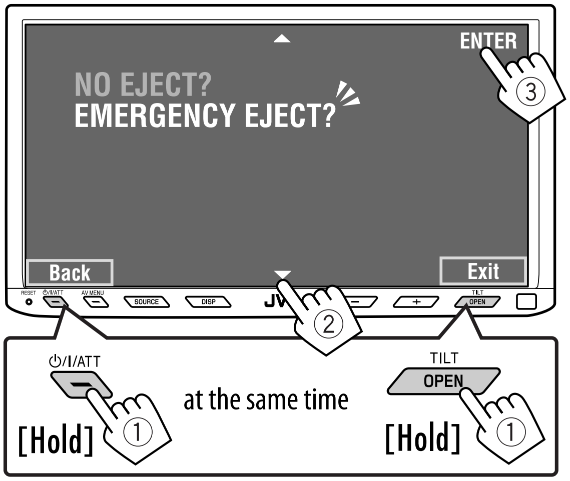
This product has a fluorescent lamp that contains mercury. Disposal of these materials may be regulated in your community due to environmental considerations. For disposal or recycling information, please contact your local authorities or for USA, the Electronic Industries Alliance: http://www.eiae.org.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

For safety...
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel............ 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the satellite radio 36
Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast 39
Listening to the iPod......................... 40
Using other external components..... 42

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 45
Assigning titles to the sources 46
Menu operations 47

REFERENCES

Maintenance 56
More about this unit 57
Troubleshooting 64
Specifications 68

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 1)*1 ALL 1 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

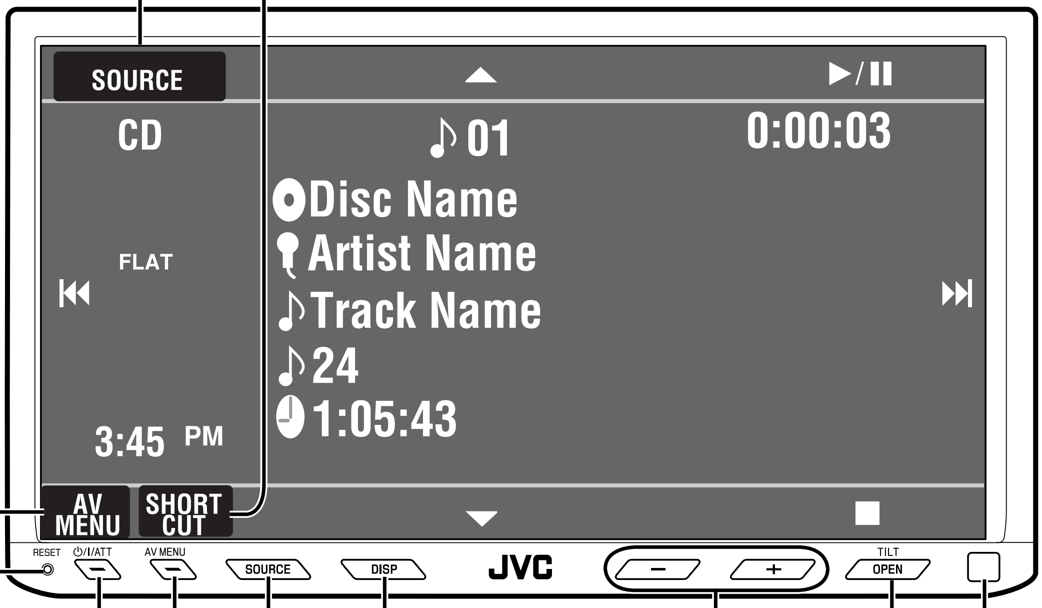
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — Monitor panel/touch panel

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 47

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
3:45 PM
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 47

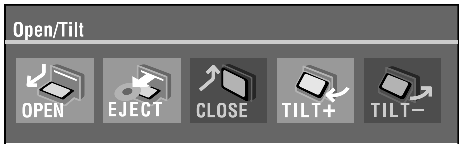
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

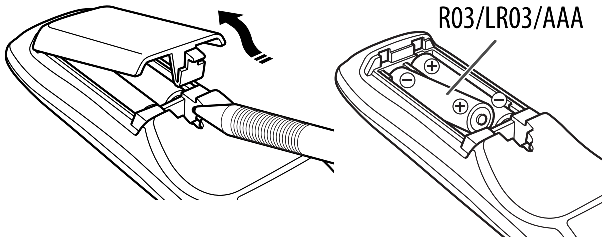
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

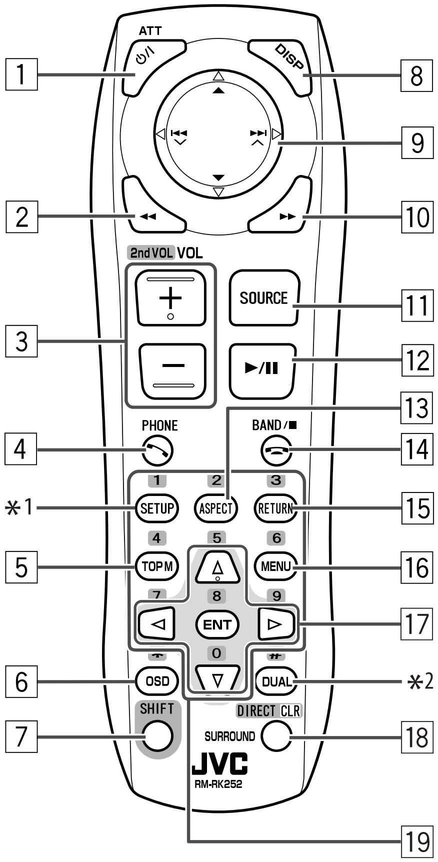
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
*1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
*2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as "2nd VOL."

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "✻."

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM and HD Radio operations:
- ▲ / ▼:
  FM/AM: Selects the preset stations.
  HD Radio: Selects a multicast channel.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For satellite tuner operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the categories.
- ⏮ / ⏭:

– Selects a channel rapidly if pressed and held.
– Selects a channel if pressed.

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER"/"SAT"/"HD Radio": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER"/"SAT"/"HD Radio": Selects the preset station directly.

---

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
*2 *Not used for this unit.*
*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

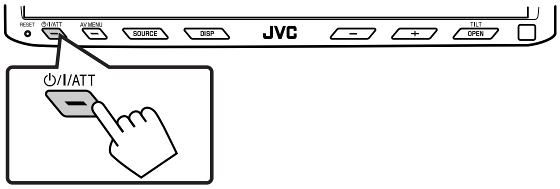
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

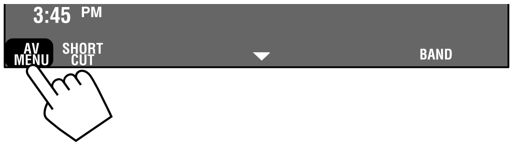
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 49)

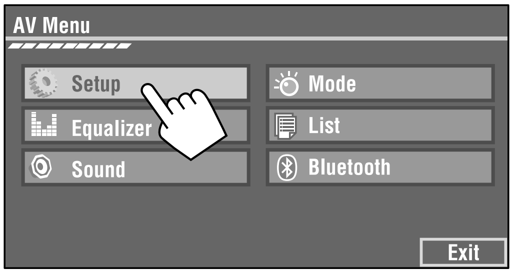
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

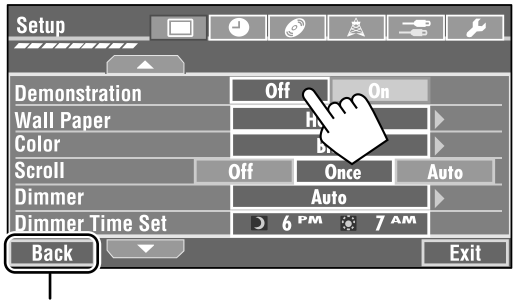

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

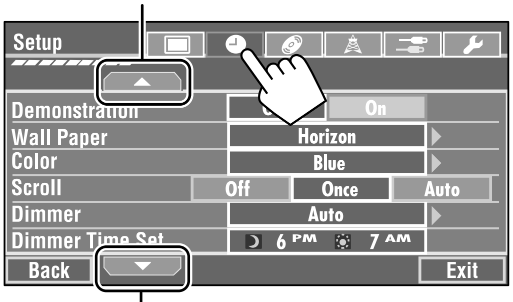
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

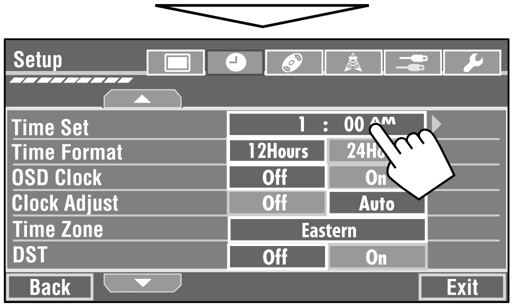
Return to the previous screen.

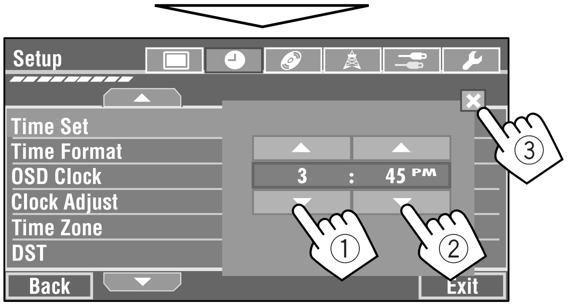
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

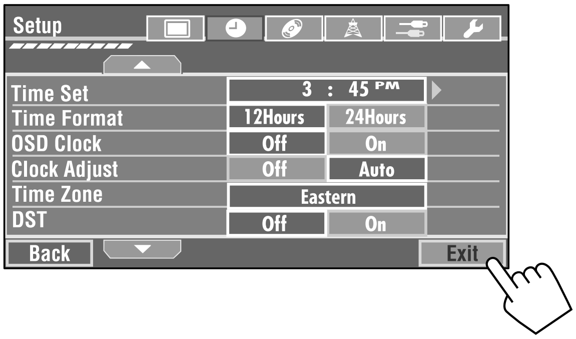

Setup
Demonstration
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set
1 : 00 AM
Time Format
12Hours
24Ho
OSD Clock
Off
On
Clock Adjust
Off
Auto
Time Zone
Eastern
DST
Off
On
Back
Exit


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
Clock Adjust
Time Zone
DST
3 : 45 PM
①
②
③
Back
Exit

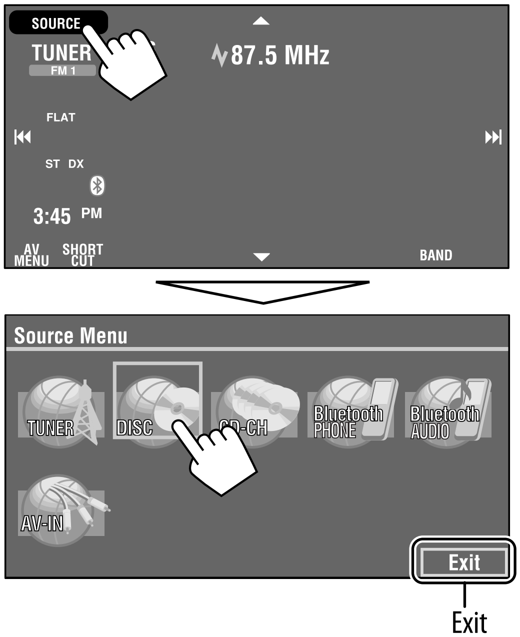
❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup
Time Set
3 : 45 PM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Clock Adjust
Off
Auto
Time Zone
Eastern
DST
Off
On
Back
Exit

Selecting the playback source

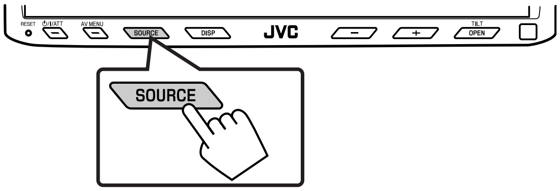
- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 52).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit

Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
SOURCE

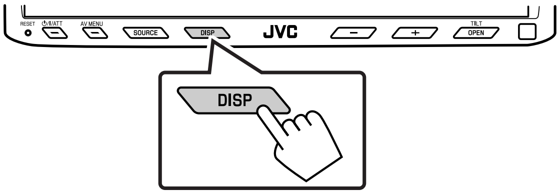
TUNER or **HD Radio** → **SAT** → **DISC (DVD/VCD/CD)** →**CD-CH, iPod,** or **EXT-IN** → **Bluetooth PHONE** → **Bluetooth AUDIO** → **AV-IN** → (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

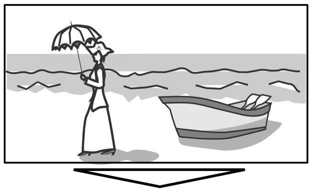
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

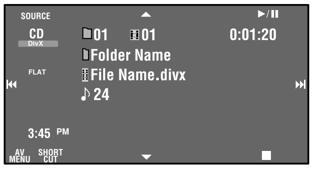

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

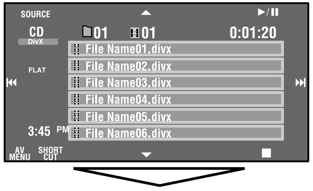
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



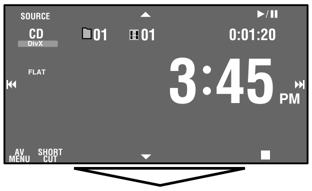
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list

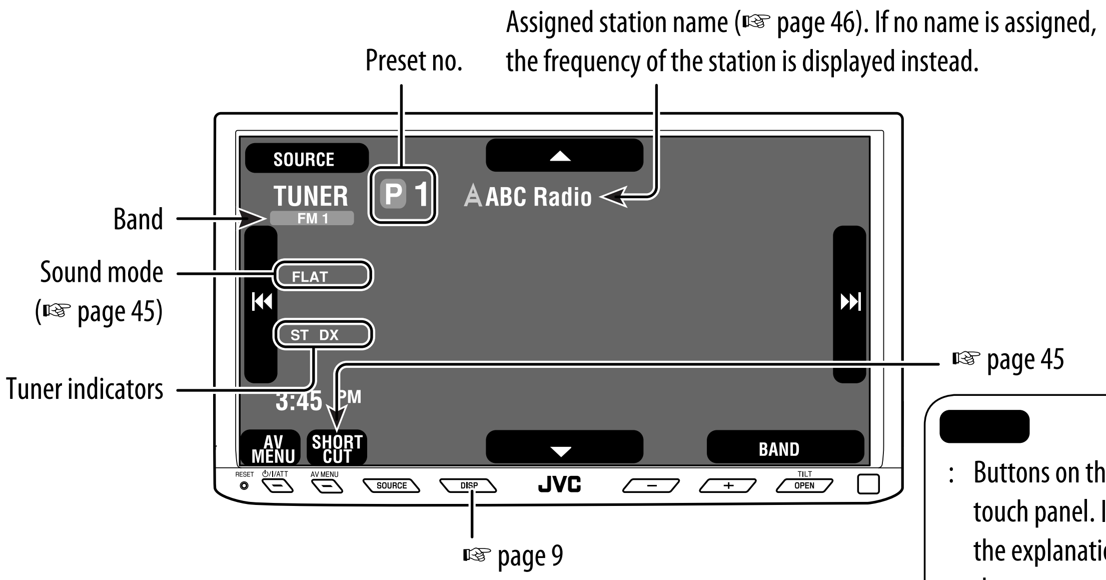

SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 52)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 46). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 45
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER]. (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

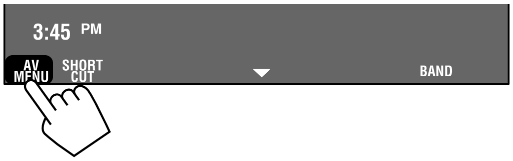
❷ Press [BAND]. ➔FM1➔FM2➔FM3➔AM

❸ Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to search for a station—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◄◄]or [►►|] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

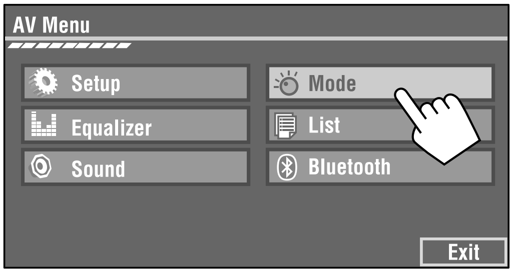
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Press [AV MENU].

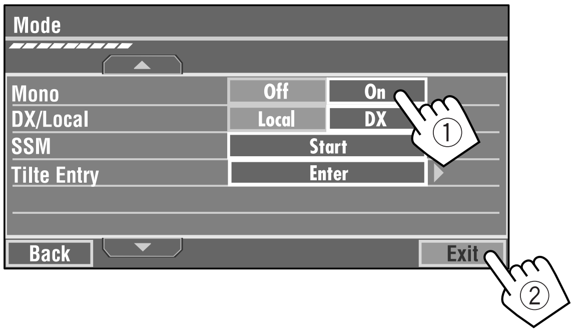

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Back
Exit
①
②

Mono Off On
DX/Local Local DX
SSM Start
Tilte Entry Enter

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

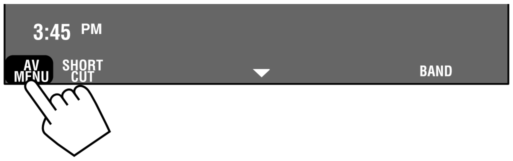
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

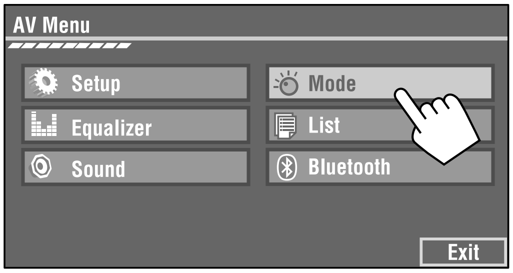
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 Press [AV MENU].

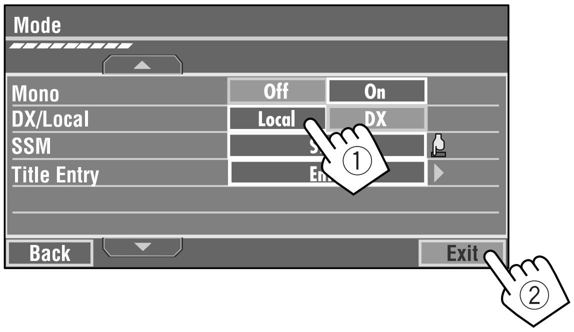

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

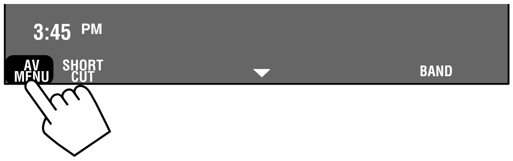
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

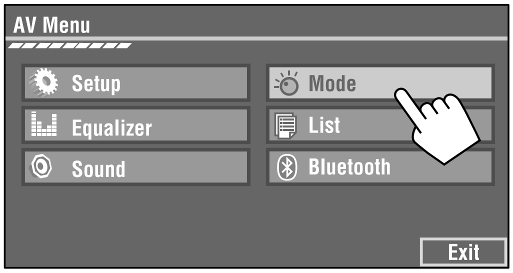
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 Press [AV MENU].

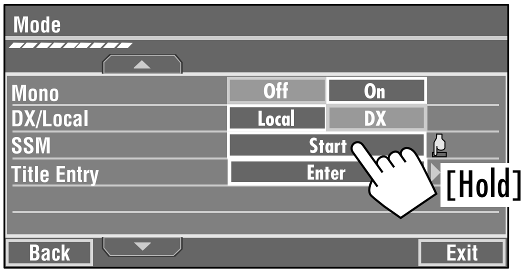

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

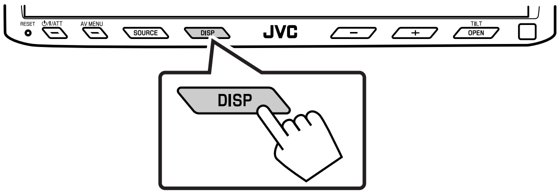

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

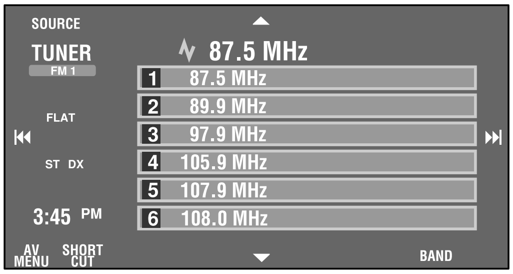
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

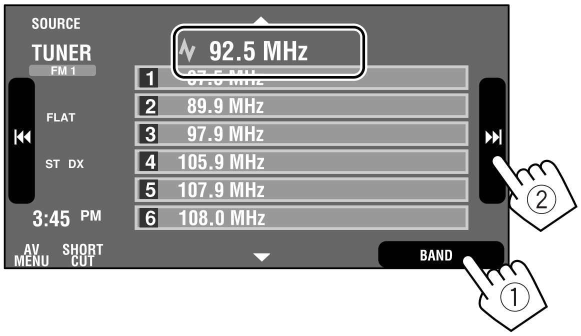
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 Display the Preset List.

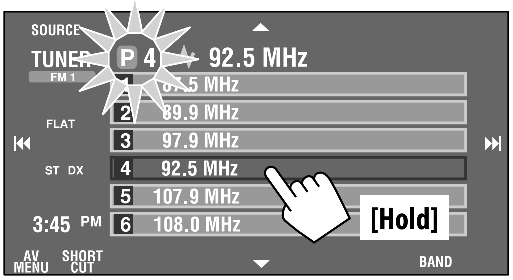

RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 Tune in to a station you want to preset.


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
92.5 MHz
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

3 Select a preset number.

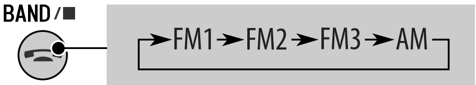

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
92.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

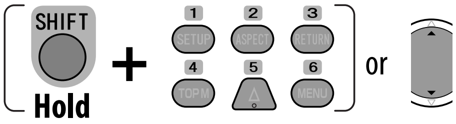
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

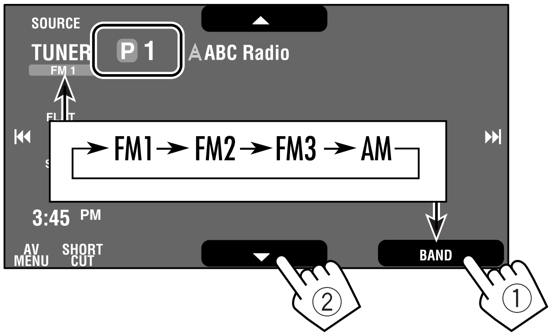

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

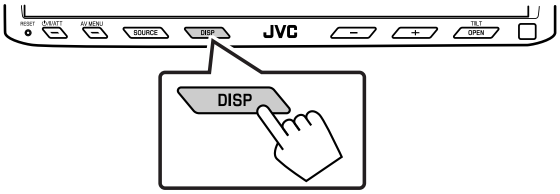
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

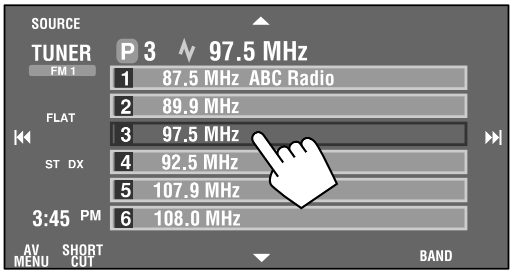

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 3
97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

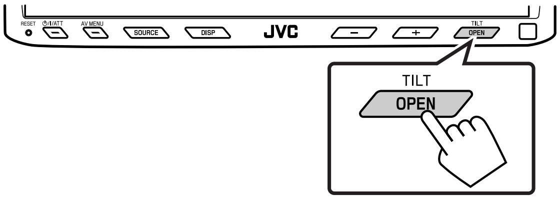
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

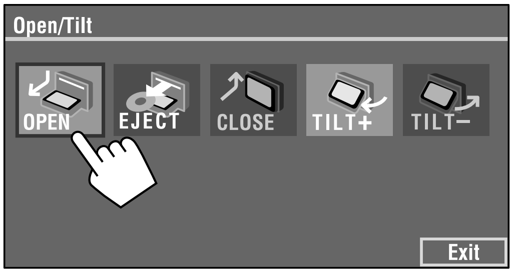
❶ Open the monitor panel.



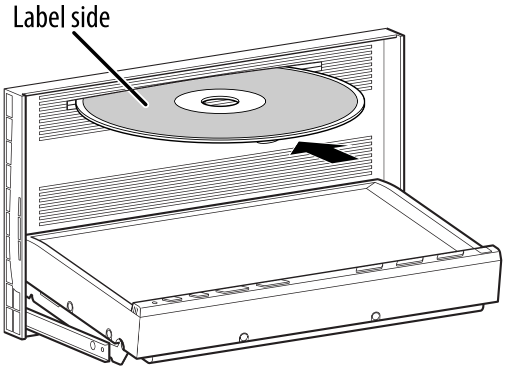
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

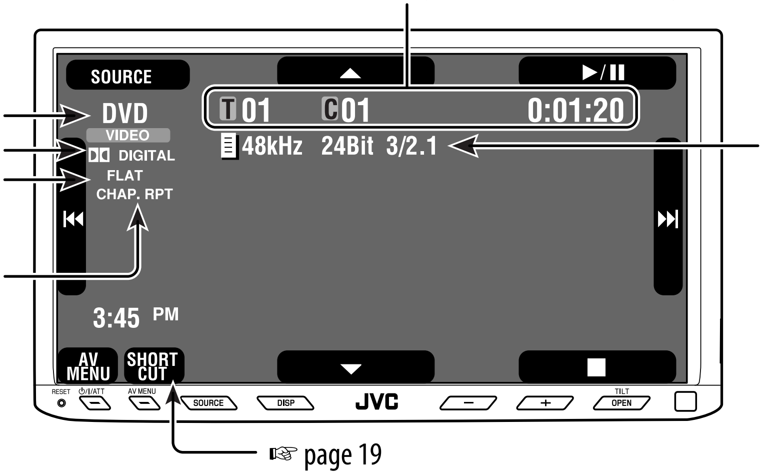
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 61)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time


SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T01
C01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
Playback mode

Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.

☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select chapter
	Hold: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

---

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

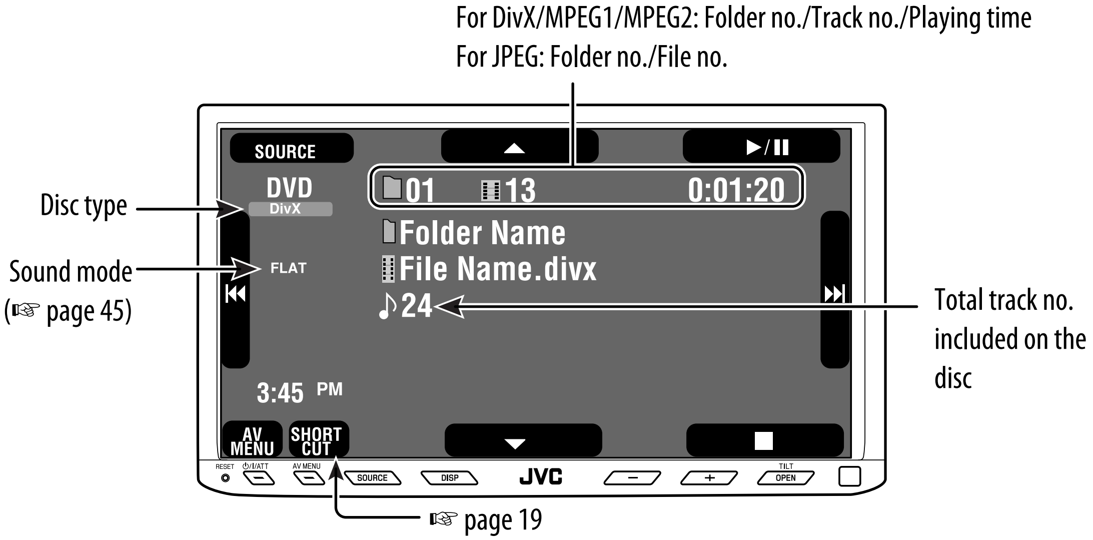
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX MPEG JPEG


SOURCE
DVD
DivX
FLAT
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.

Disc type

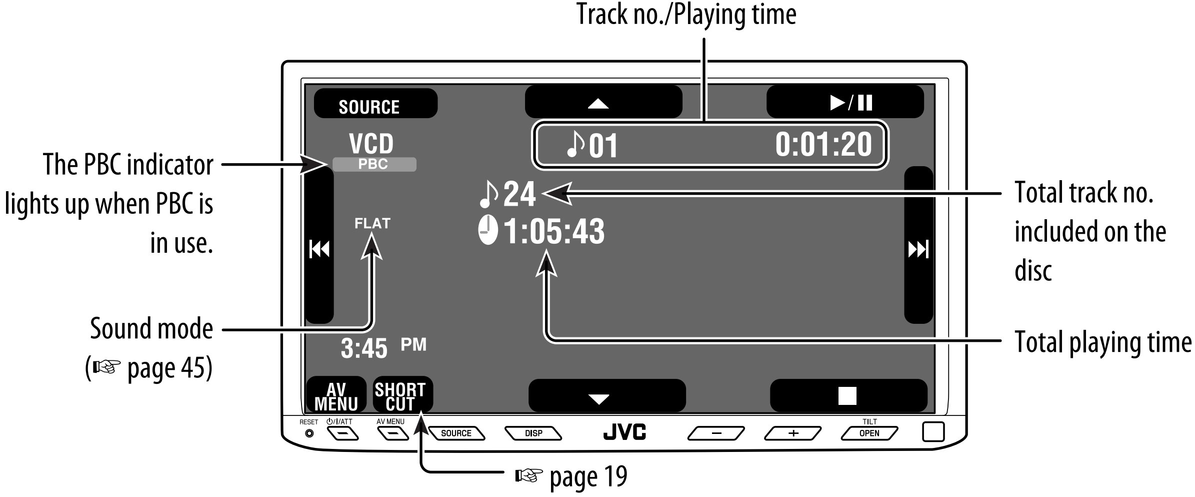
Sound mode (☞ page 45)

Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 19

[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◄◄ ►►I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD


SOURCE
VCD
PBC
FLAT
01
0:01:20
24
1:05:43
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Track no./Playing time

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 45)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

☞ page 19

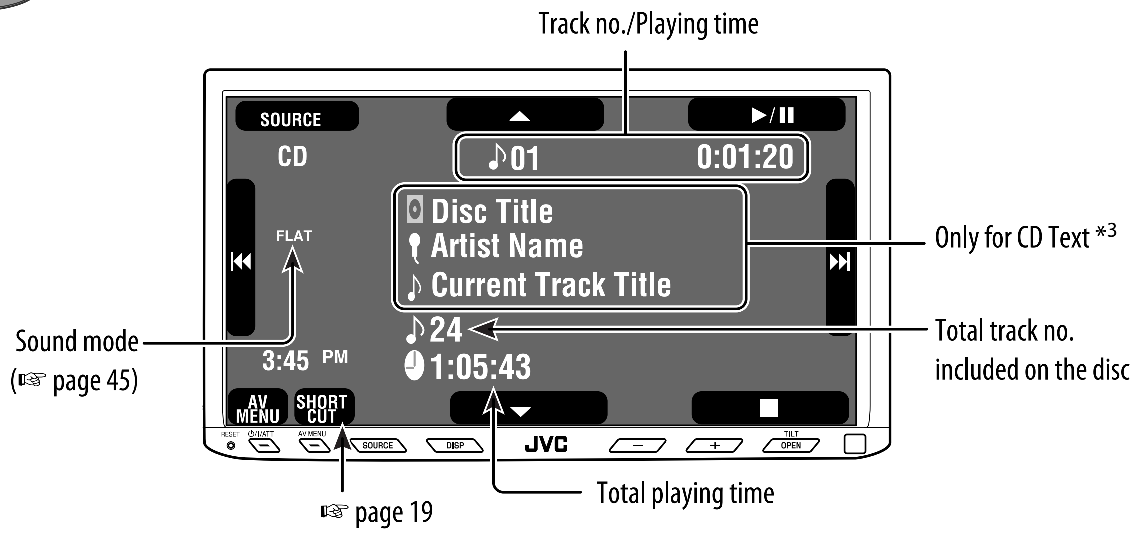
[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◄◄ ►►I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

---

*1 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*

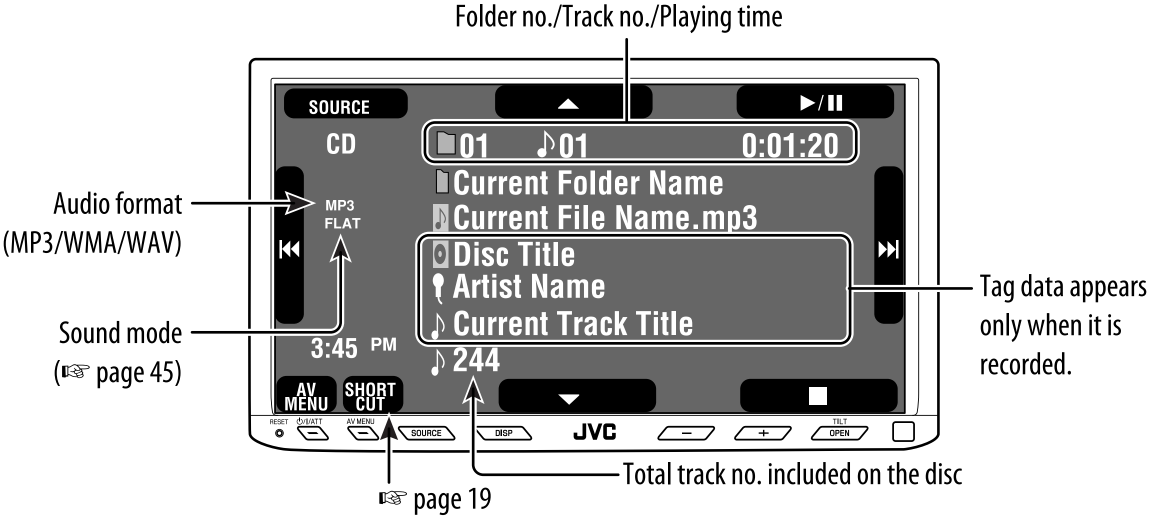
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Only for CD Text *3
FLAT
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
♪24
Total track no. included on the disc
3:45 PM
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
☞ page 19
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/ WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Audio format
(MP3/WMA/WAV)
MP3
FLAT
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
3:45 PM
♪244
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
☞ page 19
Total track no. included on the disc

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

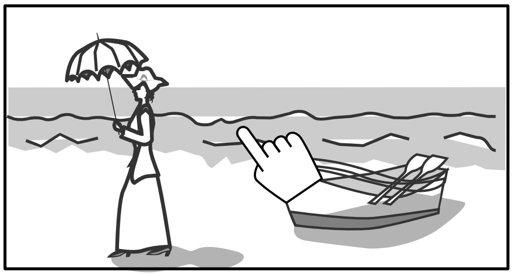
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

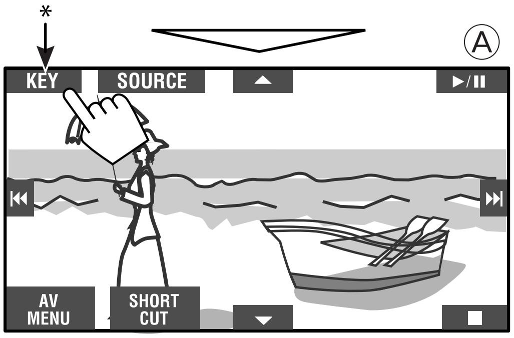
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

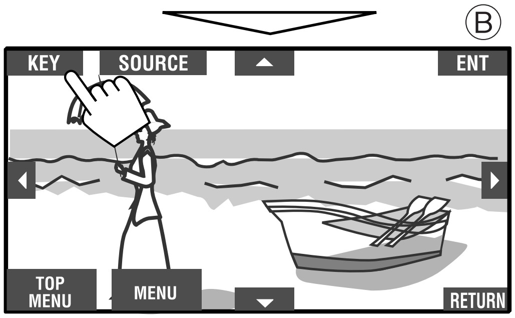
- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 49)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



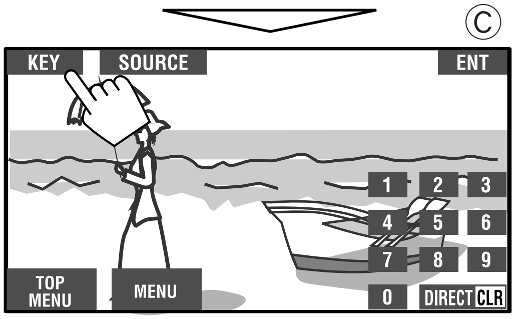
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[► / **II**]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◄◄ ►►I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◄ ► ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

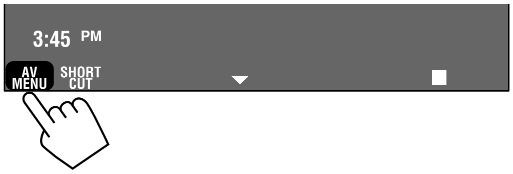
Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

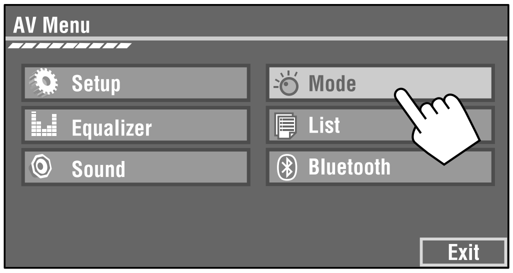
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

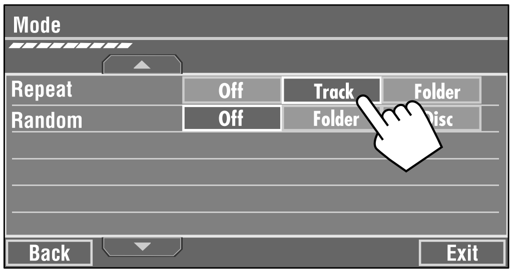

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

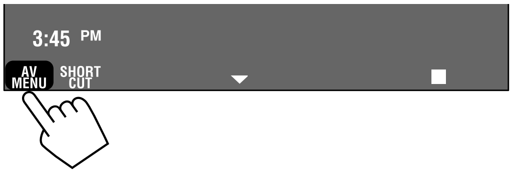
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

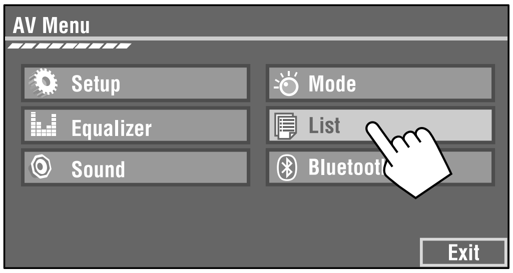
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

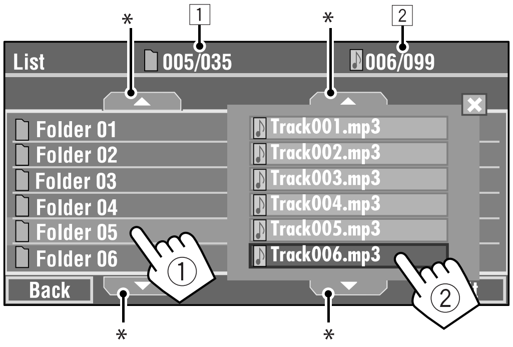

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select a folder (①), then a track (②).

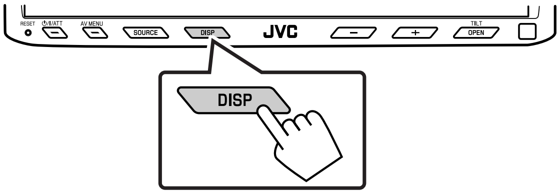

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

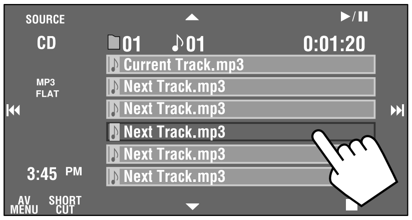
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

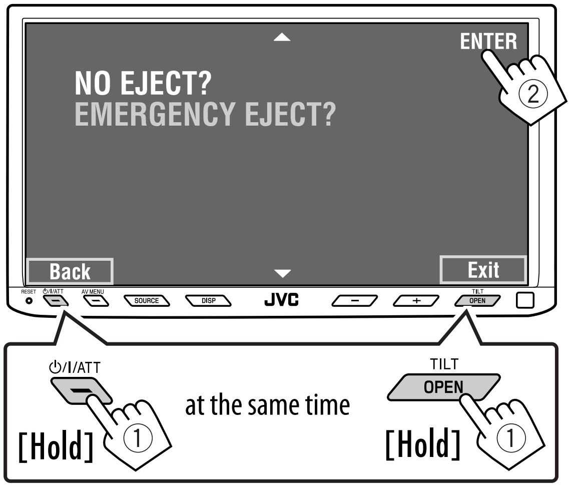

SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
MP3
FLAT
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

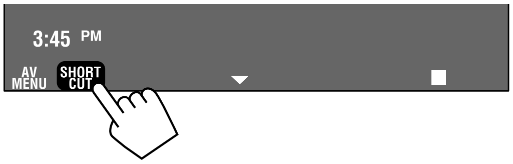

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold] ①
[Hold] ①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

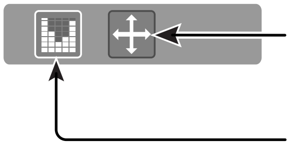
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

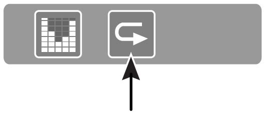
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 49)

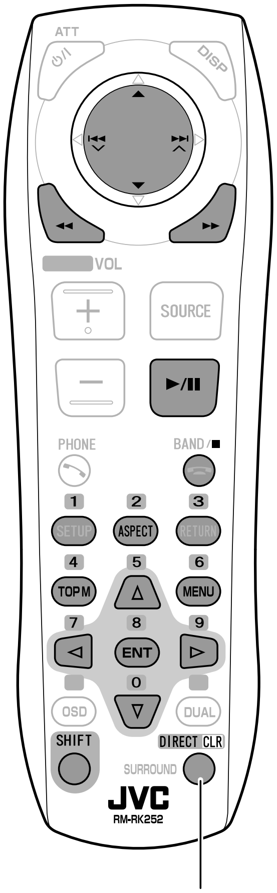
Sound mode (☞ page 45)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear):
Erases a misentry if pressed
while holding SHIFT.

DVD Video

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*[1] (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause*[2] (No sound can be heard.)

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*[3] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆ ◁ ▷

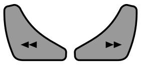
3 8 ENT

*[1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*
*[2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*
*[3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

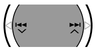
You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)

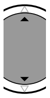
: Stop playback.

: Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

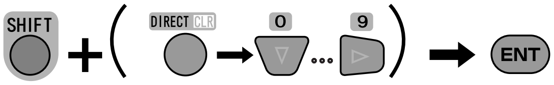

: Reverse/forward search[4] (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause[5] (No sound can be heard.)

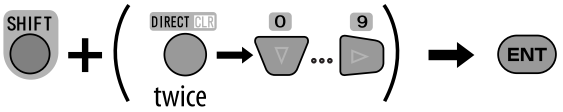
- Reverse slow motion does not work.


: *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[6]


: Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

: Select aspect ratio.


SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
0
9
ENT
: Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).


SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
0
9
twice
ENT
: Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

1

: For Original Program

: For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback.

3

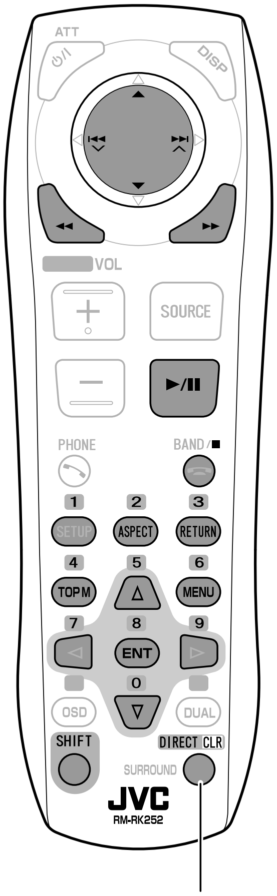
To erase the screen.

---

[4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[5] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[6] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DivX MPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

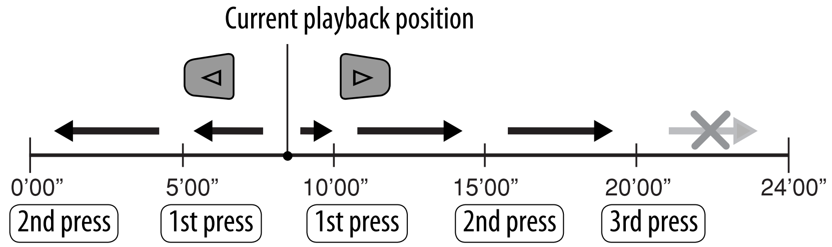
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ Δ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

[*1] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

[*2] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.) Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

(⏮ ⏭) : Select file.

▲▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

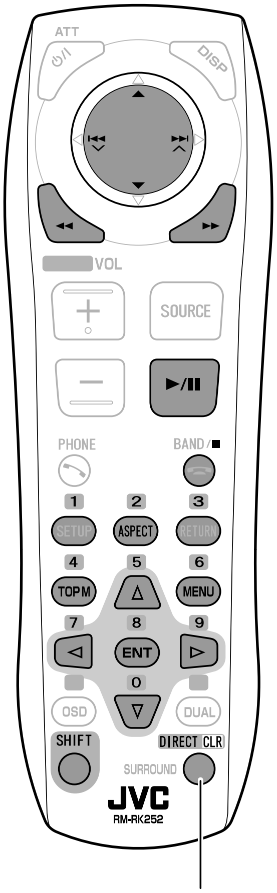
---

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

ENGLISH


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOPM
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT :
Select track.

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*4

▲▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT :
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT :
Select folder.

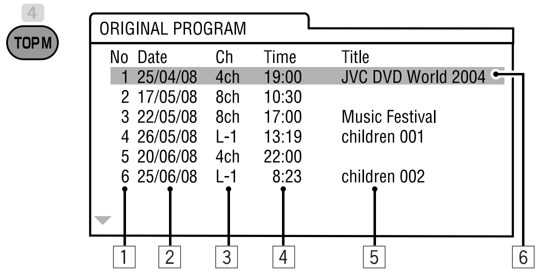
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

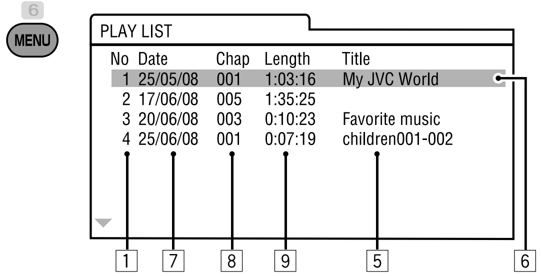
Using the list screens

You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.

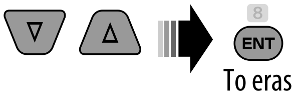

4
TOP M
ORIGINAL PROGRAM
1
2
3
4
5
6

No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
PLAY LIST
1
7
8
9
5
6

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



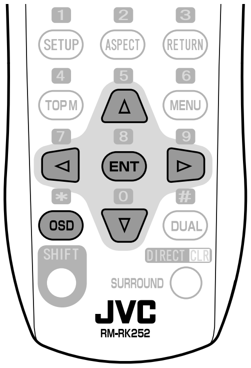
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

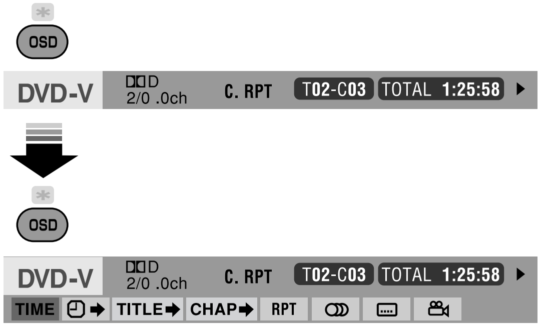
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

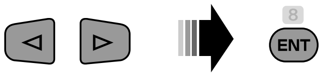

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
*
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)


*
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
*
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

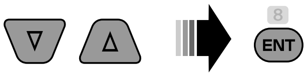
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

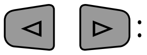


3 Make a selection.

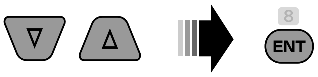
If a pop-up menu appears...



- For entering time/numbers...


:

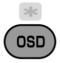
Move the entry position



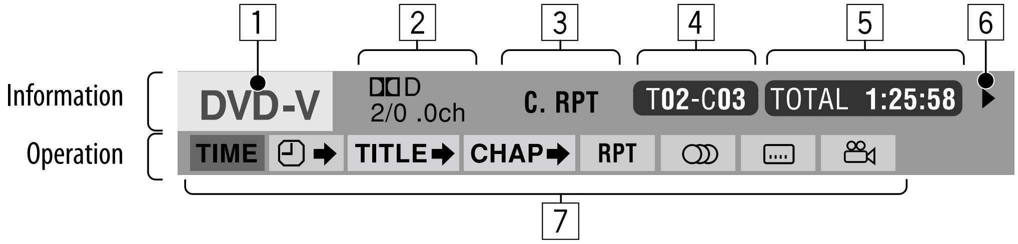
:

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode [*1]

DVD Video:
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
T. RPT: Title repeat

DVD-VR:
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
PG. RPT: Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:
T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat
F. RND: Folder random
A. RND: All (Disc) random

JPEG:
F. RPT: Folder repeat

VCD:
T. RPT: Track repeat
A. RND: All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track [*2]
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track [*2]

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀ / ▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙ / ❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
◷ ➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE ➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP ➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK ➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play [*1]
RND	Random play [*1]
ꝏ	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

[*1] ☞ *page 18*

[*2] *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

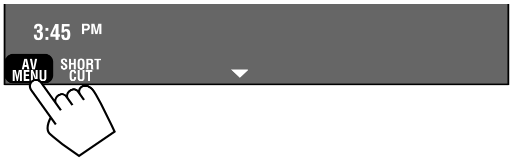
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

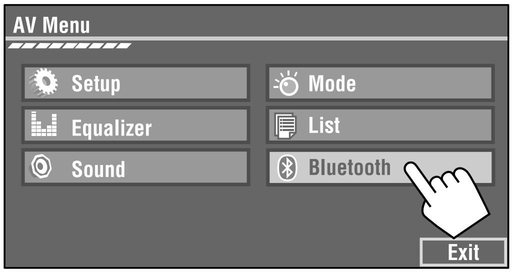
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

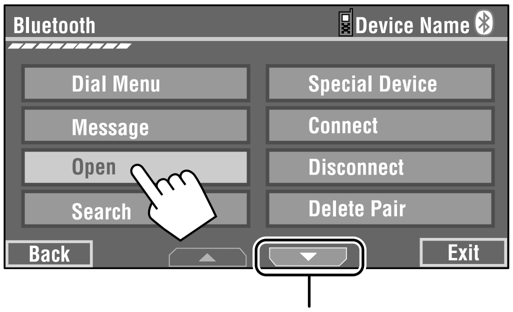

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

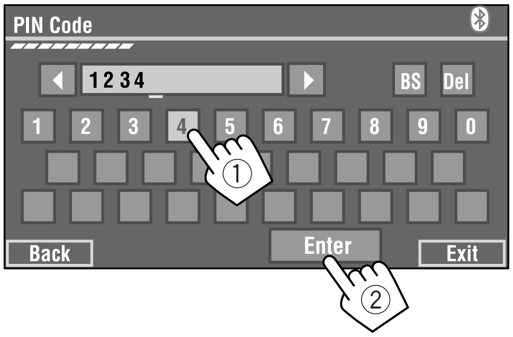

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.

Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and page 55).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].

The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.

- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].

The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].

- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

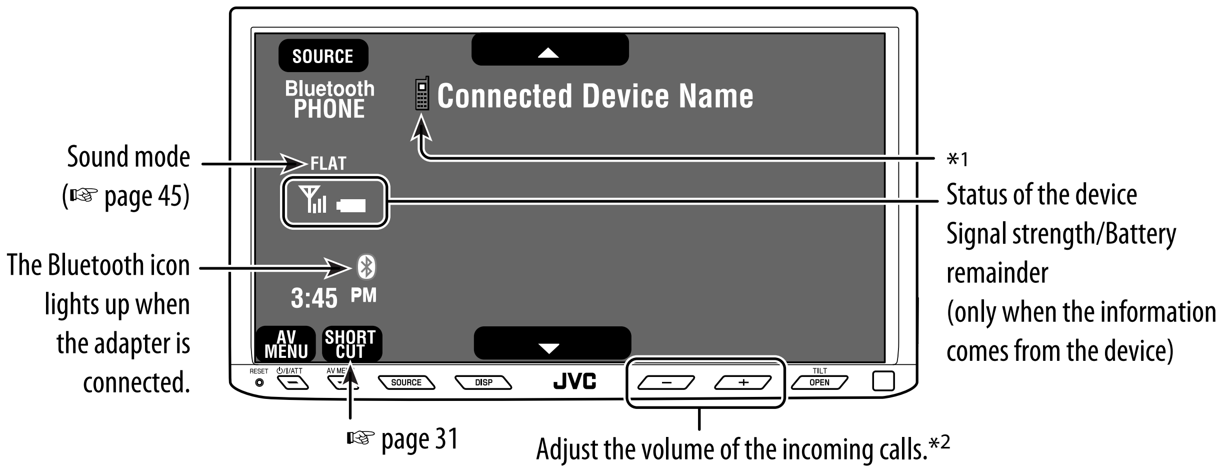
2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].

Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Sound mode (☞ page 45)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
☞ page 31
Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2
*1
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

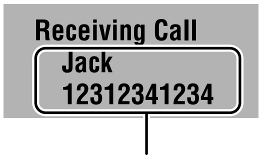
*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)
   - You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.
2. **Press [AV MENU].**
   - You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.
3. **Press [Bluetooth].**
4. **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

   ☞ page 55

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 55)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 55)

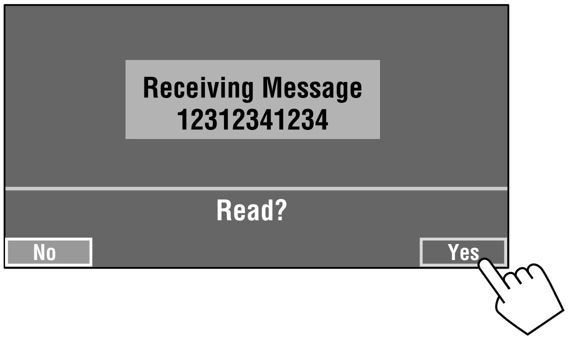
When a Text Message comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message, you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 55)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

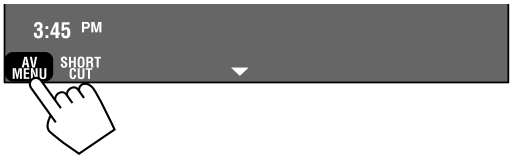
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 54)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 54 and 55)

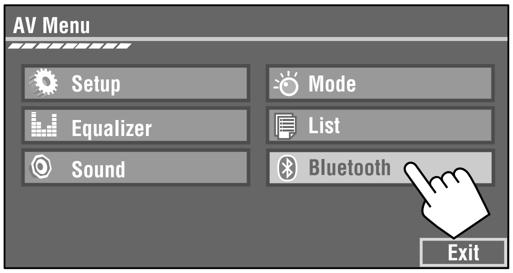
To make a call

1

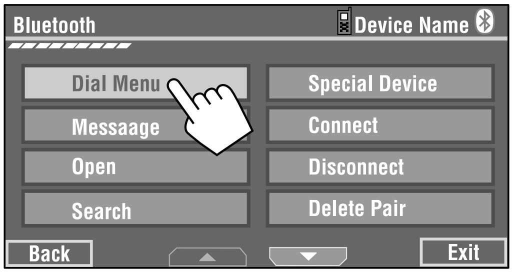

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

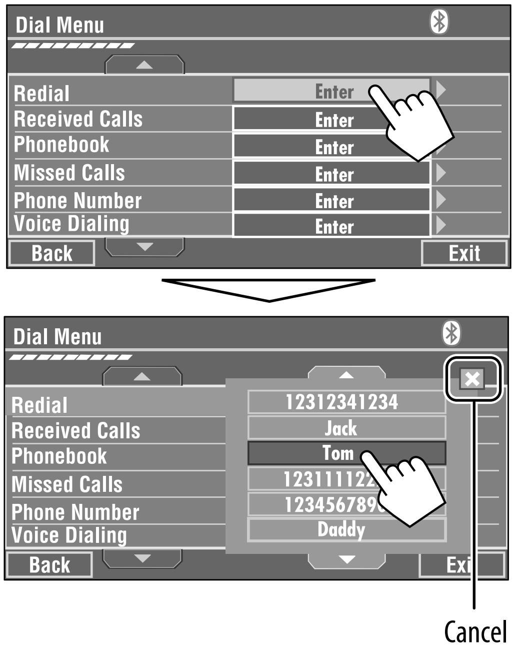
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
12345678
Daddy
Back
Exi
Cancel

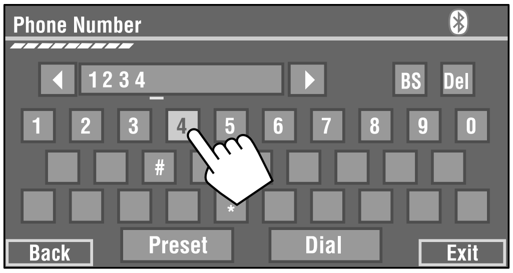
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

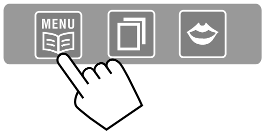
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

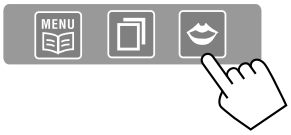
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

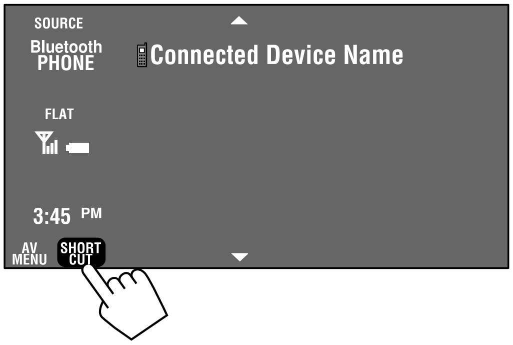
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



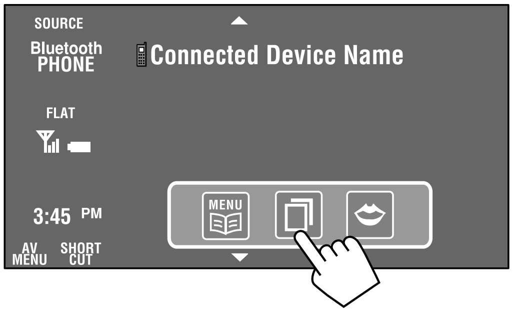
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

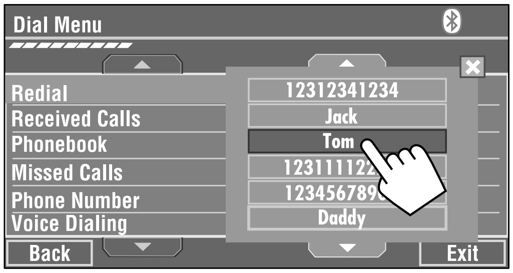
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

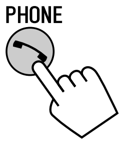
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
MENU

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
123456789
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

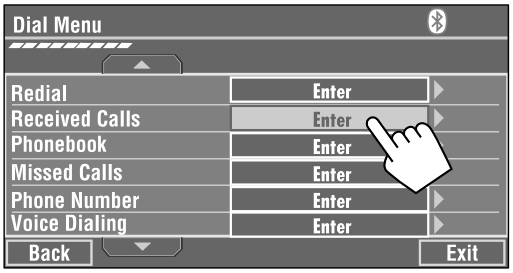
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

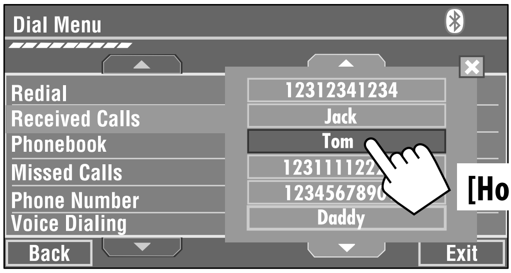
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit

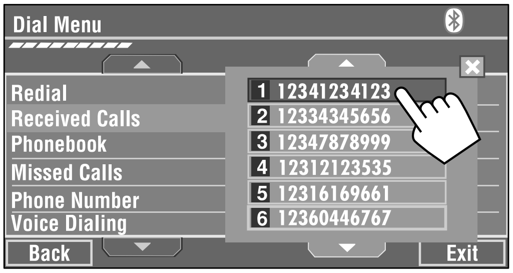
Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Back
Exit

[Hold]

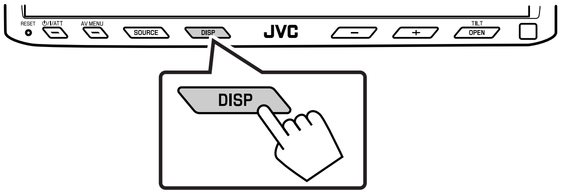
3 Select a preset number.

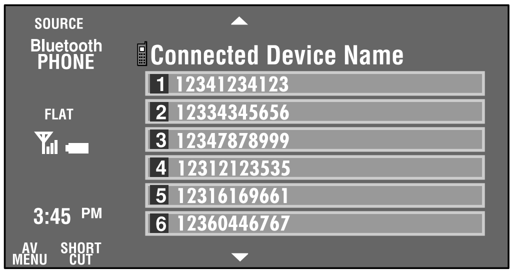

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

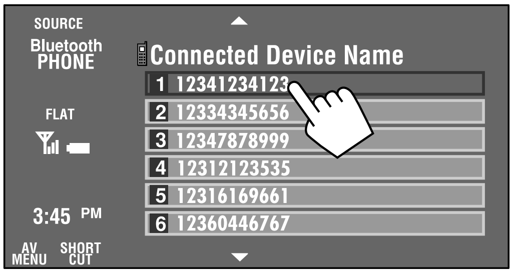
To call a preset number

1


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.

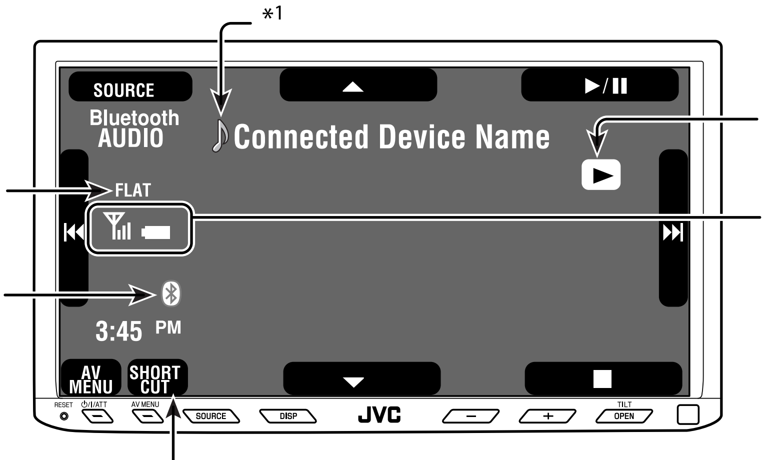
PHONE :
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).

BAND/■ : End the call.

2nd VOL VOL + − : Adjust the volume.

SHIFT **[Hold]** + 1 SETUP 2 ASPECT 3 RETURN 4 TOP M 5 6 MENU : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Sound mode (☞ page 45)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

*2

Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 45

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device (“New Device” appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

---

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

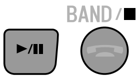
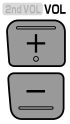
*3 *You cannot select “New Device” when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

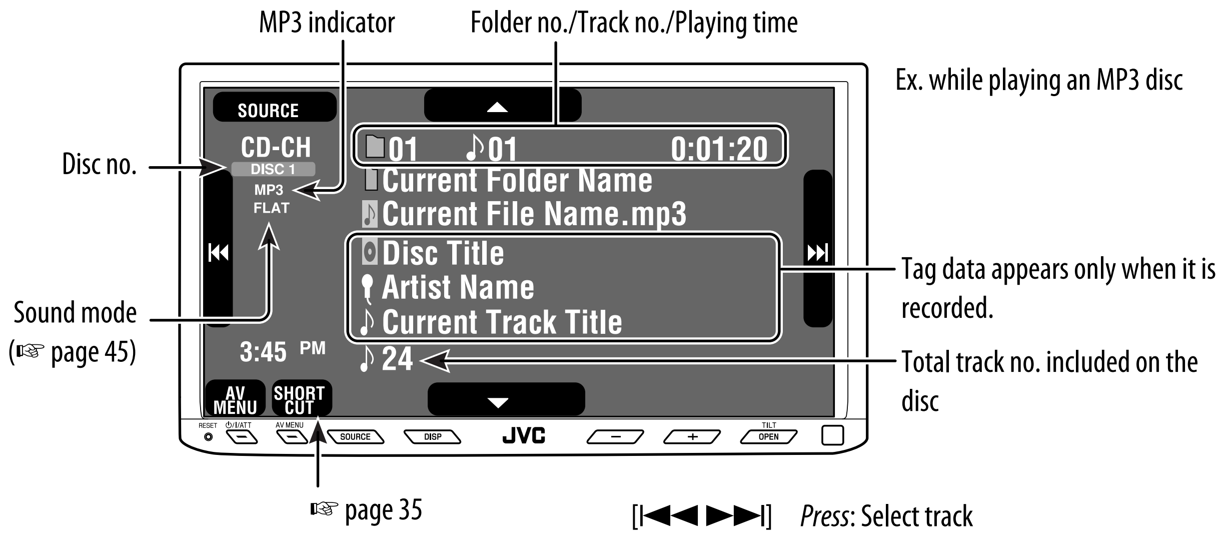
❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.

:	Start and pause playback.
:	Reverse/forward skip
:	Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Ex. while playing an MP3 disc
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
♪24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 35

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|] *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search

[▲ ▼] *Press*: Select folders (only for MP3)
Hold: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

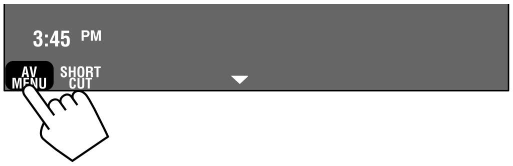
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 52)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

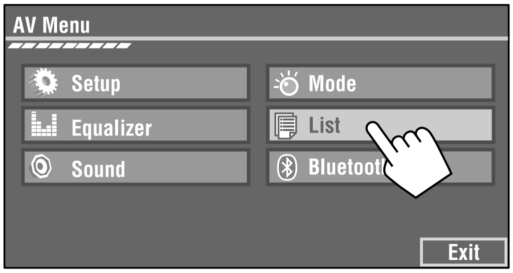
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

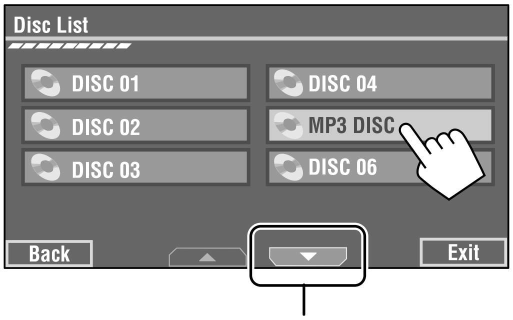

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

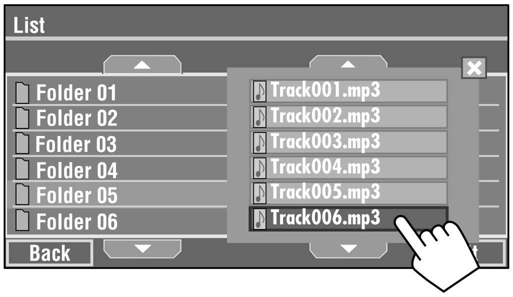

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

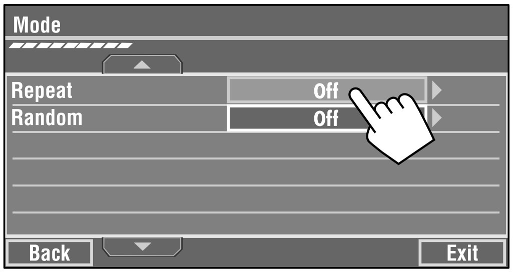
Selecting playback modes

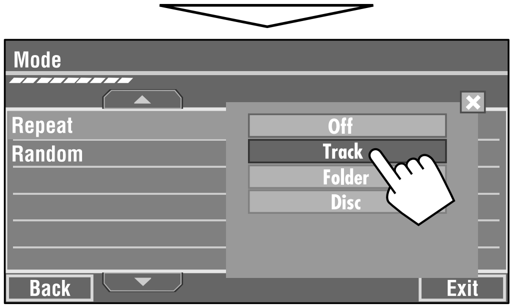
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].

3



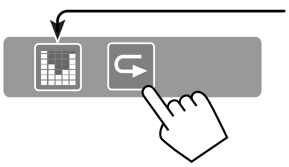


When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
MP3	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



☞ page 45

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

▽ △ : Select disc.

: Select folder (MP3 only).

- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the satellite radio

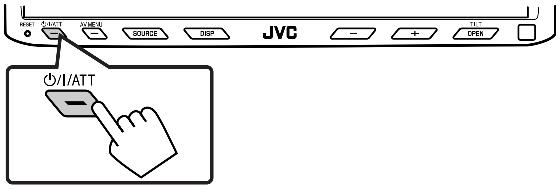
Before operating, connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS Satellite radio interface**, KS-SRA 100, for listening to SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **JVC Smart Digital Adaptor**, XMDJVC 100, for listening to XM Satellite radio.

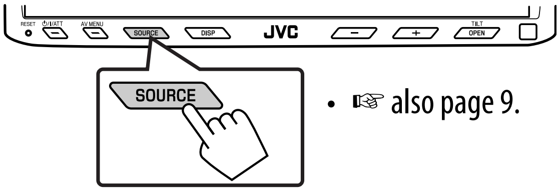
For SIRIUS Radio

Activate your subscription after connection:

1 **Turn on the power.**



2 **Select "SAT" for the source.**



- ☞ also page 9.

The SIRIUS Satellite radio starts updating all the SIRIUS channels. (☞ "GCI update" column below.)

- Once completed, SIRIUS Satellite radio tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

3 **Check your SIRIUS ID, see page 51.**

4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**

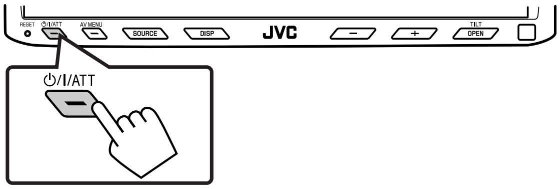
"Subscription Updated Press Any Key to Continue" appears on the monitor once subscription has been completed.

For XM Radio

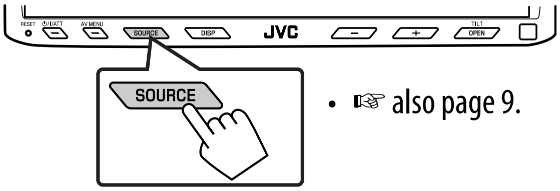
Activate your subscription after connection:

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1 **Turn on the power.**



2 **Select "SAT" for the source.**



- ☞ also page 9.

The XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically. (☞ "GCI update" column below.)

3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box, or tune in to "Channel 0" (see page 37).**

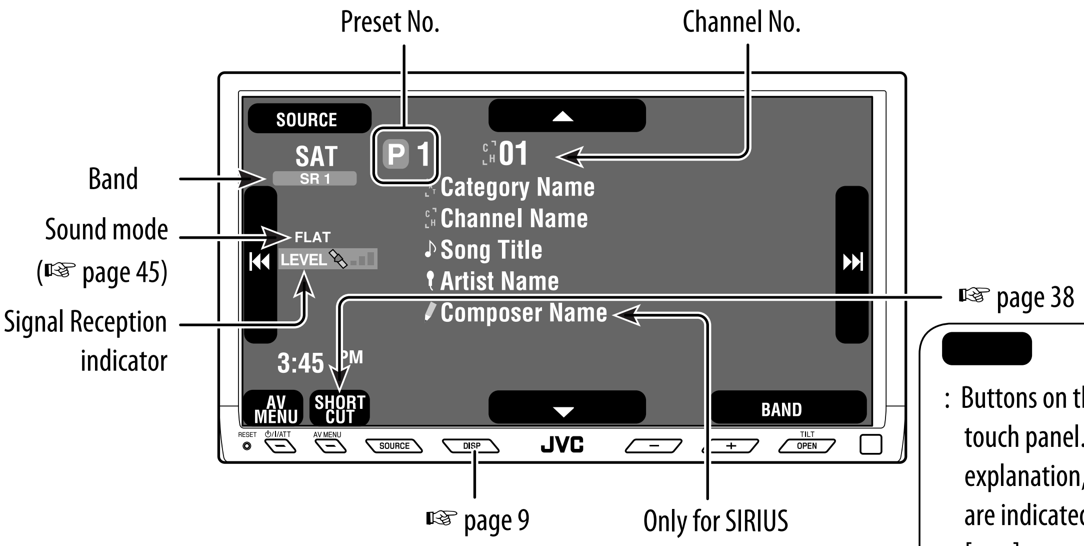
4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**

Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

GCI (Global Control Information) update:

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically, and no sound can be heard.
  For SIRIUS: "Channel is Updating XX% completed" appears.
  For XM : "UPDATING" appears.
- Updating takes a few minutes to complete.
- Do not press any buttons or perform any operations until updating is completed.

Tuning in to a channel you want


Preset No.
Channel No.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
Signal Reception
indicator
☞ page 38
☞ page 9
Only for SIRIUS
SOURCE
SAT
SR 1
P 1
CH 01
Category Name
Channel Name
Song Title
Artist Name
Composer Name
FLAT
LEVEL
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

For SIRIUS Radio

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [SAT].**

(☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [BAND].**

→ SR1 → SR2 → SR3 ┘

❸ **Press [▲] or [▼] to select a category.**

- To select a channel from all categories, select <**All**>.

❹ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to make a channel to listen to.**

- Holding either button changes the channel rapidly.
- While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

For XM Radio

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [SAT].**

(☞ page 9)

❷ **Press [BAND].**

→ XM1 → XM2 → XM3 ┘

❸ **Press [▲] or [▼] to select a category.**

- To select a channel from all categories (including non-categorised channels), skip this step.
- If you do not select a channel within 15 seconds, the category selected is canceled. You can select a channel from all categories now.

❹ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select a channel to listen to.**

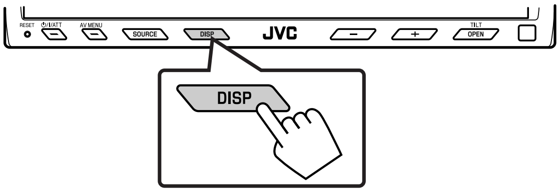
- Holding either button changes the channel rapidly.
- While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

Storing channels in memory

You can preset six channels for each band.

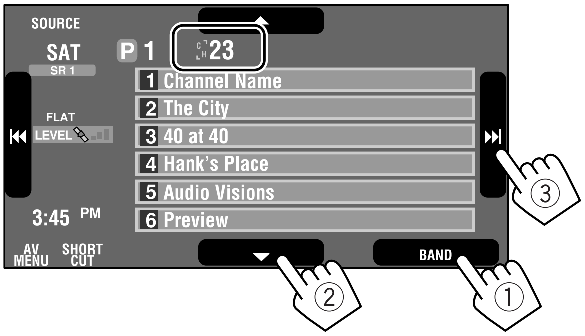
Ex.: Storing a channel into preset number 4

1 Display the Preset List.

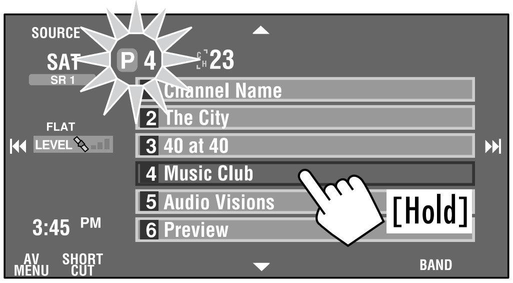

RESET
ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- If you want to select a channel by channel name, first select a channel, then display the Preset List.

2 Tune in to a station you want to preset.


SOURCE
SAT
SR 1
P 1
CH 23
1 Channel Name
2 The City
3 40 at 40
4 Hank's Place
5 Audio Visions
6 Preview
FLAT
LEVEL
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
③
②
①

3 Select a preset number.

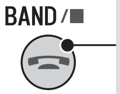

SOURCE
SAT
SR 1
P 4
CH 23
Channel Name
2 The City
3 40 at 40
4 Music Club
5 Audio Visions
6 Preview
[Hold]
FLAT
LEVEL
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

Selecting preset channels

On the remote only:

1



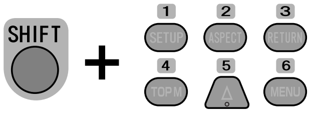
SIRIUS:

→SR1→SR2→SR3

XM:

→XM1→XM2→XM3

2

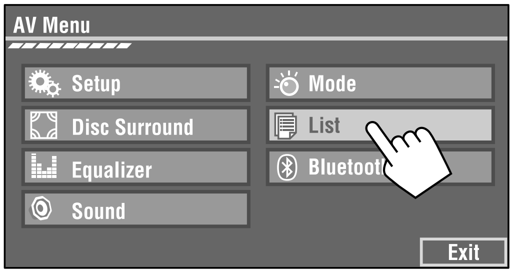

SHIFT
+
1
SETUP
2
ASPECT
3
RETURN
4
TOP M
5
6
MENU

Selecting on the lists

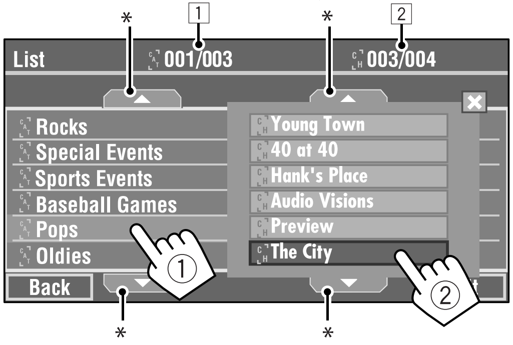
You can select a channel using the lists—Category list/Channel list.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [List].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Disc Surround
List
Equalizer
Bluetooth
Sound
Exit

3 Select a category (①), then a channel (②) from the selected category.

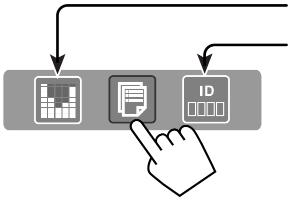

*
1
*
2
List
CH 001/003
CH 003/004
Rocks
Special Events
Sports Events
Baseball Games
Pops
Oldies
Young Town
40 at 40
Hank's Place
Audio Visions
Preview
The City
Back
①
②
*
*

* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list

1 Current category list number/total category list number

2 Current channel list number/total channel list number of the current category

- <**List**> menu can also be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



☞ page 45

☞ page 51 (only SIRIUS Satellite radio)

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast

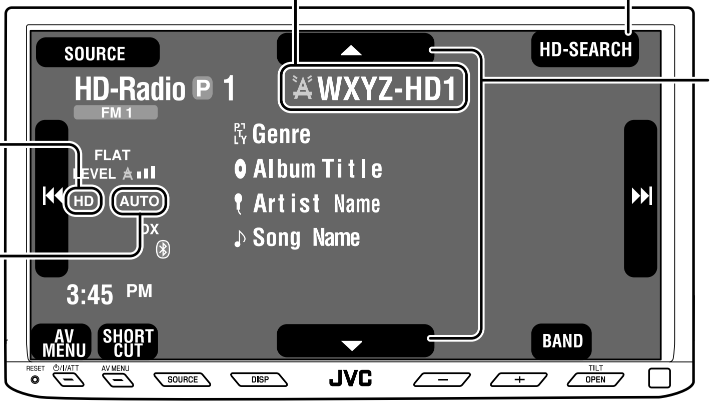
Before operating, connect HD Radio tuner box, KT-HD300 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

What is HD Radio Technology?

HD Radio Technology can deliver high-quality digital sound—AM digital will have FM-like quality (in stereo) and FM digital will have CD-like quality—with staticfree and clear reception. Furthermore, stations can offer text and data, such as artist names and song titles.

- When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, it can also receive conventional analog broadcasts.
- Many HD Radio stations also offer more than one channel of programming. This service is called multicasting.
- To find HD Radio stations in your area, visit www.hdradio.com <http://www.hdradio.com/>.

Refer also to page 10 for basic radio operations.


SOURCE
HD-SEARCH
HD-Radio P 1
FM 1
WXYZ-HD1
Genre
Album Title
Artist Name
Song Name
FLAT
LEVEL
HD
AUTO
DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Station Call Sign and channel number

Searching for HD Radio stations only

Flashes first then lights up when a digital audio broadcast is tuned in.

HD Radio reception mode

Up and down the HD Radio multicast channels.

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

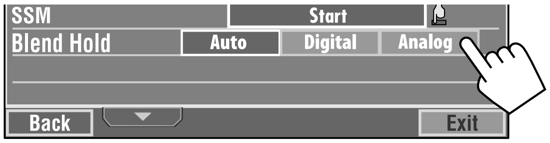
Changing HD Radio reception mode

While receiving an HD Radio broadcast, the unit tunes to digital or analog audio automatically due to the receiving condition.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**
- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**

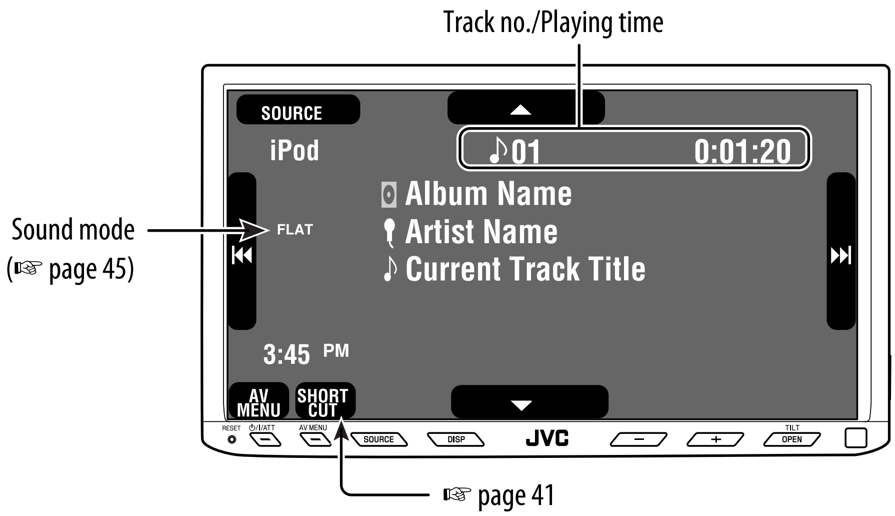
3


SSM
Start
Blend Hold
Auto
Digital
Analog
Back
Exit

- **Auto**: Switch between digital and analog audio automatically
- **Digital**: Tuning to digital audio only
- **Analog**: Tuning to analog audio only

- If no sound can be heard from the selected setting, change the setting to ANALOG or DIGITAL.
- The setting automatically changes to AUTO if you tuned in to or change to another station, or if you turned off the power.
- This setting cannot take effect for the conventional FM/AM stations.
- If the radio station forces the reception mode to digital, the DIGITAL indicator flashes.

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Sound mode
(☞ page 45)
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◄◄ ►►I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 52)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ **Artists** ↔ **Albums** ↔ **Songs** ↔ **Genres** ↔ **Composers** ↔ (back to the beginning)

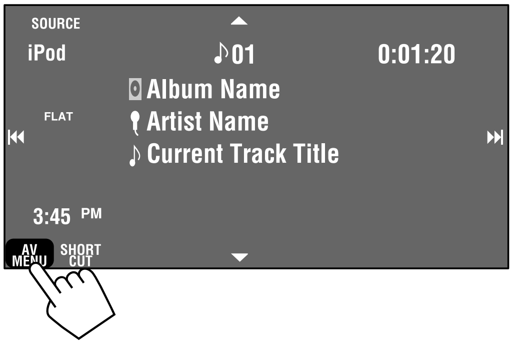
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

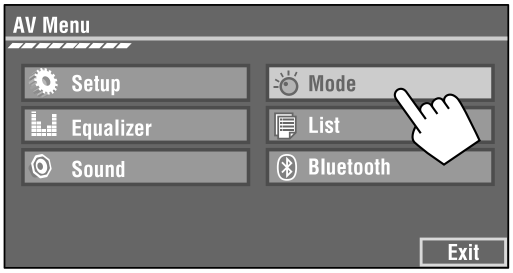
Selecting playback modes

1

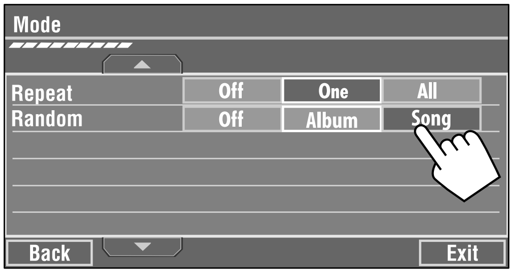

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

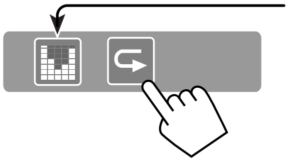
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

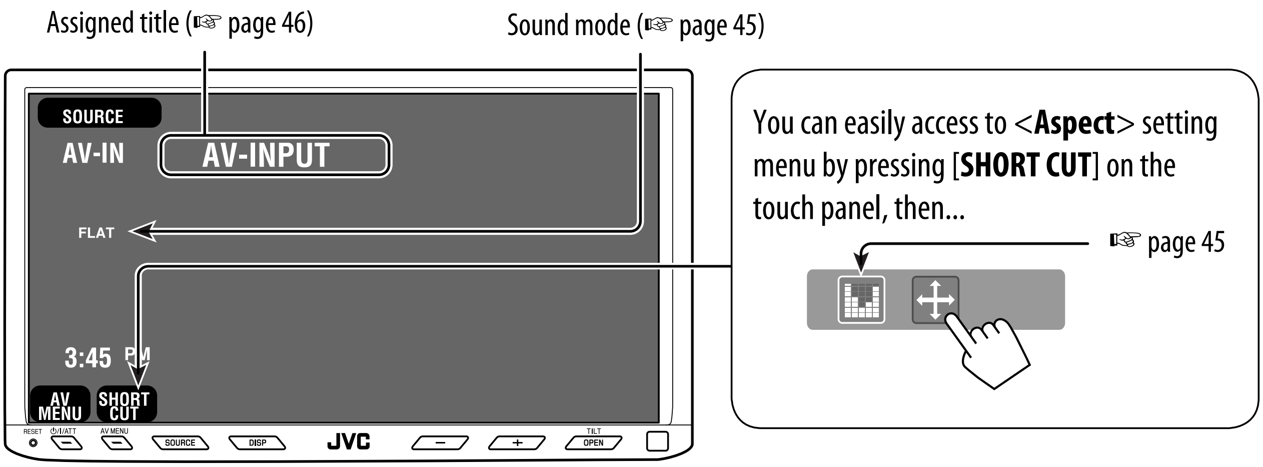
☞ page 45



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.

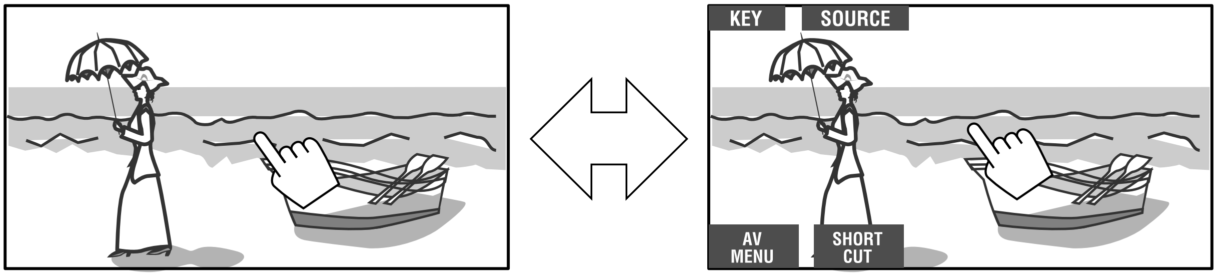

Assigned title (☞ page 46)
Sound mode (☞ page 45)
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then... ☞ page 45

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)
   - You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is "AV-IN."

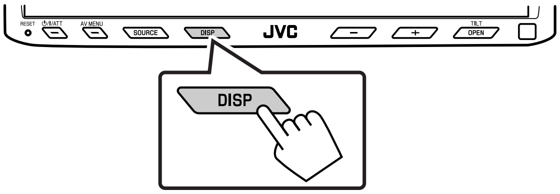
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 52)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

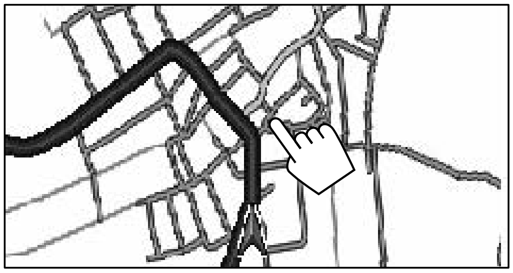


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 49)

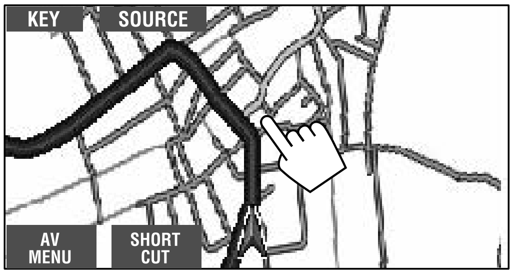
* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).



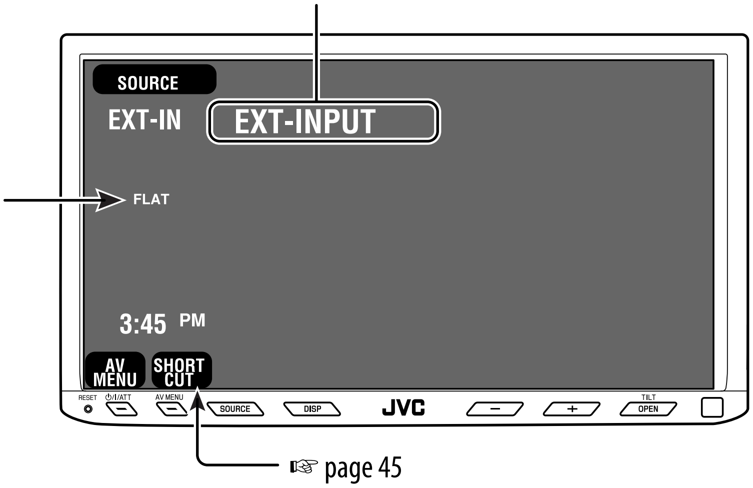
Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 52)
- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 46)

Sound mode (☞ page 45)

☞ page 45

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

Preparation:

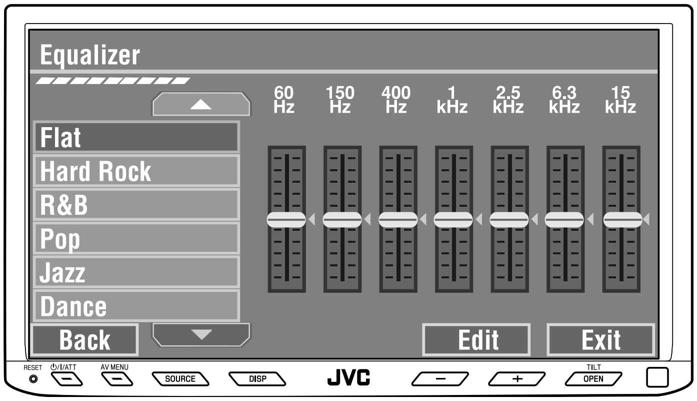
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 52)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

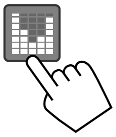
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

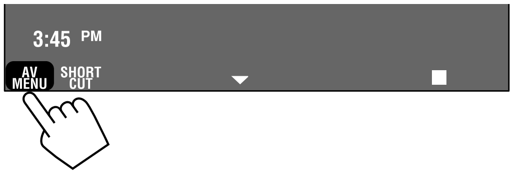
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

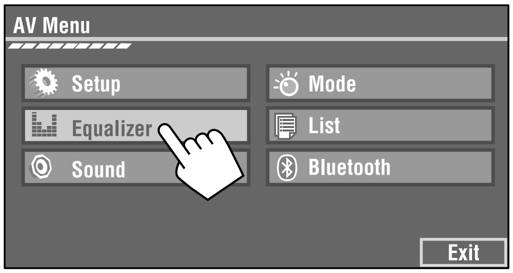


❶

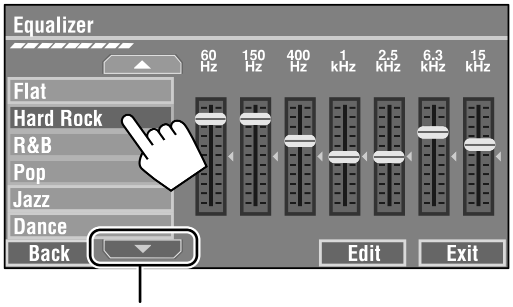

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

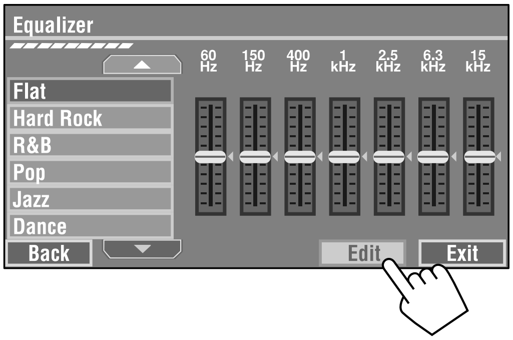
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 62.

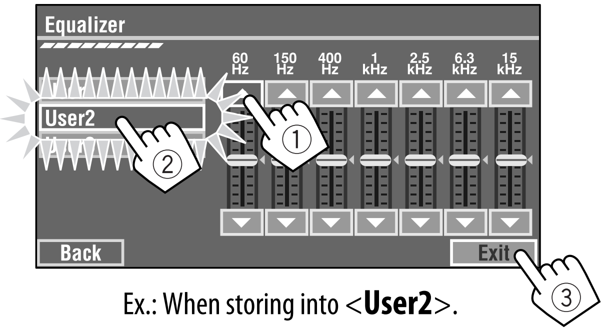
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

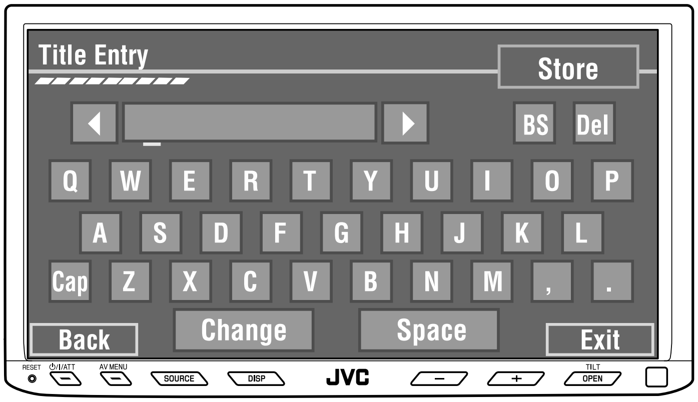

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
Back
Exit
③

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

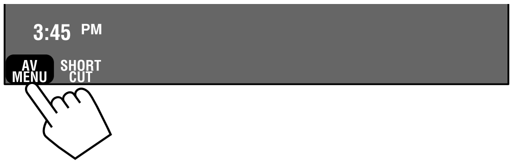
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

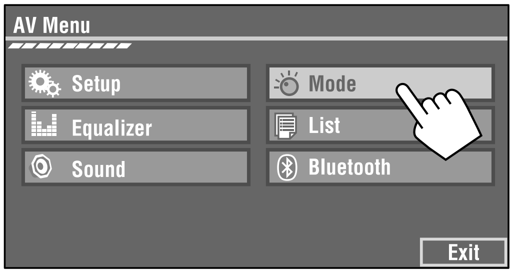
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

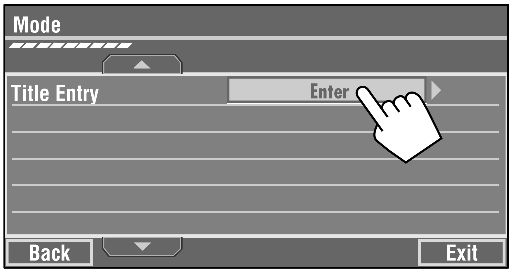
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

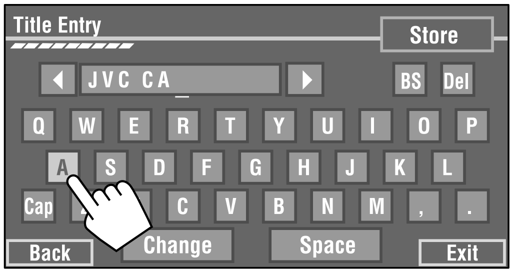

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

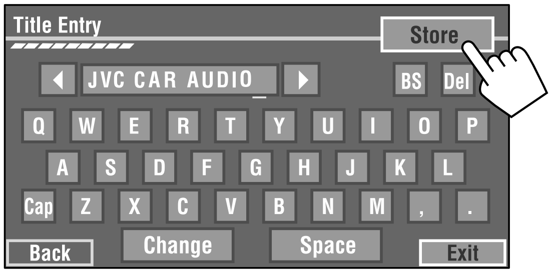
❸ Assign a title.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

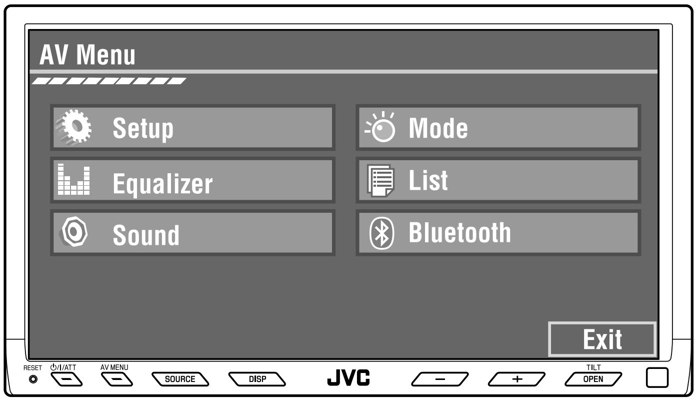
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 63).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/ lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

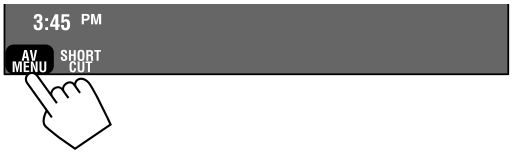

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

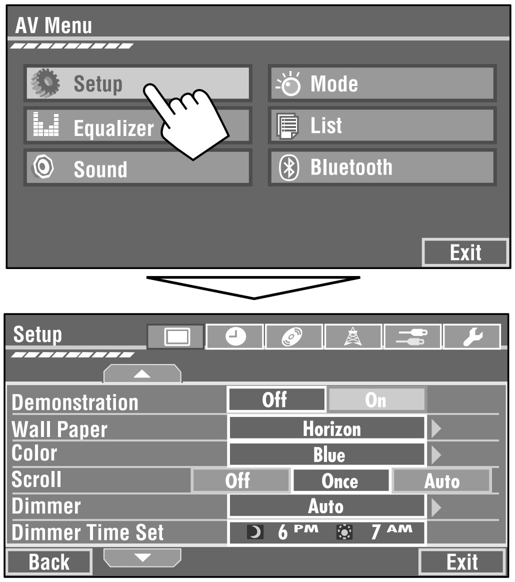
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

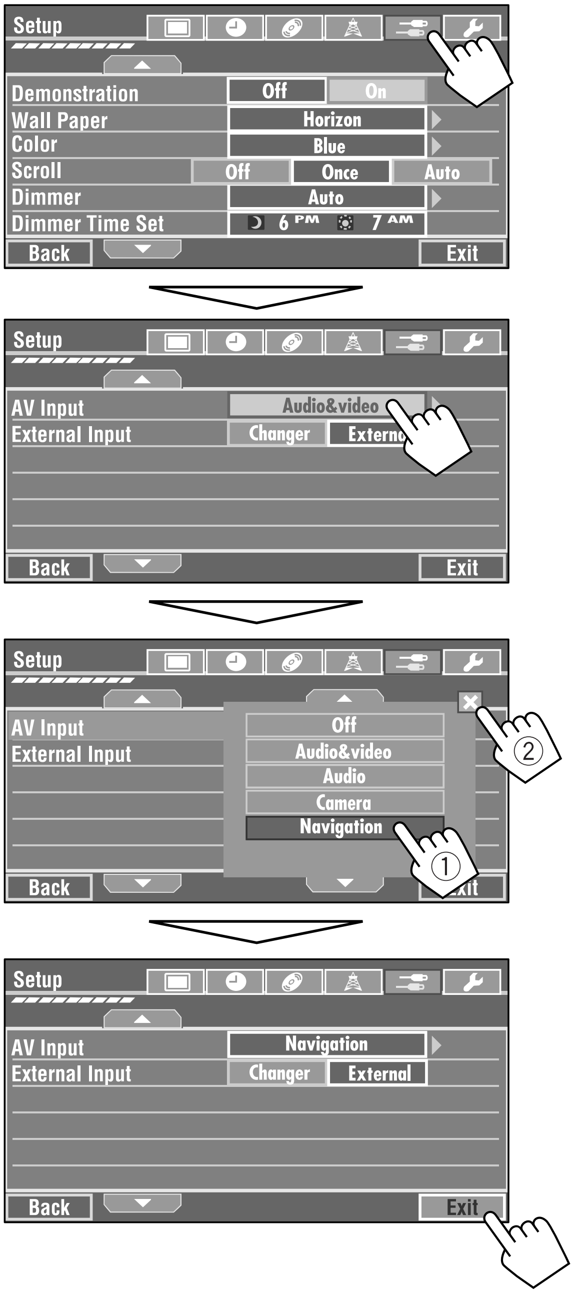
❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration Off On
Wall Paper Horizon
Color Blue
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 6 PM 7 AM

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Back
Exit
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
①
②

Demonstration Off On
Wall Paper Horizon
Color Blue
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 6 PM 7 AM

AV Input Audio&video
External Input Changer External

AV Input Navigation
External Input Changer External

Setup

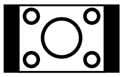
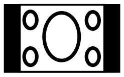
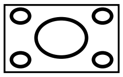
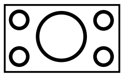
The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 47.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

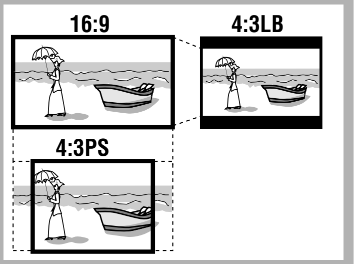
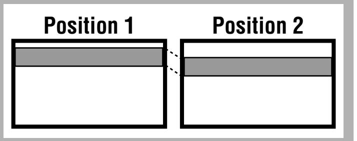
Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td>Display</td><td>Aspect*3</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Full:
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Language*4</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [63]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial 1:00AM ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8]
Off, On</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Clock Adjust*5</td><td>Off : Cancels.
Auto : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data provided via the satellite radio channel.</td></tr>
</table>

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

*5 *Appears only when SIRIUS Satellite Radio or XM Satellite Radio is connected.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Clock	**Time Zone***1 *2	Select your residential area from one of the following time zones for clock adjustment. **Alaska**, **Pacific**, **Mountain**, **Central**, **Eastern**, **Atlantic**, **Newfoundland**
	DST (Daylight Saving Time)*1 *2	Activates this if your residential area is subject to DST. **Off** : Cancels. **On** : Activates daylight saving time.
Disc	**Menu Language***3	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 62).
	Audio Language*3	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 62).
	Subtitle*3	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **Off** (☞ also page 62).
	Monitor Type*3 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*3 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*3	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*3	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.

[1] *Appears only when SIRIUS Satellite Radio or XM Satellite Radio is connected.*

[2] *Appears only when <**Clock Adjust**> is set to <**Auto**>.*

[3] *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**D. Audio Output***3	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 61) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.
	Down Mix*3	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*3	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	Area Setting	**US** : When using in North/Central/South America. FM/AM intervals are set to 200 kHz/10 kHz. **Europe** : When using in any other areas. FM/AM intervals are set to 50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search)/9 kHz. **SA** : When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	Sirius ID*4	Your SIRIUS identification number appears on the monitor.

*4 *Appears only when SIRIUS Satellite Radio is connected.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	**AV Input***1	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [42, 43] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***2 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*3	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***4: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 40] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [44] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

*1 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*2 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*3 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

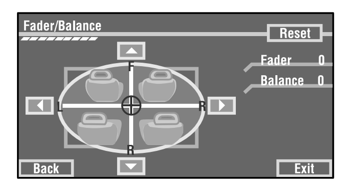
*4 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

Initial: __Underlined__

Equalizer

__Flat__/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [45]

Sound

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**__0__**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **__0__**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **__00__** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **__High__**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*5

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**__Off__**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **__DX__**) ☞ [11]
SSM*6	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry*7	Only for FM/AM stations, "AV-IN," and "EXT-IN." ☞ [46]
Blend Hold*8	Only for HD Radio broadcast. ☞ [39]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 41]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 41]

*5 *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

*6 *Also available for AM when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

*7 *Unavailable for AM/FM stations when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

*8 *Appears only when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)
For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)
For “SAT”: Category List and Channel List (☞ page 38)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for “New Device.” Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ page 55) from the next time.

*1 *Selectable only for “Bluetooth PHONE” or “Bluetooth AUDIO.” Select a device (or “New Device”) before operating the menu.*
*2 *Only for the device connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.”*
*3 *Selectable only when the source is “Bluetooth PHONE” and the connected cellular phone is compatible with Text Message.*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

Bluetooth (continued)

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

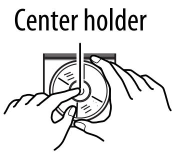
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



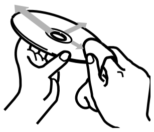
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

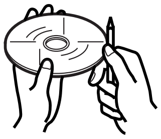
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

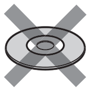
To play new discs



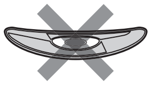
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

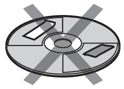
SingleCD—8 cm (3-3/16″) disc



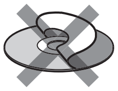
Warped disc



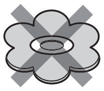
Sticker and sticker residue



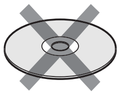
Stick-on label



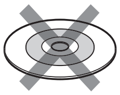
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/ program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/ MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

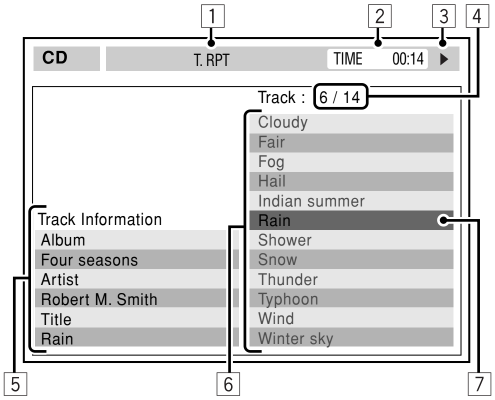
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
  MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
  24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
  44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

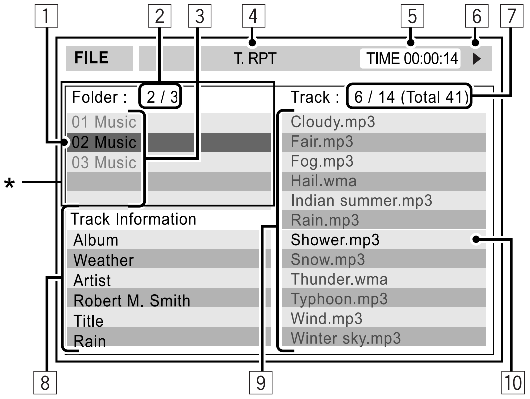
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or Text Message.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

HD Radio reception

- During SSM search...
  – All stations including conventional FM/AM stations are searched and stored for the selected band.

Satellite radio operations

- You can also connect the JVC SIRIUS radio PnP (Plug and Play), using the JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear. (Select "EXT-IN" as the source.)
  By turning on/off the power of the unit, you can turn on/off the JVC PnP. However, you cannot control it from this unit.
- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <http://www.sirius.com>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <http://www.xmradio.com>.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano *1
  – iPod video (5th Generation) *2
  *1 When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.
  *2 It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 51)

Playback disc / **<D. Audio Output>**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode / Frequency	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 46)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 49)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 49)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- HD Radio™ and the HD Radio Ready logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- “SIRIUS” and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- “SAT Radio,” the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 48)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 48)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try “0000” or “1234.” • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 54)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
HD Radio reception	• Sound quality changes when receiving HD Radio stations.	Fix the reception mode either to "Digital" or "Analog" (see page 39).
	• No sound can be heard.	• "Analog" is selected when receiving all digital broadcast of HD Radio station. Select "Digital" or "Auto" (see page 39). • "Digital" is selected when receiving weak digital signals or receiving conventional radio broadcast. Select "Analog" or "Auto" (see page 39).
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Recconect this unit and the HD Radio tuner box correctly, then reset the unit.
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)

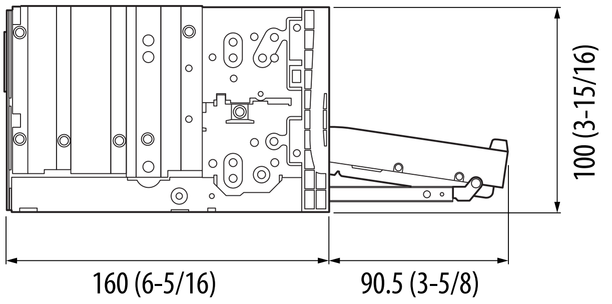
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" appears on the monitor.	Starts subscribing SIRIUS Satellite radio. (☞ page 36)
	• "No Signal" or "NO SIGNAL" appears on the monitor.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "No Antenna" or "ANTENNA" appears on the monitor.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "No CH" appears on the monitor for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display when listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "CH– – –" appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "NO NAME" appears on the monitor.	No text information for the selected channel.
	• "UPDATING" appears on the monitor and no sound can be heard.	The receiver is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• "OFF AIR" appears on the monitor while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "LOADING" appears on the monitor while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information is temporarily unavailable.
	• "Reset08" flashes on the monitor.	Reconnect this unit and the Satellite radio correctly and reset the unit.
	• Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect the Satellite radio after a few seconds.
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "No Files" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 48)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	**Power Output:**	**20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N**	
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)	
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, OE REMOTE, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM (with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz):	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
		FM (with channel interval set to 50 kHz):	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM (with channel interval set to 10 kHz):	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
		AM (with channel interval set to 9 kHz):	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C (14°F to 140°F)
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
	Dimensions (W × H × D) (with trim plate and sleeve attached):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 160 mm (7-3/16″ × 4-3/8″ × 6-5/16″)
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 10 mm (7-7/16″ × 4-5/8″ × 7/16″)
	Mass (approx.):		2.9 kg (6.4 lbs) (including trims and sleeve)

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm (inch)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

EN, SP, FR

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

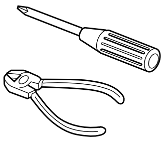
1207MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KW-ADV790/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
Installation/Connection Manual
Manuel d'installation/raccordement

LVT1778-002A
[J]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, SP, FR

©2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

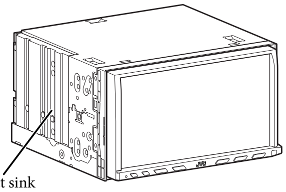
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - – This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 53 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Sumidero térmico
Dissipateur de chaleur

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

- NO instale ningún receptor o tienda ningún cable en una ubicación donde;
  - – Donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.
  - – Donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.
  - – Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.
- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Podría producirse un descuido, y causar un accidente.
- Si necesita operar la unidad mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente a su alrededor pues de lo contrario, se podría producir un accidente de tráfico.
- Si el freno de estacionamiento no está aplicado, parpadeará "Parking Brake" en el monitor, y no se visualizará la imagen reproducida.
  - – Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

Notas sobre las conexiones eléctricas:

- Reemplace el fusible por otro del régimen especificado. Si el fusible se funde frecuentemente, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de 4 Ω a 8 Ω).
  Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amplifier Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 53 de MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los terminales de los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- La unidad estará muy caliente después del uso. Tenga la precaución de no quemarse al efectuar su desmontaje.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

- *N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:*
  - *– où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
  - *– où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.*
  - *– où il peut gêner la visibilité.*
- *NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
- *Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.*
- *Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.*
- *Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake" clignote sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.*
  - *– Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.*

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre 4 Ω et 8 Ω). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 53 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit.
If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

[*1] Fitted to the main unit when shipped

Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

Con esta unidad se suministran las siguientes piezas.
Si hay algún elemento faltante, póngase inmediatamente en contacto con su concesionario.

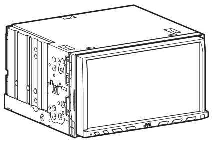
[*1] Fijado a la unidad principal cuando se expide de fábrica

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

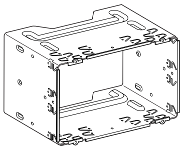
Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, contactez votre revendeur immédiatement.

*[*1] Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.*

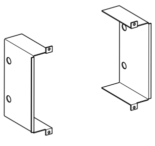
Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal



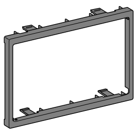
Sleeve*1
Cubierta*1
*Manchon*1*



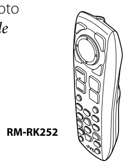
Brackets*1
Ménsulas*1
*Supports*1*



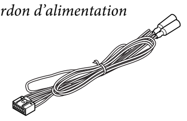
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



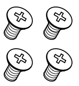
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommade



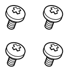
Power cord
Cable de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



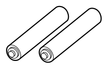
Flat head screws*1
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8")
Tornillos de cabeza plana*1
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pulgada)
*Vis à tête plate*1*
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pouces)



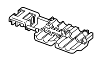
Round head screws*1
(M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8")
Tornillos de cabeza esférica*1
(M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8 pulgada)
*Vis à tête ronde*1*
(M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8 pouces)



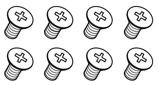
Batteries
Pilas
Piles



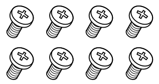
Crimp connector
Conectores a presión
Raccord à sertir



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8")
Tornillos de cabeza plana
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pulgada)
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pouces)



Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8")
Tornillos de cabeza esférica
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pulgada)
Vis à tête ronde (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pouces)



Use these screws when installing the unit without the supplied sleeve.
Utilice estos tornillos cuando instale la unidad sin la funda suministrada.
Utilisez ces vis lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans le manchon fourni.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Sin embargo usted deberá efectuar los ajustes correspondientes a su automóvil. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si no está seguro de poder instalar la unidad correctamente, déjela en manos de un técnico cualificado.

Antes de instalar la unidad

- Al instalar la unidad, asegúrese de usar los tornillos suministrados, de acuerdo con las instrucciones. Si emplea otros tipos de tornillos, corre el riesgo de que las piezas se aflojen o se dañen.
- Al apretar los tornillos o los pernos, asegúrese de que ningún cable de conexión quede pillado.
- Al efectuar la instalación, asegúrese de no bloquear el ventilador del panel trasero a fin de mantener una ventilación correcta.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGEDANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.*

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- *Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.*
- *Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.*
- *Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.*

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
  - Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Install thesleeve in the dashboard of the car.

3 Attach the brackets to the main unit.
  - make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8"). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

4 Do the required electrical connections.
  - See pages 3 and 4.

5 Install the main unit in the sleeve.

6 Attach the trim plate.

1 Desmonte el sistema de audio instalado originalmente en el coche, junto con los ménsulas de montaje.
  - Asegúrese de guardar todos los tornillos y piezas quitados de su vehículo para poderlos usar en el futuro.

2 Instale la cubierta en el cubretablero del automóvil.

3 Fije los ménsulas a la unidad principal.
  - Certifique-se de que utiliza parafusos de cabeça chata (M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pulgada). Parafusos maiores podem danificar a unidade.

4 Realice todas las conexiones eléctricas necesarias.
  - Consulte las páginas 3 y 4.

5 Coloque la unidad principal en la cubierta.

6 Fije la placa de guarnición.

1 *Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.*
  - *Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.*

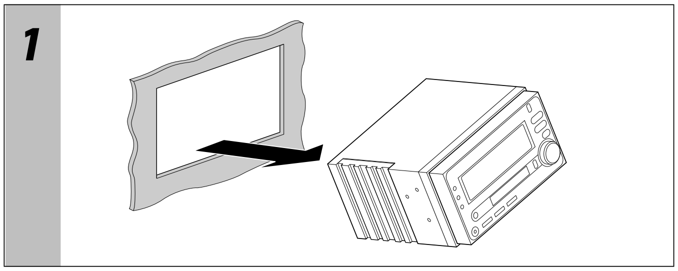
2 *Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.*

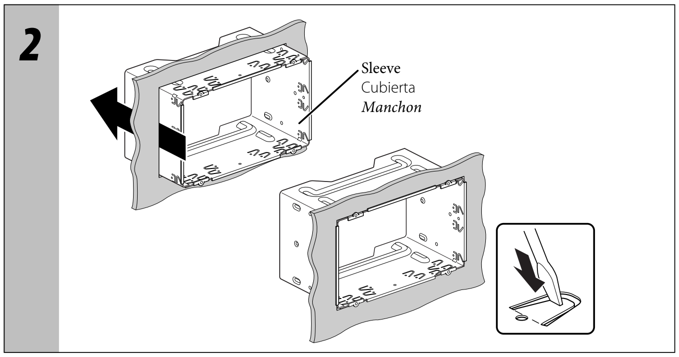
3 *Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.*
  - *Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis —(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pouces). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.*

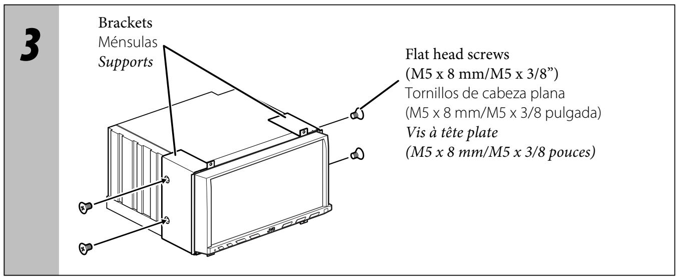
4 *Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.*
  - *Référez-vous aux pages 3 et 4.*

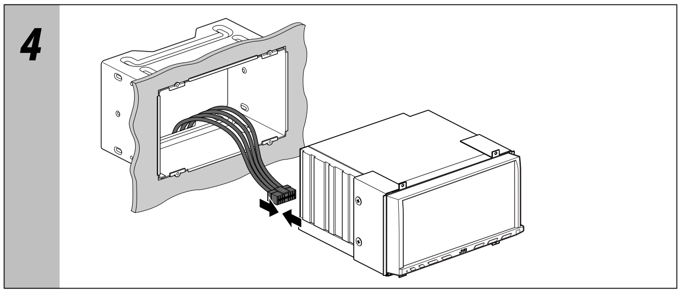
5 *Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.*

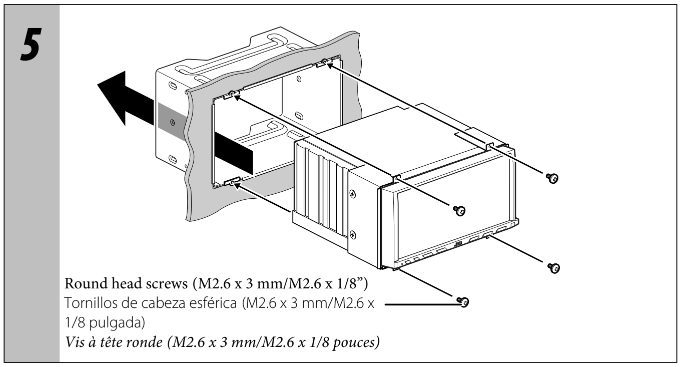
6 *Fixez la plaque d'assemblage.*

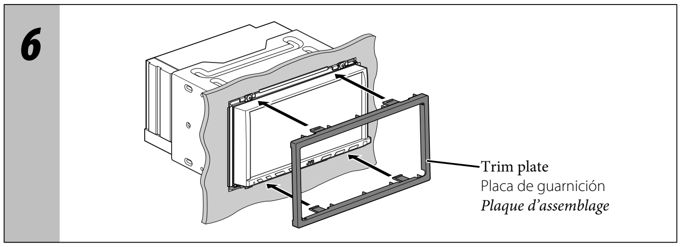




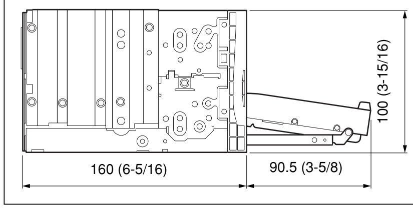

3
Brackets
Ménsulas
Supports
Flat head screws
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8")
Tornillos de cabeza plana
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pulgada)
Vis à tête plate
(M5 x 8 mm/M5 x 3/8 pouces)




5
Round head screws (M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8")
Tornillos de cabeza esférica (M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8 pulgada)
Vis à tête ronde (M2.6 x 3 mm/M2.6 x 1/8 pouces)

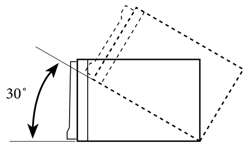


Required space for the monitor ejection
Espacio requerido para la expulsión del monitor
Espace requis pour le déploiement du moniteur



Unit: mm (inch)
Unidad: mm (pulgada)
Unité: mm (pouces)

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°, teniendo en cuenta que el monitor debe extraerse para su uso (véase a la izquierda).
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation (voir ci-à gauche).



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

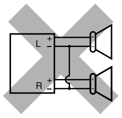
RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

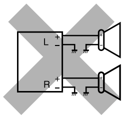
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



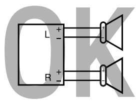
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en las unidades.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



PRECAUTIONS *sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes*

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*



Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

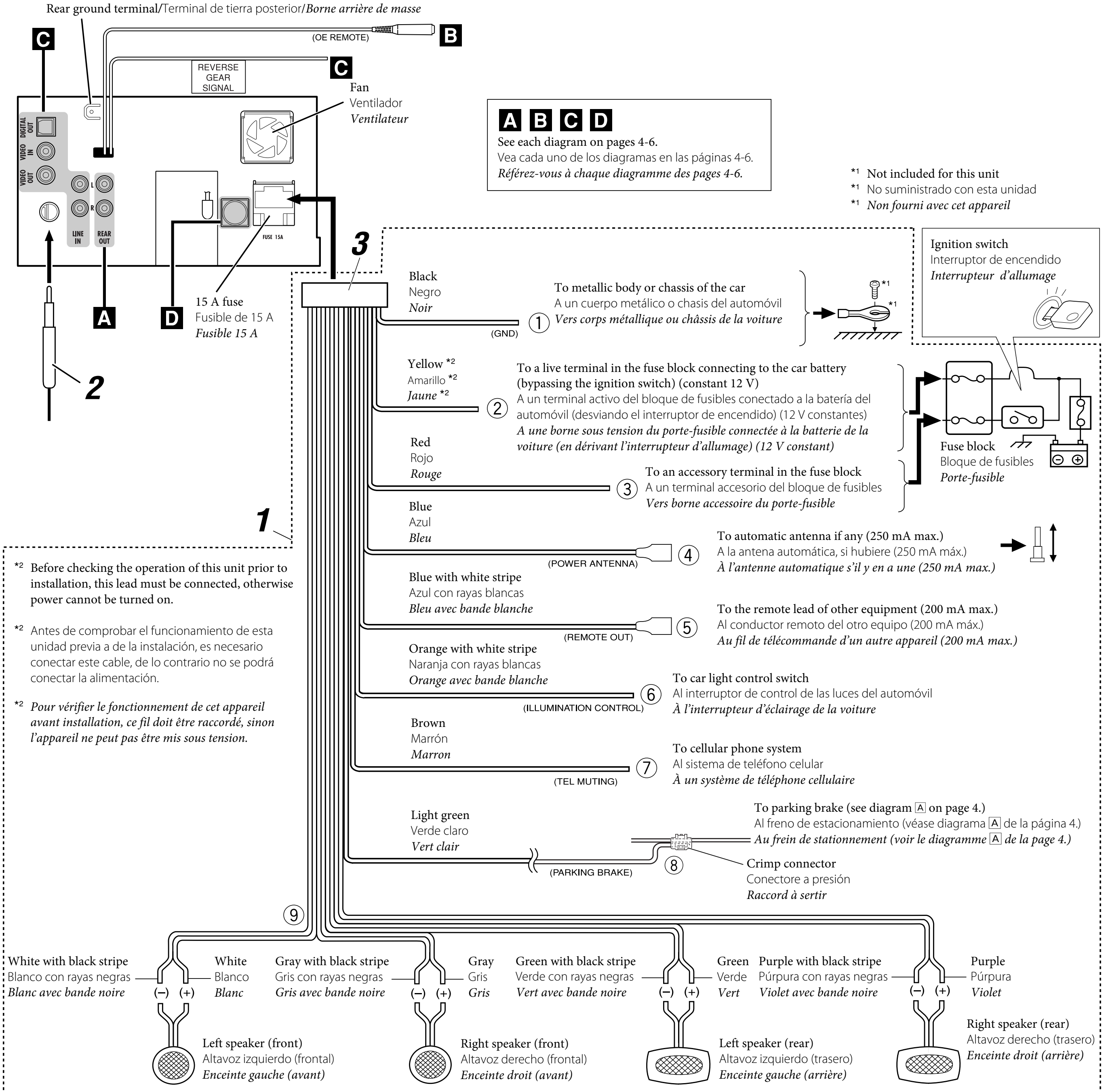
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad. Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

1. Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
2. Conecte el cable de antena.
3. Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.*

1. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
2. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
3. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*


Rear ground terminal/Terminal de tierra posterior/Borne arrière de masse
C
(OE REMOTE)
B
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
C
Fan
Ventilador
Ventilateur
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
3
A
D
15 A fuse
Fusible de 15 A
Fusible 15 A
2
1
Black
Negro
Noir
(GND)
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Interruptor de encendido
Interrupteur d'allumage
Yellow *2
Amarillo *2
Jaune *2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
A un terminal activo del bloque de fusibles conectado a la batería del automóvil (desviando el interruptor de encendido) (12 V constantes)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constant)
Fuse block
Bloque de fusibles
Porte-fusible
Red
Rojo
Rouge
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
A un terminal accesorio del bloque de fusibles
Vers borne accessoire du porte-fusible
Blue
Azul
Bleu
(POWER ANTENNA)
④ To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
A la antena automática, si hubiere (250 mA máx.)
À l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une (250 mA max.)
Blue with white stripe
Azul con rayas blancas
Bleu avec bande blanche
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤ To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
Al conductor remoto del otro equipo (200 mA máx.)
Au fil de télécommande d'un autre appareil (200 mA max.)
Orange with white stripe
Naranja con rayas blancas
Orange avec bande blanche
(ILLUMINATION CONTROL)
⑥ To car light control switch
Al interruptor de control de las luces del automóvil
À l'interrupteur d'éclairage de la voiture
Brown
Marrón
Marron
(TEL MUTING)
⑦ To cellular phone system
Al sistema de teléfono celular
À un système de téléphone cellulaire
Light green
Verde claro
Vert clair
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑧ To parking brake (see diagram A on page 4.)
Al freno de estacionamiento (véase diagrama A de la página 4.)
Au frein de stationnement (voir le diagramme A de la page 4.)
Crimp connector
Conectore a presión
Raccord à sertir
⑨
White with black stripe
Blanco con rayas negras
Blanc avec bande noire
White
Blanco
Blanc
(–) (+)
Gray with black stripe
Gris con rayas negras
Gris avec bande noire
Gray
Gris
Gris
(–) (+)
Green with black stripe
Verde con rayas negras
Vert avec bande noire
Green
Verde
Vert
(–) (+)
Purple with black stripe
Púrpura con rayas negras
Violet avec bande noire
Purple
Púrpura
Violet
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Altavoz izquierdo (frontal)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
Right speaker (front)
Altavoz derecho (frontal)
Enceinte droit (avant)
Left speaker (rear)
Altavoz izquierdo (trasero)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
Right speaker (rear)
Altavoz derecho (trasero)
Enceinte droit (arrière)

A B C D
See each diagram on pages 4-6.
Vea cada uno de los diagramas en las páginas 4-6.
Référez-vous à chaque diagramme des pages 4-6.

[*1] Not included for this unit
[*1] No suministrado con esta unidad
[*1] *Non fourni avec cet appareil*

[*2] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

[*2] Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.

[*2] *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

A Connecting the parking brake lead

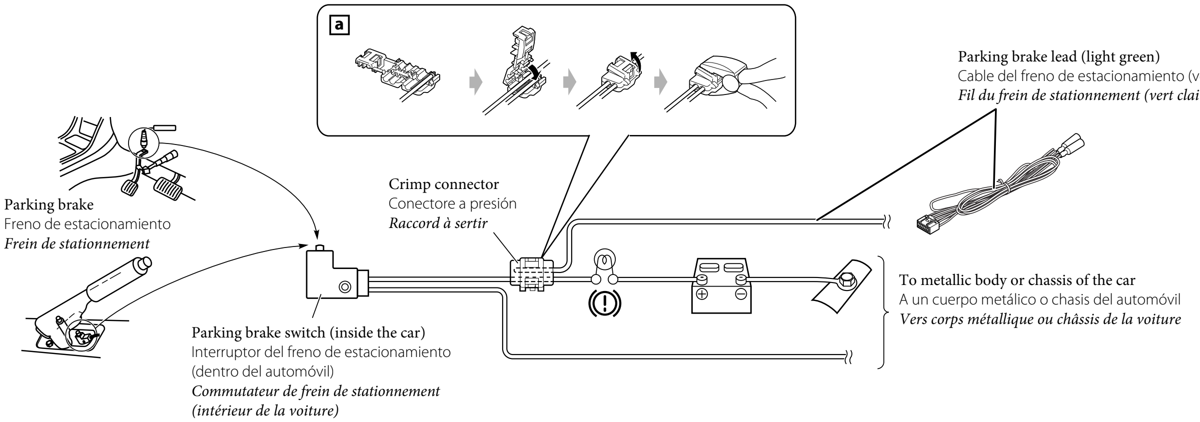
Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.

Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema del freno de estacionamiento instalado en el coche.

Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.


a
Parking brake lead (light green)
Cable del freno de estacionamiento (verde claro)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)
Crimp connector
Conectore a presión
Raccord à sertir
Parking brake
Freno de estacionamiento
Frein de stationnement
To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Interruptor del freno de estacionamiento (dentro del automóvil)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (intérieur de la voiture)

A Connecting an external amplifier / Conexión de un amplificador externo / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

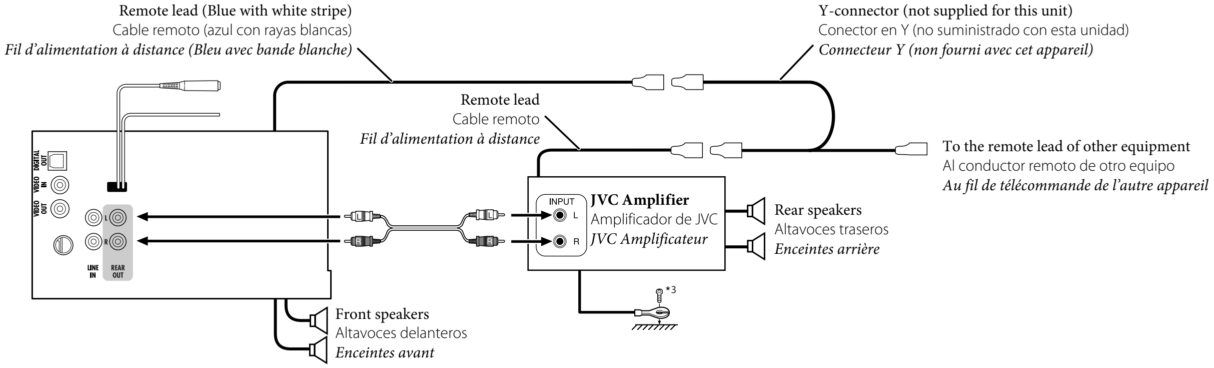
- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 53 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

Puede conectar un amplificador para mejorar su sistema car estéreo.

- Puede suministrar alimentación al amplificador conectando los conductores remotos (azul con rayas blancas) de esta unidad al amplificador. (Para conectar otro equipo usando los conductores remotos, se deben adquirir separadamente conectores en Y).
- Desconecte los altavoces de la unidad principal y conéctelos al amplificador. Los conductores de los altavoces de la unidad quedan sin usar.
- Puede desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio sólo al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar la generación de calor dentro de la unidad. Consulte la página 53 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système stéréo.

- *Vous pouvez alimenter l'amplificateur en connectant les fils de télécommande (bleu à bande blanche(de cet appareil à l'amplificateur. (Pour connecter un autre appareil en utilisant les fils de télécommande, vous devez acheter des connecteurs Y séparément.)*
- *Déconnectez les enceintes de l'appareil principal et connectez-les aux amplificateurs. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de l'appareil inutilisés.*
- *Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement vers un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs pour obtenir des sons plus clairs et éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil. Référez-vous à la page 53 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.*


Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Cable remoto (azul con rayas blancas)
Fil d'alimentation à distance (Bleu avec bande blanche)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Conector en Y (no suministrado con esta unidad)
Connecteur Y (non fourni avec cet appareil)
Remote lead
Cable remoto
Fil d'alimentation à distance
To the remote lead of other equipment
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
Amplificador de JVC
JVC Amplificateur
Rear speakers
Altavoces traseros
Enceintes arrière
*3
Front speakers
Altavoces delanteros
Enceintes avant

[*3] Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

[*3] Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.

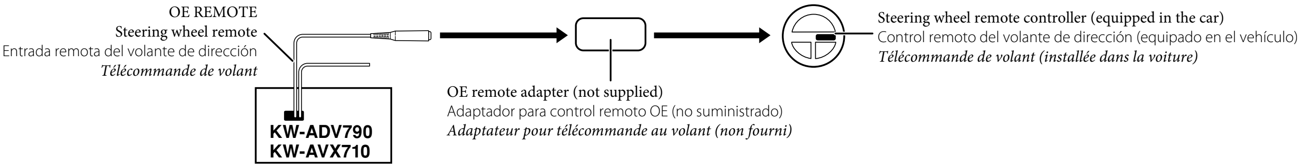
[*3] *Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.*

B Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur

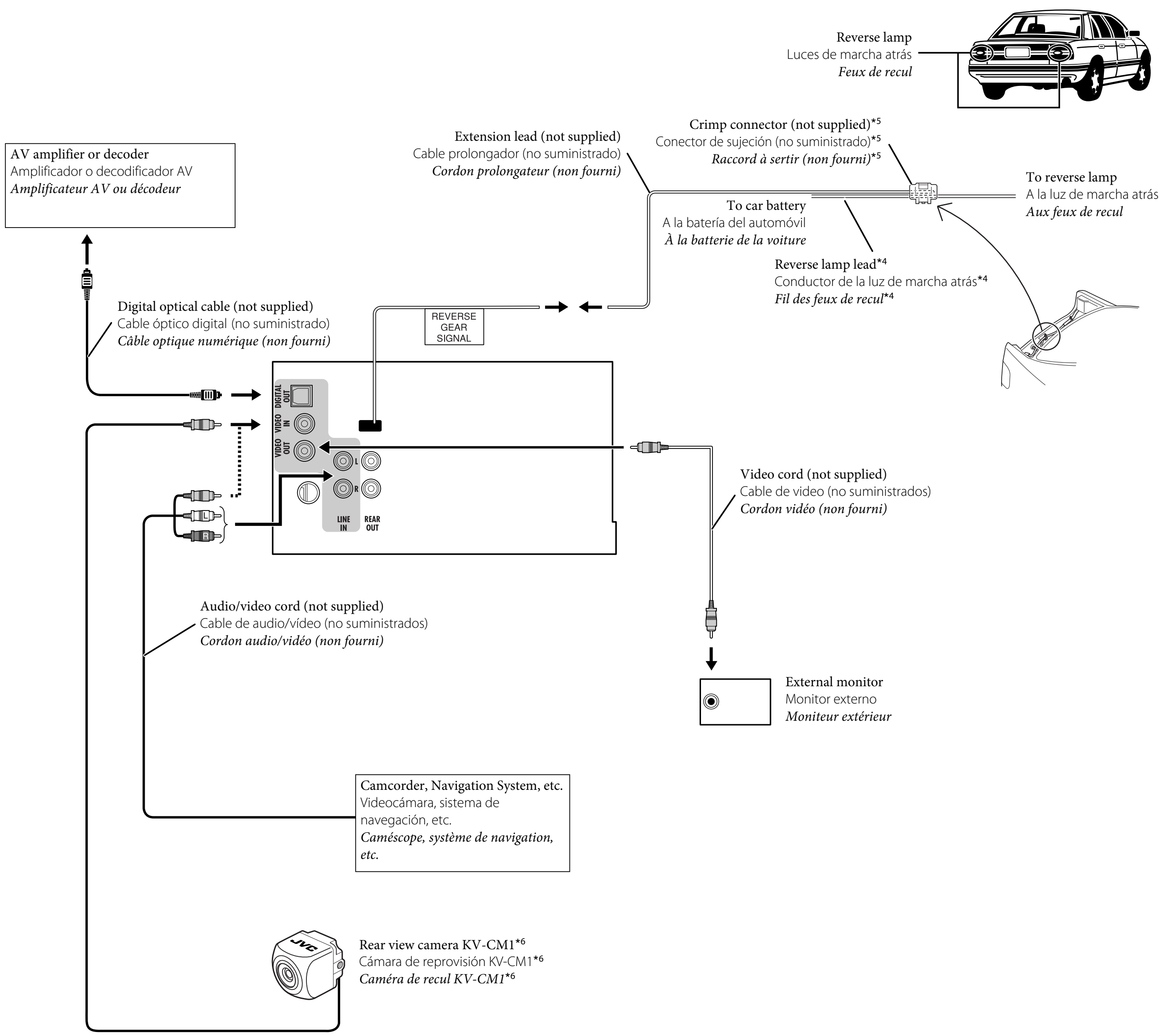
If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. For connection, an exclusive remote adapter (not supplied) which matches your car is required. For details, consult the same car audio dealer as where the unit is purchased.

Si su vehículo está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá hacer funcionar este receptor utilizando dicho control. Para la conexión, se requiere un adaptador remoto exclusivo (no suministrado) que sea adecuado para su automóvil. Para los detalles, consulte con el concesionario car audio donde compró el receptor.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour la connexion, un adaptateur de télécommande exclusif (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est requis. Pour en savoir plus, consultez le revendeur autoradio auprès duquel vous avez acheté cet autoradio.


OE REMOTE
Steering wheel remote
Entrada remota del volante de dirección
Télécommande de volant
KW-ADV790
KW-AVX710
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Adaptador para control remoto OE (no suministrado)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Control remoto del volante de dirección (equipado en el vehículo)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)

C Connections for external component playback / Conexiones para la reproducción del componente externo / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur


Reverse lamp
Luces de marcha atrás
Feux de recul
Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
Conector de sujeción (no suministrado)*5
Raccord à sertir (non fourni)*5
Extension lead (not supplied)
Cable prolongador (no suministrado)
Cordon prolongateur (non fourni)
AV amplifier or decoder
Amplificador o decodificador AV
Amplificateur AV ou décodeur
To reverse lamp
A la luz de marcha atrás
Aux feux de recul
To car battery
A la batería del automóvil
À la batterie de la voiture
Reverse lamp lead*4
Conductor de la luz de marcha atrás*4
Fil des feux de recul*4
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Cable óptico digital (no suministrado)
Câble optique numérique (non fourni)
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
1
L
R
Video cord (not supplied)
Cable de video (no suministrados)
Cordon vidéo (non fourni)
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Cable de audio/vídeo (no suministrados)
Cordon audio/vidéo (non fourni)
External monitor
Monitor externo
Moniteur extérieur
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
Videocámara, sistema de navegación, etc.
Caméscope, système de navigation, etc.
JVC
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6
Cámara de reprovisión KV-CM1*6
Caméra de recul KV-CM1*6

---

[4] Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

[5] Refer to a in diagram A on page 4.

[6] Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 52 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[4] Se requiere solamente cuando se conecta una cámara de retrovisión al terminal VIDEO IN.

[5] Consulte a en el diagrama A de la página 4.

[6] Para usar, ajuste "AV Input" a "Camera" (véase la página 52 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).

[4] *Requis uniquement lors de la connexion d'une caméra de recul à la prise VIDEO IN.*

[5] *Reportez vous à a du diagramme A de la page 4.*

[6] *Réglez "AV Input" sur "Camera" lors de l'utilisation (voir page 52 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*

D Connections to the CD changer jack / Conexión al jack del cambiador de CD / Connexions à la prise du changeur de CD

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
HD Radio™ tuner box	KT-HD300

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box	Smart Digital Adapter	XMDJVC100
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio interface	KS-SRA100
JVC SIRIUS PnP	SIRIUS radio adapter	KS-U100K
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

- XM Radio and SIRIUS satellite radio cannot be used together.

Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.

PRECAUCIÓN:
Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.

Componente JVC	Nombre del modelo
Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Sintonizador HD Radio™	KT-HD300

También puede conectar los siguientes componentes mediante los diversos adaptadores JVC.

- Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.

Componente	Adaptador	Nombre del modelo
Dispositivo Bluetooth	Adaptador Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptador de interfaz para iPod	KS-PD100
Sintonizador universal XMDirecto™	Adaptador digital inteligente	XMDJVC100
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Interfaz para radio por satélite SIRIUS	KS-SRA100
SIRIUS PnP de JVC	Adaptador para radio SIRIUS	KS-U100K
Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de salida de línea	Adaptador de entrada por línea	KS-U57
Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm	Adaptador de entrada AUX	KS-U58

Cuando conecte más de un componente (máximo: tres), se recomienda que conecte los componentes en serie, como se explica a continuación.

- No puede utilizar juntas la radio XM y la radio satelital SIRIUS.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Tuner HD Radio™	KT-HD300

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.

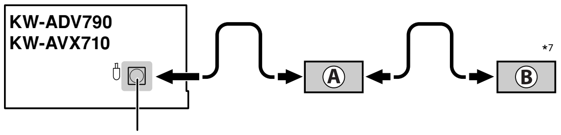
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

Appareil	Adaptateur	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	KS-BTA200
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	KS-PD100
Tuner universel XMDirect™	*Adaptateur numérique intelligent*	XMDJVC100
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Interface pour radio satellite SIRIUS*	KS-SRA100
JVC SIRIUS PnP	*Adaptateur radio SIRIUS*	KS-U100K
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	KS-U57
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	KS-U58

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

- *La radio XM et SIRIUS ne peuvent pas être utilisées en même temps.*

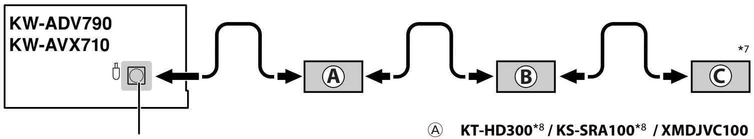
When connecting two components in series
Cuando conecta dos componentes en serie
Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



CD changer jack / Jack para el cambiador de CD / *Prise du changeur de CD*

Ⓐ **KT-HD300[*8] / KS-SRA100[*8] / KS-BTA200 / XMDJVC100**
Ⓑ[*7] **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58 / KS-U100K**

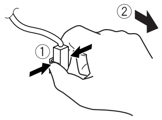
When connecting three components in series / Cuando conecta tres componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série



CD changer jack / Jack para el cambiador de CD/ *Prise du changeur de CD*

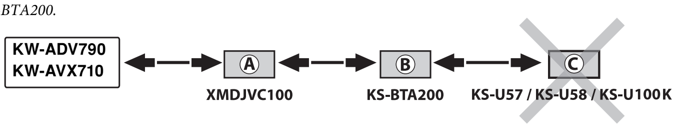
Ⓐ **KT-HD300[*8] / KS-SRA100[*8] / XMDJVC100**
Ⓑ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓒ[*7] **KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58 / KS-U100K**

To disconnect the connector / Para desconectar el conector / Pour déconnecter le connecteur



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (①) y seguidamente, extráigalo (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).

It is not recommended to connect KS-U57/KS-U58/KS-U100K at Ⓒ in series with XMDJVC100/KS-BTA200.
No se recomienda conectar el KS-U57/KS-U58/KS-U100K en Ⓒ en serie con XMDJVC100 y KS-BTA200.
Il n'est pas recommandé de connecter le KS-U57/KS-U58/KS-U100K en série à Ⓒ in avec le XMDJVC100 et le KS-BTA200.



HD Radio™ is a proprietary trademark of iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

HD Radio™ es una marca comercial de iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.

HD Radio™ est une marque de commerce d'iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

[*7] To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 52 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
[*8] Power cannot be supplied to the component through the CD changer jack. You need to connect the power cord supplied for the component separately.

[*7] Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 52 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
[*8] No puede suministrar energía eléctrica al componente a través del jack del cambiador de CD. Es necesario conectar, aparte, el cable de alimentación suministrado con el componente.

[*7] *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 52 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
[*8] *L'alimentation ne peut pas être fournie à l'appareil par la prise de changeur de CD. Vous devez connecter séparément le cordon d'alimentation fourni pour l'appareil.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  - * Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACIÓN DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
  - * ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
  - * ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  - * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
  - * ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **La unidad se calienta.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  - * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
  - * ¿Reinicializó el receptor?

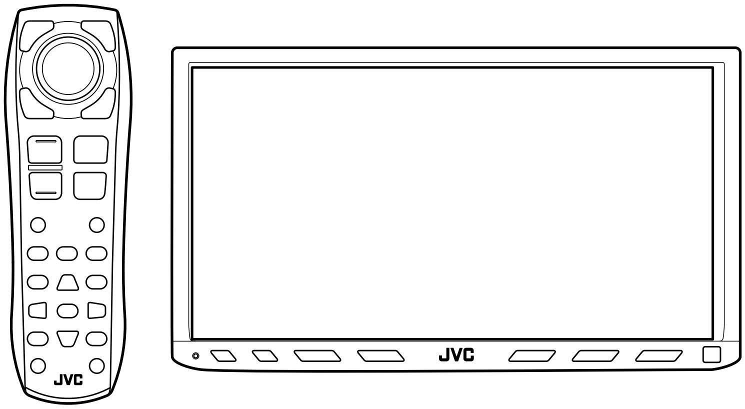
EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
  - * *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
  - * *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  - * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  - * *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  - * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
  - * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
DVD-RECEIVER MIT MONITOR
RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR
DVD-RECEIVER MET MONITOR

KW-AVX710



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 8.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 8.
Zie bladzijde 8 voor het annuleren van de displaydemonstratie.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Pour l’installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.
Bijzonderheden over de installatie en aansluiting van het apparaat vindt u in de desbetreffende handleiding.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS
GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING

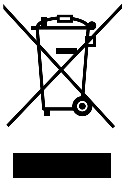
LVT1779-001A
[E]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A



This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment

This symbol indicates that the product with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality. By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

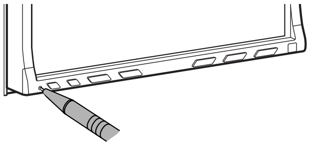
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

Cautions on the monitor:

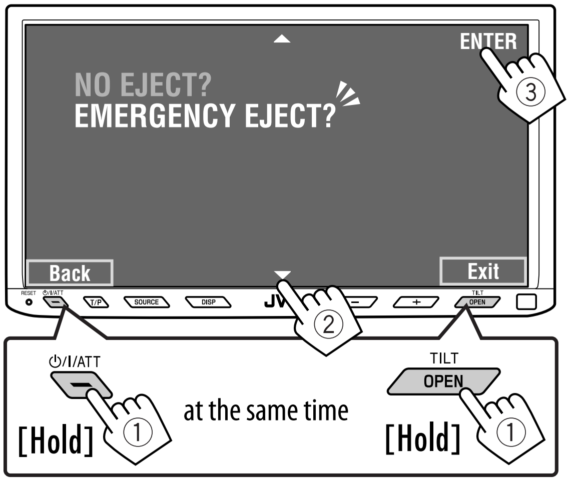
- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel............ 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 16

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 30
Listening to the CD changer.............. 37
Listening to the DAB tuner 39
Listening to the iPod........................ 43
Using other external components..... 45

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 48
Assigning titles to the sources 49
Menu operations 50

REFERENCES

Maintenance 60
More about this unit 61
Troubleshooting............................... 68
Specifications 72

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 2)*1 ALL 2 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

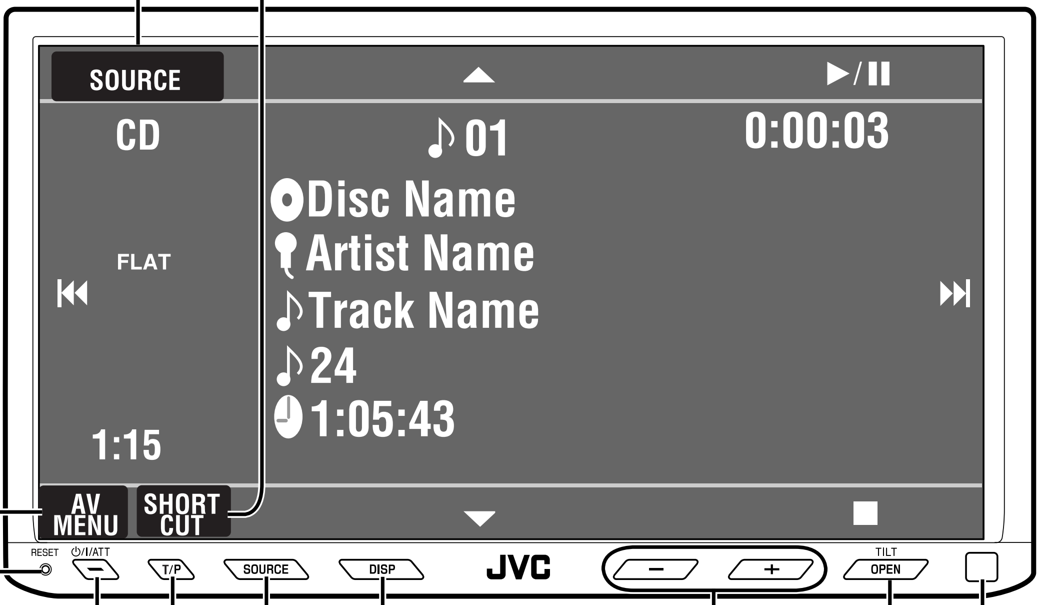
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 50

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
1:15
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
♪Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

- **Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.**
- **Display <PTy Search> menu.** [Hold]
  ☞ page 12

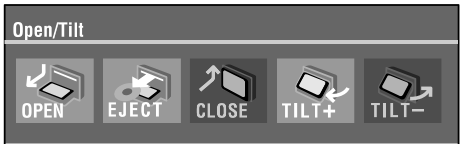
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

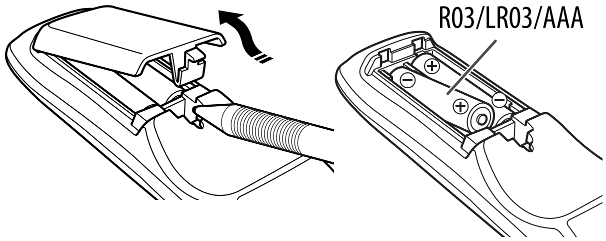
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

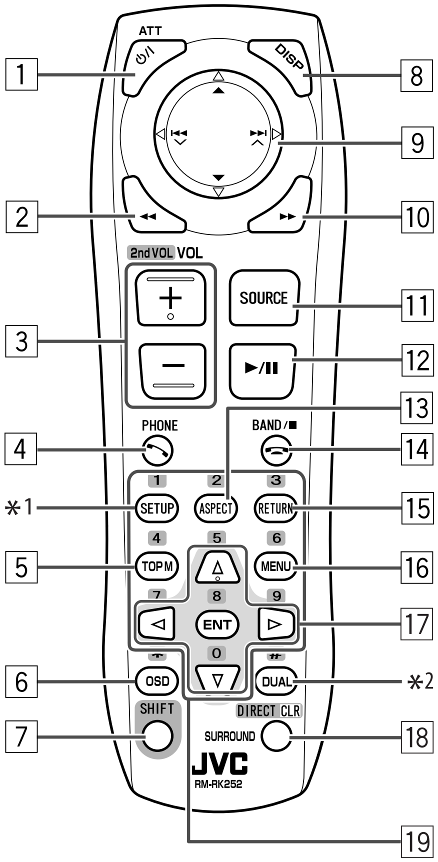
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
∗1
∗2

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “∗.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For DAB tuner operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Select the services.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for ensembles.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER"/"DAB": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER"/"DAB": Selects the preset station/service directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
*2 *Not used for this unit.*
*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

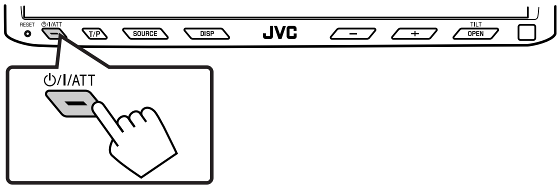
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

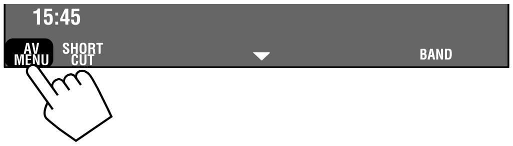
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 52)

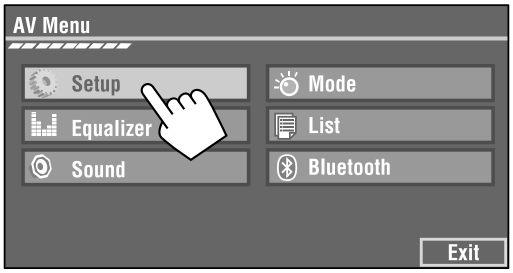
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

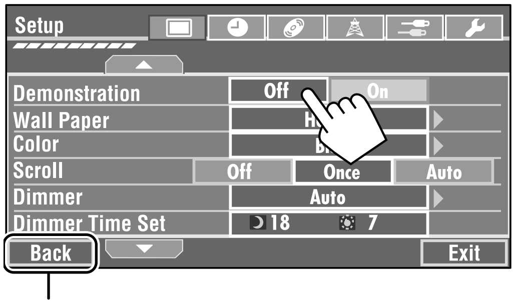

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

Select <**Off**>.

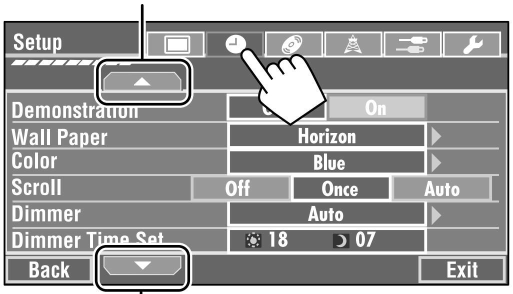

Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration Off On
Wall Paper H
Color Bl
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 18 7

Return to the previous screen.

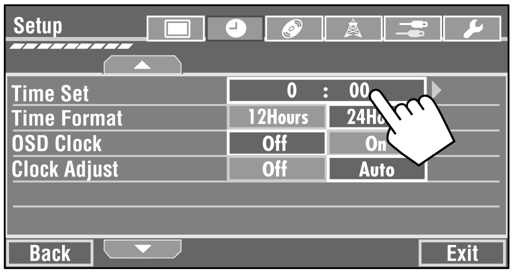
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

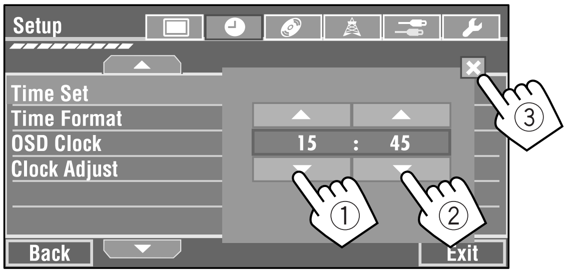

Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration On
Wall Paper Horizon
Color Blue
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 18 07

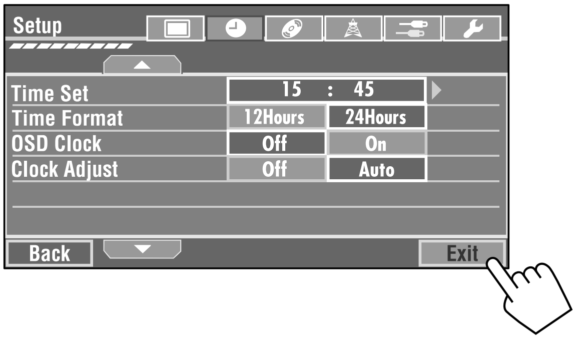
Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Back
Exit

Time Set 0 : 00
Time Format 12Hours 24H
OSD Clock Off On
Clock Adjust Off Auto


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
Clock Adjust
15 : 45
①
②
③
Back
Exit

❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup
Back
Exit

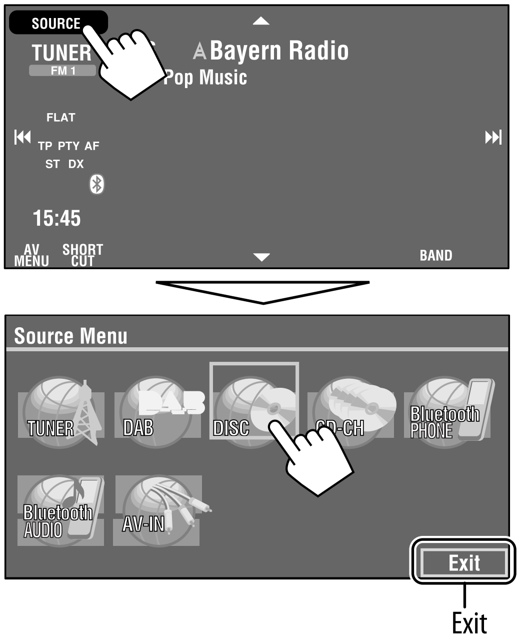
Time Set 15 : 45
Time Format 12Hours 24Hours
OSD Clock Off On
Clock Adjust Off Auto

Common operations

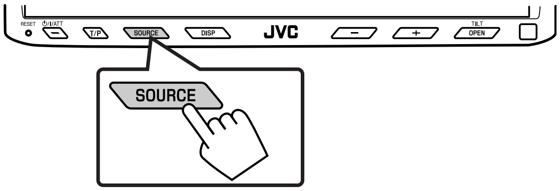
Selecting the playback source

- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 55).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DAB
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit
Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
SOURCE

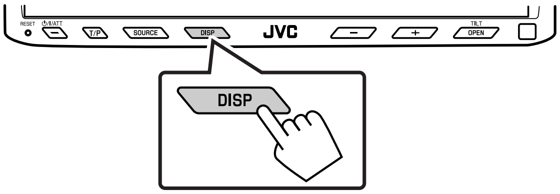
TUNER → **DAB** → **DISC (DVD/VCD/CD)** →**CD-CH, iPod,** or **EXT-IN** → **Bluetooth PHONE** → **Bluetooth AUDIO** → **AV-IN** → (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

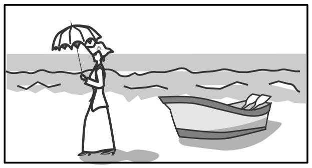
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

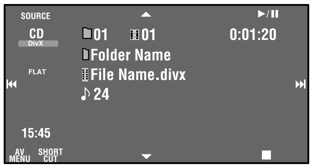

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

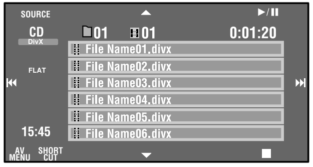
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



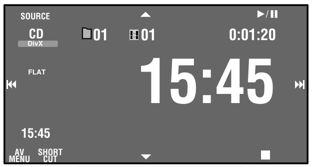
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

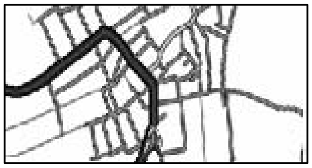
Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
15:45
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

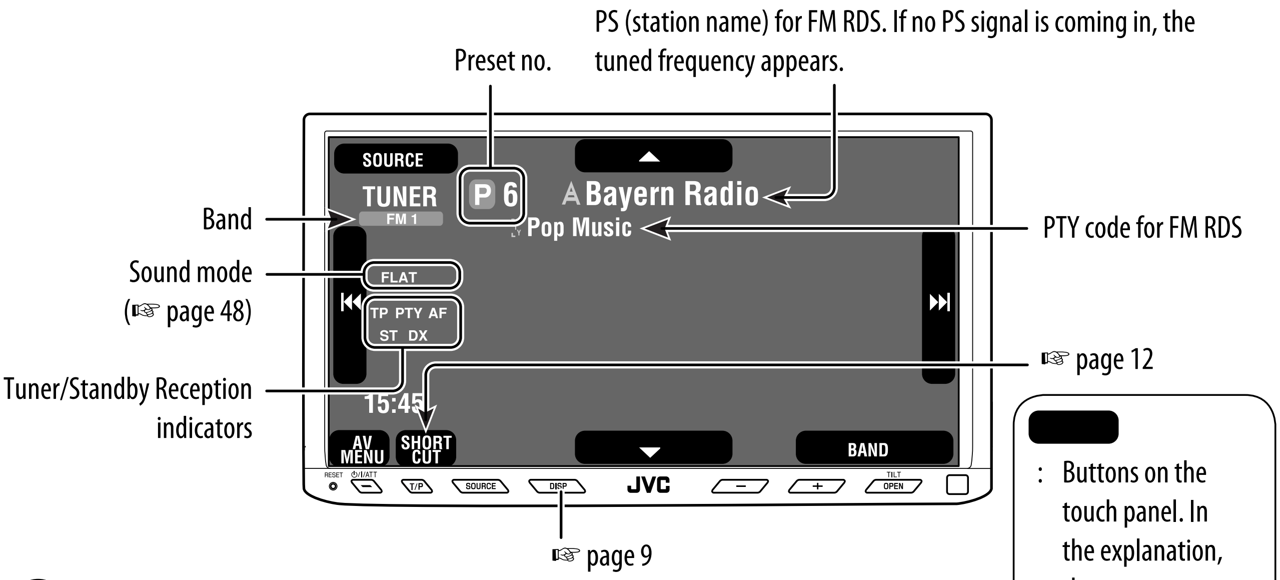
Clock time in large numbers



Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 55)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
PS (station name) for FM RDS. If no PS signal is coming in, the tuned frequency appears.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tuner/Standby Reception indicators
PTY code for FM RDS
☞ page 12
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

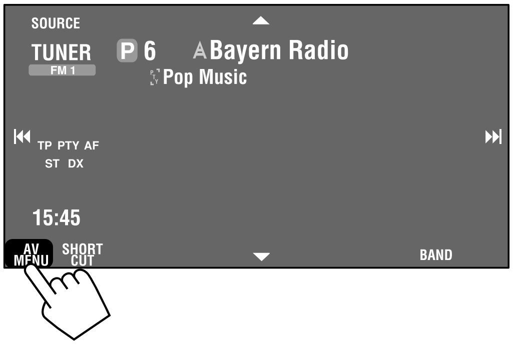
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➛FM1➛FM2➛FM3➛AM

❸ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

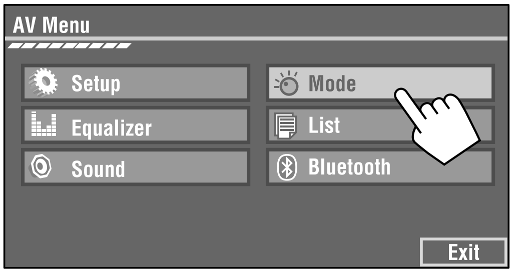
- Manual Search: Hold either [I◀◀]or [▶▶I] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

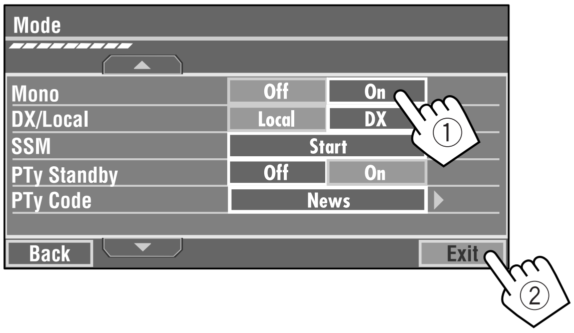
1 **Press [AV MENU].**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode

Mono	Off	On
DX/Local	Local	DX
SSM	Start	
PTy Standby	Off	On
PTy Code	News	

Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

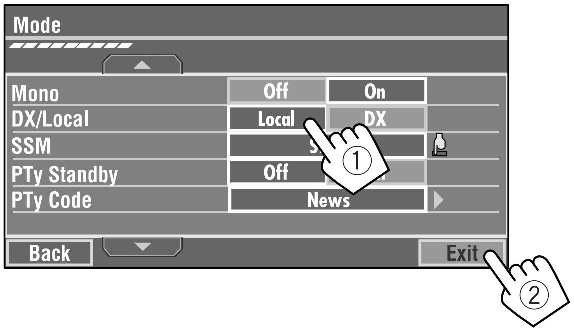
Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
①
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

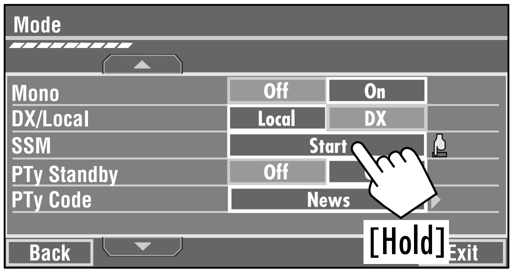
FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3

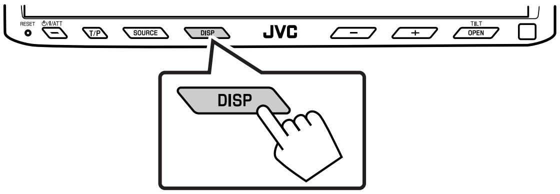

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
[Hold]

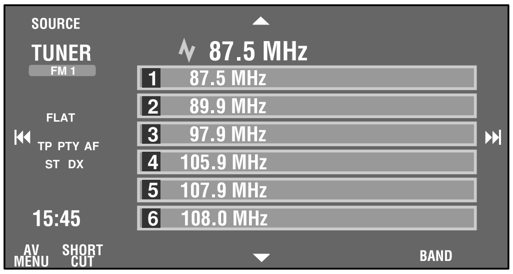
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

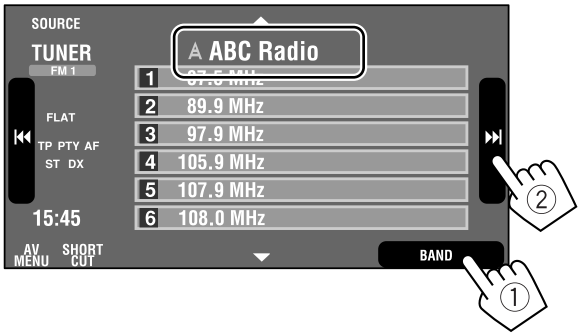
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 **Display the Preset List.**

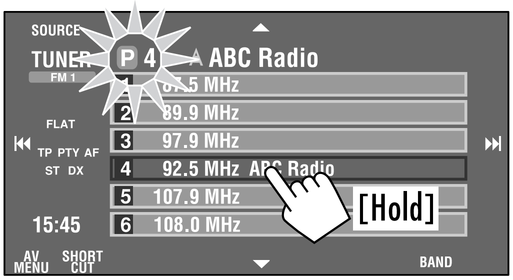

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
ABC Radio
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

3 **Select a preset number.**

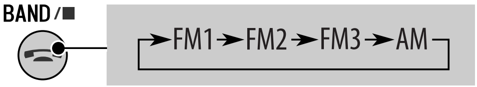

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

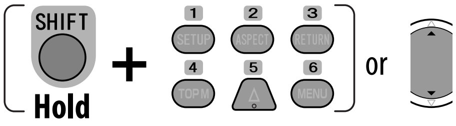
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

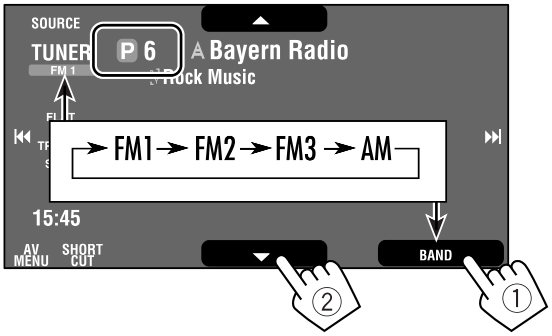

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5 △
6 MENU
or

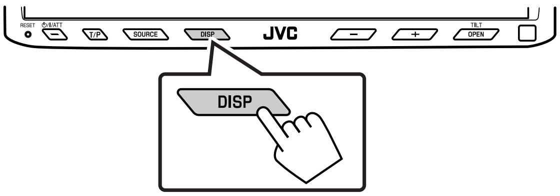
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

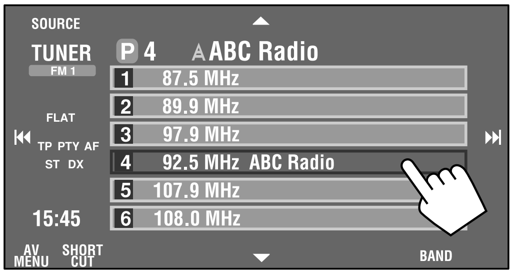

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Rock Music
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
ABC Radio
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

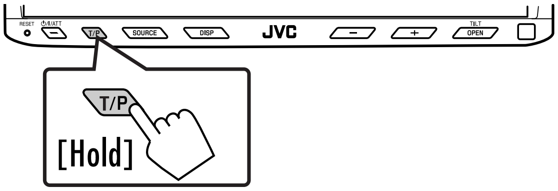
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

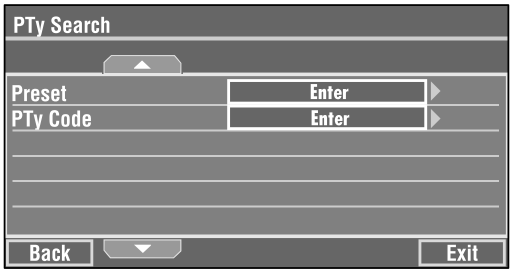
The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme—PTY Search

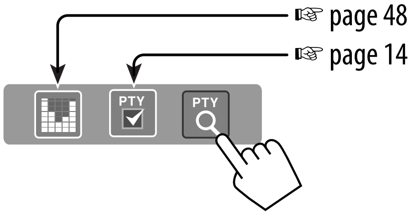
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

1 Display <PTy Search> menu.


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
T/P
[Hold]

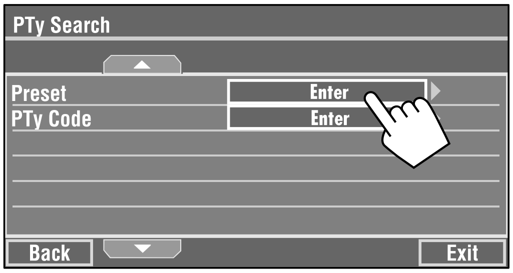

PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit

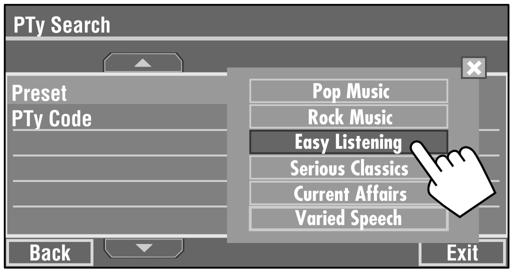
You can also easily access <**PTy Search**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...


☞ page 48
☞ page 14
PTY
PTY

2 Select a PTY code.

- In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.
  If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes.


PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit

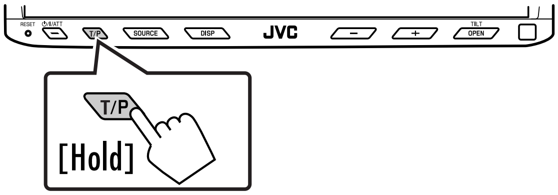

PTy Search
Preset
PTy Code
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Serious Classics
Current Affairs
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

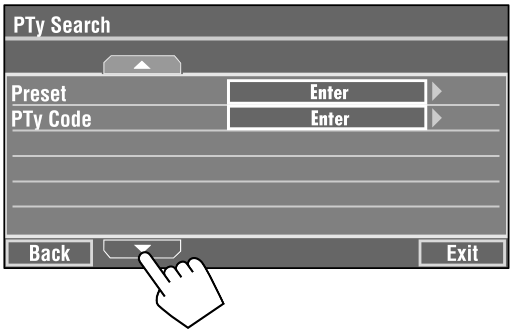
PTY Search starts.
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

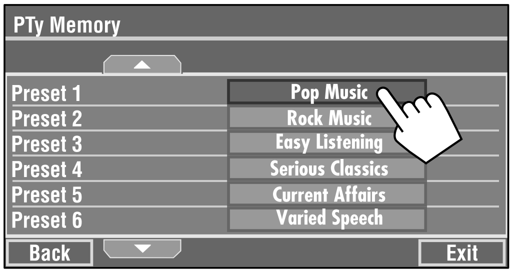
Available PTY codes:
News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

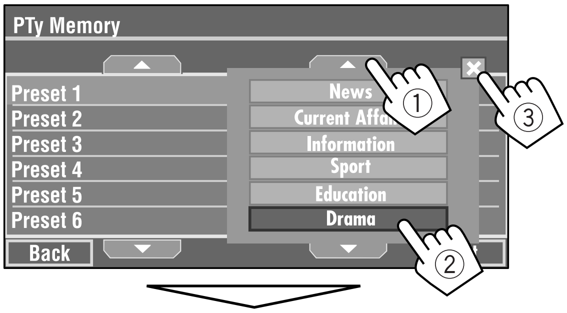
Storing your favorite programme types

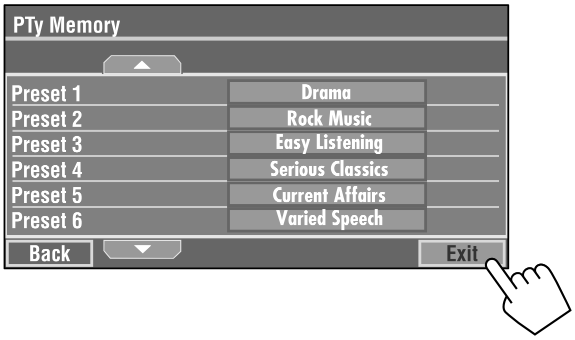
You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.
Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
T/P
[Hold]


PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Pop Music
Preset 2
Rock Music
Preset 3
Easy Listening
Preset 4
Serious Classics
Preset 5
Current Affairs
Preset 6
Varied Speech
Back
Exit


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Preset 2
Preset 3
Preset 4
Preset 5
Preset 6
News
Current Affa
Information
Sport
Education
Drama
①
②
③
Back


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Drama
Preset 2
Rock Music
Preset 3
Easy Listening
Preset 4
Serious Classics
Preset 5
Current Affairs
Preset 6
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator
Press T/P on the monitor panel to activate.	**TP**
The unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (☞ page 54).	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
Press T/P to deactivate.	Goes off

PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, press [**Mode**], then press [**On**] for <**PTy Standby**>. (☞ next column)	**PTY**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**PTy Standby**> in step **3** on the next column.	Goes off

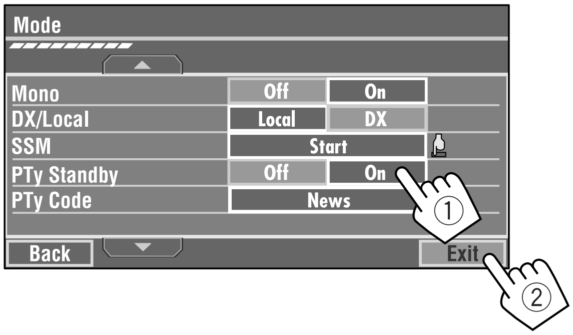
- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby/PTY Standby Reception also works for the DAB tuner and searches for the services.

To activate PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

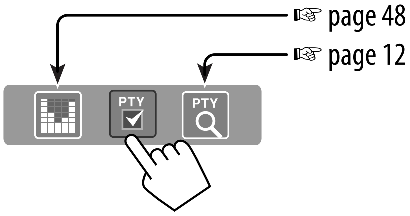
3



Mode
Mono Off On
DX/Local Local DX
SSM Start
PTy Standby Off On
PTy Code News
Back
Exit

PTY Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**News**>: the initial setting.

You can easily activate or deactivate the PTY Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

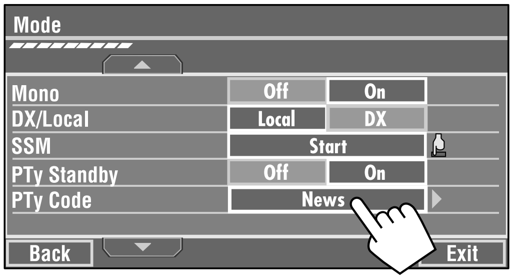


To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

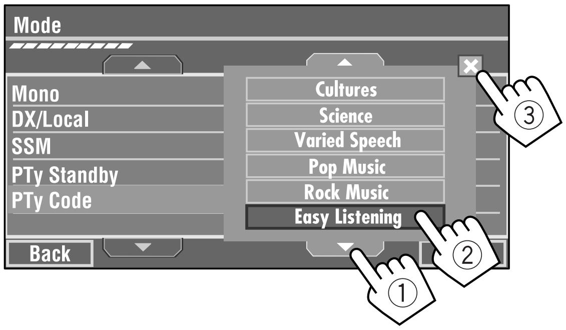
2 **Press [Mode].**

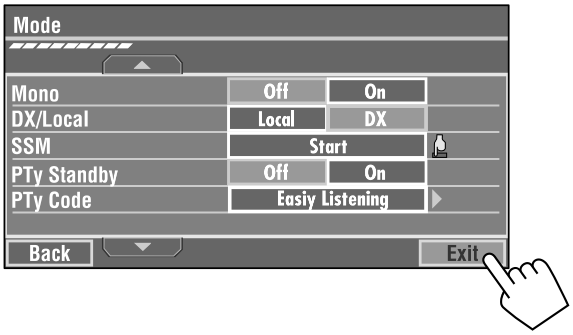
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit

4 **Select your favorite PTY code.**

Ex.: Selecting <Easy Listening>

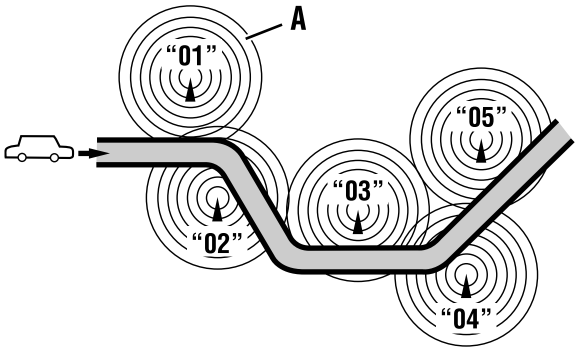

Mode
Mono
DX/Local
SSM
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Cultures
Science
Varied Speech
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Back
③
②
①


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
Easiy Listening
Back
Exit

Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)


A
"01"
"02"
"03"
"04"
"05"

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see <**AF Regional**>. (☞ page 54)

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)." (☞ page 42)

Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another station broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting. To activate this function, select <**On**> for <**Program Search**>.(☞ page 54)

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.

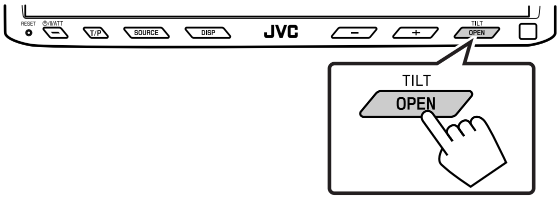
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.

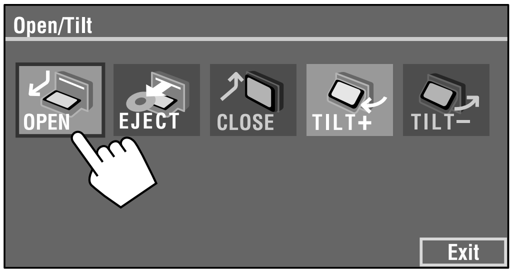
❶ Open the monitor panel.



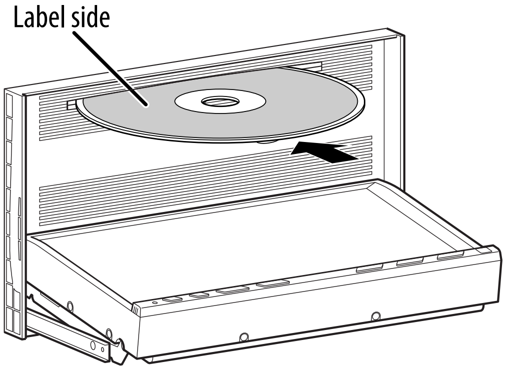
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

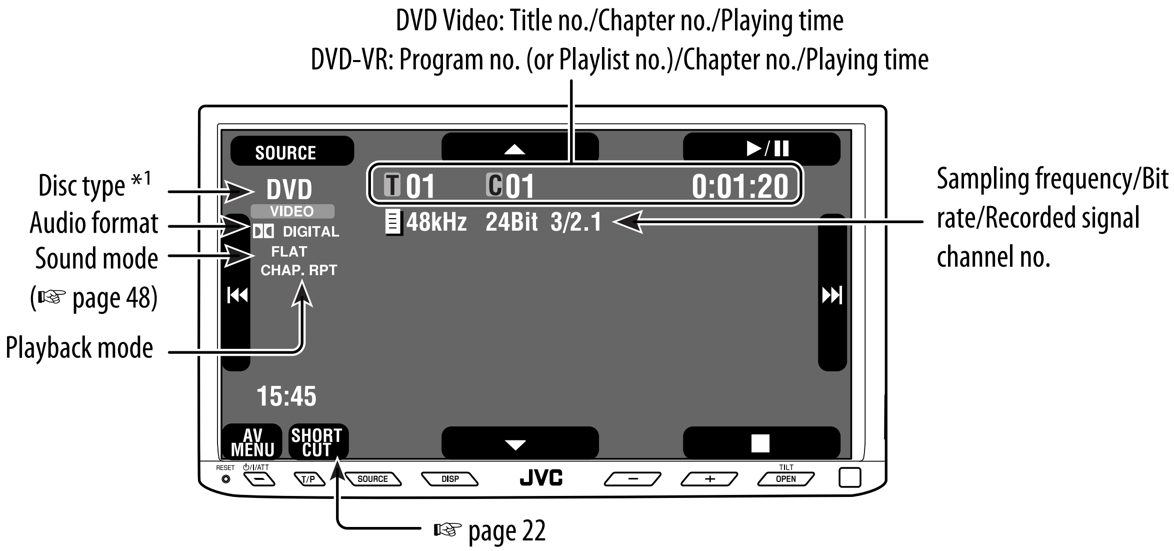
Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 65)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T 01 C 01 0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 22

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

---

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

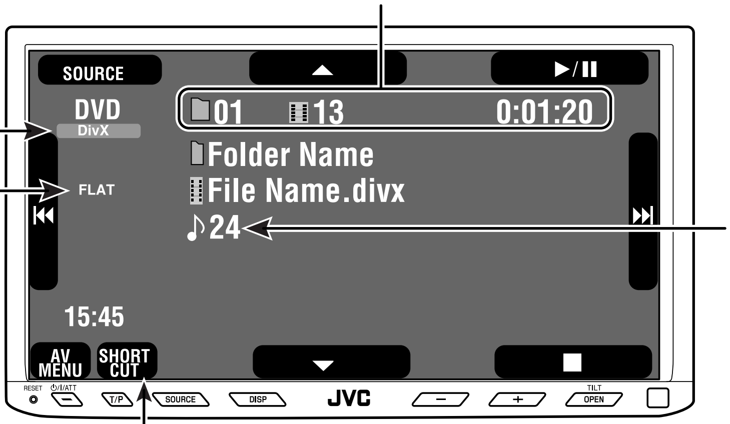
■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX **MPEG** **JPEG**

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
DVD
DivX
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Disc type

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

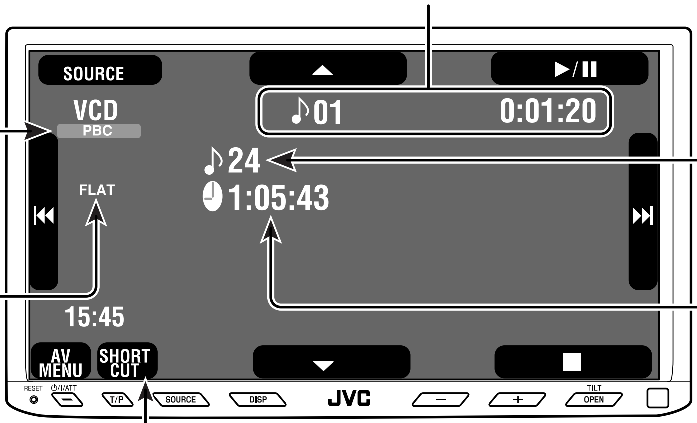
Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 22

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD

Track no./Playing time


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
VCD
PBC
♪01
0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

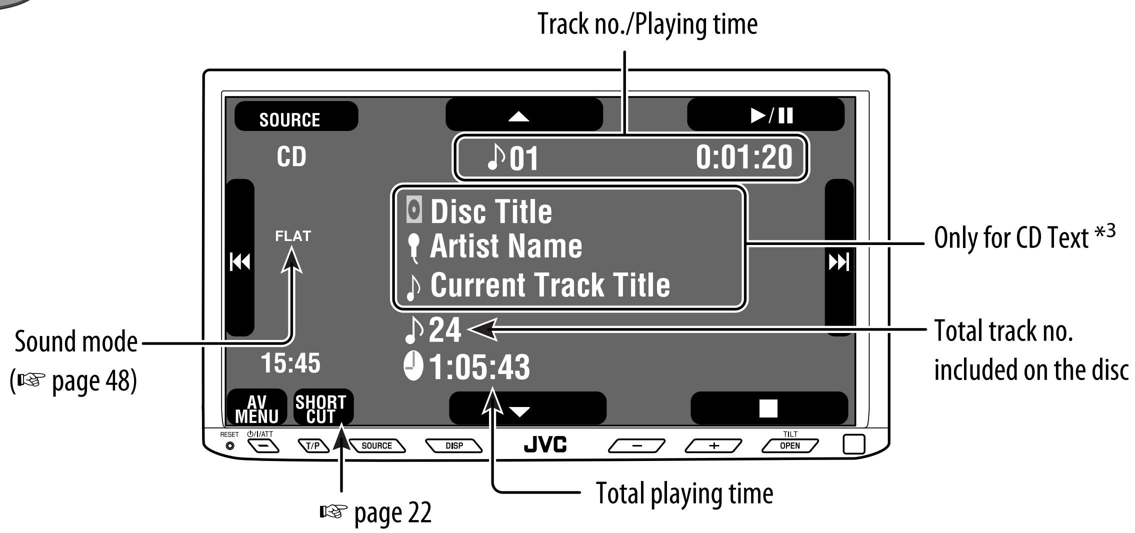
☞ page 22

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

*1 *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

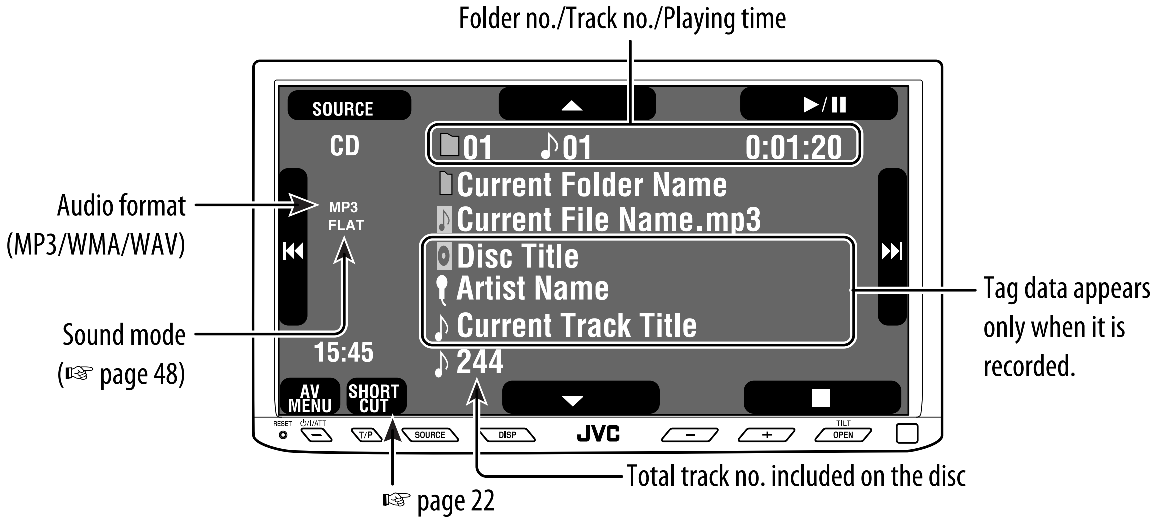
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
FLAT
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
Only for CD Text *3
♪24
Total track no. included on the disc
15:45
1:05:43
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 22
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
MP3
FLAT
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
15:45
♪244
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 22
Total track no. included on the disc

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

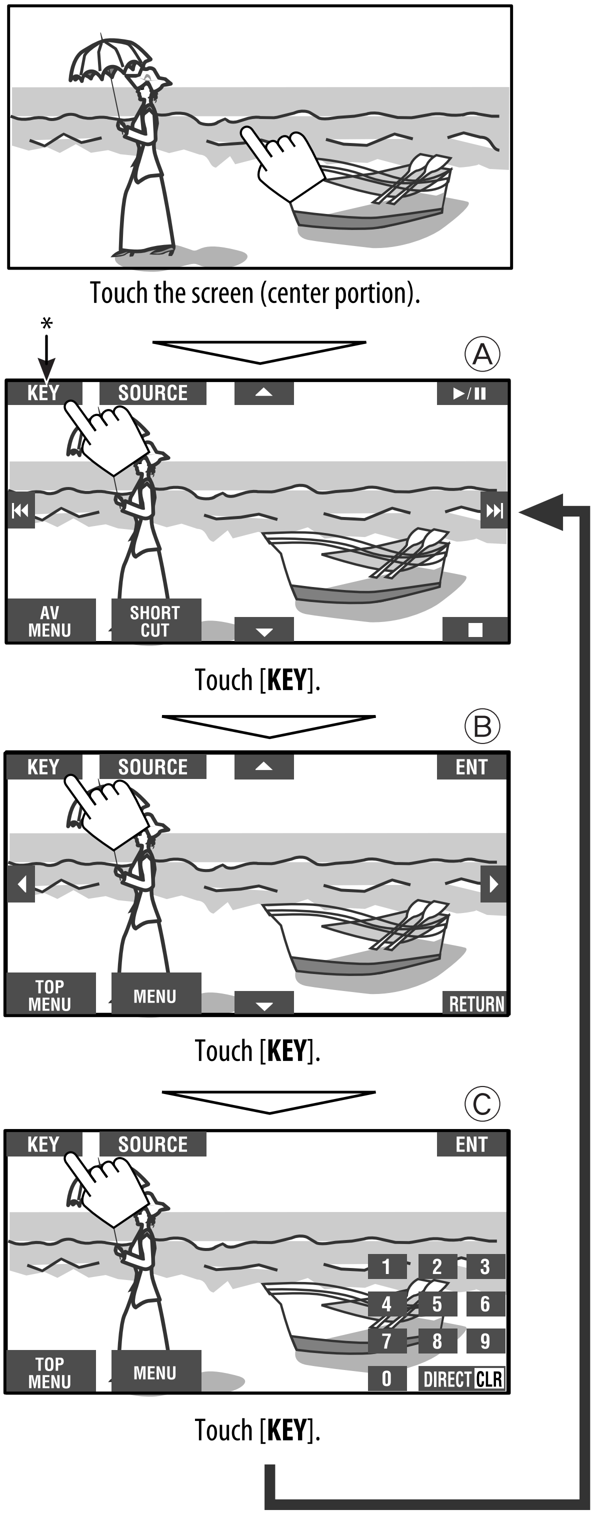
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 52)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 23 to 27 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

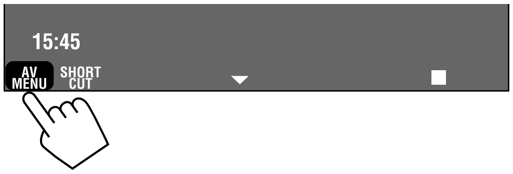
[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

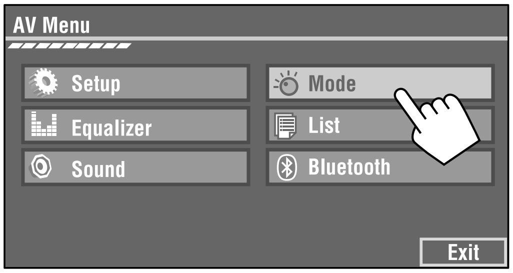
Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

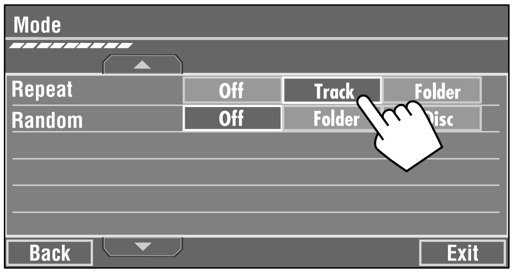
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/ WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

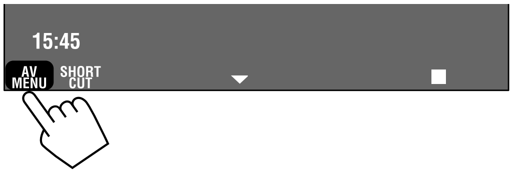
---

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

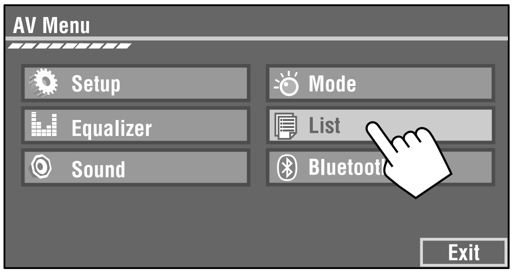
Selecting tracks on the list

If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

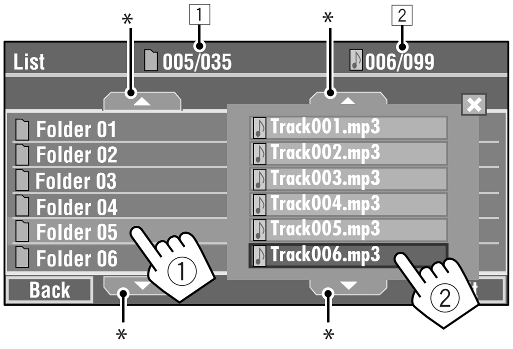
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select a folder (①), then a track (②).

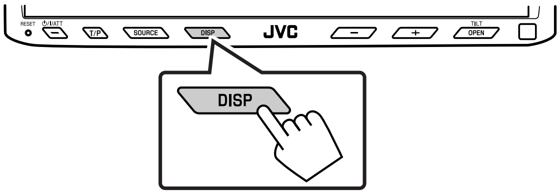

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

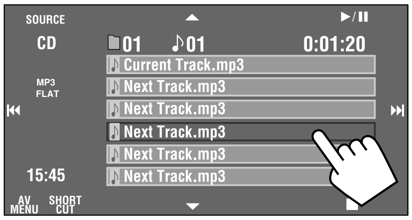
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

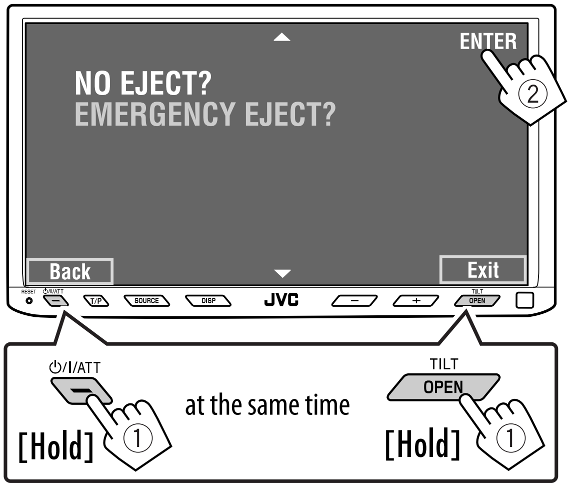

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

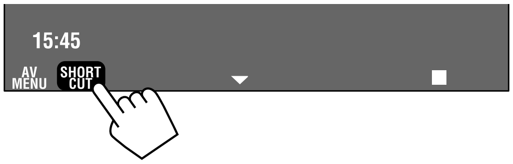

NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
ENTER
②
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

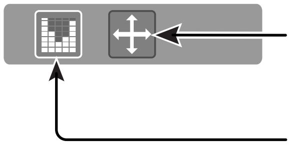
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

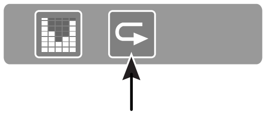
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 52)

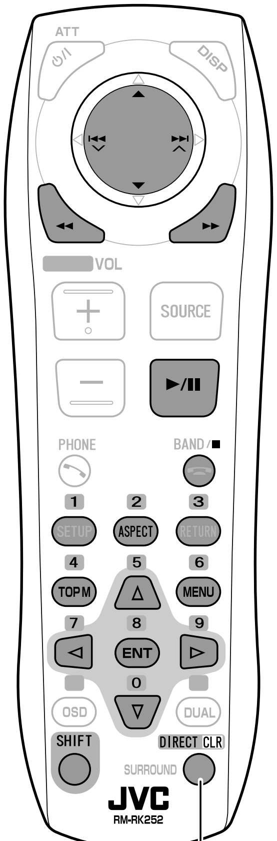
Sound mode (☞ page 48)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 21)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
1
SETUP
2
ASPECT
3
RETURN
4
TOP M
5
6
MENU
7
8
ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[1] (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause[2] (No sound can be heard.)

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[3] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

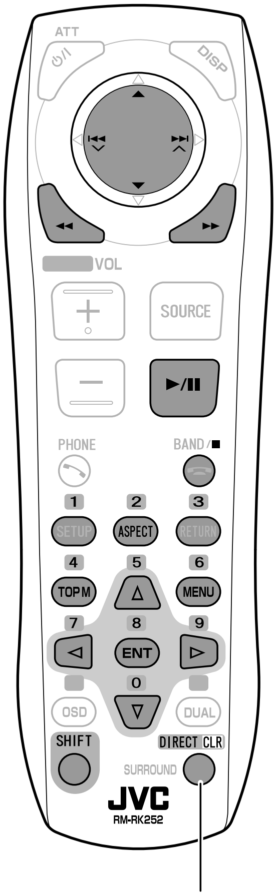
1. 4 TOP M / 6 MENU
2. Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ Δ ◁ ▷
3. 8 ENT

[1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 28 and 29)


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5 ∆
6 MENU
7 ◁
8 ENT
9 ▷
0 ∇
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD VR

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*[1] (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*[2] (No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(|◀◀ ▶▶|) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*[3]

(▲ ▼) : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR ➡ 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice ➡ 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 28)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

3 8 ENT To erase the screen.

*[1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*[2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*[3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

DivX MPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*4] (No sound can be heard.)

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*5] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

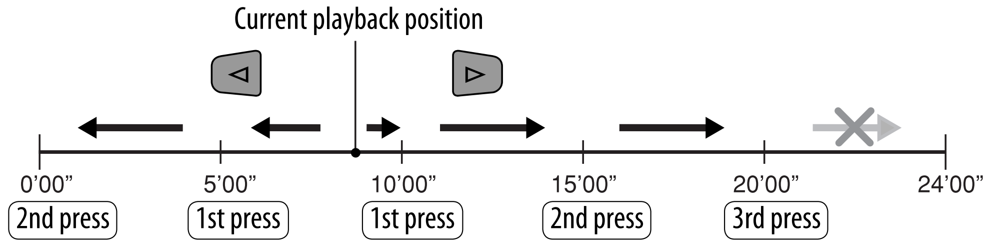
2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

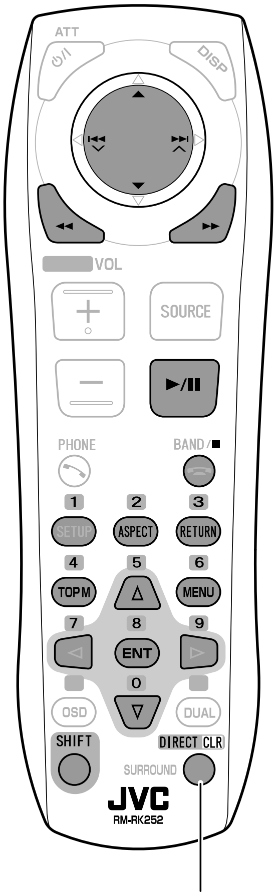
1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

[*4] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

[*5] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear):
Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

⏮ ⏭ : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1
Forward slow motion during pause*2
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :

Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*
*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select track.

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select folder.

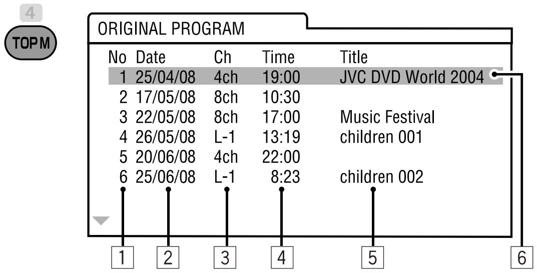
*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

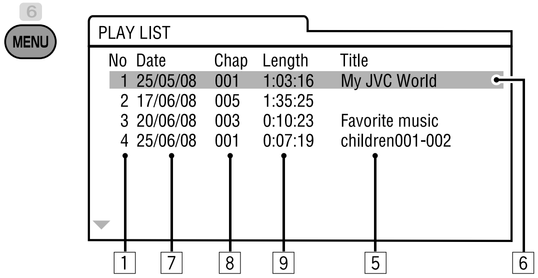
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

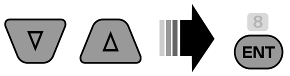
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



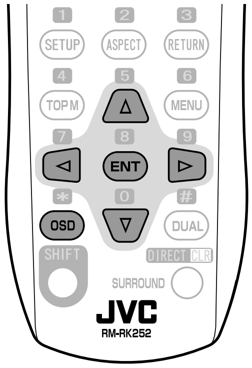
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

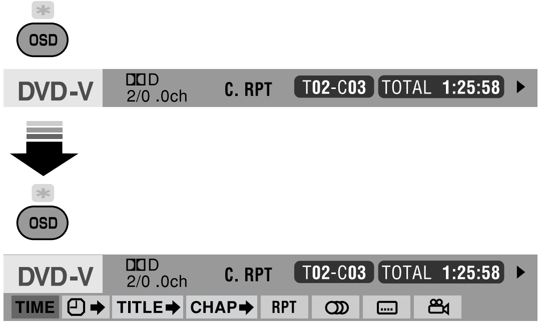
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

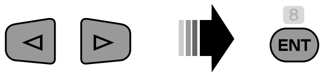

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
✱
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 29)


✱
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
✱
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

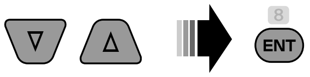
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

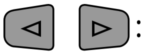


3 Make a selection.

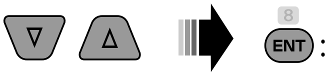
If a pop-up menu appears...



- For entering time/numbers...

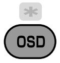


Move the entry position

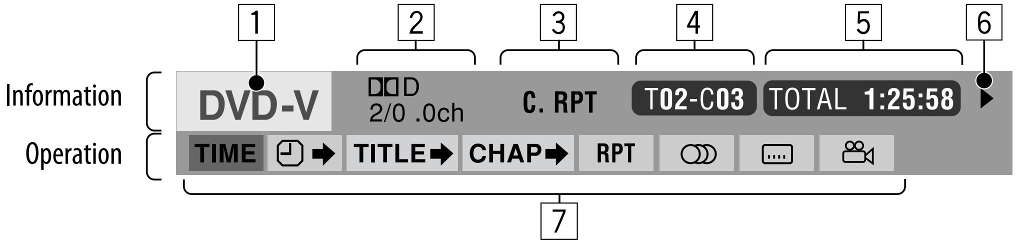


Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode *1

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track *2
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track *2

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀ / ▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙ / ❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
⏲➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play *1
RND	Random play *1
ꝏ	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

*1 ☞ *page 21*

*2 *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

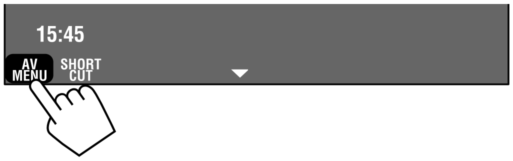
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

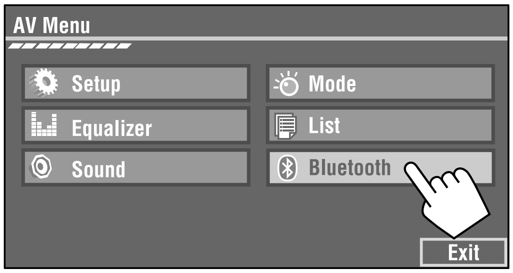
Preparation:

Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

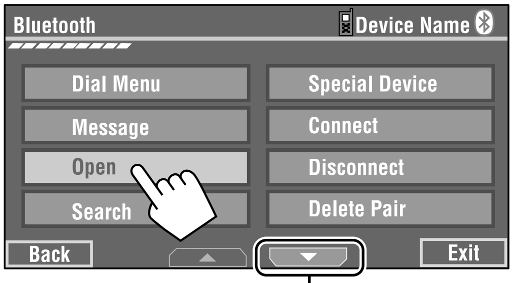
1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

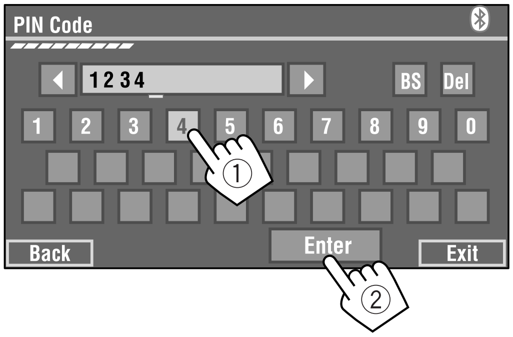

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.

Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 58 and 59).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].

The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.

- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].

The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].

- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

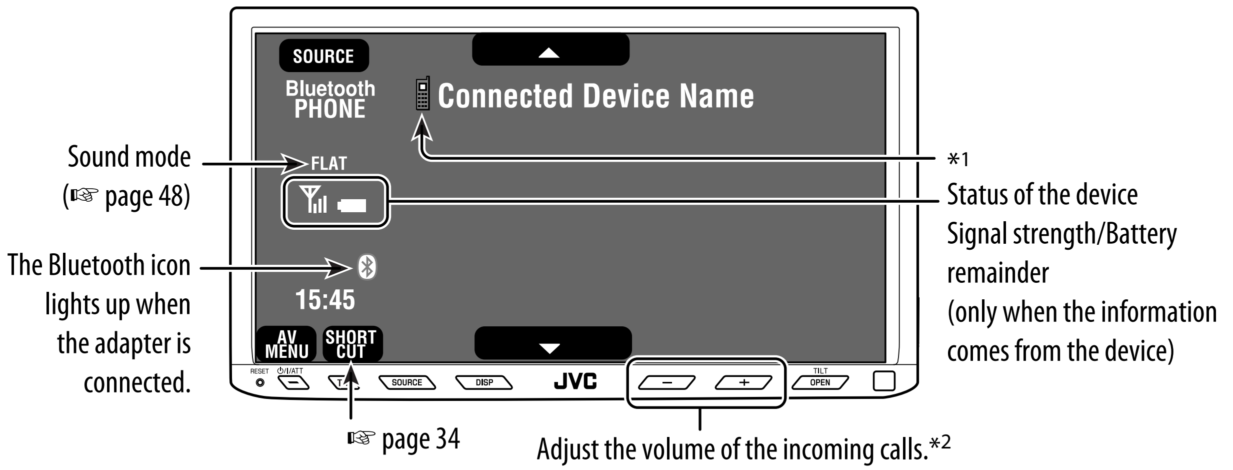
2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].

Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
☞ page 34
*1
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)
Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**] Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function

[▲ ▼] Select the registered device
(“New Device” appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

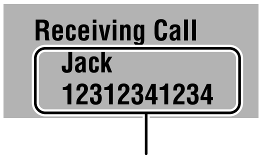
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 58 and 59

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to “Bluetooth PHONE” automatically.


Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 59)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 59)

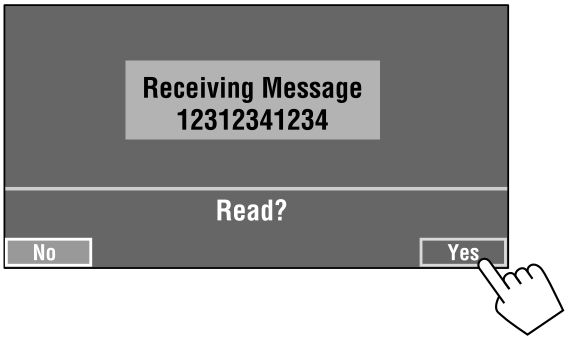
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 59)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to “Bluetooth PHONE.”

To read the message later, press **[No].**

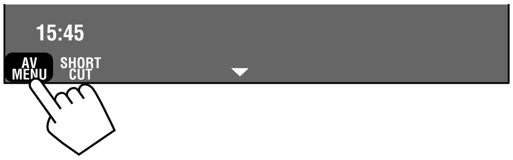
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 58)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 58 and 59)

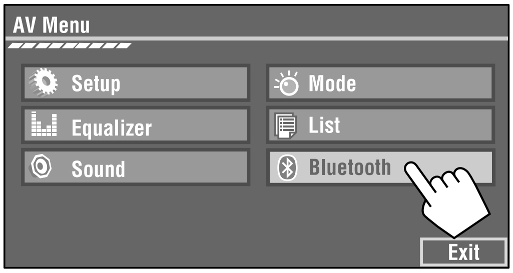
To make a call

1



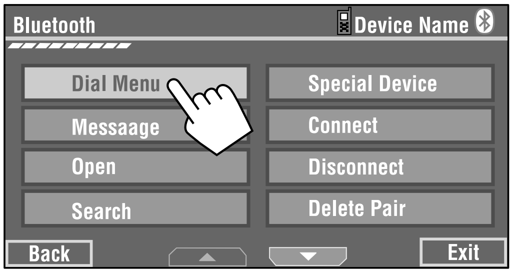
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2



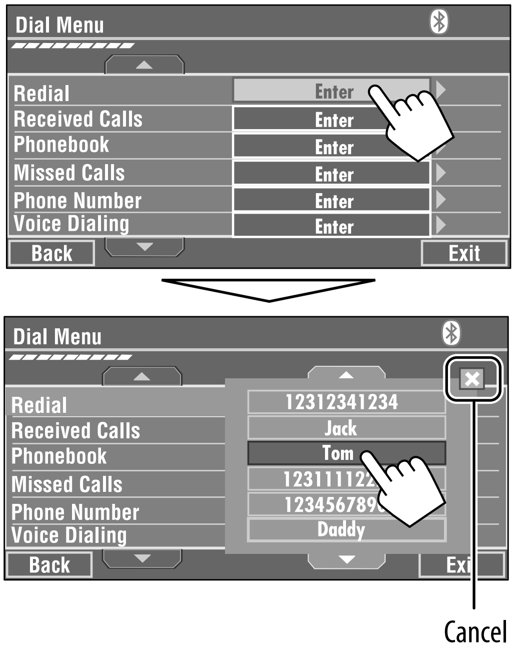
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**



Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Cancel

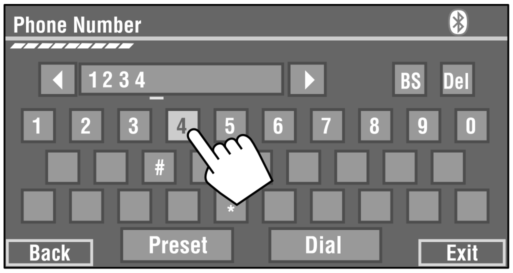
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → “Entering a phone number” (☞ page 34).
Voice Dialing	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

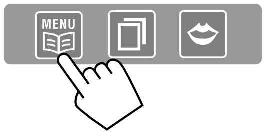
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

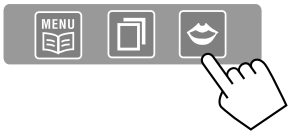
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 35)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

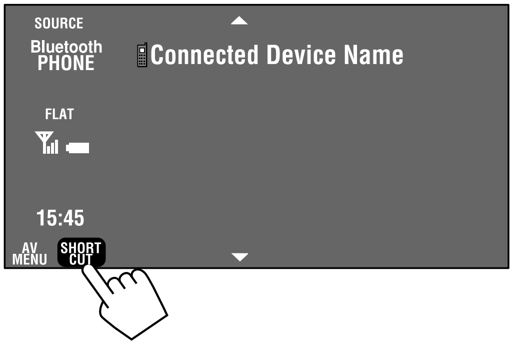
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



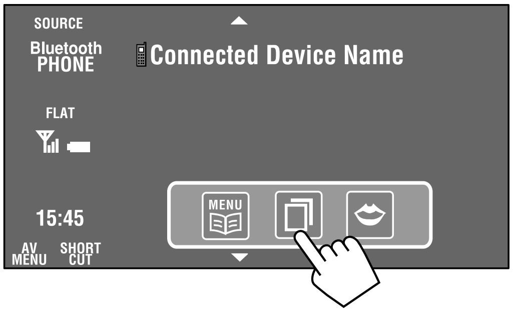
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

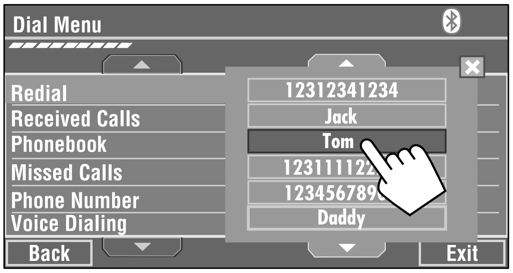
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

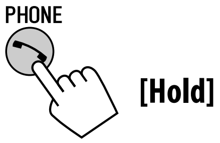
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
12345678
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .

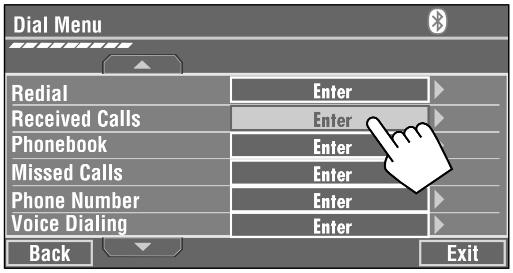


Presetting the phone numbers ■

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

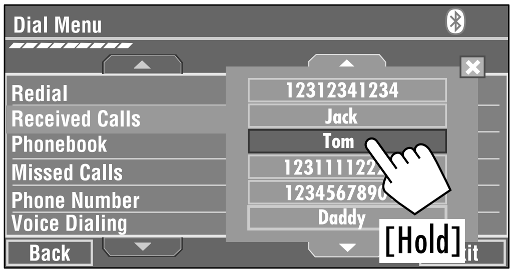
1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**].
② Press [**Bluetooth**].
③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

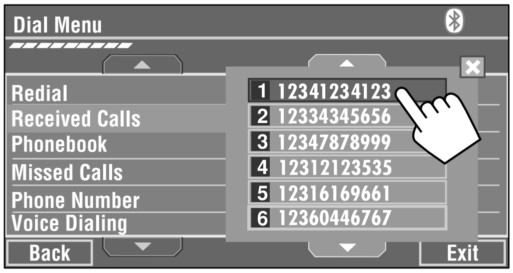

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
123111122
1234567890
Daddy
[Hold]
Back

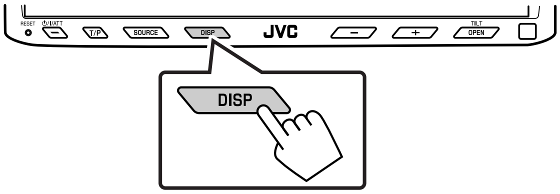
3 Select a preset number.

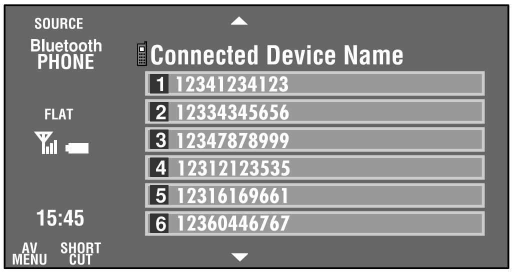

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

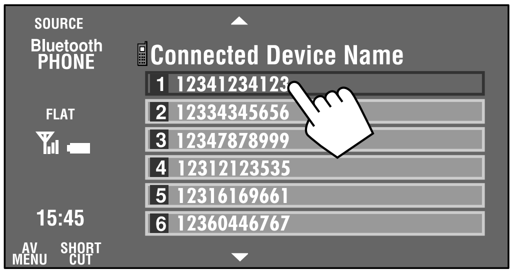
To call a preset number

1

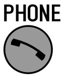

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

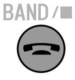
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

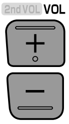
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.



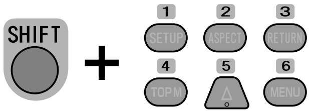
:
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).



: End the call.



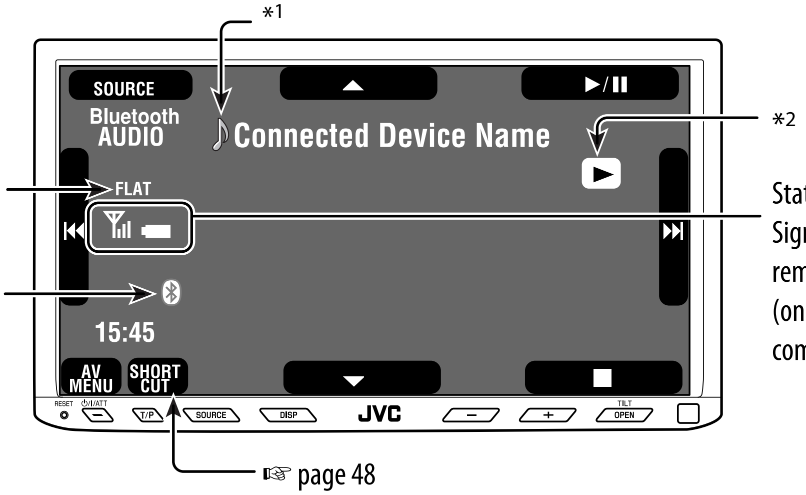
: Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU

:

[Hold] Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



*1

*2

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, 📱 appears.*
*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*
*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

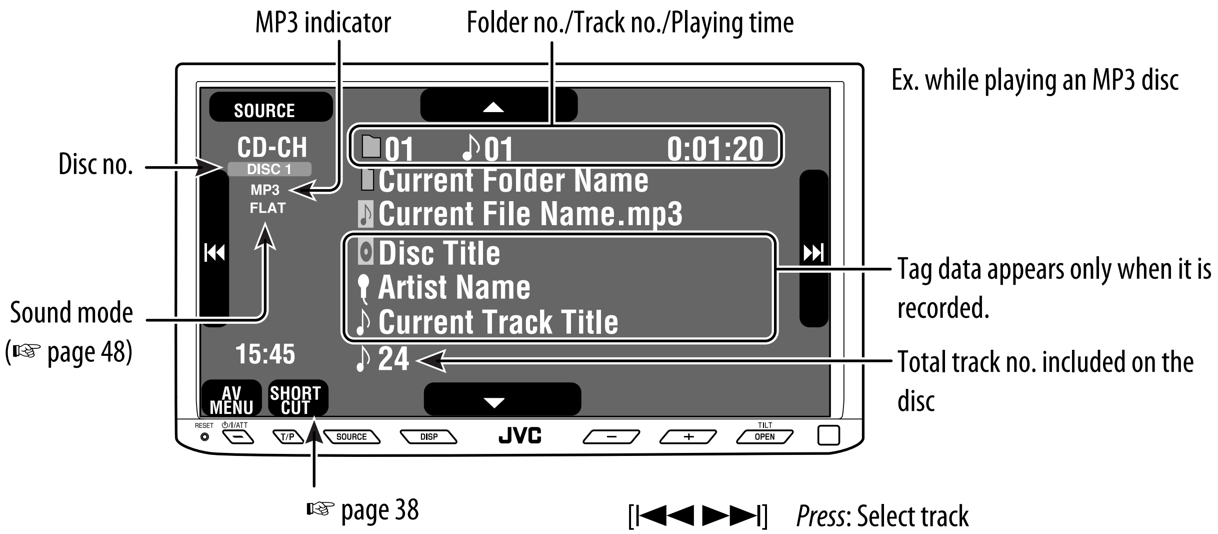
❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.

▶/❚❚ BAND/■ :	Start and pause playback.
(⏮ ⏭) :	Reverse/forward skip
2nd VOL VOL + − :	Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 38
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01
01
0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
15:45
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Ex. while playing an MP3 disc

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I] *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search

[▲ ▼] *Press*: Select folders (only for MP3)
Hold: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

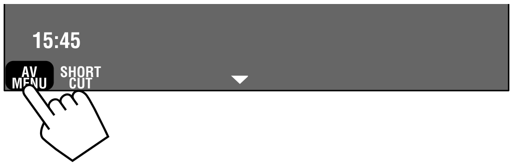
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

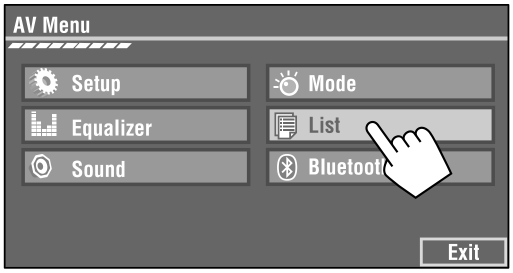
❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

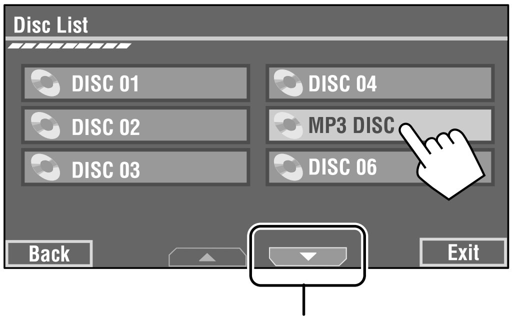
❷


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

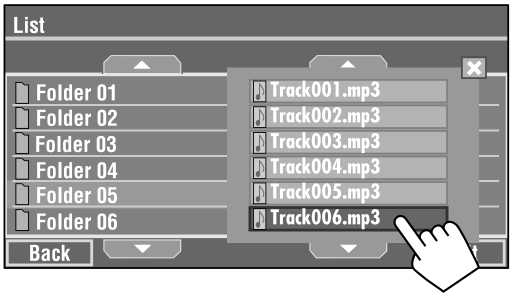

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 22)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

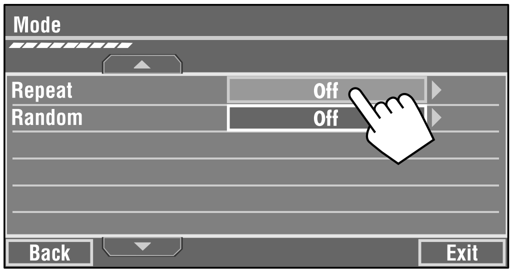
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

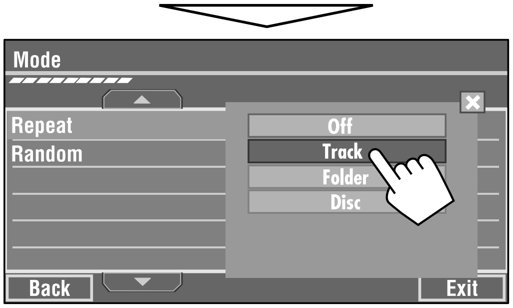
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3





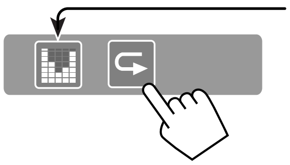
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

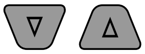
Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

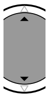
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

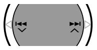
☞ page 48



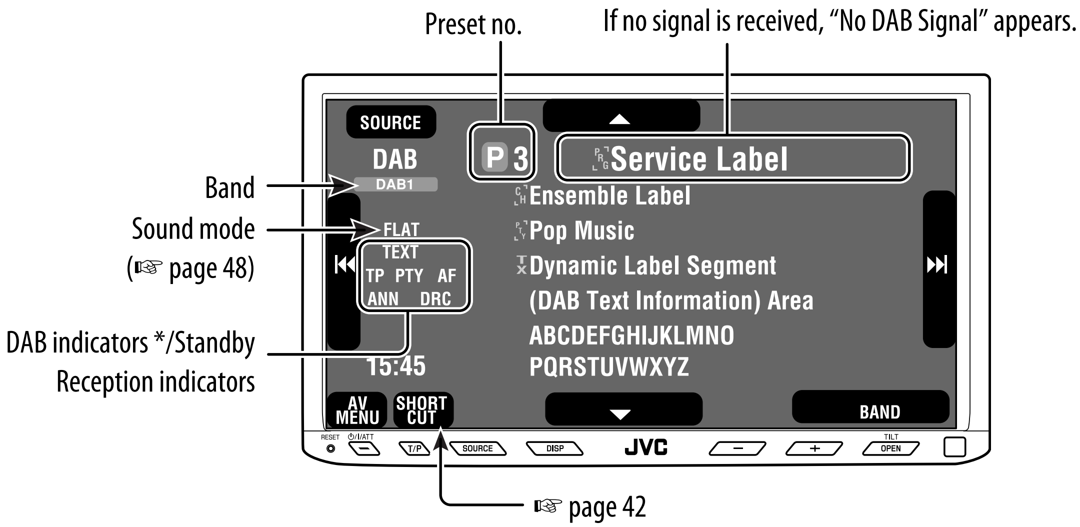
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.


: Select disc.


: Select folder (MP3 only).


- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the DAB tuner


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 3
Service Label
Ensemble Label
Pop Music
Dynamic Label Segment
(DAB Text Information) Area
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO
PQRSTUVWXYZ
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Preset no.

If no signal is received, “No DAB Signal” appears.

Band

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

DAB indicators */Standby Reception indicators

☞ page 42

* *While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [BAND].**

→ DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 ⤶

❸ **Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [I◄◄]or [►►I] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.

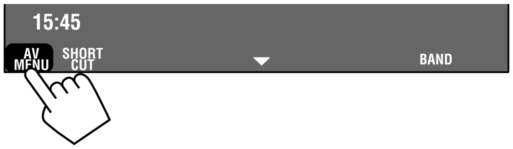
❹ **Press [▼] or [▲] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

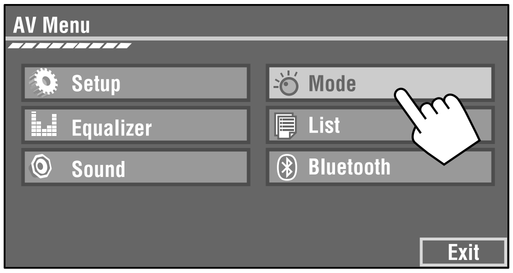
Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

- The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals.

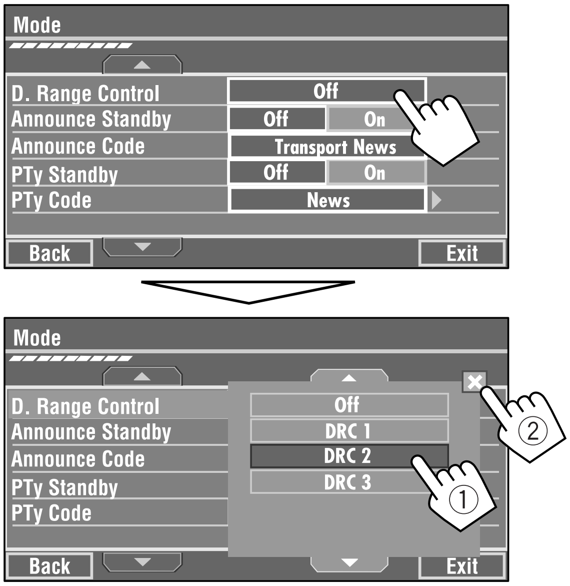
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

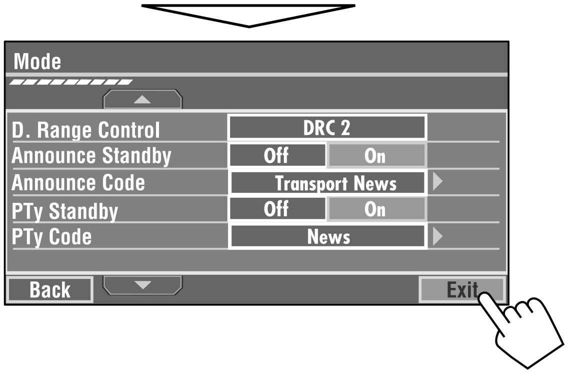
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

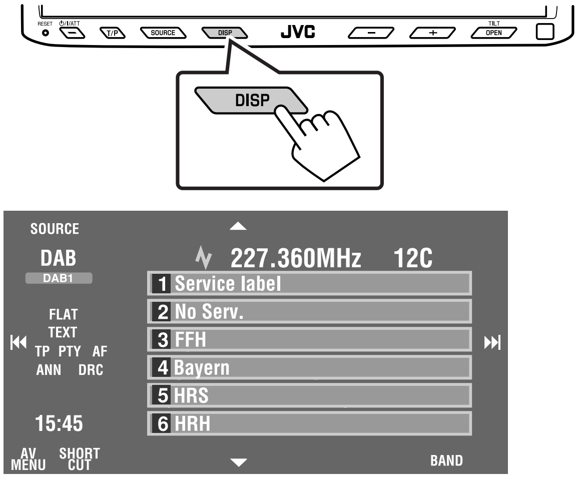

Mode
D. Range Control
Off
Announce Standby
Off
On
Announce Code
Transport News
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Off
DRC 1
DRC 2
DRC 3
①
②
Back
Exit

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

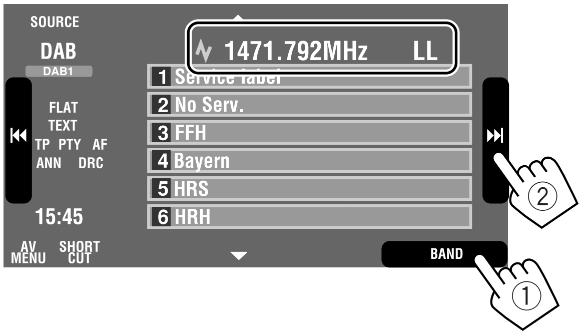

Mode
D. Range Control
DRC 2
Announce Standby
Off
On
Announce Code
Transport News
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit

Manual presetting

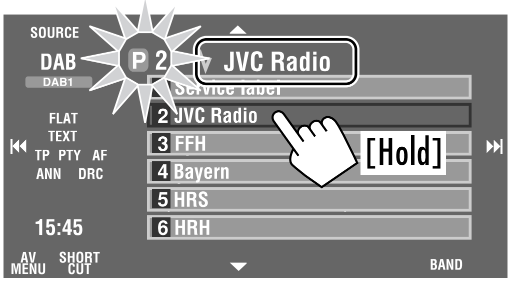
1 Display the Preset List.


RESET
ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
TILT
DISP
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
227.360MHz
12C
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 Tune in to a service you want to preset.


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
1471.792MHz
LL
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

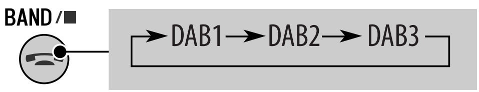
3 Select a preset number.

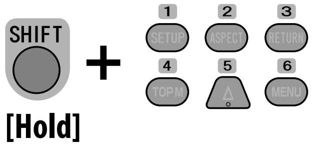

SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 2
JVC Radio
1 Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
[Hold]
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The service selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 2.

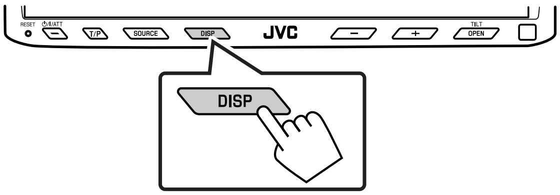
Selecting preset services

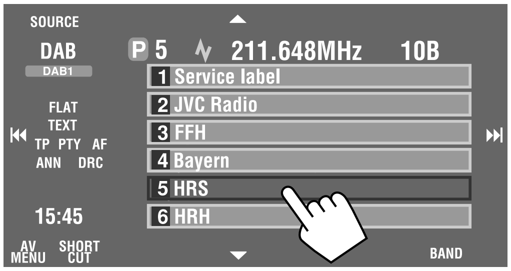
On the remote:

1 
BAND/■
DAB1
DAB2
DAB3

2 
SHIFT
[Hold]
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU

On the unit:

1 
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2 
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

P 5 211.648MHz 10B

1 Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 14 for FM RDS stations.

- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Activating/deactivating Announcement Standby Reception

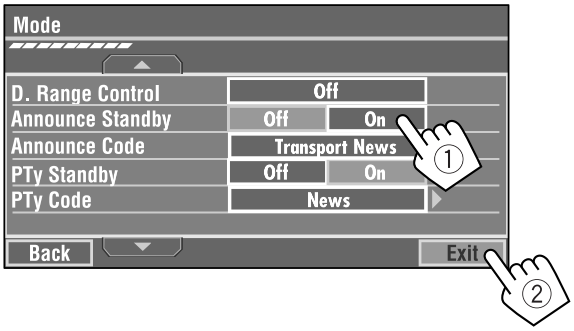
Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

Announcement Standby Reception	Indicator
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, then select <**Mode**>, press [**On**] for <**Announce Standby**>. (☞ below)	**ANN**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite service from any source other than FM/AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another service providing the related signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**Announce Standby**> (☞ below).	Goes off

To activate Announcement Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3 
Back
Exit
①
②

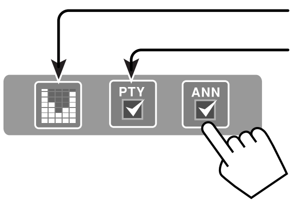
Mode

D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

Announcement Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**Transport News**>: the initial setting.

Continued on the next page

You can easily activate and deactivate Announcement Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



☞ page 48

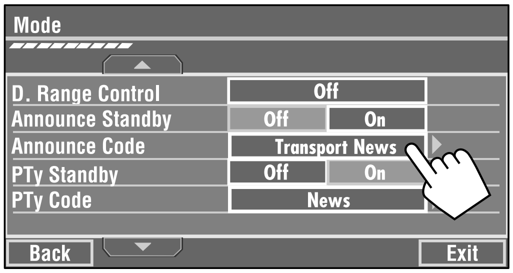
☞ page 14

To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Mode].

3


Mode
Back
Exit

D. Range Control: Off

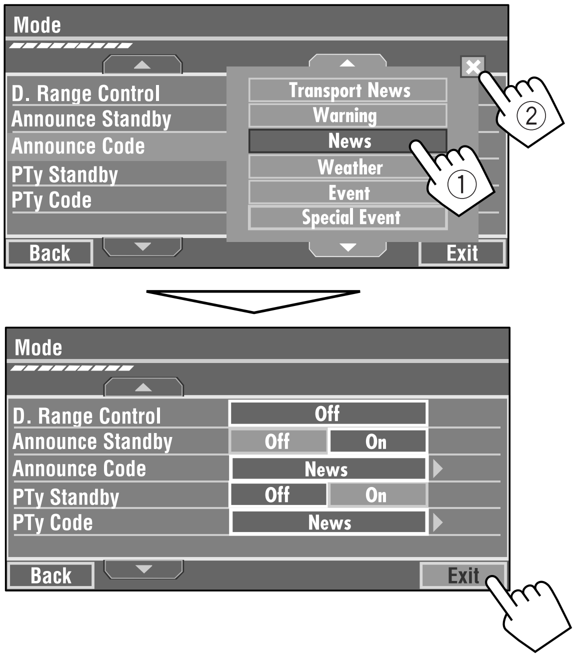
Announce Standby: Off / On

Announce Code: Transport News

PTy Standby: Off / On

PTy Code: News

4 Select your favorite announcement type.


Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Transport News
Warning
News
Weather
Event
Special Event
①
②
Back
Exit

D. Range Control: Off

Announce Standby: Off / On

Announce Code: News

PTy Standby: Off / On

PTy Code: News

Available announcement types:
Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News

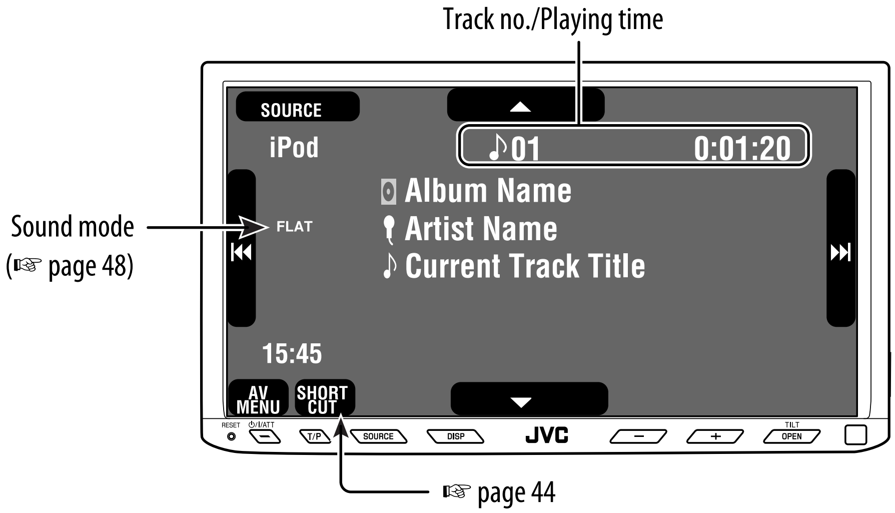
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, select <**Off**> for <**DAB AF**>. (☞ page 54)

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 44

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

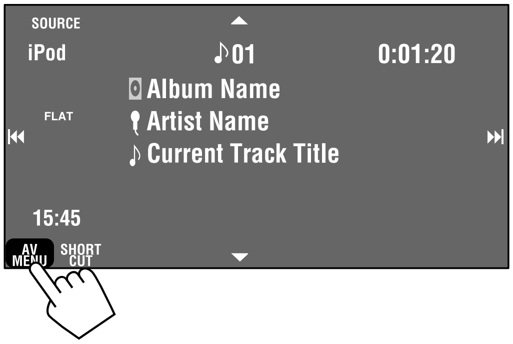
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

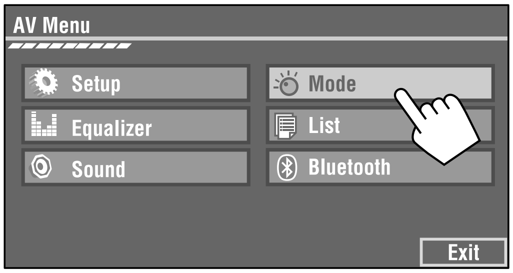
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

Selecting playback modes

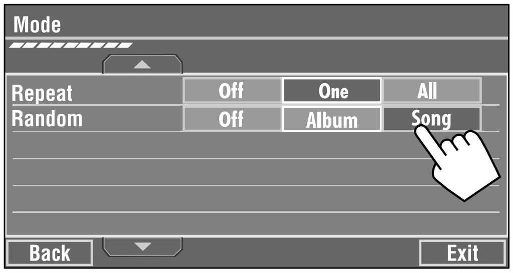
1


SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Random
Off
One
All
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

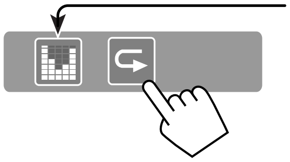
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

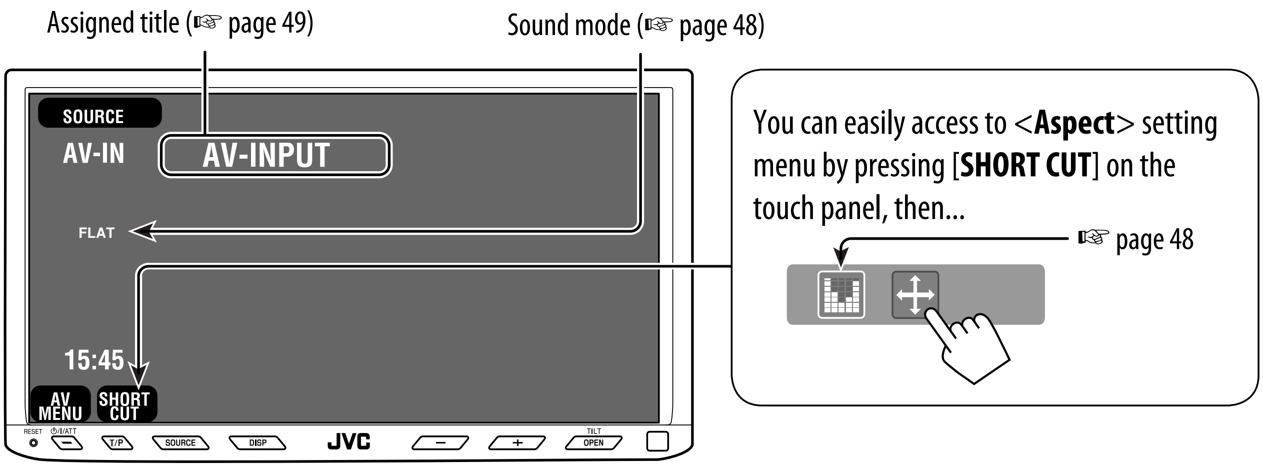
☞ page 48



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 49)

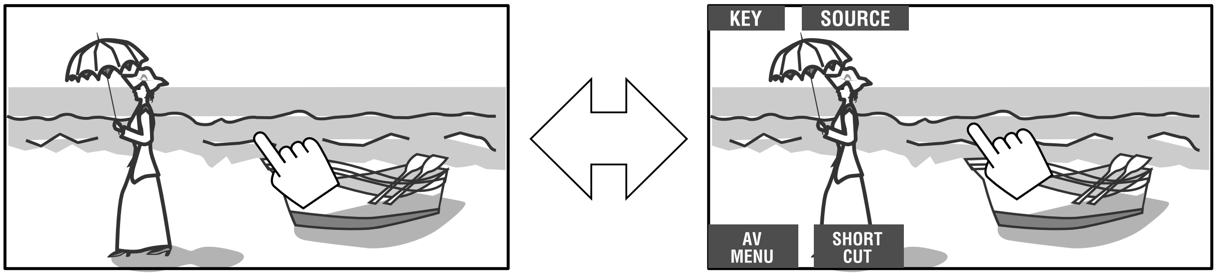
Sound mode (☞ page 48)

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then... ☞ page 48

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)
   - You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

Continued on the next page

Navigation screen

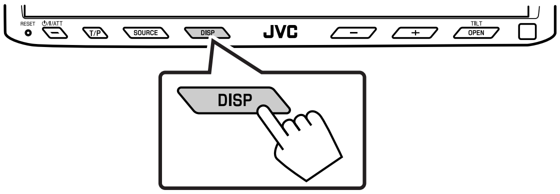
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 55)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

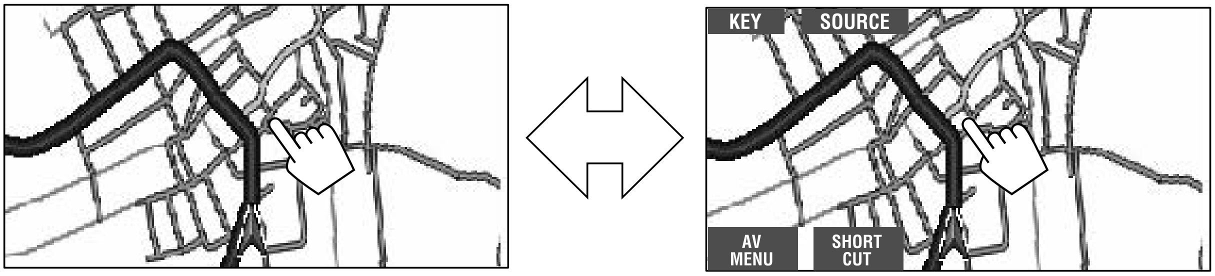


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 52)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

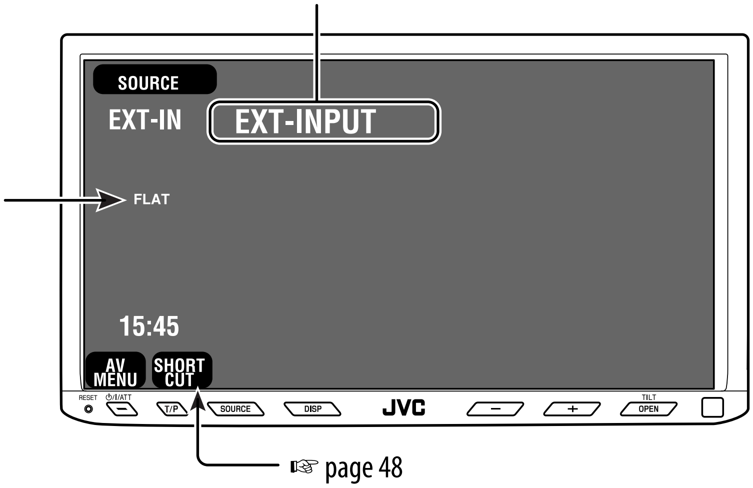
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 55)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 49)

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

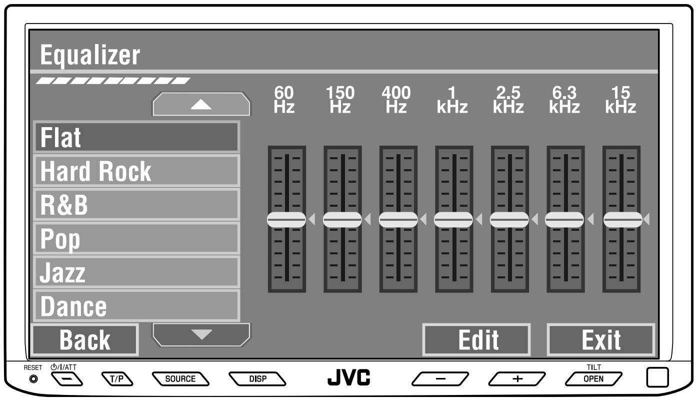
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

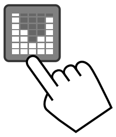
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

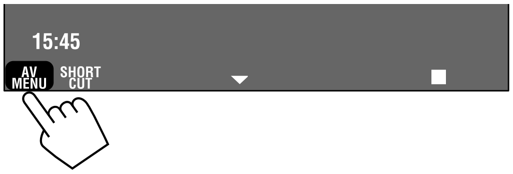
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

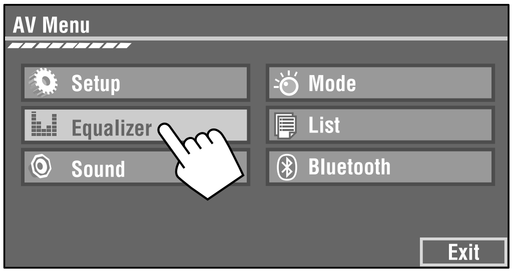
While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



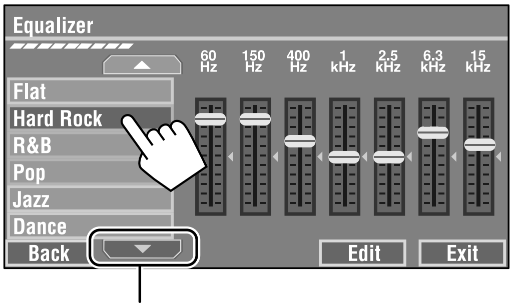
❶


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**

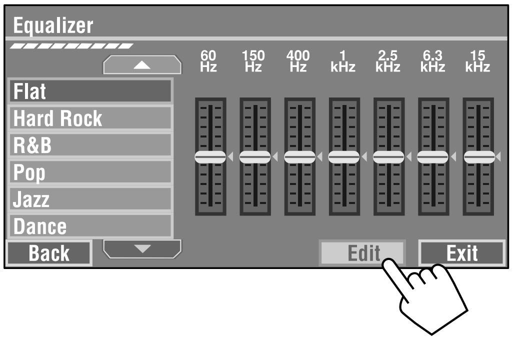

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

Move to other six sound modes

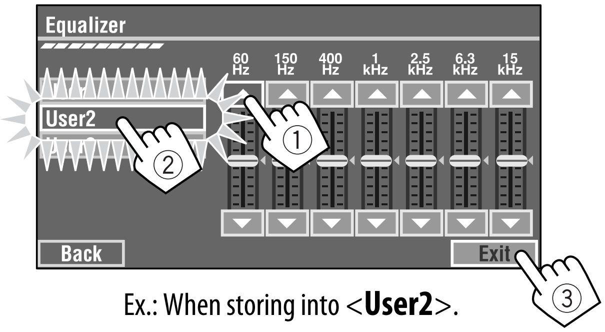
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

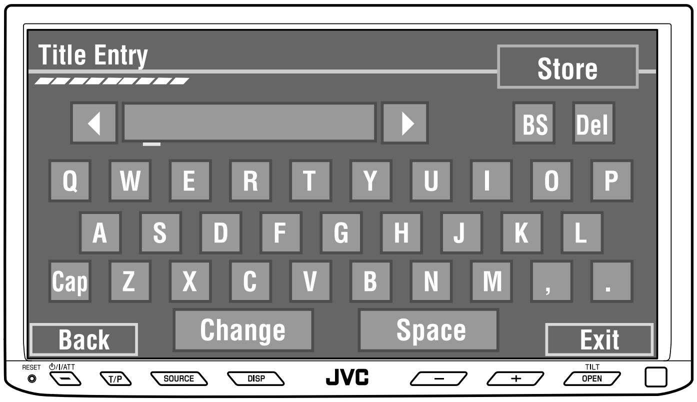

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
③
Back
Exit

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

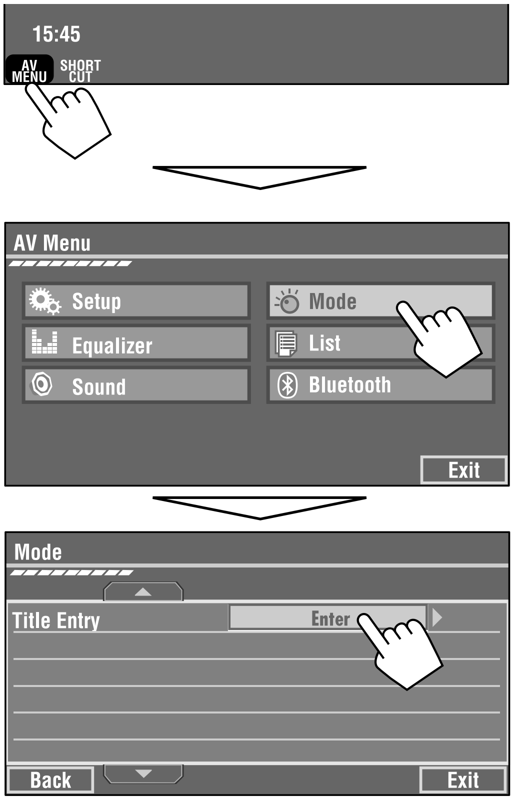
In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [   ].

You can assign titles to "AV-IN" and "EXT-IN."

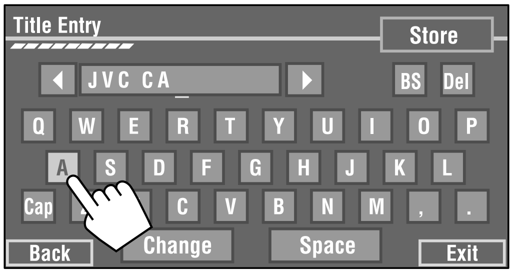
❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN] or [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Display <Title Entry> screen.**


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

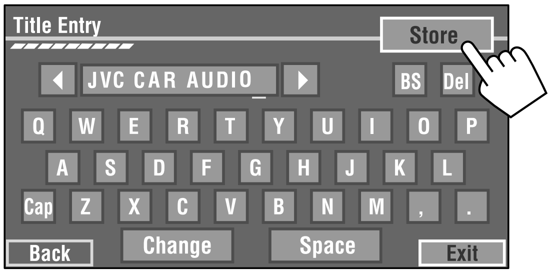
❸ **Assign a title.**


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

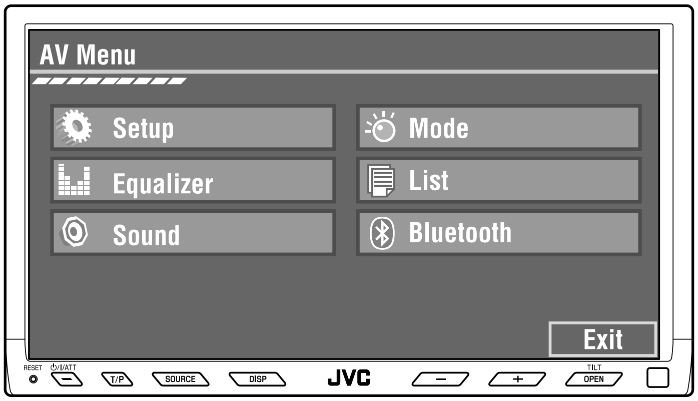
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 67).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

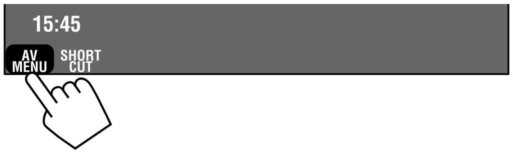

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

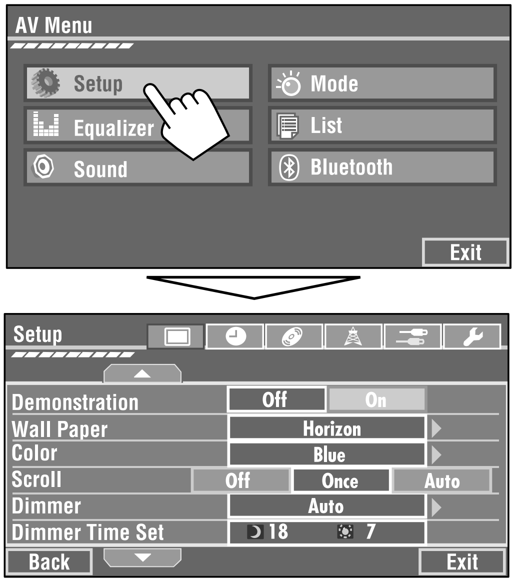
- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶

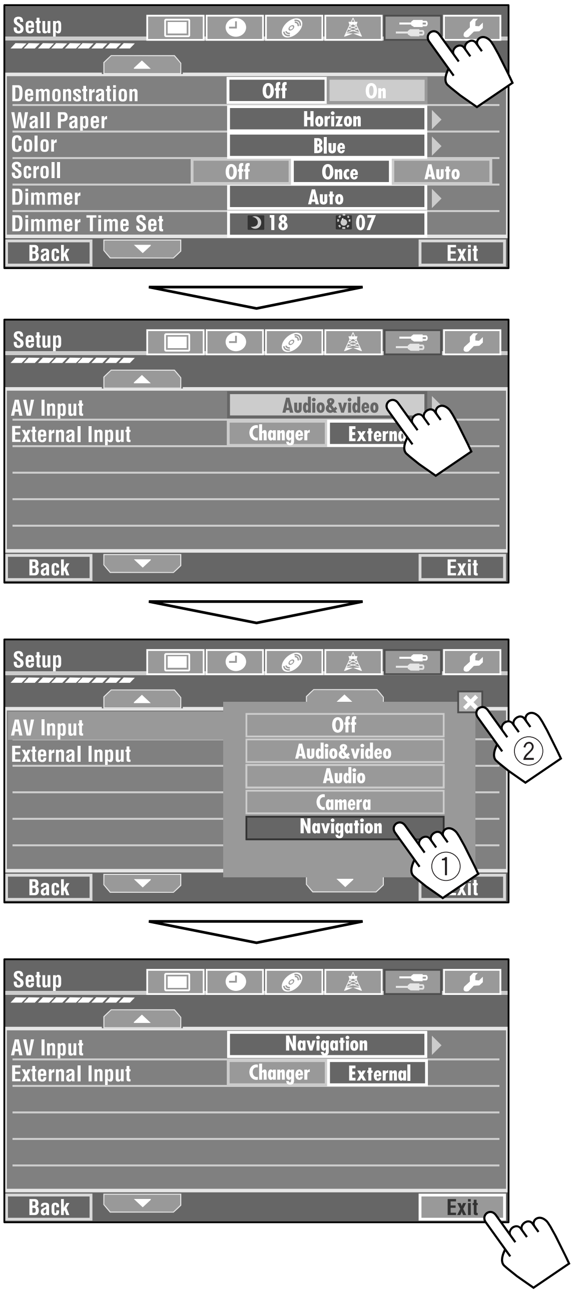

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
7
Back
Exit

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
07
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
Audio&video
External Input
Changer
External
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
External Input
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
②
①
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
Navigation
External Input
Changer
External
Back
Exit

Setup

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

	Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.[1] **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust[2]	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. • You cannot adjust <**Tint**>. (fixed)

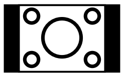
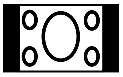
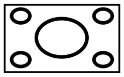
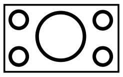
Initial: **Underlined**

---

[1] *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

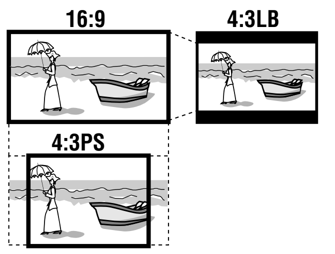
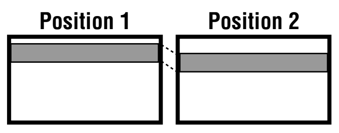
[2] *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th colspan="3">Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Display</td><td rowspan="6">Aspect*[1]</td><td colspan="3">You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>4:3</td><td>16:9</td></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Full:
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Language*[2]</td><td colspan="3">Select the indication language shown on the screen.
English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected, ☞ [67].</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td colspan="3">Initial 0:00 ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Format</td><td colspan="3">Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>OSD Clock</td><td colspan="3">When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
Off, On</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clock Adjust</td><td colspan="3">Select <Auto> to adjust the clock automatically using the clock time (CT) data from an FM RDS station.
Off, Auto ☞ [8]</td></tr>
</table>

*[1] *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*[2] *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language***3	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Audio Language*3	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Subtitle*3	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Monitor Type*3 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*3 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [28] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*3	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*3	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*3	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 65) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*3 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional	When the received signals from the current station become weak... **Off**: Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. **AF Reg.** (Regional): Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. **AF**: Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up). ☞ [15]
	TA Volume	**00** to **30** or **50***2; Initial **15** ☞ [14]
	Program Search	**Off**, **On** ☞ [15]
	DAB AF*3	**Off**, **On** ☞ [42]

*1 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*2 *Depends on the amplifier gain control. (☞ page 56)*

*3 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	**AV Input***4	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [45, 46] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***5 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*6	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***7: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [37, 43] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [47] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner, this setting is not required. They are automatically detected.
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting*8	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1, Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the car phone system.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

[4] *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

[5] *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

[6] *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

[7] *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

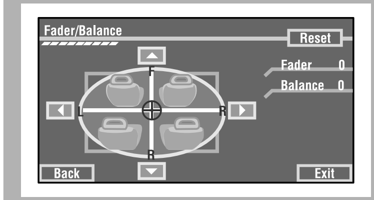
[8] *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Initial: **Underlined**

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [48]

Sound

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*1

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
PTy Standby	Only for FM/DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [14]
PTy Code	Only for FM/DAB. (Initial **News**) ☞ [15]
Title Entry	Only for “AV-IN” and “EXT-IN.” ☞ [49]
Repeat	☞ [21, 38, 44]
Random	☞ [21, 38, 44]
D.(Dynamic) Range Control	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **DRC1, DRC2, DRC3**) ☞ [40]
Announce Standby	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [41]
Announce Code	Only for DAB. (Initial **Transport News**) ☞ [42]

[1] *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 22)
For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 37)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [33]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [30]
Search	☞ [31]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 30 or 31) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 30 and 31), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

*1 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

*2 *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*3 *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 33. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Initial: **Underlined**

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

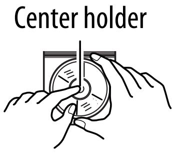
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



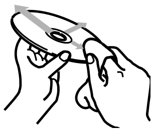
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

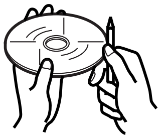
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

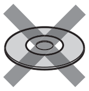
To play new discs



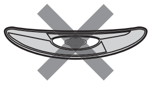
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

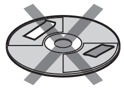
SingleCD—8 cm disc



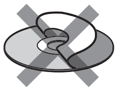
Warped disc



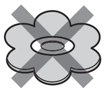
Sticker and sticker residue



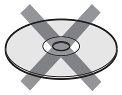
Stick-on label



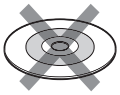
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  - * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

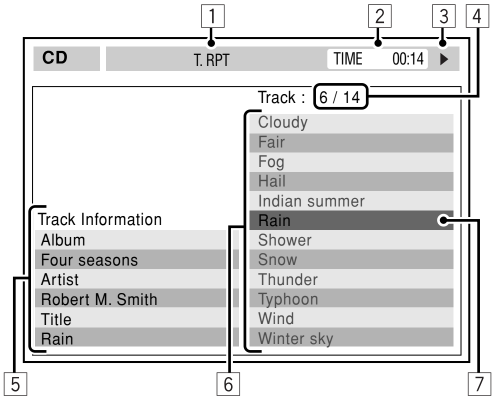
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

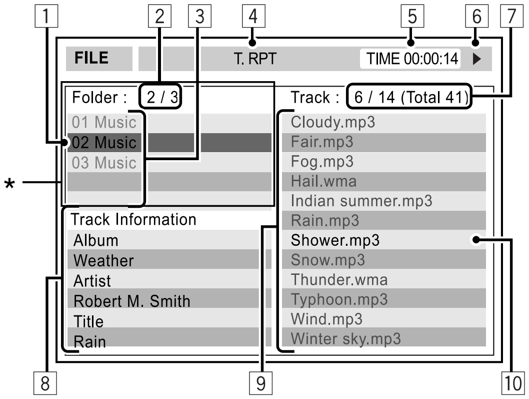
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 31)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/ or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 37), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB tuner

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *1
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *2

  *1 When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *2 It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 53)

<D. Audio Output> **Playback disc**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 49)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windscreen may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 51)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 11)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 22)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	**Remedies/Causes**
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 30)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try “0000” or “1234.” • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 31, 58)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.” • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• “New Device” cannot be selected for “Bluetooth AUDIO.”	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select “New Device,” disconnect it. (☞ page 31)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

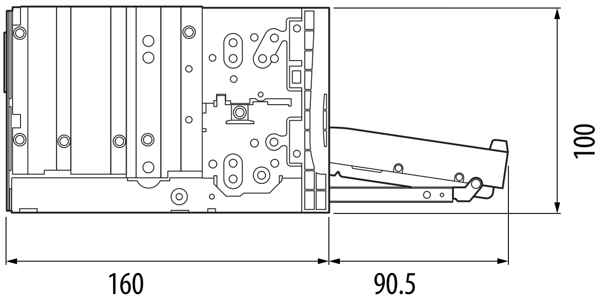
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• “No Disc” appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “No Magazine” appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
DAB tuner	• “No DAB Signal” appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• “Antenna Power NG” appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• “Disconnect” appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• “No Files” appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, OE REMOTE, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μV
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 10 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.9 kg (including trims and sleeve)

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?
Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück
Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?
Réinitialisez votre appareil
Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Hebt u PROBLEMEN met de bediening?
Stel het apparaat terug
Zie de pagina met de paragraaf Het apparaat terugstellen

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.
European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Company name changed in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Sehr geehrter Kunde, sehr geehrte Kundin,
dieses Gerät stimmt mit den gültigen europäischen Richtlinien und Normen bezüglich elektromagnetischer Verträglichkeit und elektrischer Sicherheit überein.
Die europäische Vertretung für die Victor Company of Japan, Limited ist:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Firmenname geändert in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Deutschland

Cher(e) client(e),
Cet appareil est conforme aux directives et normes européennes en vigueur concernant la compatibilité électromagnétique et à la sécurité électrique.
Représentant européen de la société Victor Company of Japan, Limited :
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Le nom de la compagnie a changé dans:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Allemagne

Geachte klant,
Dit apparaat voldoet aan de geldende Europese normen en richtlijnen inzake elektromagnetische compatibiliteit en elektrische veiligheid.
De Europese vertegenwoordiger van Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Bedrijfsnaam gewijzigd in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Duitsland

JVC

EN, GE, FR, NL

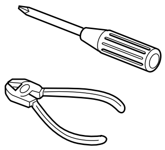
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1207MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Manuel d'installation/raccordement
Handleiding voor installatie/aansluiting

LVT1779-006A
[E]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL

©2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

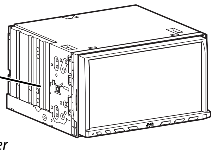
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake lead is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in ***elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt****. Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.*

WARNHINWEISE

- *Installieren Sie keine Komponenten und verdrahten Sie Kabel NICHT an den folgenden Orten;*
  - *an denen sie die Bewegungen des Lenkrads und des Ganghebels behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernsten Verkehrsunfällen.*
  - *an denen sie den Betrieb von Sicherheit seinrichtungen, z.B. Airbags, behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernsten Verkehrsunfällen.*
  - *an denen sie die Sicht behindern.*
- *Betätigen Sie beim Fahren KEINE Geräte. Anderenfalls führt dies möglicherweise zu einem ernste Verkehrsunfall.*
- *Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt auf keinen Fall auf den Monitor sehen. Dies könnte den Fahrer ablenken und zu Unfällen führen.*
- *Wenn Sie das Gerät beim Fahren bedienen müssen, dürfen Sie nicht den Blick von der Straße nehmen, da sonst die Gefahr von Verkehrsunfällen besteht.*
- *Ist die Feststellbremse nicht angezogen, erscheint blinkend die Meldung "Parking Brake" auf dem Monitor, und es erfolgt keine Bildwiedergabe.*
  - *Diese Warnung wird nur angezeigt, wenn das Feststellbremskabel an das in das Fahrzeug eingebaute Feststellbremssystem angeschlossen ist.*

Hinweise zu elektrischen Anschlüssen:

- *Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.*
- *Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von* ***4 Ω bis 8 Ω****).*
  Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie „Amplifier Gain" anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 56 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).
- *Zur Vermeidung eines Kurzschlusses die Anschlußklemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierklebeband umwickeln.*
- *Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.*

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:
  - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
  - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
  - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.
- Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake" clignote sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.
  - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**).
  Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 56 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

NEDERLANDS

Dit apparaat mag worden gebruikt bij elektrische systemen die werken op ***12 V gelijkstroom met negatieve aarding****. Als uw auto niet is uitgerust met een dergelijk systeem, is een spanningsomzetter vereist. Dit instrument kan worden aangeschaft bij JVC car audio dealers.*

WAARSCHUWING

- *Installeer toestellen en aansluitkabels NIET op plaatsen waar;*
  - *dit een gevaar vormt voor het bedienen van het stuur of de versnelling, aangezien elke belemmering van de juiste werking van het stuur en de versnelling tot een ongeluk kan lijden.*
  - *dit een gevaar vormt voor de airbag, aangezien elke belemmering van de werking van de airbag tot een dodelijk ongeluk kan lijden.*
  - *dit het uitzicht belemmert.*
- *Bedien GEEN enkele eenheid terwijl u uw handen aan het stuur nodig hebt, aangezien dit anders tot een ongeluk kan lijden.*
- *De bestuurder dient tijdens het rijden niet naar de monitor te kijken. De aandacht wordt anders afgeleid met mogelijk ongelukken als gevolg.*
- *Voorkom ongelukken en kijk derhalve uitermate goed uit indien u het toestel tijdens het besturen van de auto wilt bedienen.*
- *"Parking Brake" knippert op de monitor en er wordt geen beeld getoond wanneer de handrem niet is aangetrokken.*
  - *Deze waarschuwing verschijnt uitsluitend indien het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremsysteem is verbonden.*

Opmerkingen voor de elektrische verbindinge:

- *Vervang de zekering door een exemplaar met het aangegeven vermogen. Als de zekering vaak doorslaat, moet u uw JVC car audio dealer raadplegen.*
- *Sluit bij voorkeur luidsprekers met een hoger maximaal vermogen dan 50 W (zowel achter als voor, met een impedantie van* ***4 Ω t/m 8 Ω****) aan. Indien het maximale vermogen lager dan 50 W is, moet u "Amplifier Gain" in de andere stand stellen zodat de luidsprekers niet kunnen worden beschadigd (zie bladzijde 56 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*
- *Om kortsluiting te voorkomen, moet u de aansluitklemmen van ONGEBRUIKTE gekleurde draden met isolatieband bedekken.*
- *De warmte-opnemer kan na gebruik erg heet worden. Raak de warmte-opnemer niet aan wanneer u dit apparaat van zijn plaats haalt.*

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

[*1] Fitted to the main unit when shipped

Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

Die folgenden Teile werden zusammen mit diesem Gerät geliefert. Falls etwas fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren Fachhändler.

[*1] *Werkseitig am Hauptgerät angebracht*

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, contactez votre revendeur immédiatement.

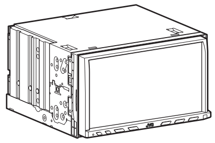
[*1] Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.

Lijst van onderdelen die u bij installatie en aansluiting nodig hebt

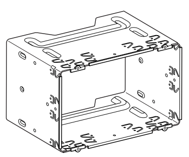
De volgende onderdelen worden bij het apparaat geleverd. Raadpleeg direct de plaats van aankoop indien er iets ontbreekt.

[*1] *Bij het verlaten van de fabriek aan het hoofdtoestel bevestigd.*

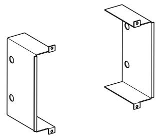
Main unit
Hauptgerät
Appareil principal
Hoofdtoestel



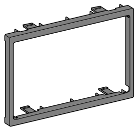
Sleeve[*1]
Halterung[*1]
Manchon[*1]
Huls[*1]



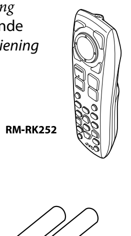
Brackets[*1]
Konsolen[*1]
Supports[*1]
Beugels[*1]



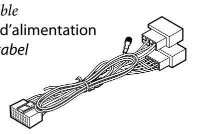
Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Plaque d'assemblage
Sierplaat



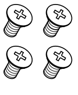
Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Télécommande
Afstandsbediening



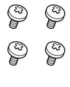
Power cord
Stromkable
Cordon d'alimentation
Stroomkabel



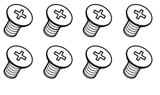
Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)[*1]
Flachkopfschrauben (M5 x 8 mm)[*1]
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)[*1]
Schroeven met platte kop (M5 x 8 mm)[*1]



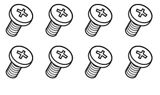
Round head screws (M2.6 x 3 mm)[*1]
Rundkopfschrauben (M2,6 x 3 mm)[*1]
Vis à tête ronde (M2,6 x 3 mm)[*1]
Schroeven met ronde kop (M2,6 x 3 mm)[*1]



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Flachkopfschrauben (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)
Schroeven met platte kop (M5 x 8 mm)

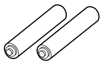


Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Rundkopfschrauben (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête ronde (M5 x 8 mm)
Schroeven met ronde kop (M5 x 8 mm)

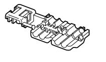


Use these screws when installing the unit without the supplied sleeve.
Verwenden Sie diese Schrauben, wenn Sie das Gerät ohne die mitgelieferte Halterung einbauen.
Utilisez ces vis lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans le manchon fourni.
Gebruik deze schroeven wanneer u het toestel zonder de bijgeleverde huls installeert.

Batteries
Batterien
Piles
Batterijen



Crimp connector
Crimpanschlüsse
Raccord à sertir
Krimpaansluiting



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1. Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
    - Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.
2. Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.
3. Attach the brackets to the main unit.
    - Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
4. Do the required electrical connections.
    - See pages 3 and 4.
5. Install the main unit in the sleeve.
6. Attach the trim plate.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

Die folgende Abbildung zeigt die typische Installation. Sie müssen aber Justierungen entsprechend des vorliegenden Fahrzeugs vornehmen. Wenn Sie Fragen haben oder weitere Informationen zu Einbausätzen benötigen, wenden Sie sich an Ihren Fachhändler für JVC Autoradiohändler oder einen Fachhändler für die Einbausätze.

- *Wenn bezüglich des richtigen Einbaus dieses Geräts Zweifel bestehen, immer einen qualifizierten Techniker um Rat fragen.*

Vor dem Einbau des Geräts

- *Bei der Montage dieses Gerätssollen immer die mitgelieferten Schrauben wie beschrieben verwendet werden. Wenn andere Schrauben verwendet werden, besteht die Gefahr, dass sich Teile lockern oder beschädigt werden könnten.*
- *Beim Festziehen von Schrauben oder Steckschrauben immer darauf achten, keine Kabel einzuklemmen.*
- *Sicherstellen, dass nicht das Gebläse an der Rückseite verdeckt wird, um richtige Ventilation beim Einbau zu gewährleisten.*

1. *Bauen Sie die ursprünglich im Fahrzeug vorhandene Audioanlage zusammen mit ihren Befestigungsteilen aus.*
    - *Alle aus dem Fahrzeug ausgebauten Schrauben und anderen Teile müssen zur Wiederverwendung aufbewahrt werden.*
2. *Die Halterung im Armaturenbrett des Fahrzeugs einbauen.*
3. *Die Konsolen am Hauptgerät anbringen.*
    - *Stellen Sie sicher, nur die mitgelieferten Flachkopfschrauben zu verwenden (M5 x 8 mm). Wenn längere Schrauben verwendet werden, kann dann das Gerät dadurch beschädigt werden.*
4. *Erfordert keine elektrischen Verbindungen.*
    - *Siehe Seite 3 und 4.*
5. *Das Hauptgerät in der Halterung einbauen.*
6. *Den Frontrahmen anbringen.*

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.
- Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.
- Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.

1. Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.
    - Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.
2. Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.
3. Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.
    - Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis —(M5 × 8 mm). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.
4. Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.
    - Référez-vous aux pages 3 et 4.
5. Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.
6. Fixez la plaque d'assemblage

INSTALLEREN (MONTEREN IN DASHBOARD)

De volgende afbeelding toont een standaardinstallatie. Afhankelijk van uw auto moet het toestel mogelijk wat anders worden geïnstalleerd. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer of een leverancier van installatiekits indien u vragen heeft of informatie over installatiekits wilt.

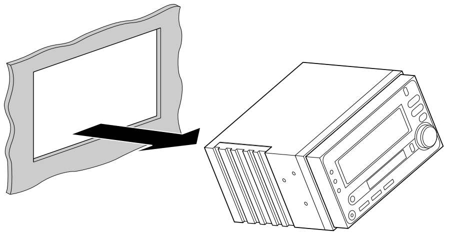
- *Raadpleeg een erkend technicus indien u twijfels heeft over het juist installeren van dit toestel.*

Alvorens het toestel te installeren

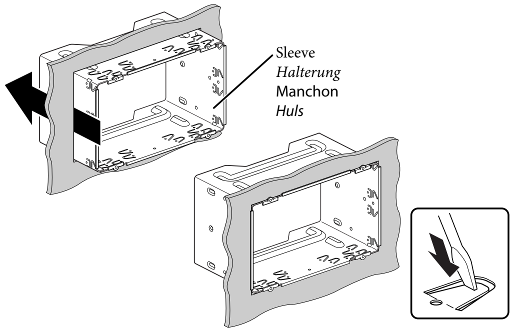
- *Gebruik beslist de bijgeleverde schroeven als aangegeven voor het bevestigen van dit toestel. Door het gebruik van andere schroeven, kunnen onderdelen worden beschadigd of wordt het toestel mogelijk niet correct bevestigd.*
- *Let bij het vastdraaien van schroeven en bouten goed op zodat er geen snoeren, etc. worden vastgekneld.*
- *Let goed op dat bij het installeren de ventilator op het achterpaneel niet wordt gebokkeerd zodat het toestel goed geventileerd kan worden.*

1. *Verwijder het oorspronkelijk geplaatste audiosysteem, met de daarbij behorende bevestigingsbeugels, uit de auto.*
    - *Bewaar alle uit de auto verwijderde schroeven en onderdelen voor later gebruik.*
2. *Plaats de huls in het dashboard van de auto.*
3. *Bevestig de beugels aan het hoofdtoestel.*
    - *Gebruik beslist de bijgeleverde schroeven met platte kop (M5 x 8 mm). Langere schroeven kunnen het toestel namelijk beschadigen.*
4. *Maak de vereiste elektrische verbindingen.*
    - *Zie bladzijden 3 en 4.*
5. *Installeer het hoofdtoestel in de huls.*
6. *Bevestig de sierplaat.*

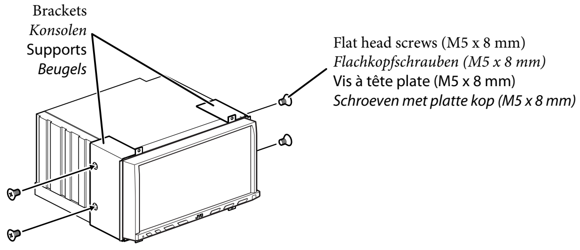
1



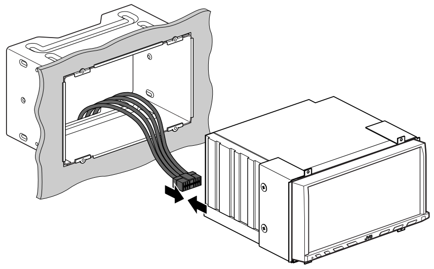
2



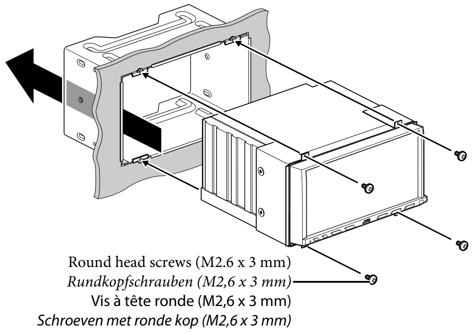
3


Brackets
Konsolen
Supports
Beugels
Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Flachkopfschrauben (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)
Schroeven met platte kop (M5 x 8 mm)

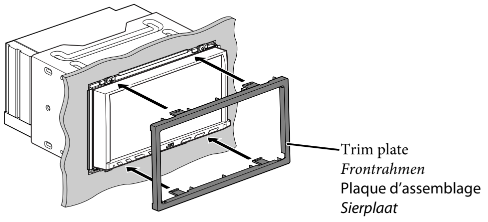
4

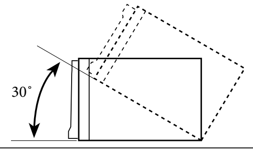


5


Round head screws (M2.6 x 3 mm)
Rundkopfschrauben (M2,6 x 3 mm)
Vis à tête ronde (M2,6 x 3 mm)
Schroeven met ronde kop (M2,6 x 3 mm)

6





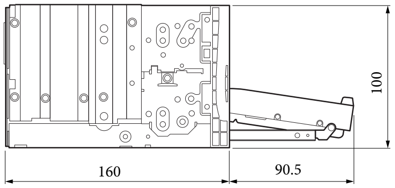
Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

Bauen Sie das Gerät ein einem Winkel von weniger als 30˚ ein, wobei Sie darauf achten, dass der Monitor bei Gebrauch ausfährt.

Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation.

Installeer het toestel met een kleinere hoek dan 30˚, en controleer dat de monitor kan worden uitgeworpen voor gebruik.

Required space for the monitor ejection
Erforderlicher Platz für Monitorausschub
Espace requis pour le déploiement du moniteur
Vereiste vrije ruimte voor het uitwerpen van de monitor



Unit: mm
Einheit: mm
Unité: mm
Eenheid: mm

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen erneut, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

ELEKTRISCHE VERBINDINGEN

Om kortsluiting te voorkomen adviseren wij u om de minpool van de accu los te maken en alle elektrische verbindingen tot stand te brengen voordat u het apparaat in de auto installeert.

- **Aard dit toestel beslist weer op het chassis van de auto na het installeren.**

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

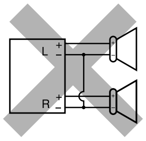
- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.**
- *VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannungsversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.*

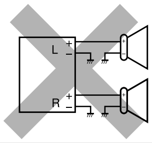
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

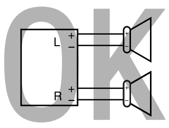
- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

VOORZORGSMAATREGELEN bij hetverbinden van de stroomkabeldraad met de speakers:

- **Verbind de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel NIET met de accu van de auto; als u dit wel doet, zal het apparaat ernstige schade oplopen.**
- *VOORDAT u de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel met de speakers verbindt, moet u de bedrading van de speakers in uw auto controleren.*

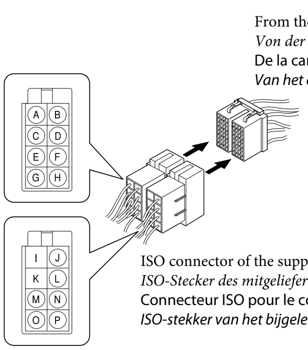






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector
Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist
Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO
Indien uw auto een ISO-aansluiting heeft

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.*
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Verbind de ISO-stekkers zoals afgebeeld.*



From the car body
Von der Fahrzeugkarosserie
De la carrosserie de la voiture
Van het chassis van de auto

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker des mitgelieferten Stromkabels
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni
ISO-stekker van het bijgeleverde spanningssnoer

View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Vue à partir du côté des fils
Gezien vanaf de spanningstoevoerkant

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles
Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- order Opel- (Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen
Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)
Voor bepaalde VW/Audi en Opel (Vauxhall) auto's

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

- *Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.*

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.

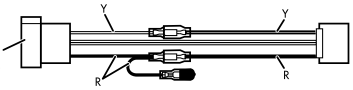
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

U moet mogelijk de bedrading van het bijgeleverde spanningssnoer als afgebeeld veranderen.

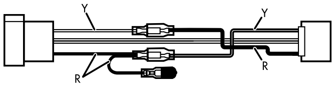
- *Raadpleeg een erkend autogarage alvorens deze receiver te installeren.*

Original wiring
Originalverdrahtung
Câblage original
Oorspronkelijke bedrading

ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Connecteur ISO
ISO-aansluiting

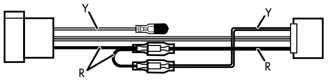


Modified wiring 1
Modifizierte Verdrahtung 1
Câblage modifié 1
Veranderde bedrading 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Gebruik methode 2 voor het veranderen van de bedrading indien de receiver niet wordt ingeschakeld.

Modified wiring 2
Modifizierte Verdrahtung 2
Câblage modifié 2
Veranderde bedrading 2

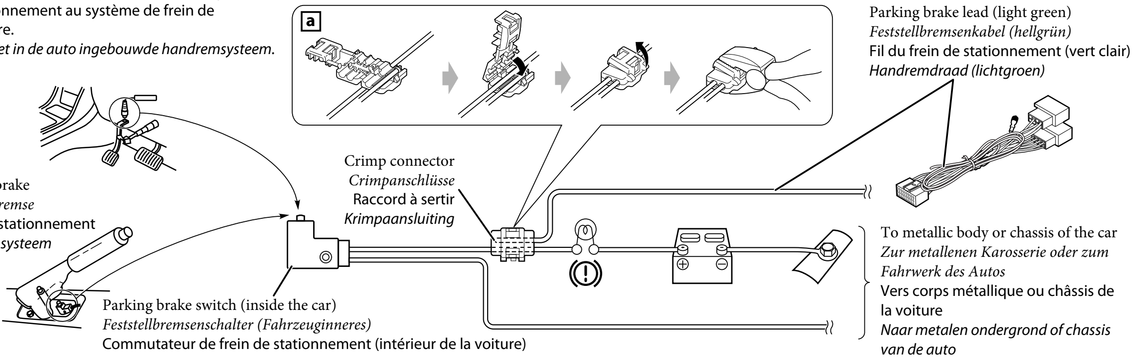


Y: Yellow
Gelb
Jaune
Geel

R: Red
Rot
Rouge
Rood

A **Connecting the parking brake lead / Anschließen des Feststellbremsenkabels / Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement / Verbinden van het handremdraad**

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.
Das Feststellbremsenkabel mit dem Feststellbremssystem des Fahrzeugs verbinden.
Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.
Verbind het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremsysteem.



Parking brake lead (light green)
Feststellbremsenkabel (hellgrün)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)
Handremdraad (lichtgroen)

Crimp connector
Crimpanschlüsse
Raccord à sertir
Krimpaansluiting

Parking brake
Feststellbremse
Frein de stationnement
Handremsysteem

To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto

Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Feststellbremsenschalter (Fahrzeuginneres)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (intérieur de la voiture)
Handremsysteemschakelaar (in de auto)

Connections without using the ISO connector / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung des ISO-Steckverbinders / Connexions sans utiliser le connecteur ISO / Verbinden zonder gebruik van de ISO-aansluiting

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: *Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen. Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.*

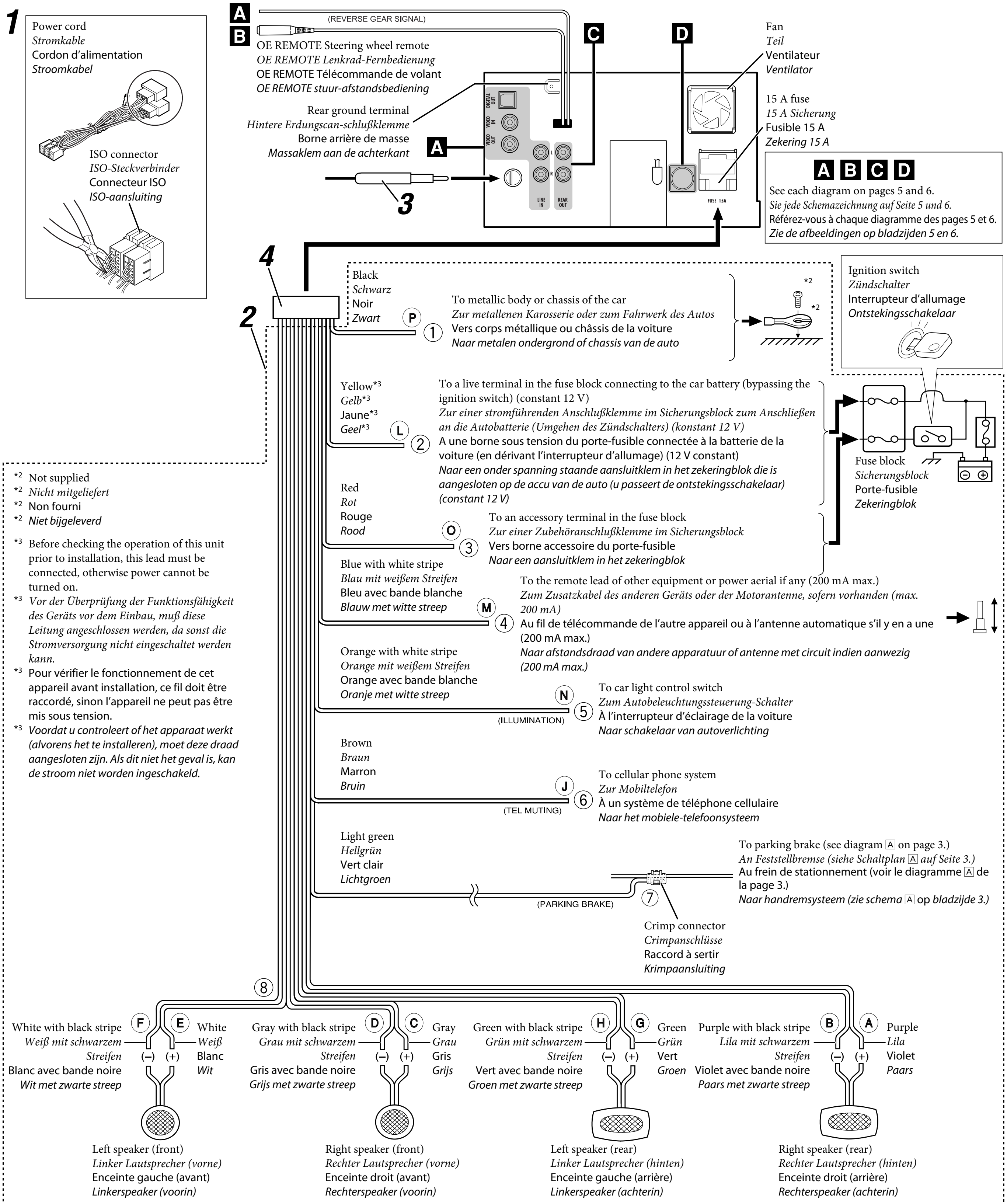
1. *Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.*
2. *Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.*
3. *Das Antennenkabel anschließen.*
4. *Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.*

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. Coupez le connecteur ISO.
2. Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
3. Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
4. Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

Alvorens de verbindingen tot stand te brengen: *Moet u de bedrading in de auto zorgvuldig. Het apparaat kan door verkeerde verbindingen ernstige schade oplopen. De draden van het stroomsnoer verschillen mogelijk van kleur metde aansluitingen op het chassis van de auto.*

1. *Knip de ISO-stekker af.*
2. *Verbind de gekleurde draden van het stroomsnoer in de afbeelding hieronder aangegeven volgorde.*
3. *Sluit de antenne aan.*
4. *Verbind de draadbundel daarna met het apparaat.*



Power cord
Stromkabel
Cordon d'alimentation
Stroomkabel

ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Connecteur ISO
ISO-aansluiting

OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
OE REMOTE Lenkrad-Fernbedienung
OE REMOTE Télécommande de volant
OE REMOTE stuur-afstandsbediening

Rear ground terminal
Hintere Erdungscan-schlußklemme
Borne arrière de masse
Massaklem aan de achterkant

Fan
Teil
Ventilateur
Ventilator

15 A fuse
15 A Sicherung
Fusible 15 A
Zekering 15 A

A B C D
See each diagram on pages 5 and 6.
Sie jede Schemazeichnung auf Seite 5 und 6.
Référez-vous à chaque diagramme des pages 5 et 6.
Zie de afbeeldingen op bladzijden 5 en 6.

Black
Schwarz
Noir
Zwart

① To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto

Ignition switch
Zündschalter
Interrupteur d'allumage
Ontstekingsschakelaar

Yellow*3
*Gelb*3*
Jaune*3
*Geel*3*

② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Zur einer stromführenden Anschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock zum Anschließen an die Autobatterie (Umgehen des Zündschalters) (konstant 12 V)
A une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constant)
Naar een onder spanning staande aansluitklem in het zekeringblok die is aangesloten op de accu van de auto (u passeert de ontstekingsschakelaar) (constant 12 V)

Fuse block
Sicherungsblock
Porte-fusible
Zekeringblok

Red
Rot
Rouge
Rood

③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
Zur einer Zubehöranschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock
Vers borne accessoire du porte-fusible
Naar een aansluitklem in het zekeringblok

Blue with white stripe
Blau mit weißem Streifen
Bleu avec bande blanche
Blauw met witte streep

④ To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any (200 mA max.)
Zum Zusatzkabel des anderen Geräts oder der Motorantenne, sofern vorhanden (max. 200 mA)
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil ou à l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une (200 mA max.)
Naar afstandsdraad van andere apparatuur of antenne met circuit indien aanwezig (200 mA max.)

Orange with white stripe
Orange mit weißem Streifen
Orange avec bande blanche
Oranje met witte streep

⑤ To car light control switch
Zum Autobeleuchtungssteuerung-Schalter
À l'interrupteur d'éclairage de la voiture
Naar schakelaar van autoverlichting

Brown
Braun
Marron
Bruin

⑥ To cellular phone system
Zur Mobiltelefon
À un système de téléphone cellulaire
Naar het mobiele-telefoonsysteem

Light green
Hellgrün
Vert clair
Lichtgroen

To parking brake (see diagram A on page 3.)
An Feststellbremse (siehe Schaltplan A auf Seite 3.)
Au frein de stationnement (voir le diagramme A de la page 3.)
Naar handremsysteem (zie schema A op bladzijde 3.)

⑦ Crimp connector
Crimpanschlüsse
Raccord à sertir
Krimpaansluiting

White with black stripe
Weiß mit schwarzem Streifen
Blanc avec bande noire
Wit met zwarte streep

White
Weiß
Blanc
Wit

Gray with black stripe
Grau mit schwarzem Streifen
Gris avec bande noire
Grijs met zwarte streep

Gray
Grau
Gris
Grijs

Green with black stripe
Grün mit schwarzem Streifen
Vert avec bande noire
Groen met zwarte streep

Green
Grün
Vert
Groen

Purple with black stripe
Lila mit schwarzem Streifen
Violet avec bande noire
Paars met zwarte streep

Purple
Lila
Violet
Paars

Left speaker (front)
Linker Lautsprecher (vorne)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
Linkerspeaker (voorin)

Right speaker (front)
Rechter Lautsprecher (vorne)
Enceinte droit (avant)
Rechterspeaker (voorin)

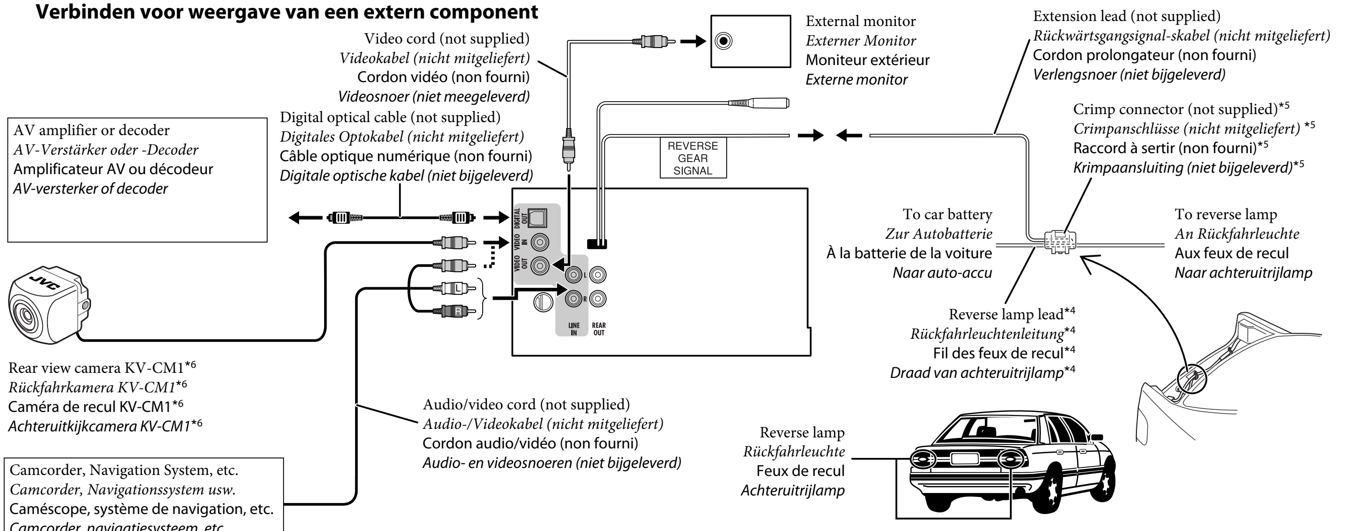
Left speaker (rear)
Linker Lautsprecher (hinten)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
Linkerspeaker (achterin)

Right speaker (rear)
Rechter Lautsprecher (hinten)
Enceinte droit (arrière)
Rechterspeaker (achterin)

[*2] Not supplied
[*2] *Nicht mitgeliefert*
[*2] Non fourni
[*2] *Niet bijgeleverd*

[*3] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
[*3] *Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.*
[*3] Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.
[*3] *Voordat u controleert of het apparaat werkt (alvorens het te installeren), moet deze draad aangesloten zijn. Als dit niet het geval is, kan de stroom niet worden ingeschakeld.*

A Connections for external component playback / Anschlüsse für externe Komponente / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur / Verbinden voor weergave van een extern component



Video cord (not supplied)
Videokabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Cordon vidéo (non fourni)
Videosnoer (niet meegeleverd)
External monitor
Externer Monitor
Moniteur extérieur
Externe monitor
Extension lead (not supplied)
Rückwärtsgangsignal-skabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Cordon prolongateur (non fourni)
Verlengsnoer (niet bijgeleverd)
AV amplifier or decoder
AV-Verstärker oder -Decoder
Amplificateur AV ou décodeur
AV-versterker of decoder
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Digitales Optokabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Câble optique numérique (non fourni)
Digitale optische kabel (niet bijgeleverd)
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Crimp connector (not supplied)[5]
Crimpanschlüsse (nicht mitgeliefert) [5]
Raccord à sertir (non fourni)[5]
Krimpaansluiting (niet bijgeleverd)[5]
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
To car battery
Zur Autobatterie
À la batterie de la voiture
Naar auto-accu
To reverse lamp
An Rückfahrleuchte
Aux feux de recul
Naar achteruitrijlamp
JVC
Reverse lamp lead[4]
Rückfahrleuchtenleitung[4]
Fil des feux de recul[4]
Draad van achteruitrijlamp[4]
Rear view camera KV-CM1[6]
Rückfahrkamera KV-CM1[6]
Caméra de recul KV-CM1[6]
Achteruitkijkcamera KV-CM1[6]
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Audio-/Videokabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Cordon audio/vidéo (non fourni)
Audio- en videosnoeren (niet bijgeleverd)
Reverse lamp
Rückfahrleuchte
Feux de recul
Achteruitrijlamp
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
Camcorder, Navigationssystem usw.
Caméscope, système de navigation, etc.
Camcorder, navigatiesysteem, etc.

---

[4] Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

[5] Refer to a in diagram A on page 3.

[6] Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[4] *Nur erforderlich, wenn eine Rückfahrkamera am Anschluss VIDEO IN angeschlossen wird.*

[5] *Siehe a in Schaltplan A auf Seite 3.*

[6] *Stellen Sie die Einstellung "AV Input" auf "Camera" bei der Verwendung (siehe Seite 55 in der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*

[4] Requis uniquement lors de la connexion d'une caméra de recul à la prise VIDEO IN.

[5] Reportez vous à a du diagramme A de la page 3.

[6] Réglez "AV Input" sur "Camera" lors de l'utilisation (voir page 55 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

[4] *Alleen vereist wanneer een achteruitkijkcamera met de VIDEO IN aansluiting wordt verbonden.*

[5] *Zie a in afbeelding A op bladzijde 3.*

[6] *Stel voor gebruik "AV Input" op "Camera" (zie bladzijde 55 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*

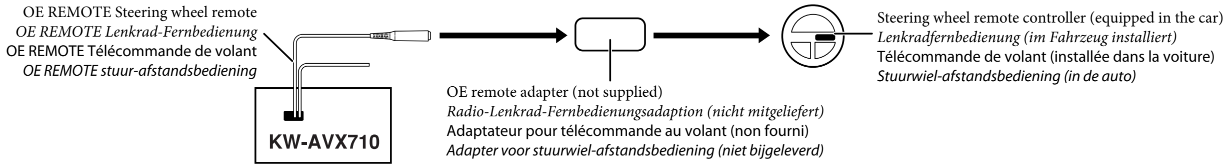
B Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Connexion de la télécommande de volant / Verbinden met de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht mitgeliefert) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.

Indien uw auto een stuurwiel-afstandsbediening heeft, kunt u deze receiver met die afstandsbediening bedienen. Hiervoor heeft u echter een JVC adapter (niet bijgeleverd) nodig die geschikt is voor de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening van uw auto. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer voor details.



OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
OE REMOTE Lenkrad-Fernbedienung
OE REMOTE Télécommande de volant
OE REMOTE stuur-afstandsbediening
KW-AVX710
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption (nicht mitgeliefert)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Adapter voor stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (niet bijgeleverd)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Lenkradfernbedienung (im Fahrzeug installiert)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
Stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (in de auto)

C Connecting an external amplifier / Anschließen eines externen Verstärkers / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur / Verbinden van een externe versterker

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

Sie können einen Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.

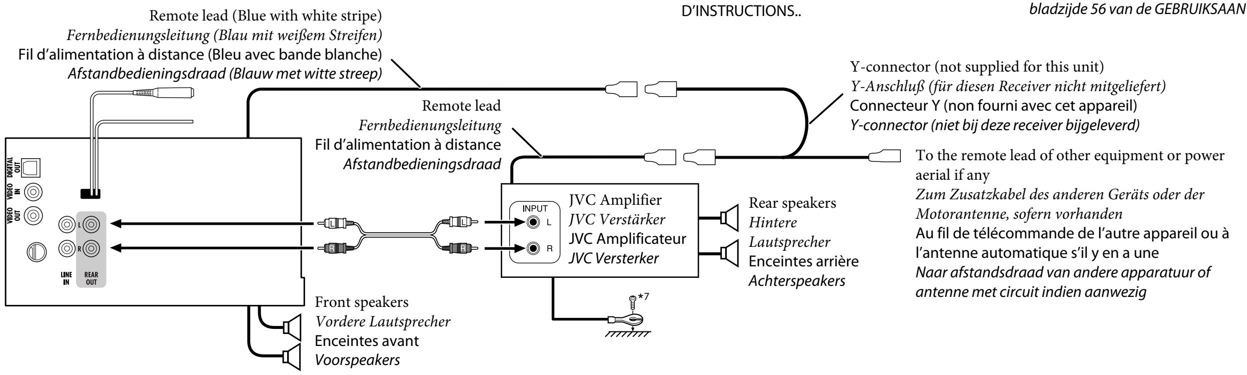
- *Sie können den Verstärker mit Strom versorgen, indem Sie die Fernsteuerleitungen (blau mit weißem Streifen) dieses Geräts an den Verstärker anschließen. (Zum Anschluss anderer Geräte mittels der Fernsteuerleitungen müssen Y-Stecker getrennt beschafft werden.)*
- *Trennen Sie die Lautsprecher vom Hauptgerät ab und schließen sie am Verstärker an. Lassen Sie die Lautsprecherkabel des Geräts unbenutzt.*
- *Sie können den eingebauten Verstärker abschalten und die Audiosignale ausschließlich zum externen Verstärker ausgeben, um einen klaren Klang zu erhalten und Hitzestau im Gerät zu vermeiden. Siehe Seite 56 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.*

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système stéréo.

- Vous pouvez alimenter l'amplificateur en connectant les fils de télécommande (bleu à bande blanche(de cet appareil à l'amplificateur. (Pour connecter un autre appareil en utilisant les fils de télécommande, vous devez acheter des connecteurs Y séparément.)
- Déconnectez les enceintes de l'appareil principal et connectez-les aux amplificateurs. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de l'appareil inutilisés.
- Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement vers un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs pour obtenir des sons plus clairs et éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil. Référez-vous à la page 56 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS..

U kunt uw auto-stereosysteem met een versterker uitbreiden.

- *Voor stroomtoevoer naar de versterker moet u de afstandsbedieningsdraden (blauw met witte streep) van dit toestel met de versterker verbinden. (Voor het verbinden van andere apparatuur met gebruik van de afstandsbedieningsdraden, moet u los verkrijgbare Y-stekkers gebruiken.)*
- *Ontkoppel de luidsprekers van het hoofdtoestel en verbind de luidsprekers vervolgens met de versterkers. Gebruik in dit geval de luidsprekeraansluitingen van het toestel dus niet.*
- *U kunt de ingebouwde versterker uitschakelen en uitsluitend de audiosignalen naar de externe versterker sturen voor een helderder geluid en te voorkomen dat dit toestel oververhit raakt. Zie bladzijde 56 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.*



Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Fernbedienungsleitung (Blau mit weißem Streifen)
Fil d'alimentation à distance (Bleu avec bande blanche)
Afstandbedieningsdraad (Blauw met witte streep)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Y-Anschluß (für diesen Receiver nicht mitgeliefert)
Connecteur Y (non fourni avec cet appareil)
Y-connector (niet bij deze receiver bijgeleverd)
Remote lead
Fernbedienungsleitung
Fil d'alimentation à distance
Afstandbedieningsdraad
To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any
Zum Zusatzkabel des anderen Geräts oder der Motorantenne, sofern vorhanden
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil ou à l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une
Naar afstandsdraad van andere apparatuur of antenne met circuit indien aanwezig
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
JVC Amplifier
JVC Verstärker
JVC Amplificateur
JVC Versterker
Rear speakers
Hintere Lautsprecher
Enceintes arrière
Achterspeakers
[7]
Front speakers
Vordere Lautsprecher
Enceintes avant
Voorspeakers

---

[7] Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

[7] *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*

[7] Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.

[7] *Bevestig de aardedraad goed met een metalen onderdeel of het chassis van de auto—bevestig op een niet-gelakt gedeelte (indien gelakt, schuur dan af alvorens de draad te bevestigen). Het toestel kan worden beschadigd indien de aardedraad niet goed is aangesloten.*

D Connections to the CD changer jack / Anschlüsse an der CD-Wechsler-Buchse / Connexions à la prise du changeur de CD / Verbinden met de CD-wisselaaraansluiting

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter
	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod
	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter
	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter
	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Beim Anschließen der externen Komponenten siehe auch für die Komponenten und den Adapter mitgelieferte Anleitungen.

ACHTUNG:
Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

Sie können die folgenden JVC-Komponenten an die CD-Wechslerbuchse anschließen.

JVC-Komponente	Model name
CD-Wechsler (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, usw.*
DAB-Tuner von JVC	*KT-DB1000*

Sie können auch die folgenden externen Komponenten über die verschiedenen JVC-Adapter anschließen.
- *Es kann erforderlich sein, Verbindungskabel getrennt zu kaufen.*

Komponente	Adapter
	Modellname
Bluetooth-Gerät	*Bluetooth-Adapter*
	KS-BTA200
iPod	*Schnittstellenadapter für iPodz*
	KS-PD100
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit Line-Ausgangsbuchsen	*Line-Eingangsadapter*
	KS-U57
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit 3,5-mm-Stereo-Minibuchse	*AUX-Eingangsadapter*
	KS-U58

Beim Anschließen von mehr als einer Komponente (Maximum: drei) wird empfohlen, dass Sie die Komponenten in Serie anschließen, wie unten beschrieben.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l’appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Tuner DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.
- Vous pouvez avoir besoin d’acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.

Appareil	Adaptateur
	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	Adaptateur Bluetooth
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptateur d’interface pour iPod
	KS-PD100
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	Adaptateur d’entrée de ligne
	KS-U57
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	Adaptateur d’entrée auxiliaire
	KS-U58

Lors de la connexion de plus d’un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l’expliquons ci-dessous.

Zie tevens de gebruiksaanwijzingen van de andere componenten en adapter voor het verbinden van externe componenten.

WAARSCHUWING:
Controleer alvorens de externe componenten aan te sluiten dat dit toestel beslist is uitgeschakeld.

U kunt de volgende JVC componenten met de CD-wisselaaraansluiting verbinden.

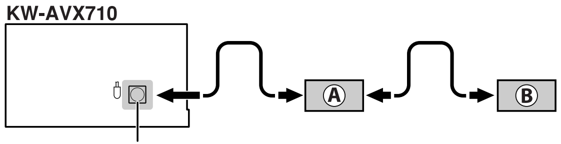
JVC component	Modelnaam
CD-wisselaar (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc*
JVC DAB tuner	*KT-DB1000*

U kunt tevens de volgende componenten via diverse JVC adapter verbinden.
- *U moet mogelijk aansluitsnoeren aanschaffen.*

Component	Adapter
	Modelnaam
Bluetooth apparatuur	*Bluetooth adapter*
	KS-BTA200
iPod	*Interface-adapter voor iPod*
	KS-PD100
Draagbare audiospeler met lijnuitgangsaansluitingen	*Lijningangsadapter*
	KS-U57
Draagbare audiospeler met 3,5 mm stereo mini-aansluiting	*AUX-ingangsadapter*
	KS-U58

Indien u meer dan een component aansluit (maximaal: drie), dient u bij voorkeur de componenten in-serie te verbinden zoals hieronder wordt uitgelegd.

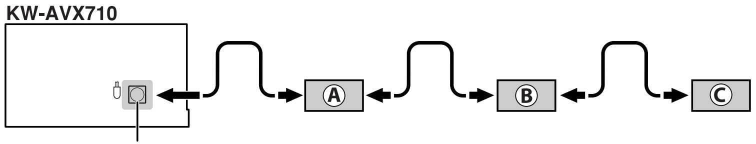
When connecting two components in series
Beim Anschließen von zwei Komponenten in Serie
Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série
Indien u twee componenten in-serie verbindt



CD changer jack
Buchse für CD-Wechsler
Prise du changeur de CD
Aansluiting voor CD-wisselaar

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200 / KT-DB1000**
Ⓑ*8 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

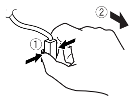
When connecting three components in series
Beim Anschließen von drei Komponenten in Serie
Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série
Indien u drie componenten in-serie verbindt



CD changer jack
Buchse für CD-Wechsler
Prise du changeur de CD
Aansluiting voor CD-wisselaar

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ **KT-DB1000**
Ⓒ*8 **KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / *Zum Abtrennen des Steckverbinder* / Pour déconnecter le connecteur / *Ontkoppelen van de stekker*



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Halten Sie die Steckverbinder-Oberseite fest (①) und ziehen Sie ihn heraus (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l’extérieur (②).
Druk stevig op de bovenkant van de stekker (①) en trek tegelijkertijd de stekker (②) naar u toe.

*8 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 *Zur Verwendung dieser Komponenten stellen Sie die externe Eingangseinstellung richtig ein (siehe Seite 55 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
*8 Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l’entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 55 du MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 *Voor het gebruik van deze componenten moet de juiste externe ingangsinstelling zijn gekozen (zie bladzijde 55 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.
iPod est une marque de commerce d’Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.
iPod is een handelsmerk van Apple Inc., geregistreerd in de V.S. en andere landen.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the “–” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car’s chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the “–” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
  * *Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?*
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
  * *Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?*
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
  * *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?*
- **Ton verzerrt.**
  * *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
  * *Sind die (–) Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
  * *Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?*
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
  * *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
  * *Sind die (–) Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
  * *Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?*

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
  * Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?
- **L’appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
  * Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  * Le fil de sortie d’enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- **Le son est déformé.**
  * Le fil de sortie d’enceinte est-il à la masse?
  * Les bornes “–” des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  * La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- **L’appareil devient chaud.**
  * Le fil de sortie d’enceinte est-il à la masse?
  * Les bornes “–” des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
  * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

PROBLEMEN OPLOSSEN

- **De zekering slaat door.**
  * *Zijn de rode en de zwarte draden op de juiste manier aangesloten?*
- **De stroom kan niet worden ingeschakeld.**
  * *Is de gele draad aangesloten?*
- **Er komt geen geluid uit de speakers.**
  * *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad kortgesloten?*
- **Het geluid wordt vervormd.**
  * *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?*
  * *Zijn de “–” polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?*
- **Geluid wordt door ruis gestoord.**
  * *Is de aarde-aansluiting achter met gebruik van kortere en dikkere snoeren met het chassis van de auto verbonden?*
- **Het apparaat raakt verhit.**
  * *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?*
  * *Zijn de “–” polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?*
- **Receiver werkt helemaal niet.**
  * *Heeft u de receiver teruggesteld?*

JVC

ENGLISH

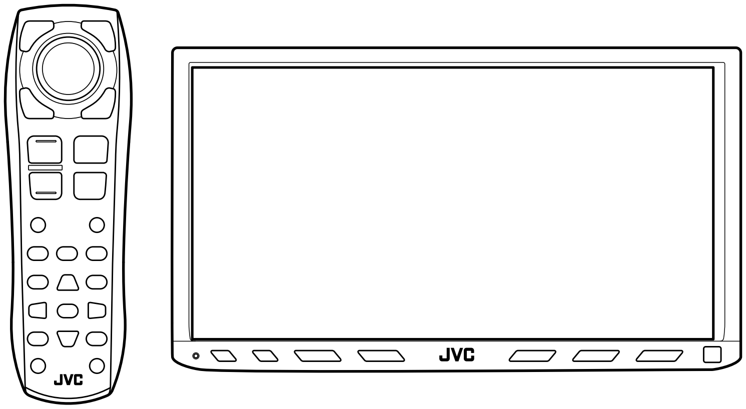
РУССКИЙ

УКРАЇНА

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
DVD-ПРИЕМНИК С МОНИТОРОМ
ПРИЙМАЧ ТА ПРОГРАВАЧ DVD-ДИСКІВ ІЗ МОНІТОРОМ

KW-AVX710

Radio Data System



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 8.
Інформацію щодо відміни демонстрації функцій дисплею див. на стор. 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.
Вказівки по встановленню та виконанню підключень наведені у окремій інструкції.

INSTRUCTIONS
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ
ІНСТРУКЦІЇ

LVT1779-005A
[EE]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

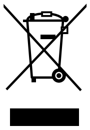
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...

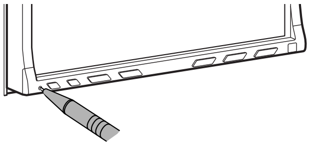
– Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.

– Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.



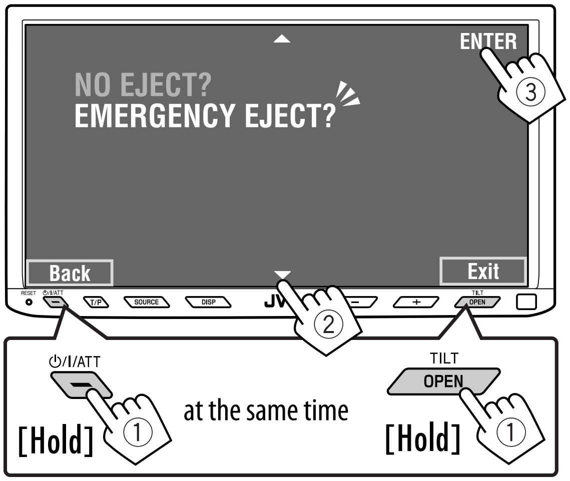
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 16

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 30
Listening to the CD changer.............. 37
Listening to the DAB tuner 39
Listening to the iPod........................ 43
Using other external components..... 45

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 48
Assigning titles to the sources 49
Menu operations 50

REFERENCES

Maintenance 60
More about this unit 61
Troubleshooting 68
Specifications 72

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 5)*1 ALL 5 1 5 1 2 3 5	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

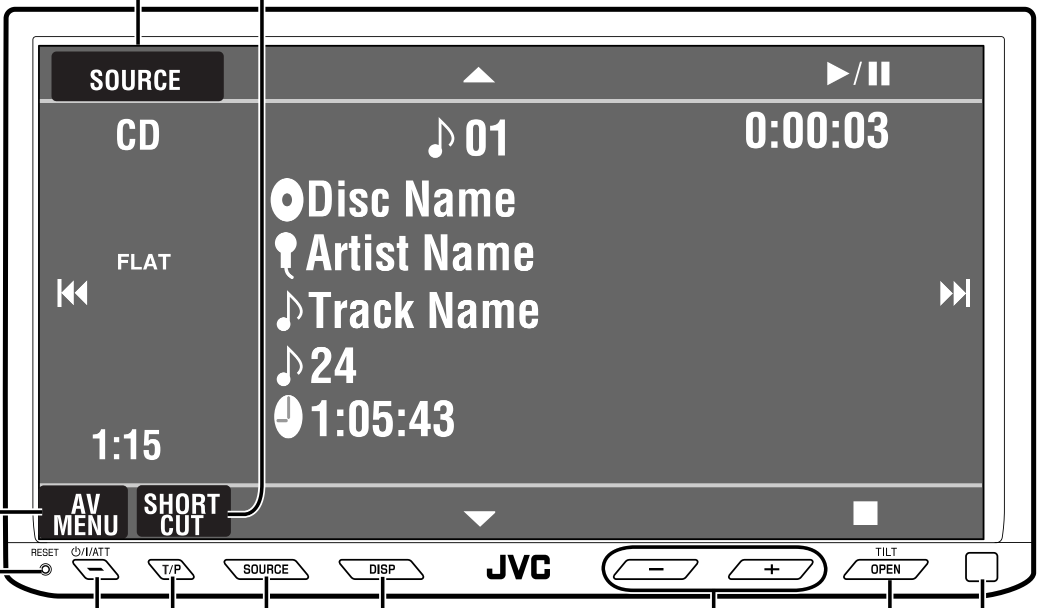
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 50

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
CD
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
♪Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
1:15
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

- **Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.**
- **Display <PTy Search> menu.** [Hold]
  ☞ page 12

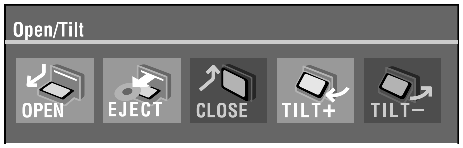
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

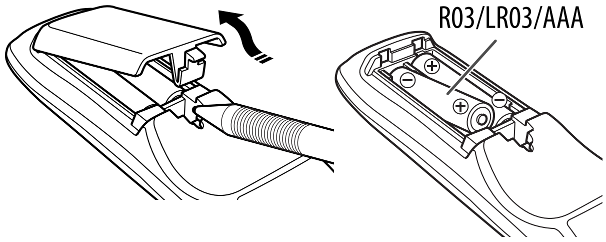
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

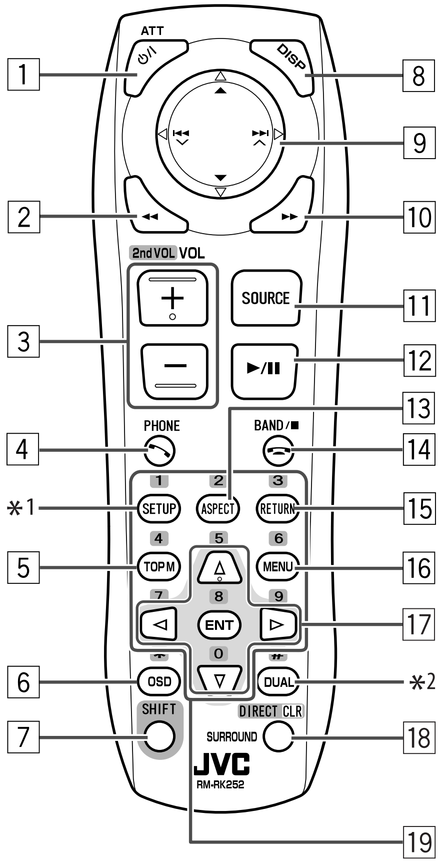
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features


ATT
⏻/I
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
✳
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252
1
2
3
4
✳1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
✳2
18
19

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “✳.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For DAB tuner operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Select the services.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for ensembles.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER"/"DAB": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18[*3]
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19[*3] Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER"/"DAB": Selects the preset station/service directly.

[*1] *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
[*2] *Not used for this unit.*
[*3] *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

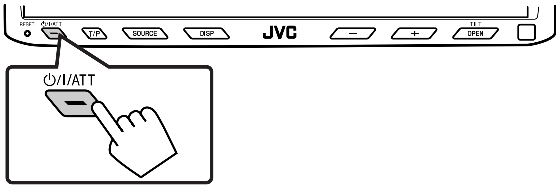
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

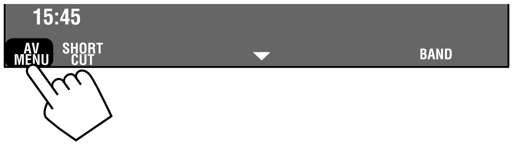
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 52)

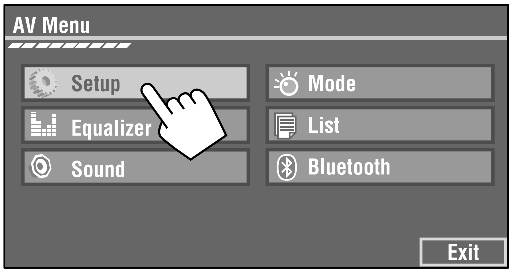
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

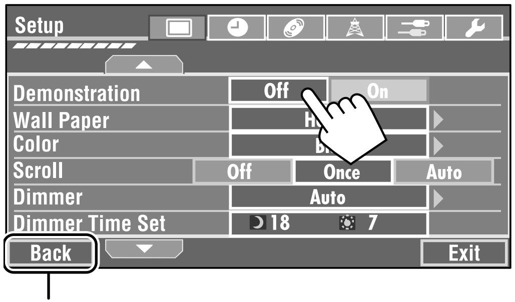

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

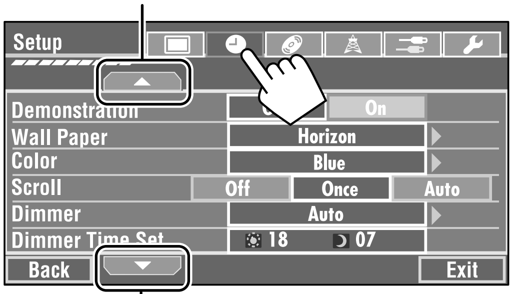
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 18 / 7

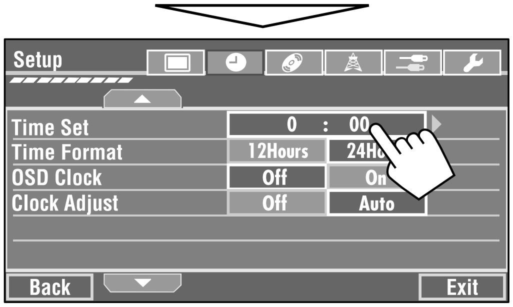
Return to the previous screen.

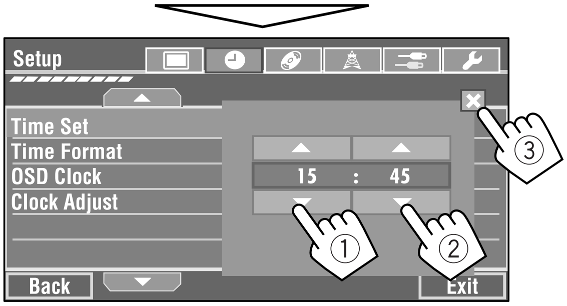
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

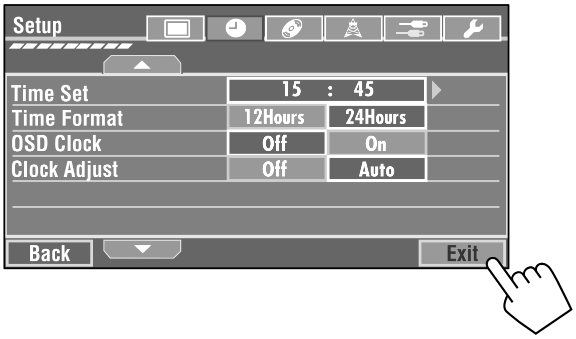

Setup
Demonstration: On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 18 / 07

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set: 0 : 00
Time Format: 12Hours / 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off / On
Clock Adjust: Off / Auto


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
Clock Adjust
15 : 45
①
②
③
Back
Exit

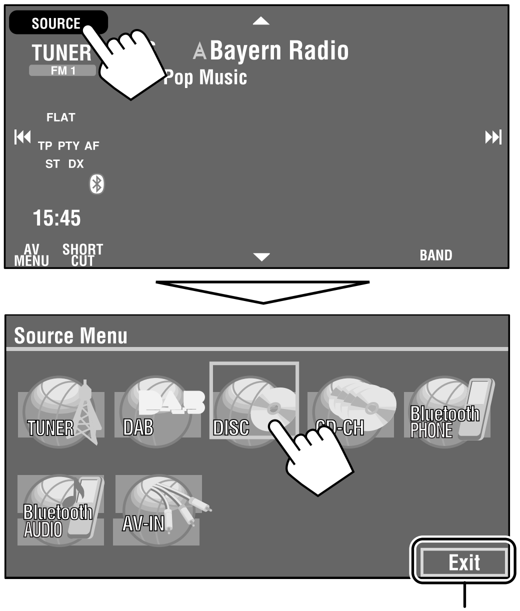
❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup
Time Set: 15 : 45
Time Format: 12Hours / 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off / On
Clock Adjust: Off / Auto

Selecting the playback source

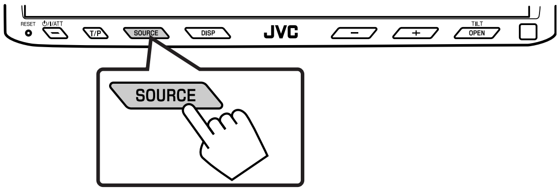
- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 55).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DAB
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit

Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
SOURCE

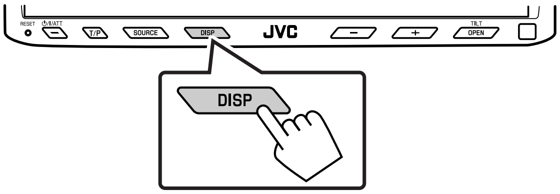
TUNER → **DAB** → **DISC (DVD/VCD/CD)** →**CD-CH, iPod,** or **EXT-IN** → **Bluetooth PHONE** → **Bluetooth AUDIO** → **AV-IN** → (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

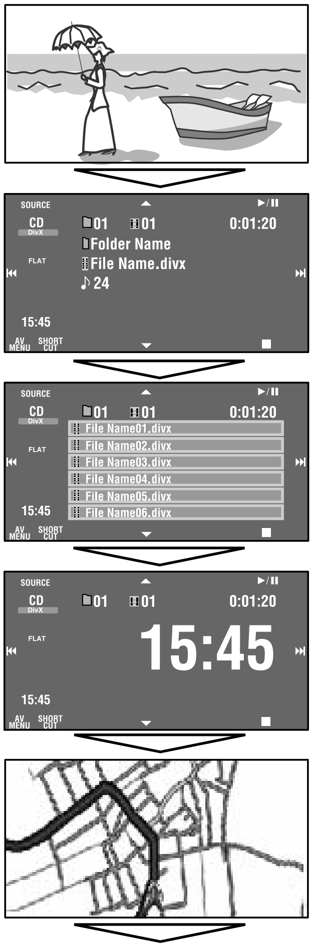
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
15:45

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen

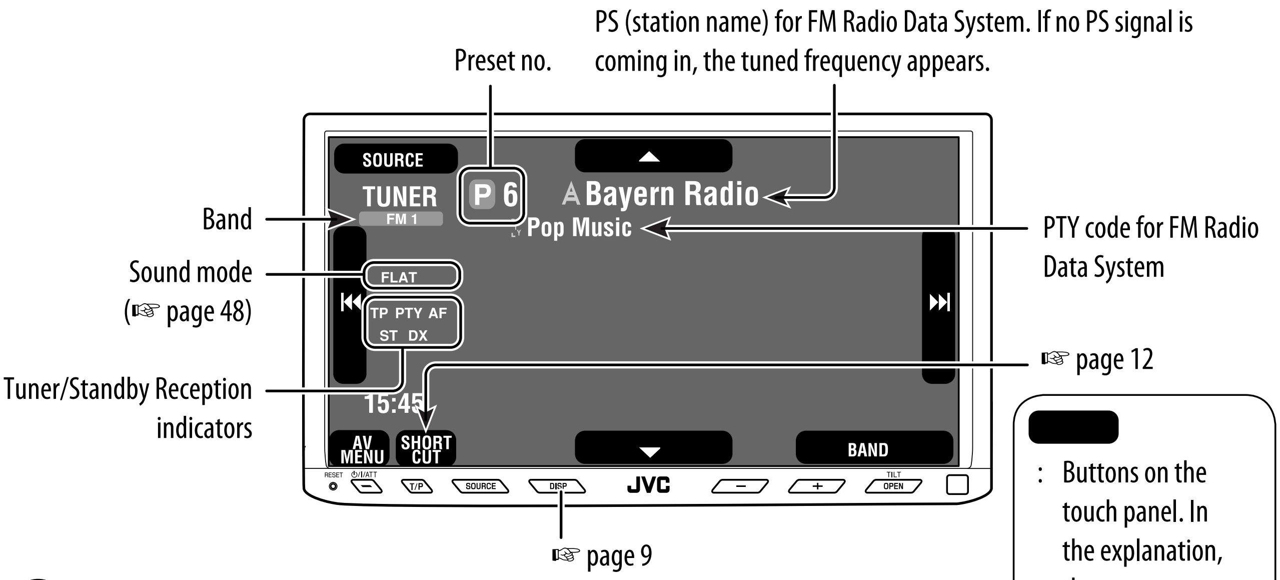
Track list

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 55)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
PS (station name) for FM Radio Data System. If no PS signal is coming in, the tuned frequency appears.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tuner/Standby Reception indicators
PTY code for FM Radio Data System
☞ page 12
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

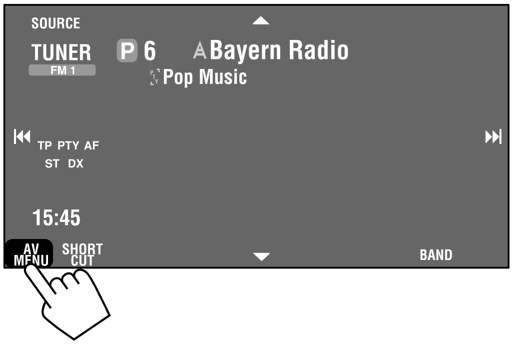
❷ **Press [BAND].** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

❸ **Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

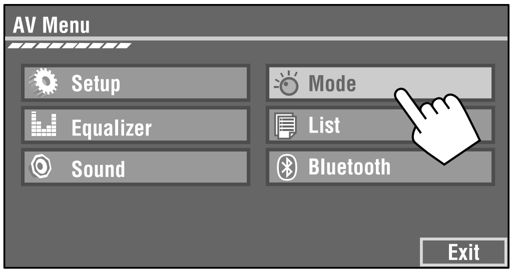
- Manual Search: Hold either [I◄◄]or [►►I] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

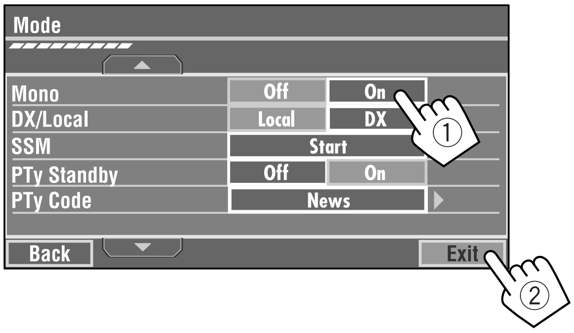
1 **Press [AV MENU].**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode

Mono	Off	On
DX/Local	Local	DX
SSM	Start	
PTy Standby	Off	On
PTy Code	News	

Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

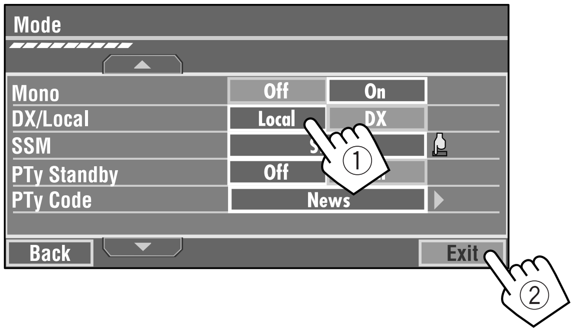
Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
①
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

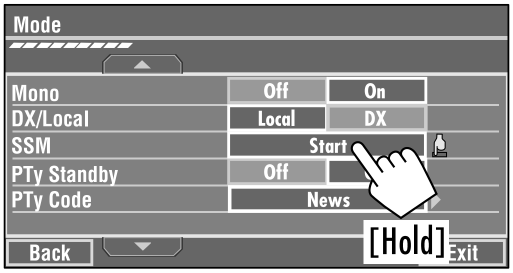
FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3

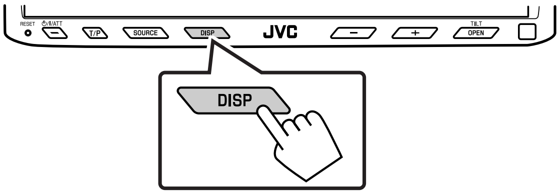

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
[Hold]

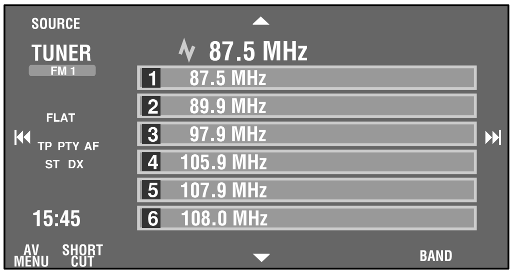
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

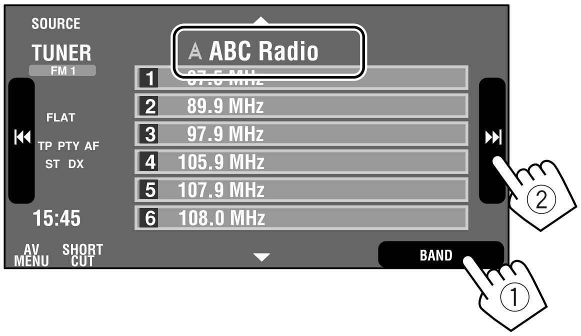
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 **Display the Preset List.**

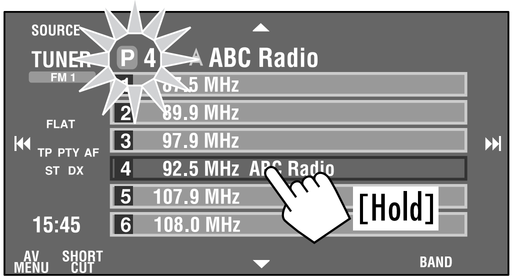

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
ABC Radio
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

3 **Select a preset number.**

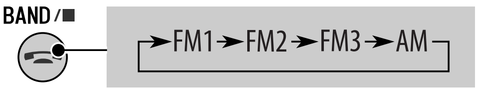

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
[Hold]
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

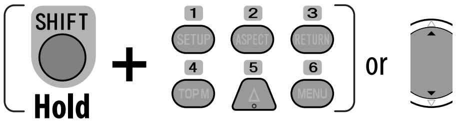
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

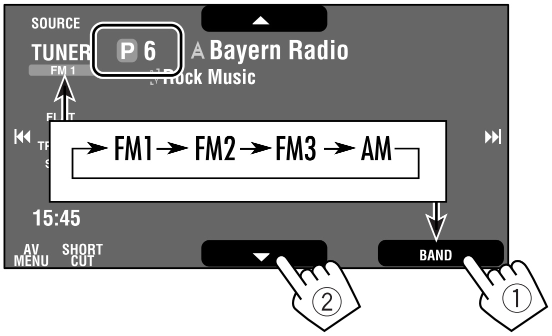

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

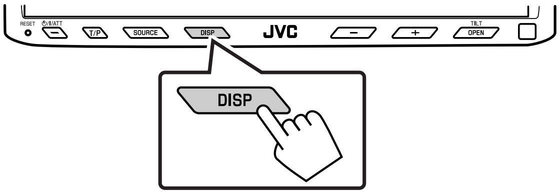
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

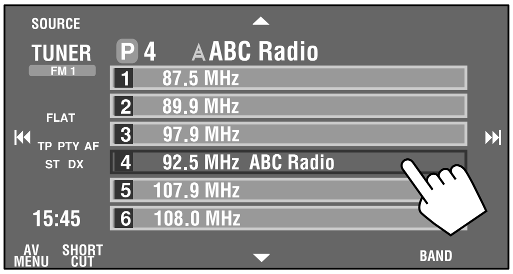

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Rock Music
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
DISP

2

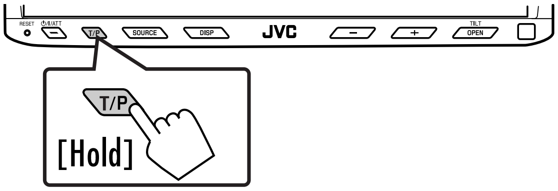

SOURCE
TUNER FM 1
P 4 ABC Radio
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

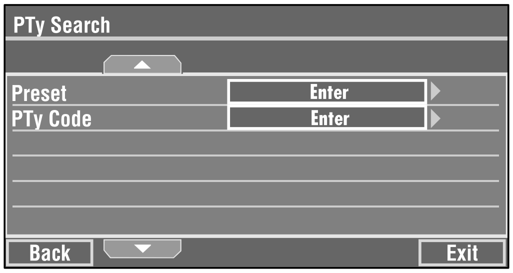
The following features are available only for FM Radio Data System stations.

Searching for FM Radio Data System programme—PTY Search

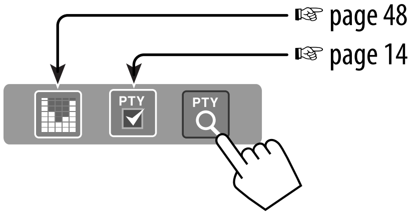
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

1 **Display <PTy Search> menu.**


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
T/P
[Hold]

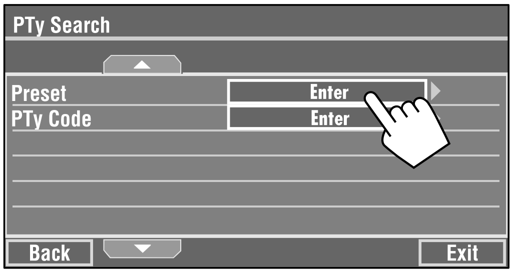

PTy Search
Preset Enter
PTy Code Enter
Back
Exit

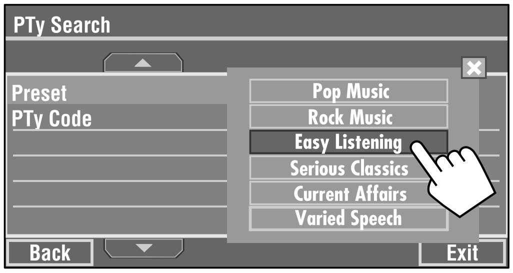
You can also easily access <**PTy Search**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...


☞ page 48
☞ page 14
PTY
PTY

2 Select a PTY code.

- In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.
  If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes.


PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit

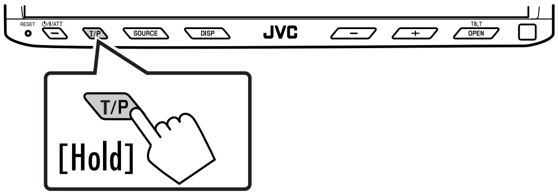

PTy Search
Preset
PTy Code
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Serious Classics
Current Affairs
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

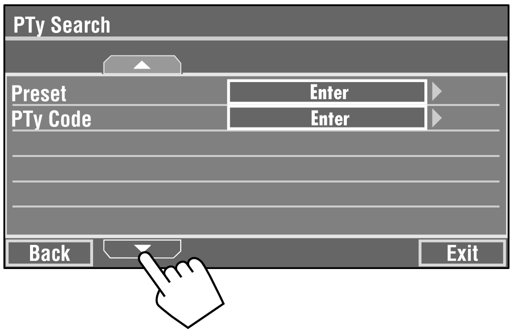
PTY Search starts.
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

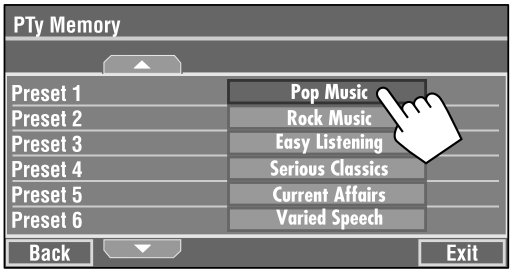
Available PTY codes:
News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

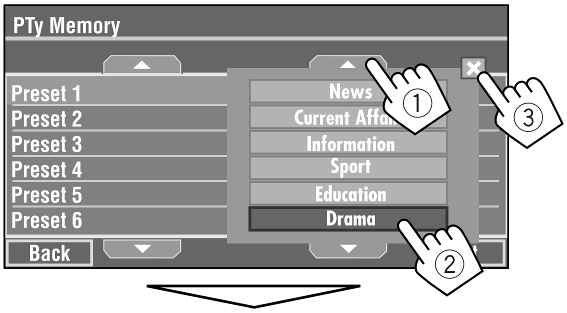
Storing your favorite programme types

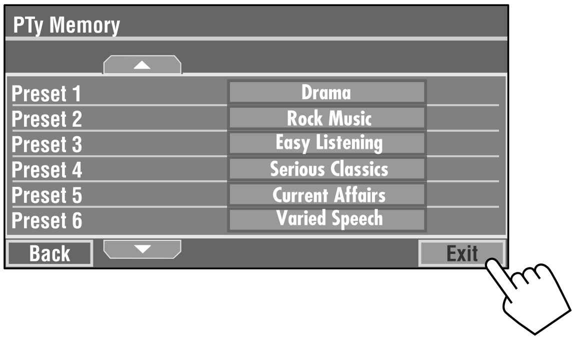
You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.
Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>


RESET
⏻/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
T/P
[Hold]


PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Pop Music
Preset 2
Rock Music
Preset 3
Easy Listening
Preset 4
Serious Classics
Preset 5
Current Affairs
Preset 6
Varied Speech
Back
Exit


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Preset 2
Preset 3
Preset 4
Preset 5
Preset 6
News
Current Affa
Information
Sport
Education
Drama
Back
①
②
③


PTy Memory
Preset 1
Drama
Preset 2
Rock Music
Preset 3
Easy Listening
Preset 4
Serious Classics
Preset 5
Current Affairs
Preset 6
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator
Press T/P on the monitor panel to activate.	**TP**
The unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (☞ page 54).	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the Radio Data System signals.	Flashes
Press T/P to deactivate.	Goes off

PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, press [**Mode**], then press [**On**] for <**PTy Standby**>. (☞ next column)	**PTY**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the Radio Data System signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**PTy Standby**> in step **3** on the next column.	Goes off

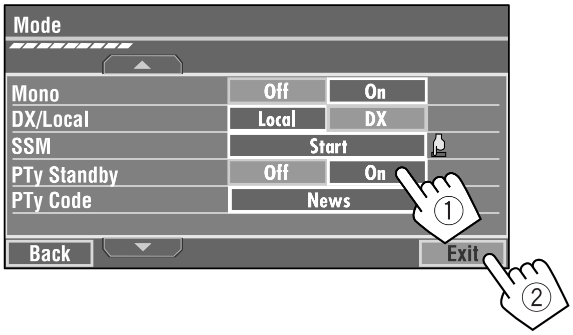
- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby/PTY Standby Reception also works for the DAB tuner and searches for the services.

To activate PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3



Mode

Mono Off On

DX/Local Local DX

SSM Start

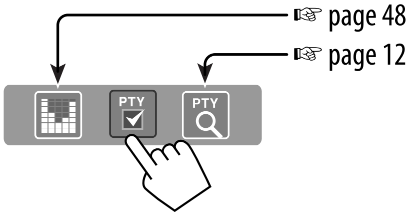
PTy Standby Off On

PTy Code News

Back Exit

PTY Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**News**>: the initial setting.

You can easily activate or deactivate the PTY Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

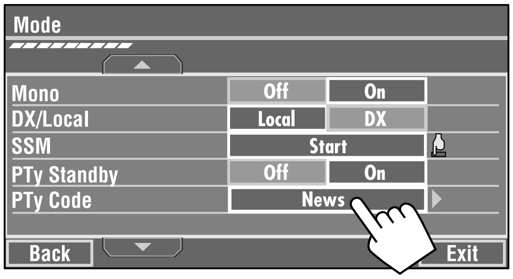


To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

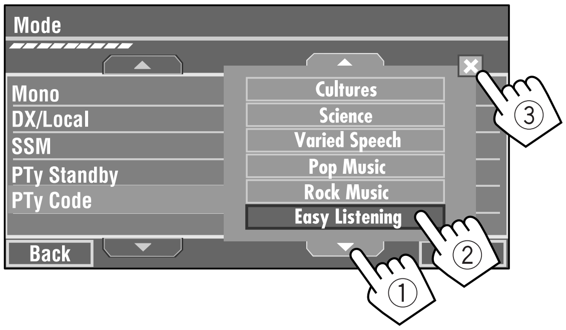
2 **Press [Mode].**

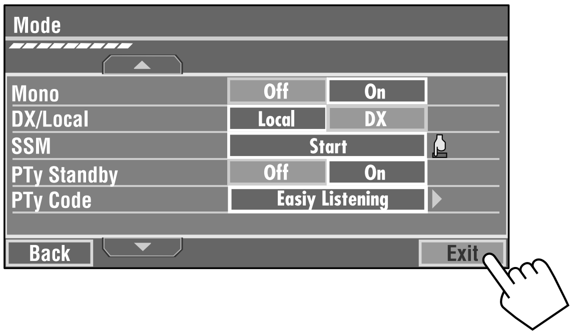
3


Mode
Mono Off On
DX/Local Local DX
SSM Start
PTy Standby Off On
PTy Code News
Back
Exit

4 **Select your favorite PTY code.**

Ex.: Selecting <Easy Listening>

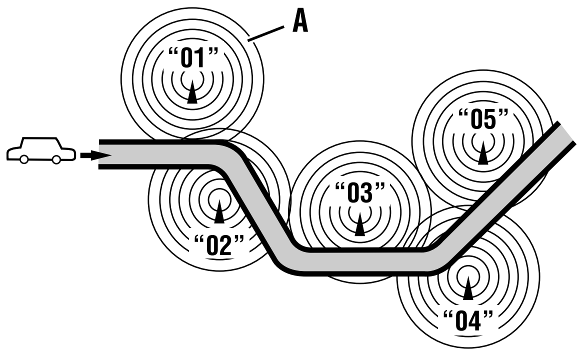

Mode
Mono
DX/Local
SSM
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Cultures
Science
Varied Speech
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Back
①
②
③


Mode
Mono Off On
DX/Local Local DX
SSM Start
PTy Standby Off On
PTy Code Easiy Listening
Back
Exit

Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM Radio Data System station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)


A
"01"
"02"
"03"
"04"
"05"

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see <**AF Regional**>. (☞ page 54)

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)." (☞ page 42)

Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the FM Radio Data System preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another station broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting. To activate this function, select <**On**> for <**Program Search**>.(☞ page 54)

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.

Disc operations

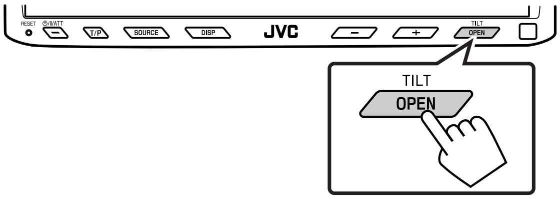
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

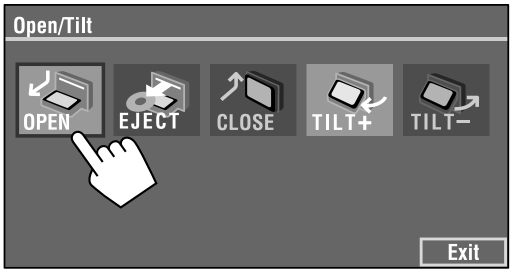
❶ Open the monitor panel.



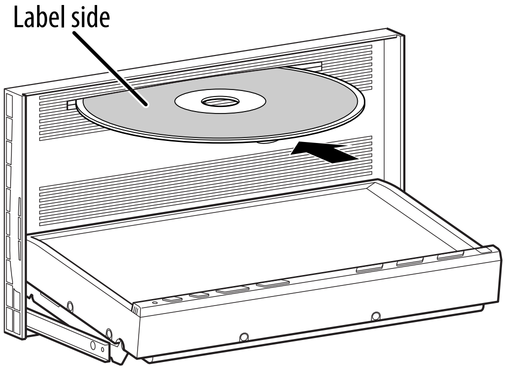
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

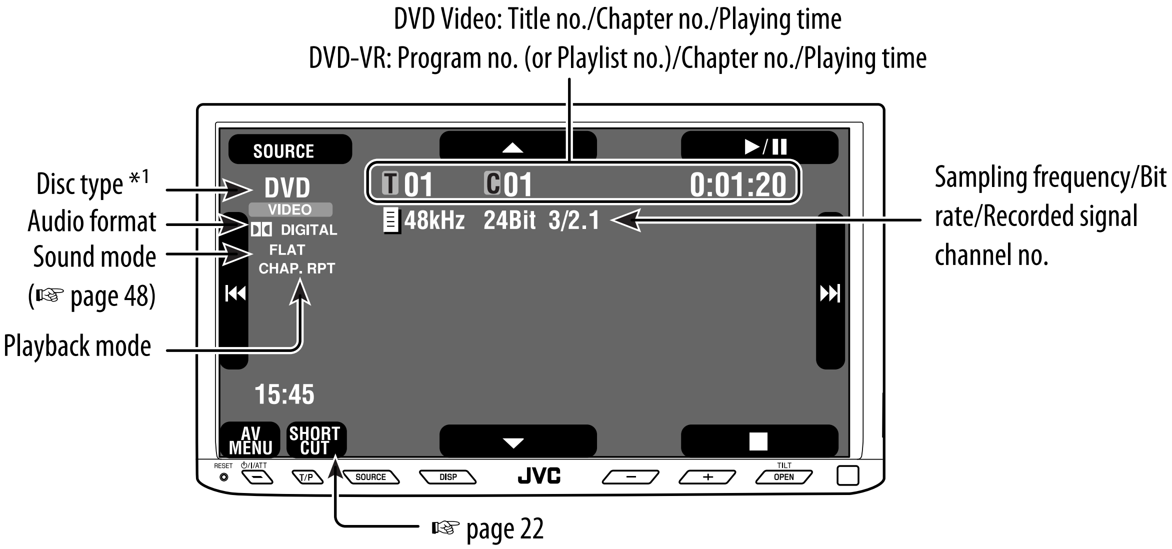
When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 65)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
☞ page 22
SOURCE
▲
▶/II
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T 01
C 01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

[▶ / II]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

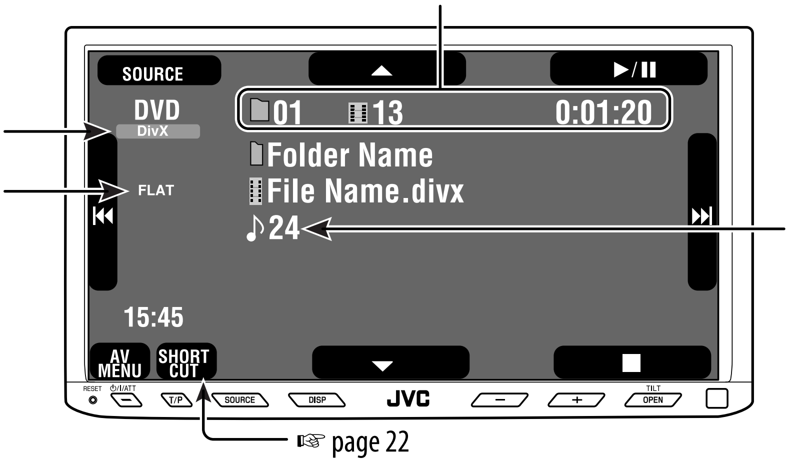
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX **MPEG** **JPEG**

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.


SOURCE
▲
▶/II
DVD
DivX
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Disc type

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

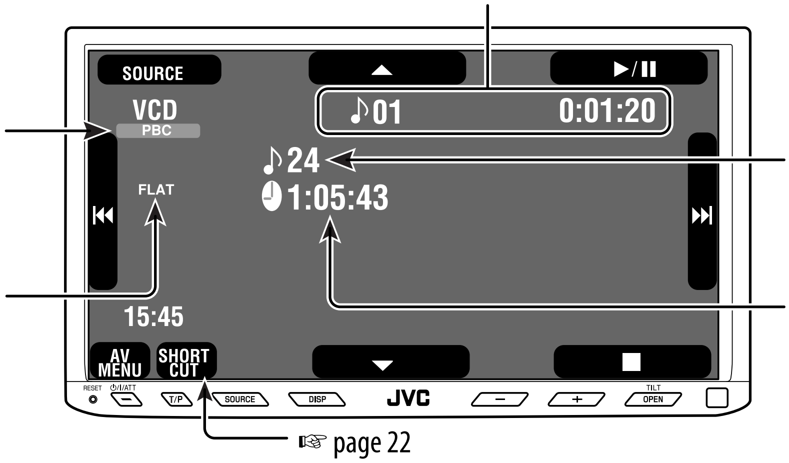
Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 22

[▶ / II]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD

Track no./Playing time


SOURCE
▲
▶/II
VCD
PBC
♪01
0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

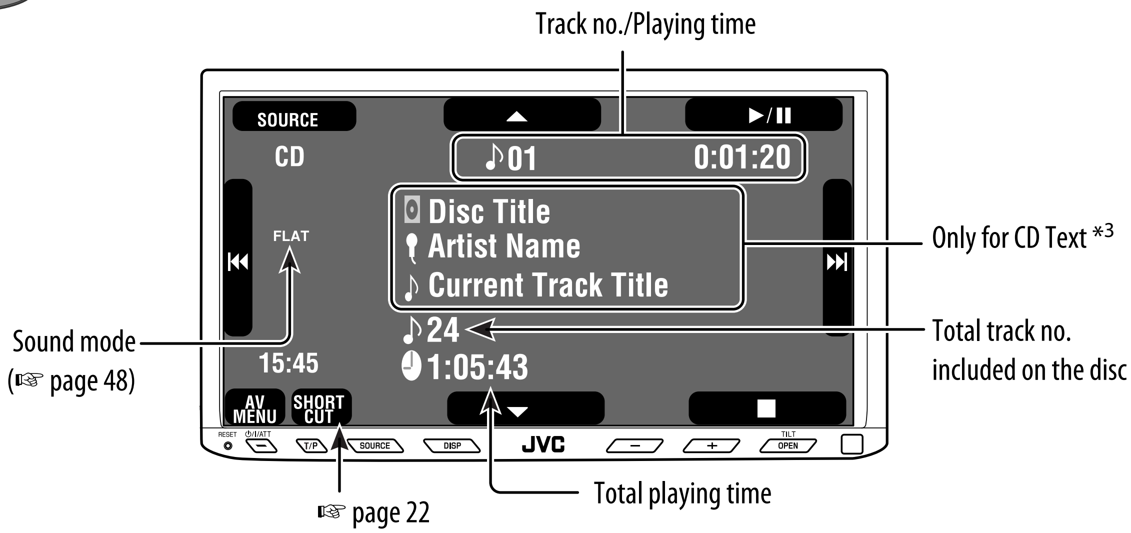
☞ page 22

[▶ / II]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

[*1] *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

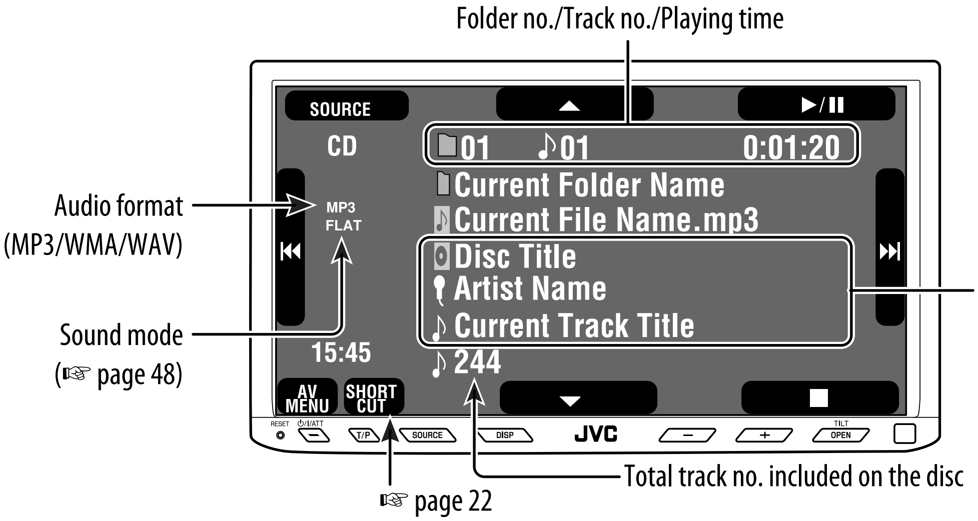
[*2] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
♪24
1:05:43
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
Only for CD Text *3
Total track no. included on the disc
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
☞ page 22
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/ WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪244
MP3
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
☞ page 22
Total track no. included on the disc

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

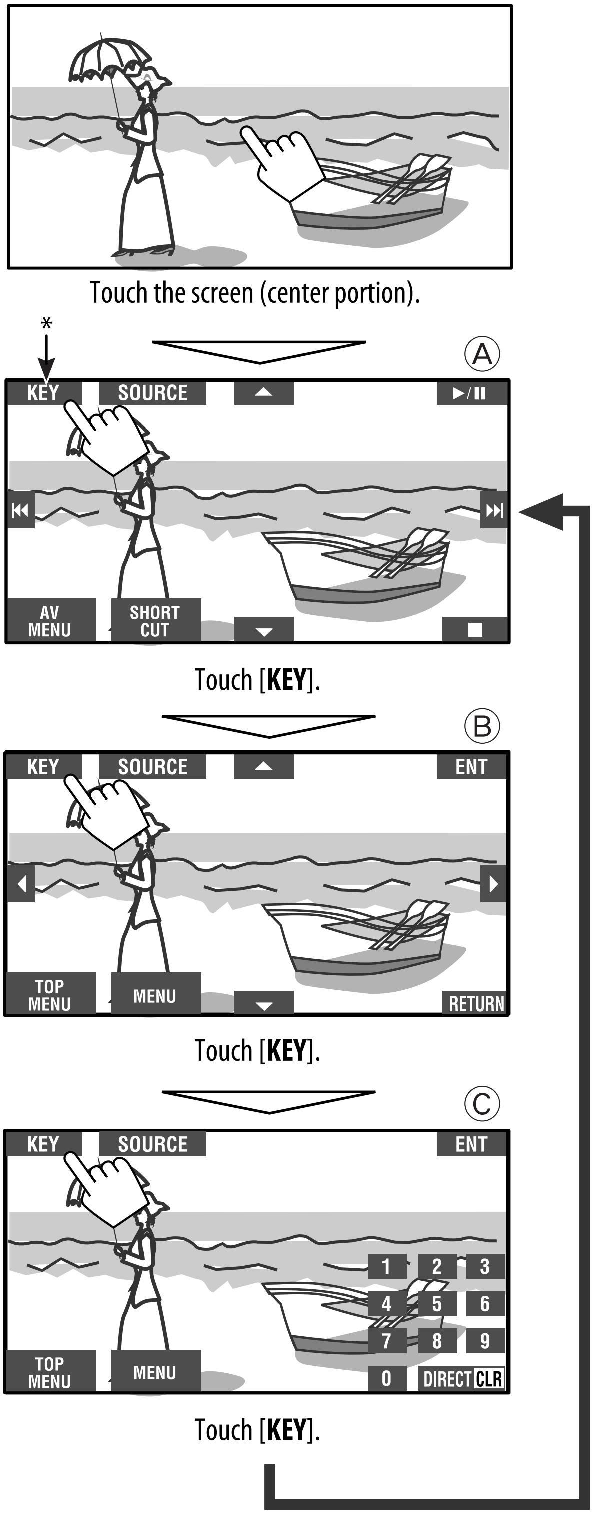
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 52)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

☞ pages 23 to 27 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / **II**]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

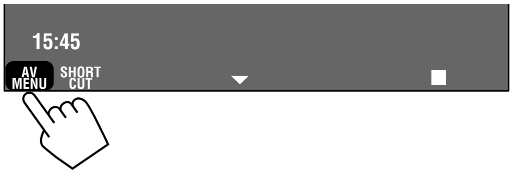
To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

Selecting playback modes

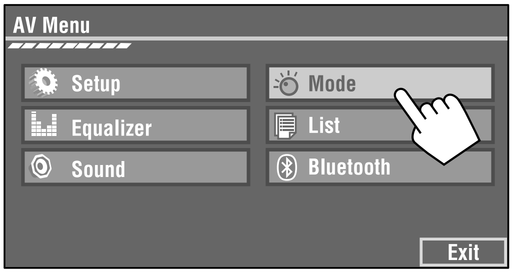
You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

Ex.: To select Track Repeat

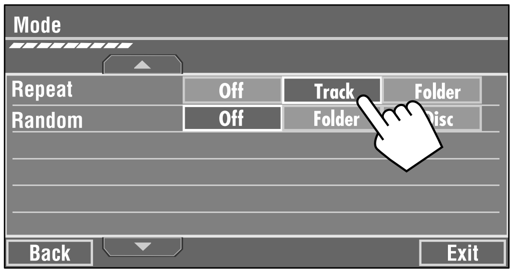
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

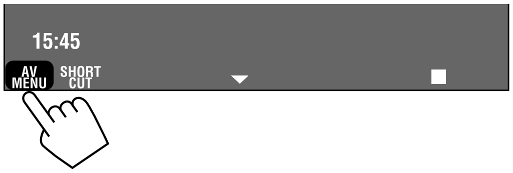
---

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

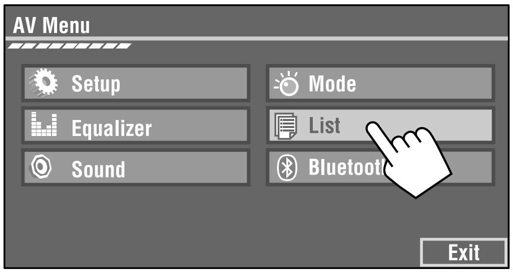
Selecting tracks on the list

If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

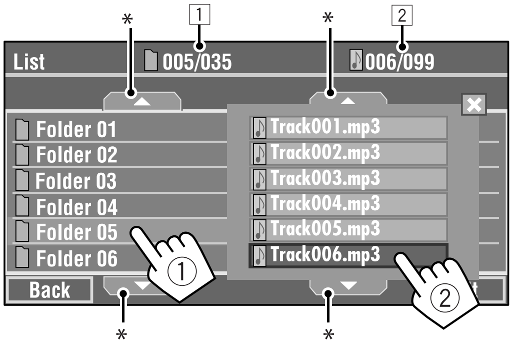
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 **Select a folder (①), then a track (②).**

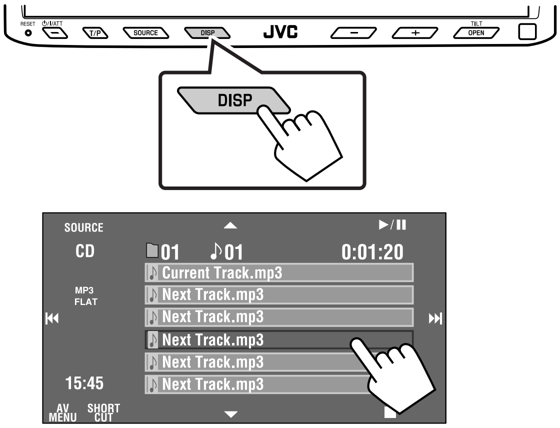

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

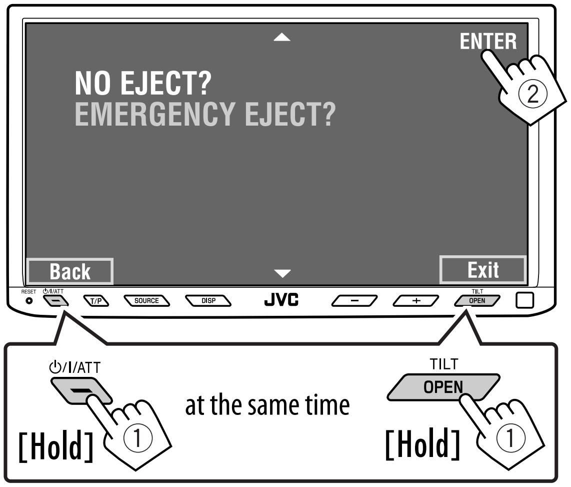
You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP
SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

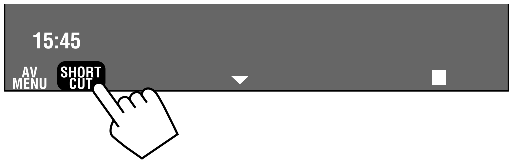

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

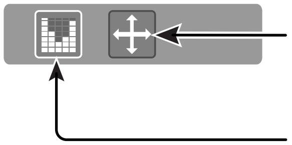
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

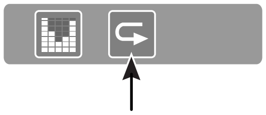
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 52)

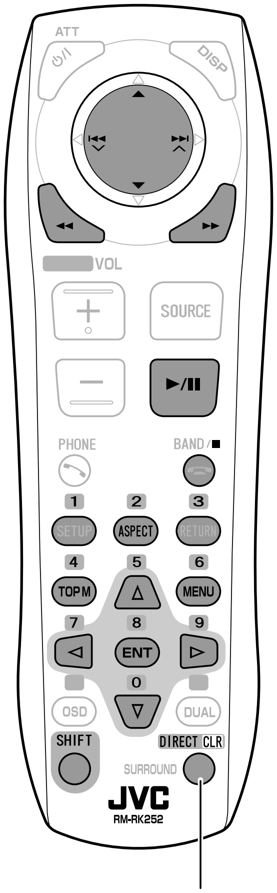
Sound mode (☞ page 48)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 21)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ :	Stop playback.
►/II :	Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).
◄◄ ►► :	Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.) Slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭ :	*Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause). *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)
▲ ▼ :	Select title (during playback or pause).
2 ASPECT :	Select aspect ratio.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :	Select chapter. Select title (when not playing).
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :	Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

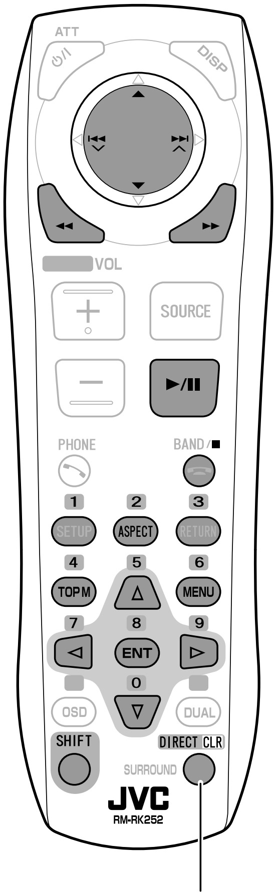
---

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 28 and 29)


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD VR

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3

▲ ▼ : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR ➡ 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice ➡ 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 28)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

3 8 ENT To erase the screen.

[*1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[*2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[*3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

DivX MPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4 (No sound can be heard.)

◁⏮ ⏭▷ : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

△ ▽ : Select folder.

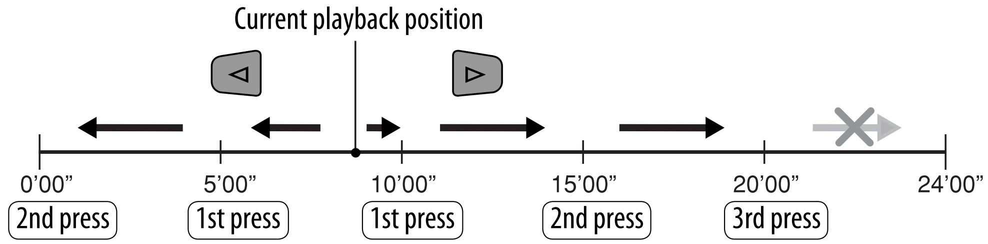
2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT/CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT/CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.



Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

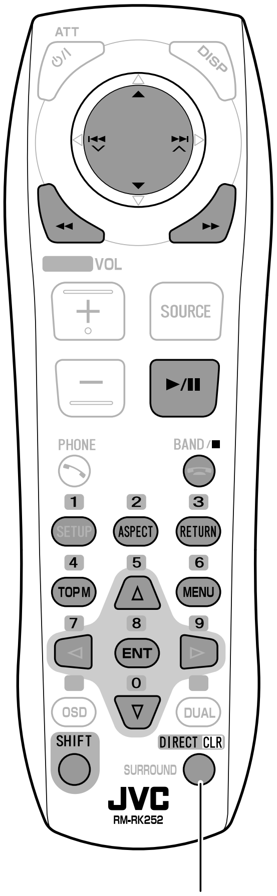
2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

---

*4 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3*

*5 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear):
Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

(⏮ ⏭) : Select file.

(▲ ▼) : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*1
Forward slow motion during pause*2
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*
*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select track.

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select folder.

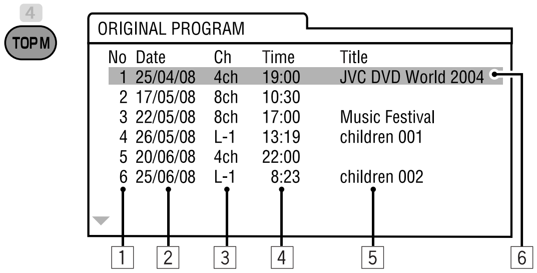
*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

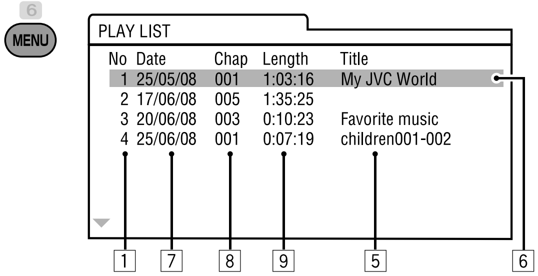
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

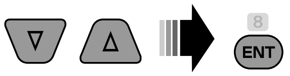
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



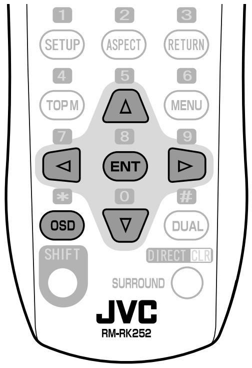
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

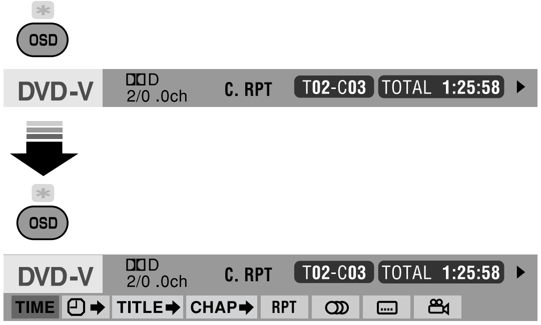
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

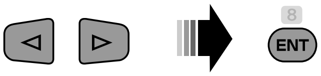

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
✱
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 29)


✱
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
✱
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

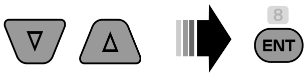
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

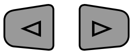


3 Make a selection.

If a pop-up menu appears...

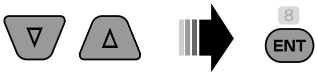


- For entering time/numbers...



:

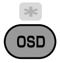
Move the entry position



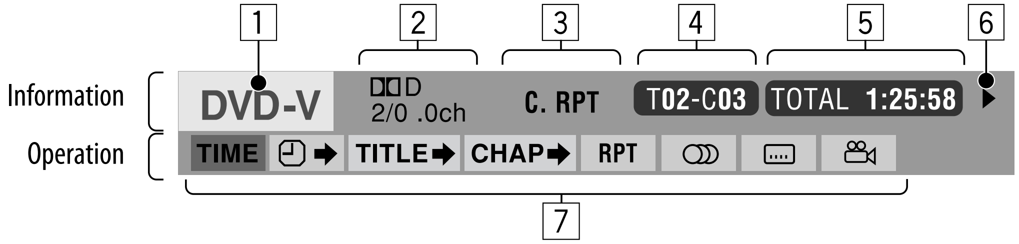
:

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode *1

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track *2
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track *2

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀ / ▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀I / I▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
◷➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play *1
RND	Random play *1
◎◎	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
[....]	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

---

*1 ☞ *page 21*

*2 *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

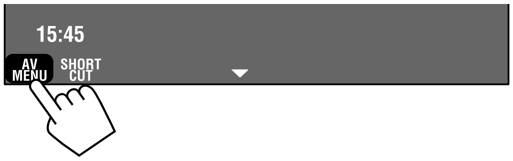
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

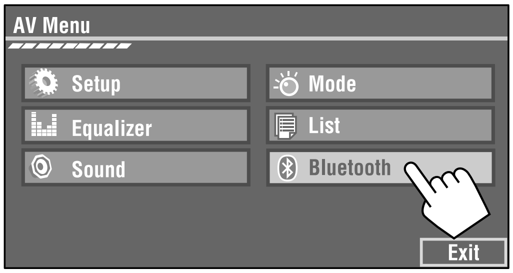
Preparation:

Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

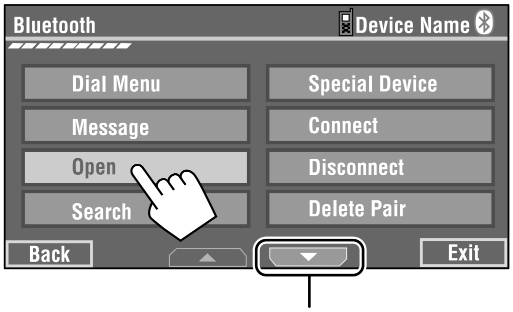
1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

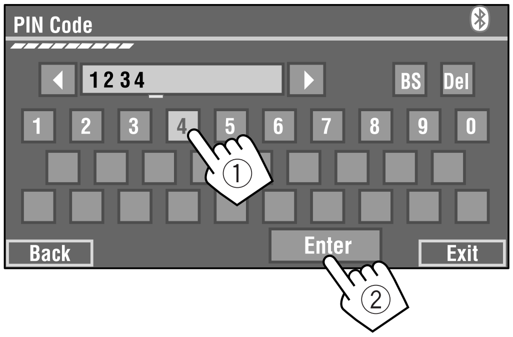

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 58 and 59).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

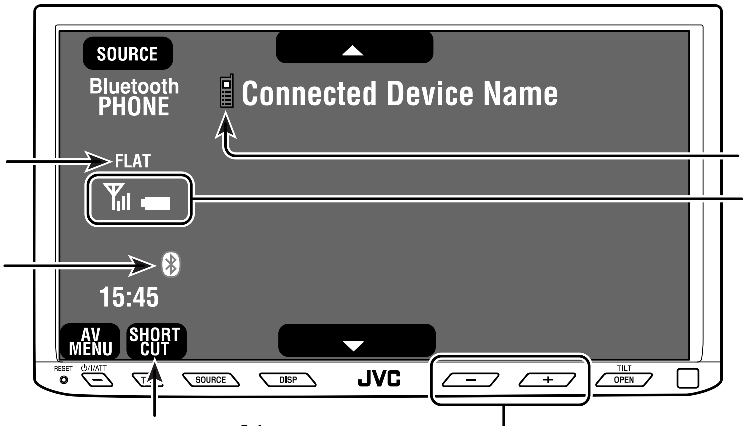
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone



Sound mode (☞ page 48)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

☞ page 34

*1 Status of the device Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device)

Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**] Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function

[▲ ▼] Select the registered device

("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

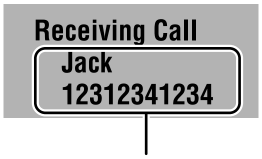
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 58 and 59

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 59)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 59)

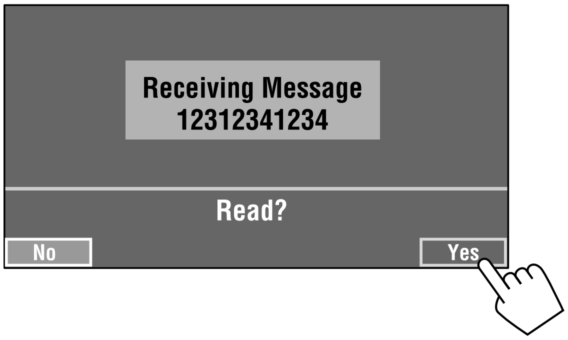
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 59)


Receiving Message
12312341234
Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

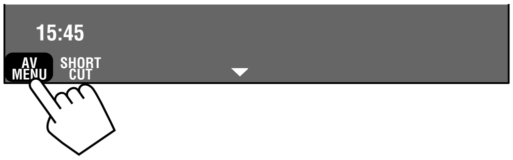
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 58)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

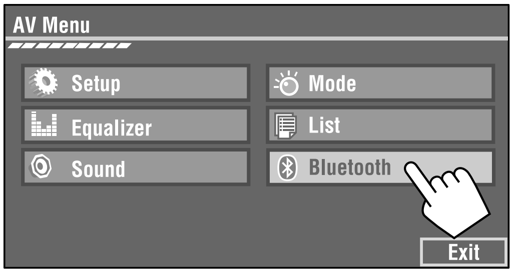
Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 58 and 59)

To make a call

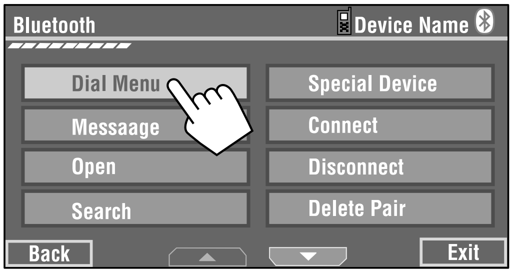
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

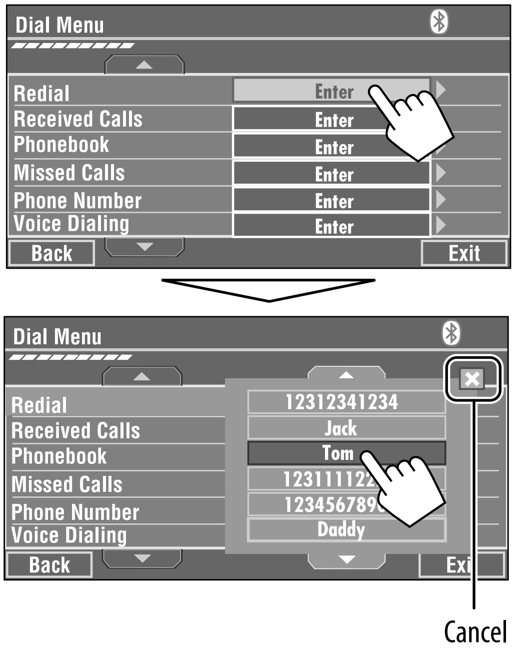
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Cancel

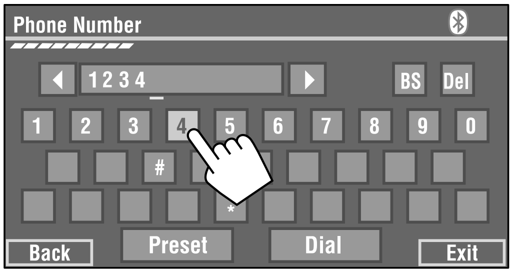
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 34).
Voice Dialing	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

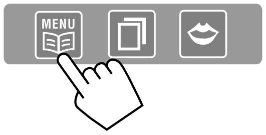
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

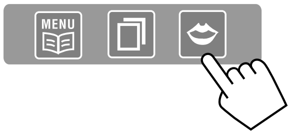
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 35)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

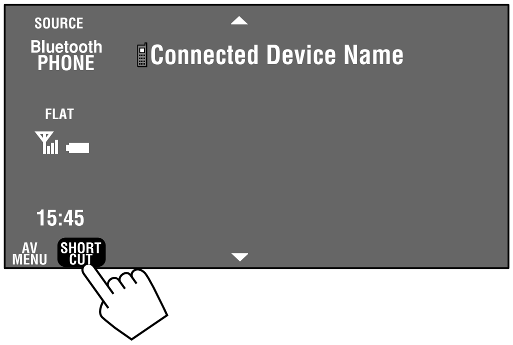
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



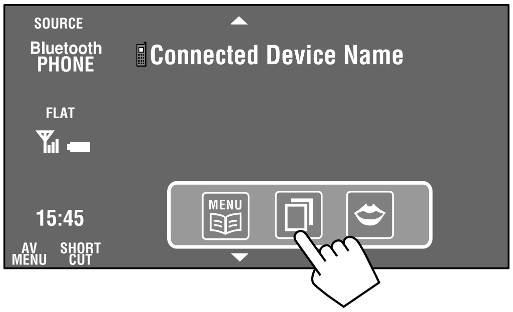
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

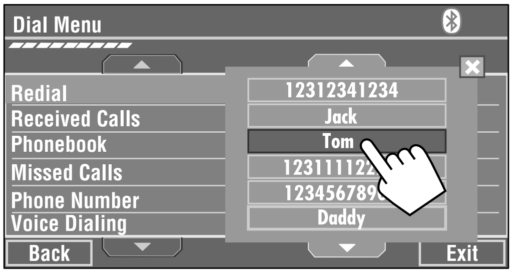
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

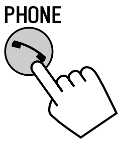
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
123111122
123456789
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



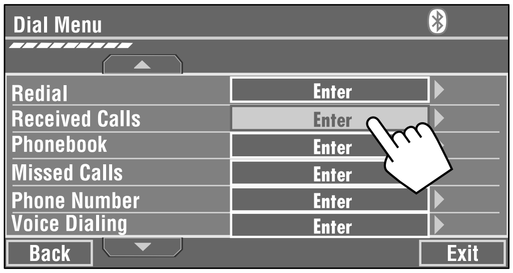
[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

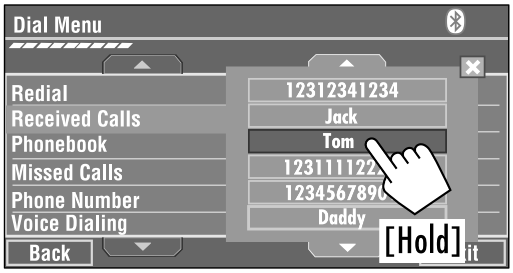
1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**].
② Press [**Bluetooth**].
③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

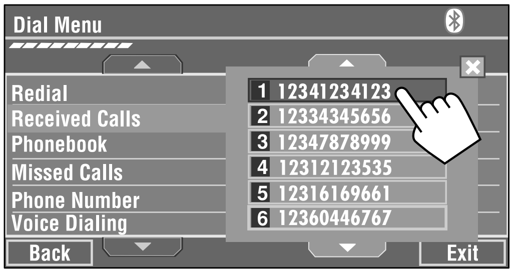

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
[Hold]
Back
Exit

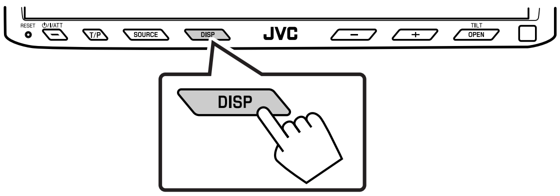
3 Select a preset number.

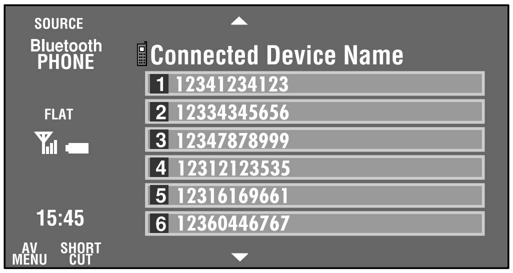

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

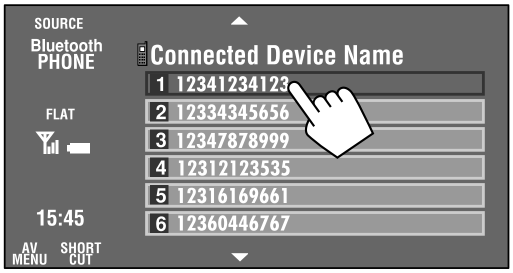
To call a preset number

1

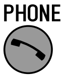

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

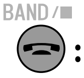
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

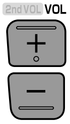
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.



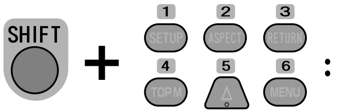
:
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).



: End the call.

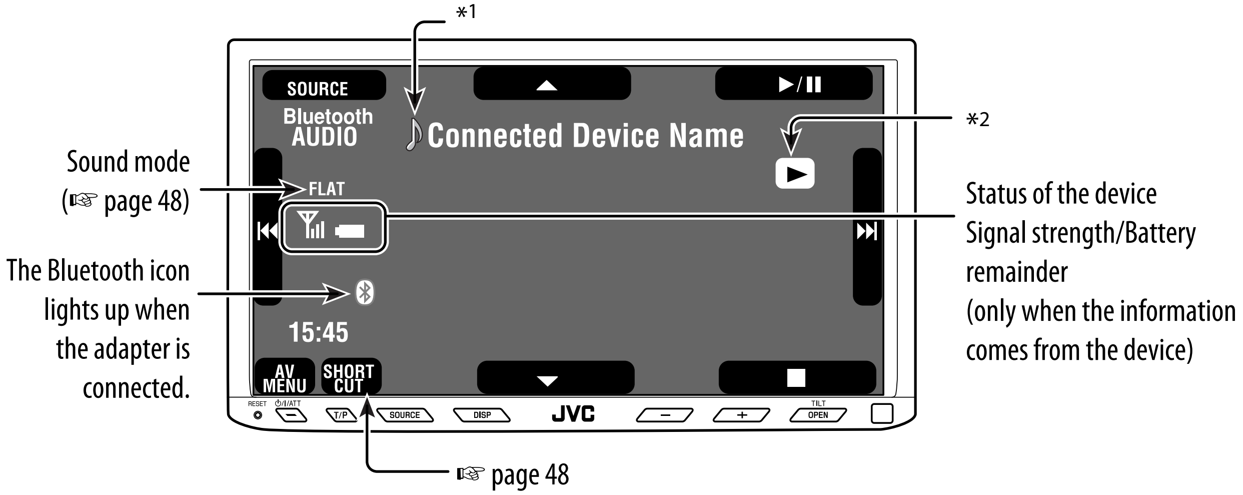


: Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU

[Hold] : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
*2
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)
☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, 📱 appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

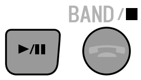
*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

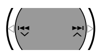
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

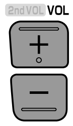
❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.



: Start and pause playback.

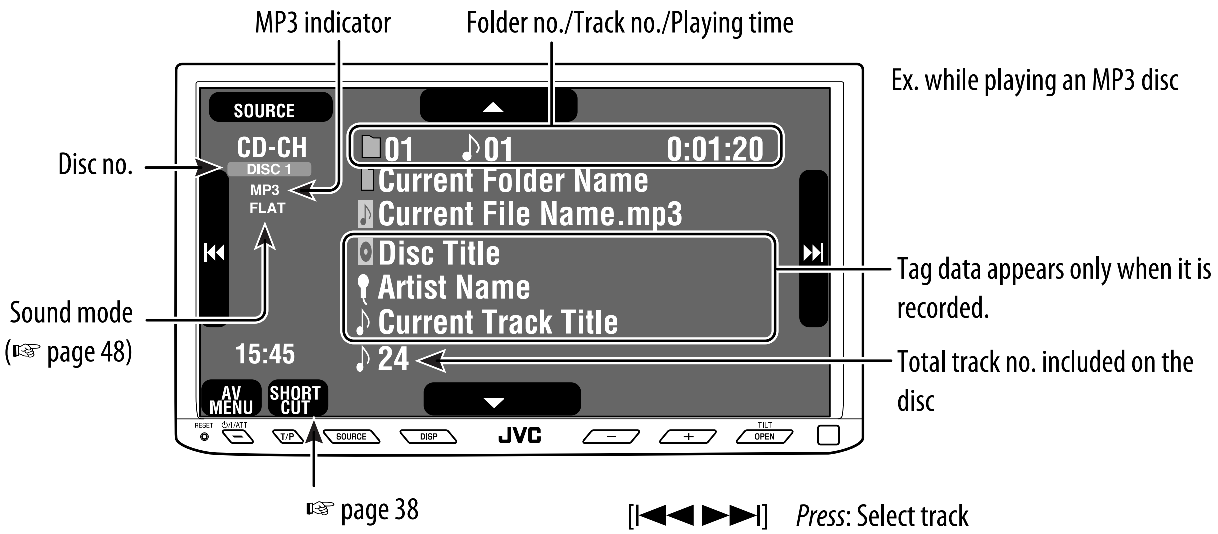

: Reverse/forward skip



: Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 38
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01
01
0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
15:45
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Ex. while playing an MP3 disc

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folders (only for MP3) *Hold*: Display Disc list

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

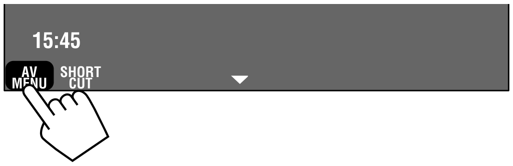
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

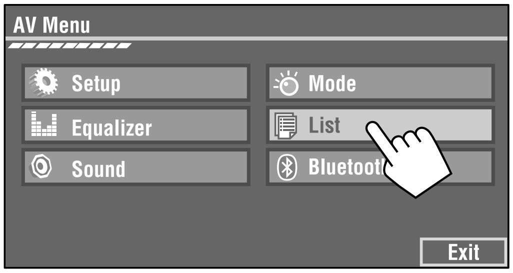
❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

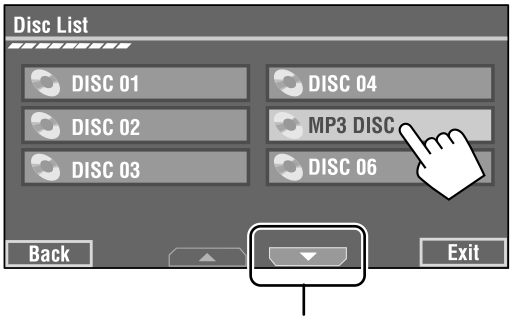
❷


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

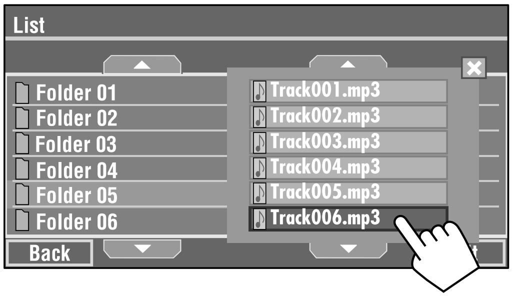

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 22)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

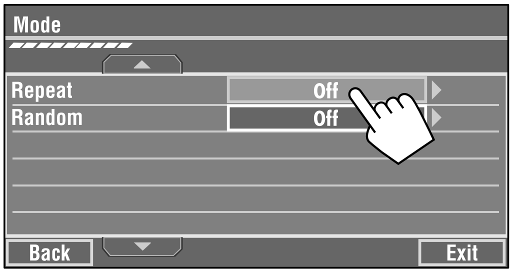
- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

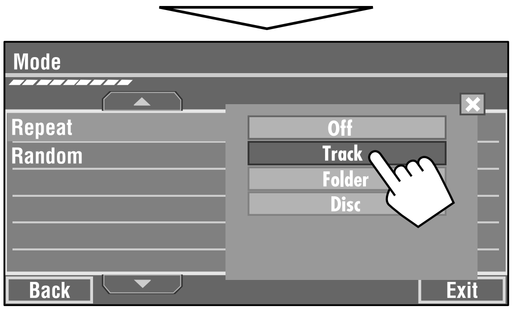
Selecting playback modes

You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1. **Press [AV MENU].**
2. **Press [Mode].**
3.





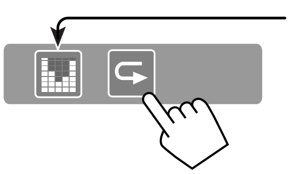
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

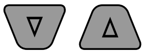
Disc type	Repeat	Random
 CD	**Track**: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
 MP3	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

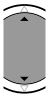
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

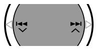
☞ page 48



You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

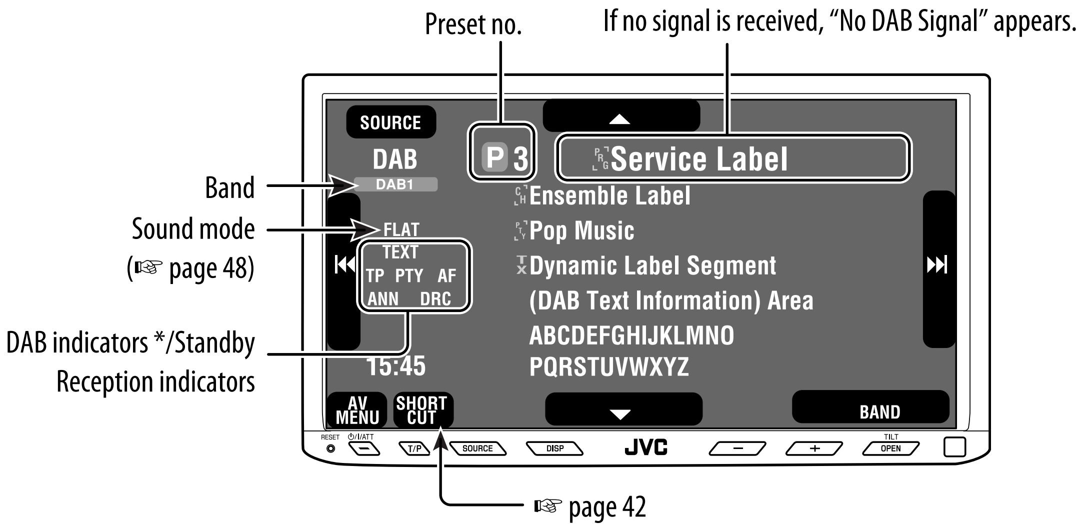
 : Select disc.

 : Select folder (MP3 only).



- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the DAB tuner


Preset no.
If no signal is received, "No DAB Signal" appears.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
DAB indicators */Standby
Reception indicators
☞ page 42
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 3
Service Label
Ensemble Label
Pop Music
Dynamic Label Segment
(DAB Text Information) Area
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO
PQRSTUVWXYZ
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

*	*While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [BAND].**

→ DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 ─┐ (back to DAB1)

❸ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◄◄]or [►►|] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.

❹ **Press [▼] or [▲] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

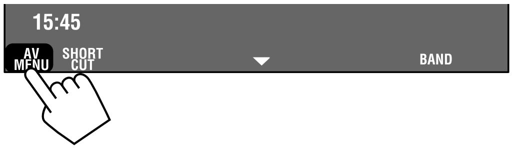
ENGLISH

When surrounding sounds are noisy

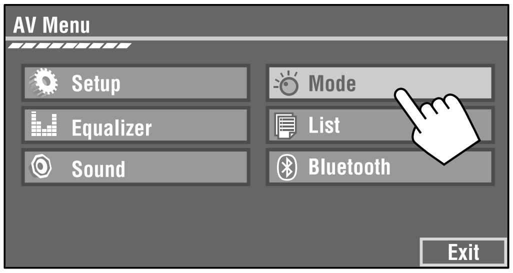
Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

- The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals.

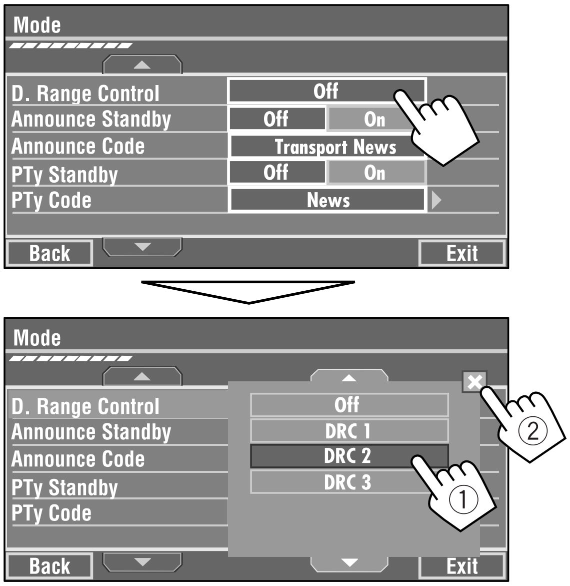
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

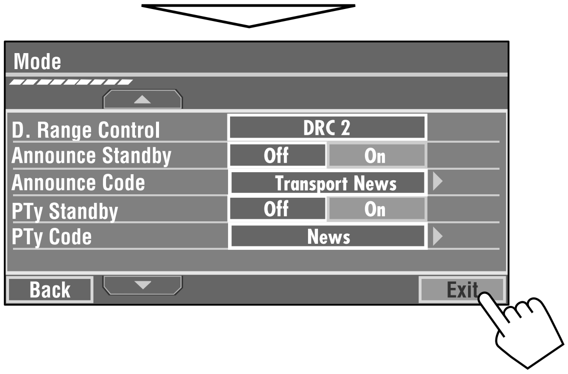
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

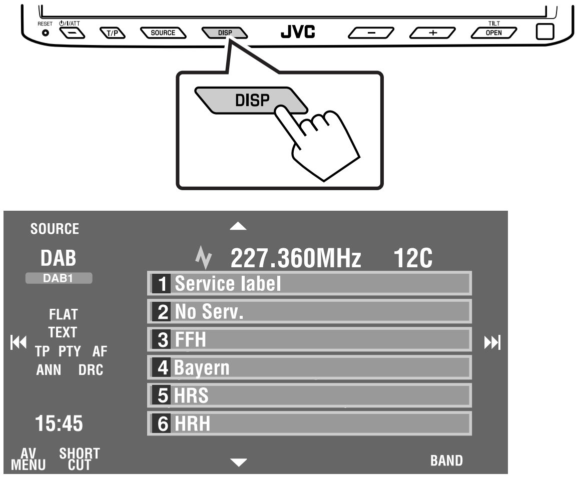

Mode
D. Range Control
Off
Announce Standby
Off
On
Announce Code
Transport News
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Off
DRC 1
DRC 2
DRC 3
①
②
Back
Exit

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

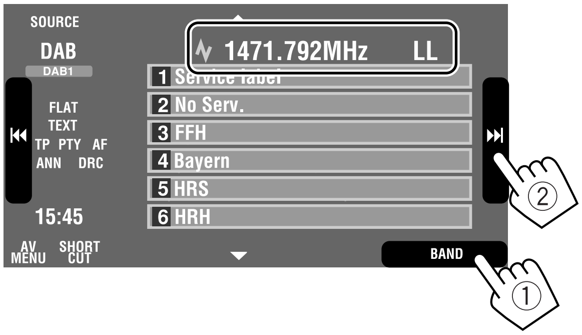

Mode
D. Range Control
DRC 2
Announce Standby
Off
On
Announce Code
Transport News
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit

Manual presetting

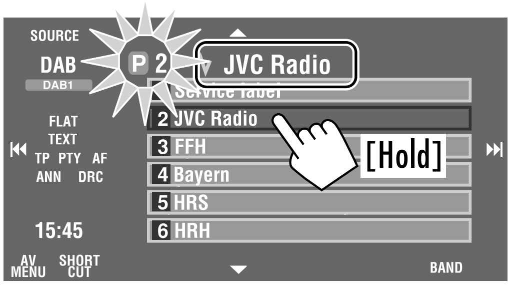
1 **Display the Preset List.**


T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
DISP
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
227.360MHz
12C
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a service you want to preset.**


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
1471.792MHz
LL
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

3 **Select a preset number.**

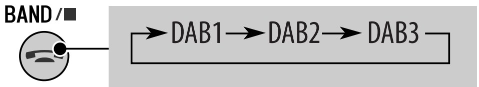

SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 2
JVC Radio
Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
[Hold]
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The service selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 2.

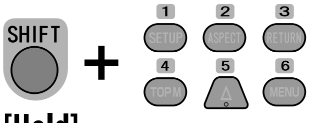
Selecting preset services

On the remote:

1


BAND/■
DAB1
DAB2
DAB3

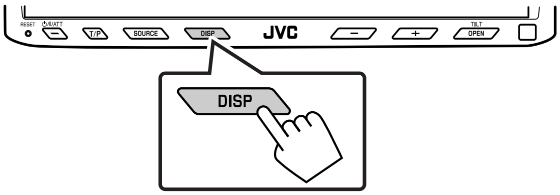
2


SHIFT
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU

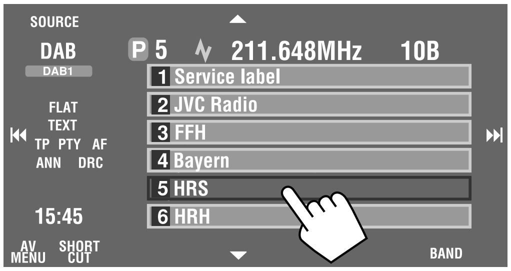
[Hold]

On the unit:

1


RESET
ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 5
211.648MHz
10B
1 Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 14 for FM Radio Data System stations.

- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Activating/deactivating Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

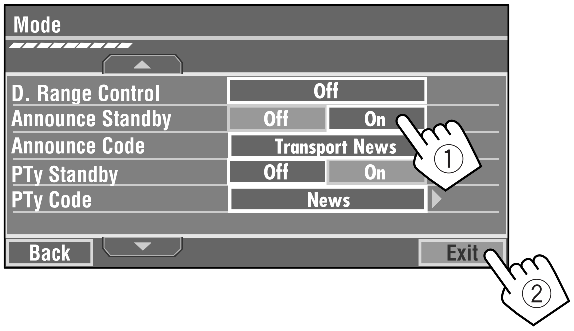
Announcement Standby Reception	Indicator
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, then select <**Mode**>, press [**On**] for <**Announce Standby**>. (☞ below)	**ANN**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite service from any source other than FM/AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another service providing the related signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**Announce Standby**> (☞ below).	Goes off

To activate Announcement Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3


Mode

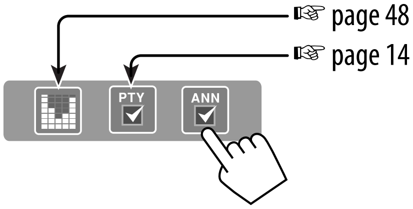
D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

Back
Exit
①
②

Announcement Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**Transport News**>: the initial setting.

Continued on the next page

You can easily activate and deactivate Announcement Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

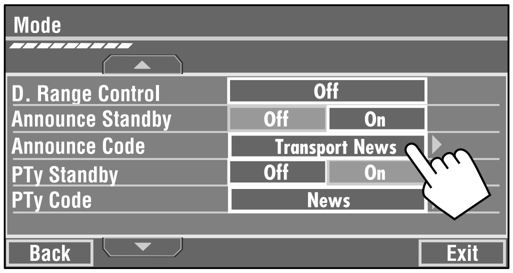


To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception

1 Press [AV MENU].

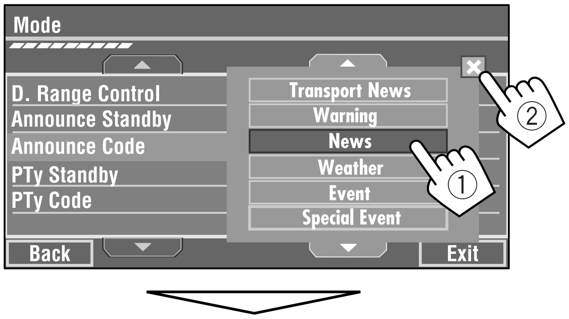
2 Press [Mode].

3



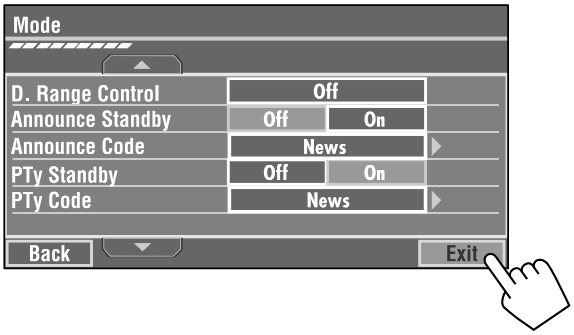
Mode
D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

4 Select your favorite announcement type.



Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code

Transport News
Warning
News
Weather
Event
Special Event



Mode
D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

Available announcement types:
Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News

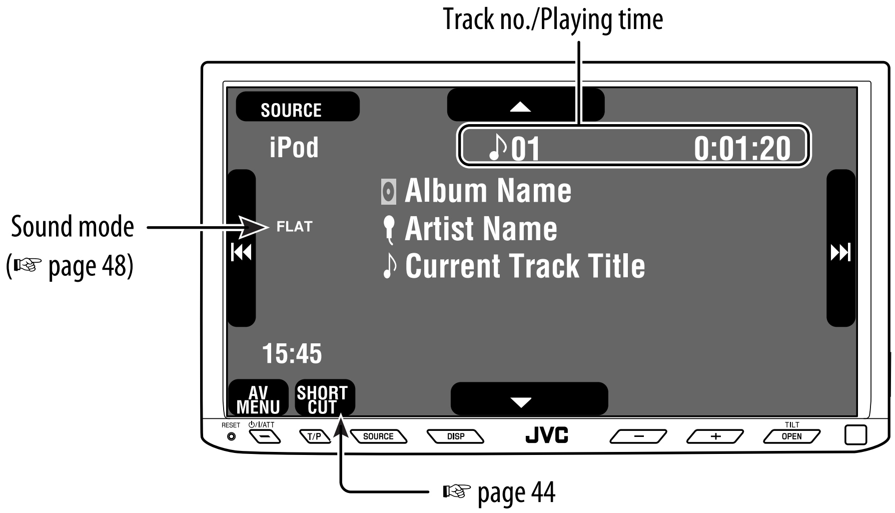
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM Radio Data System station broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM Radio Data System station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM Radio Data System station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, select <**Off**> for <**DAB AF**>. (☞ page 54)

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 44

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

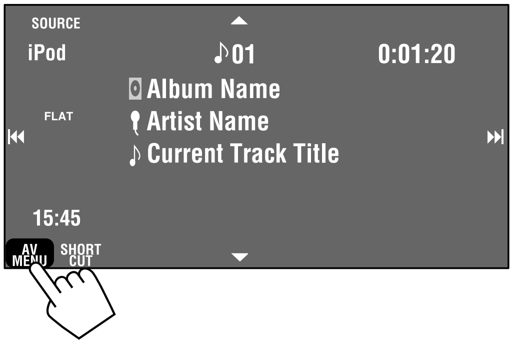
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

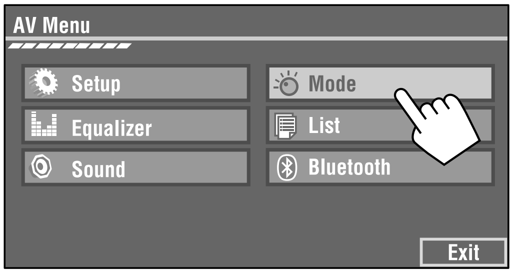
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

Selecting playback modes

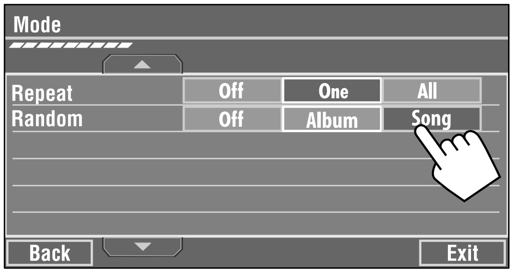
1


SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

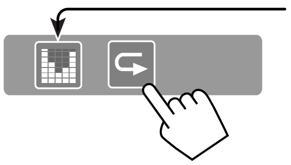
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

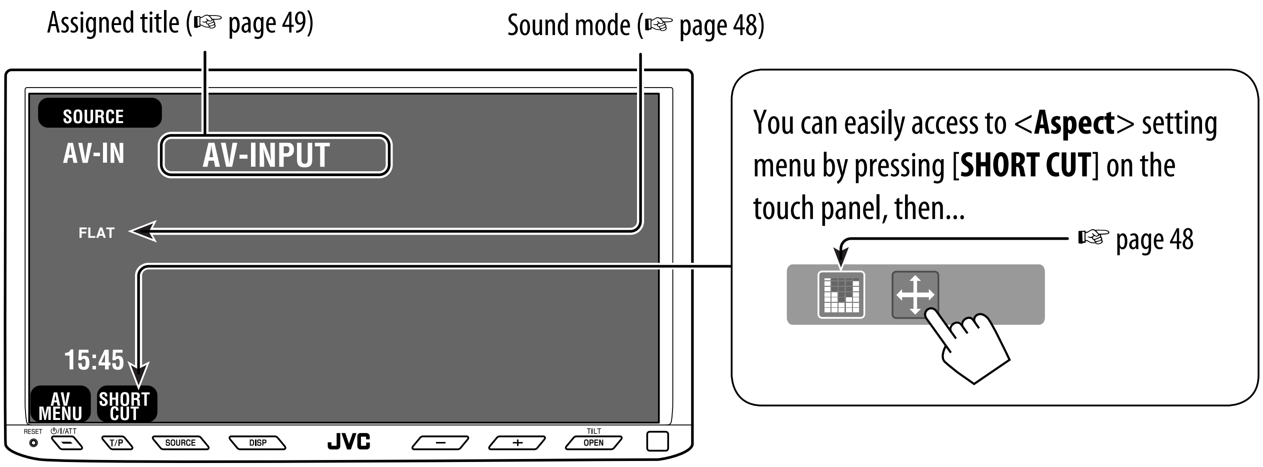
☞ page 48



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


Assigned title (☞ page 49)
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 48

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

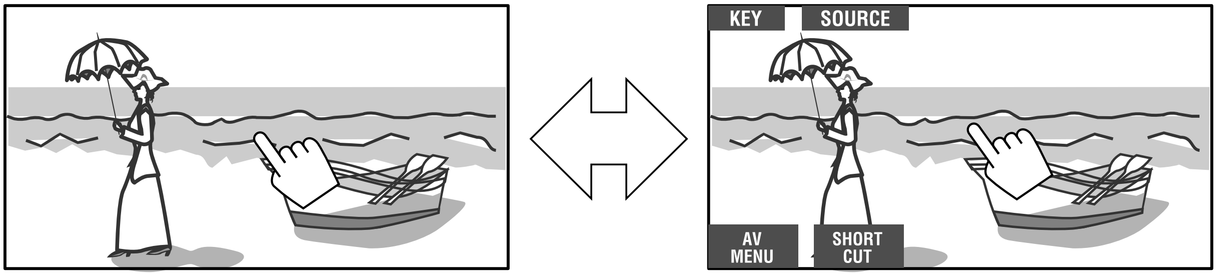
■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

Continued on the next page

Navigation screen

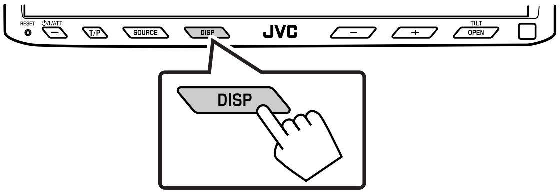
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 55)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

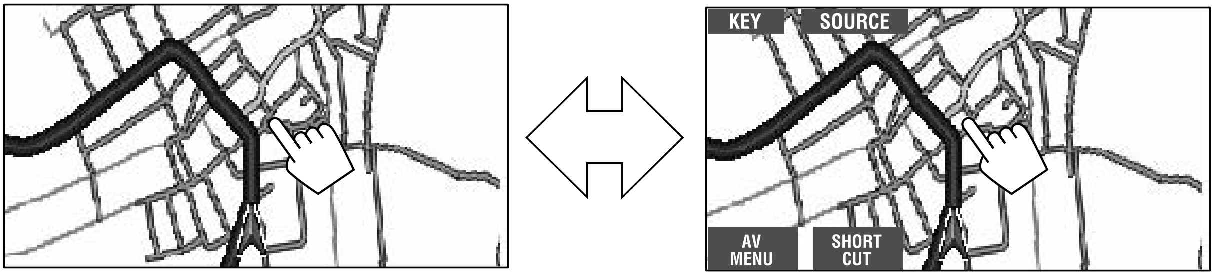


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 52)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

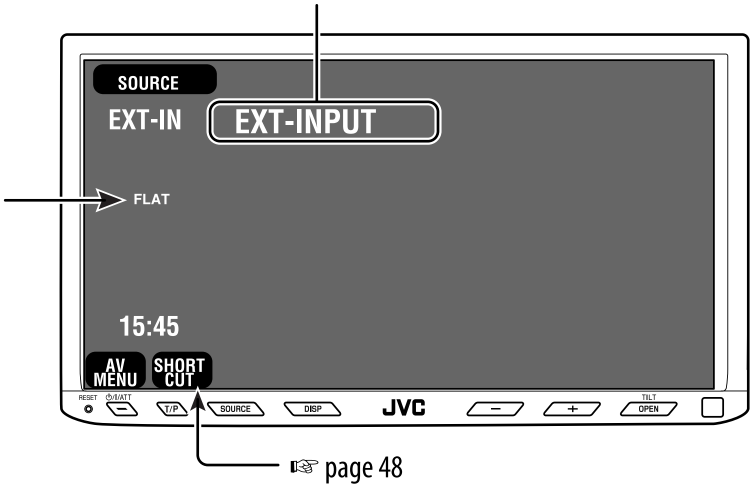
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 55)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 49)

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

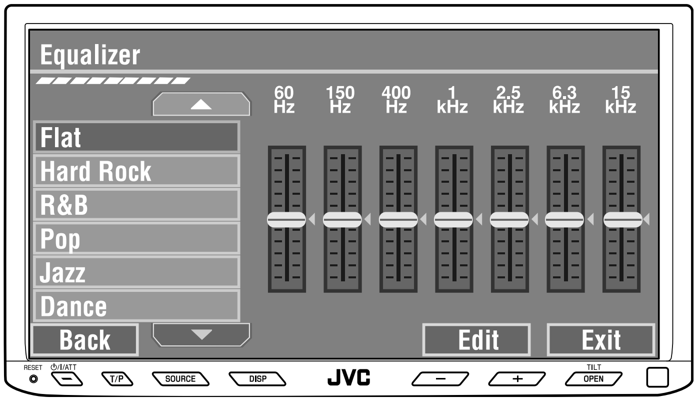
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

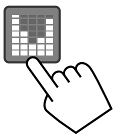
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

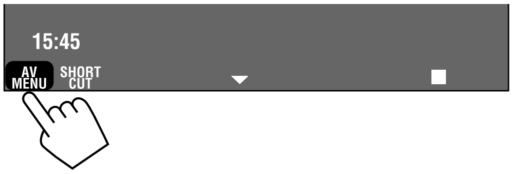
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

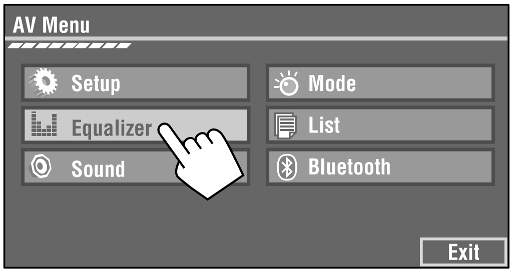
While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



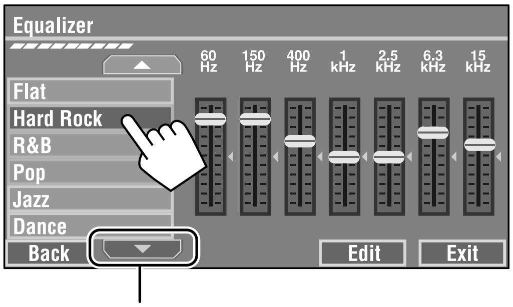
❶


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**

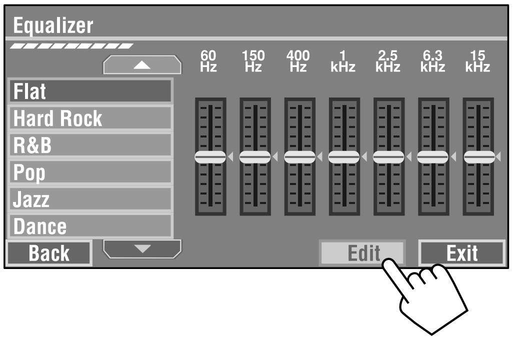

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

Move to other six sound modes

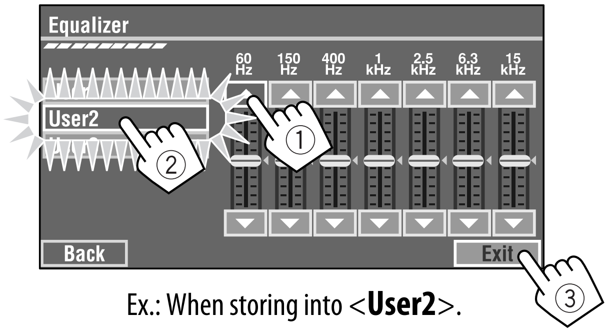
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

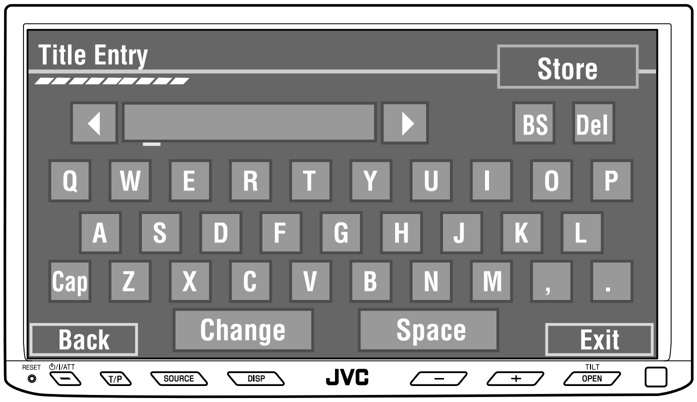

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
③
Back
Exit

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

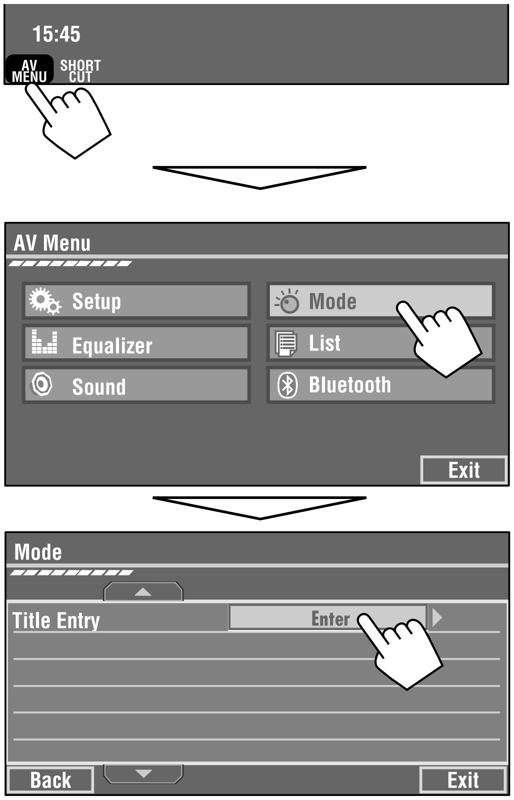
In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

You can assign titles to "AV-IN" and "EXT-IN."

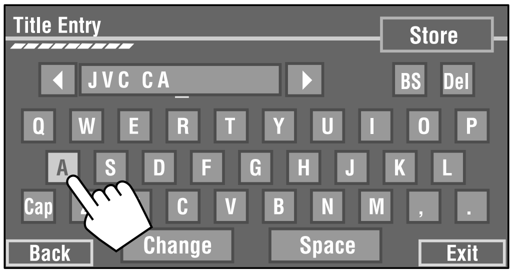
❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN] or [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Display <Title Entry> screen.**


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

❸ **Assign a title.**

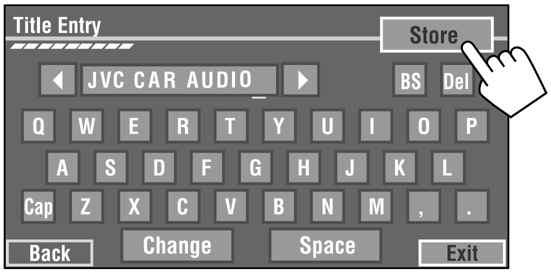

Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CA_

You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 67).

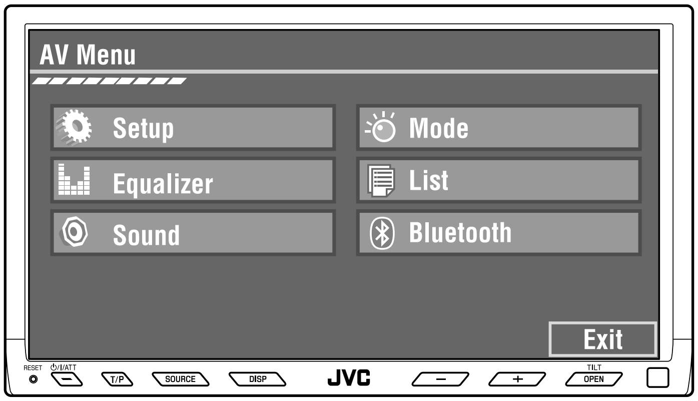
- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CAR AUDIO_

Menu operations

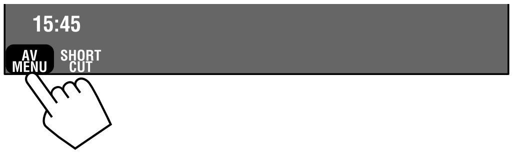

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

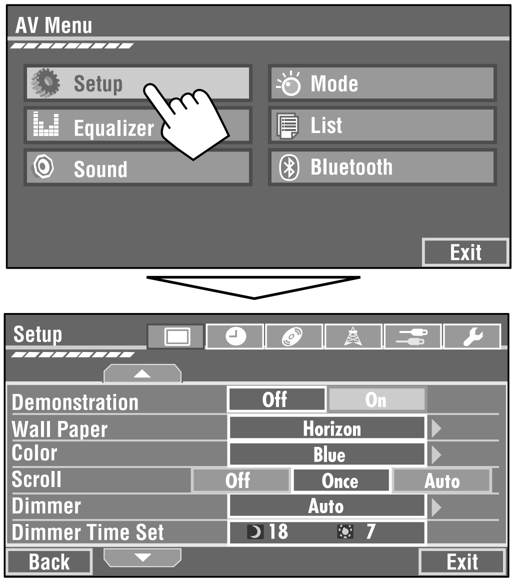
- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶

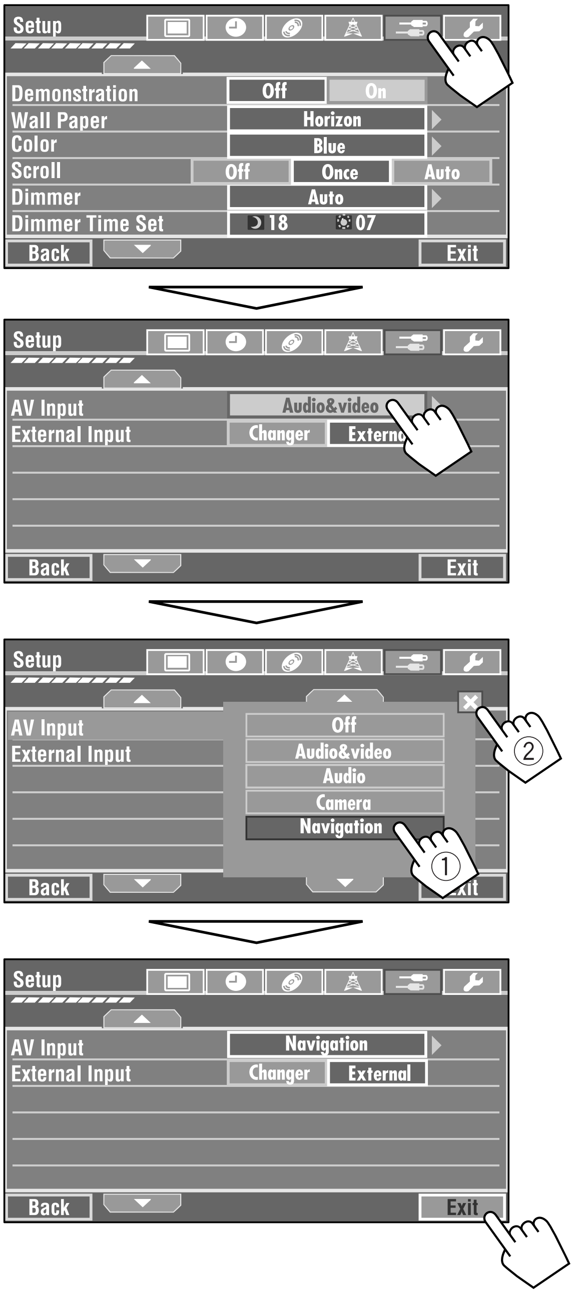

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
7
Back
Exit

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
07
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
Audio&video
External Input
Changer
External
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
External Input
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
②
①
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
Navigation
External Input
Changer
External
Back
Exit

Setup

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. • You cannot adjust <**Tint**>. (fixed)

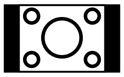
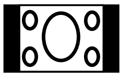
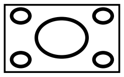
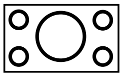
Initial: **Underlined**

---

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

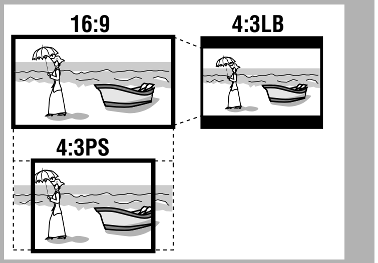
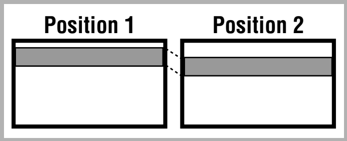
*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th colspan="3">Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Display</td><td rowspan="6">**Aspect**[*1]</td><td colspan="3">You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="2">**Aspect ratio of incoming signal**</td></tr>
<tr><td>**4:3**</td><td>**16:9**</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Regular:**
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>**Full:**
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>**Auto:**</td><td colspan="2">• For "DISC": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Language**[*2]</td><td colspan="3">Select the indication language shown on the screen.
English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected, ☞ [67].</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Clock</td><td>**Time Set**</td><td colspan="3">Initial **0:00** ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Time Format**</td><td colspan="3">Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, **24Hours** ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>**OSD Clock**</td><td colspan="3">When <**On**> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
Off, **On**</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Clock Adjust**</td><td colspan="3">Select <**Auto**> to adjust the clock automatically using the clock time (CT) data from an FM Radio Data System station.
Off, **Auto** ☞ [8]</td></tr>
</table>

[*1] *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

[*2] *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language***3	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **Русский** (☞ also page 66).
	Audio Language*3	Select the initial audio language; Initial **Русский** (☞ also page 66).
	Subtitle*3	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **Русский** (☞ also page 66).
	Monitor Type*3  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*3  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [28] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*3	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*3	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*3	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 65) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*3 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional	When the received signals from the current station become weak... **Off**: Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. **AF Reg.** (Regional): Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. **AF**: Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up). ☞ [15]
	TA Volume	**00** to **30** or **50***2; Initial **15** ☞ [14]
	Program Search	**Off**, **On** ☞ [15]
	DAB AF*3	**Off**, **On** ☞ [42]

*1 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*2 *Depends on the amplifier gain control. (☞ page 56)*

*3 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	**AV Input***4	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [45, 46] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***5 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*6	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***7: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [37, 43] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [47] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner, this setting is not required. They are automatically detected.
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting*8	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1, Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the car phone system.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

*4 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*5 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*6 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*7 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

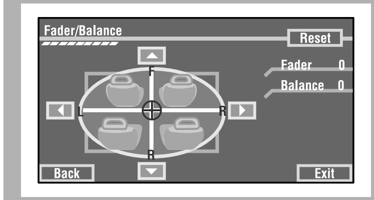
*8 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Initial: **Underlined**

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [48]

Sound

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*1

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
PTy Standby	Only for FM/DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [14]
PTy Code	Only for FM/DAB. (Initial **News**) ☞ [15]
Title Entry	Only for "AV-IN" and "EXT-IN." ☞ [49]
Repeat	☞ [21, 38, 44]
Random	☞ [21, 38, 44]
D.(Dynamic) Range Control	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **DRC1, DRC2, DRC3**) ☞ [40]
Announce Standby	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [41]
Announce Code	Only for DAB. (Initial **Transport News**) ☞ [42]

*1 *Items listed under <***Mode***> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For "DISC": Folder List and Track List (☞ page 22)
For "CD-CH": Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 37)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*[1]

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *[2]	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [33]
Message*[3]	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [30]
Search	☞ [31]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 30 or 31) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 30 and 31), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

[1] *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

[2] *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

[3] *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 33. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Initial: **Underlined**

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

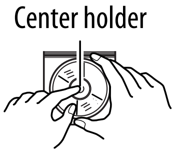
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



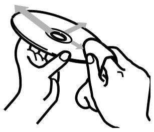
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

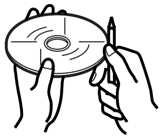
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

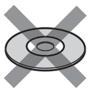


New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

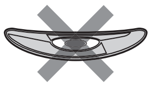
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

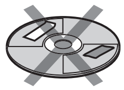
SingleCD—8 cm disc



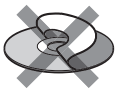
Warped disc



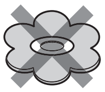
Sticker and sticker residue



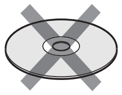
Stick-on label



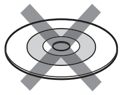
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

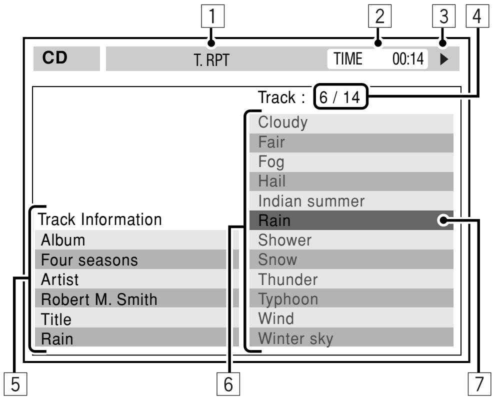
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
  MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
  24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
  44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**

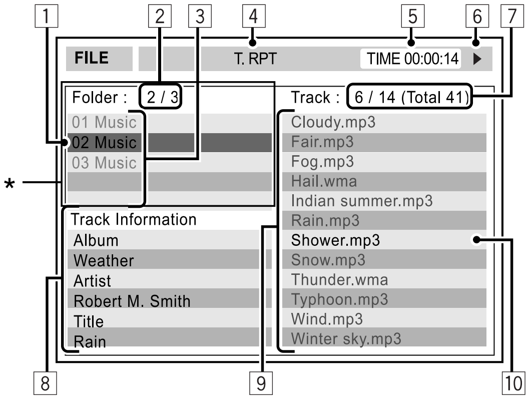


Track Information
Album
Four seasons
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain

Cloudy
Fair
Fog
Hail
Indian summer
Rain
Shower
Snow
Thunder
Typhoon
Wind
Winter sky

1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
*
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14 ▶
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 31)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 37), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB tuner

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *[1]
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *[2]

  *[1] When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *[2] It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 53)

<D. Audio Output> **Playback disc**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 49)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space									

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windscreen may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 51)
	• “Position Error Push Open Key” appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• “Mecha Error Push Reset” appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• “No Signal” appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 11)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 22)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 30)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 31, 58)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 31)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

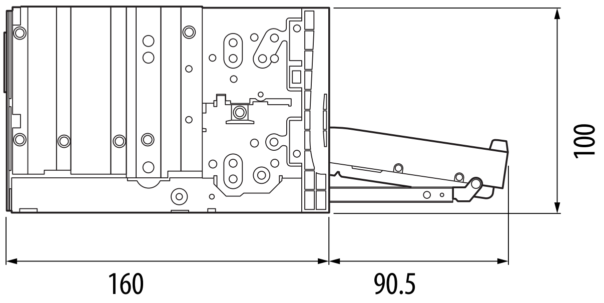
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
DAB tuner	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "No Files" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, OE REMOTE, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μV
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 10 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.9 kg (including trims and sleeve)

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

Маєте ПРОБЛЕМУ з функціонуванням?

Повторно налаштуйте систему

Див. сторінку “Як повторно налаштувати пристрій”

Віктор Компані оф Джепен Лімітед
12, 3-чоме, Морійя-чо, Канагава-ку, Йокогама, Канагава 221-8520, Японія

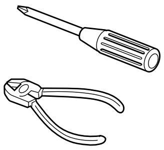
EN, RU, UK

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

JVC

KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
Руководство по установке/подключению
Керівництво зі встановлення та з’єднання



LVT1779-010A
[EE]

1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, RU, UK
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake lead is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change “Amplifier Gain” setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

- НЕ устанавливайте устройства и не прокладывайте провода в местах, где:
  - возникает препятствие для функционирования руля и рычага переключения скоростей, так как это может привести к аварии;
  - возникает препятствие срабатыванию устройств безопасности, например, пневмоподушки, что может привести к несчастному случаю со смертельным исходом;
  - может ухудшиться обзор.
- НЕ используйте устройство, когда управляете рулем; это может привести к аварии.
- Водителю не следует смотреть на монитор во время вождения. Это может быть опасно и может стать причиной аварии.
- Если данное устройство используется во время поездки на автомобиле, следует, не отвлекаясь, следить за дорогой, иначе может произойти дорожно-транспортное происшествие.
- Если стояночный тормоз не включен, на мониторе мигает сообщение “Parking Brake”, и изображение воспроизведения не отображается.
  - Это предупреждение появляется только в том случае, если провод стояночного тормоза подключен к стояночной тормозной системе автомобиля.

Примечания по электрическим подключениям:
- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4 Ω до 8 Ω**).
  Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим “Amplifier Gain”, чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 56).
- Для предотвращения ороткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

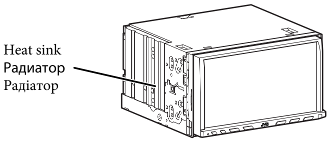
УКРАЇНА

Цей пристрій призначений для роботи під напругою **12 В постійного струму; з електричними системами, що мають заземлення ВІД’ЄМНОГО полюсу**. Якщо ваше авто не оснащене такою системою, потрібно використовувати інвертор напруги, який можна придбати у дилерів устаткування JVC для автомобілів.

ПОПЕРЕДЖЕННЯ

- НЕ встановлюйте ніяких пристроїв і не приєднуйте жодних кабелів у місцях, де:
  - вони можуть перешкоджати вправлятися з кермом і важелем перемикання передач, тому що це може призвести до аварії на дорозі;
  - вони можуть перешкоджати роботі таких пристроїв безпеки, як подушки безпеки, тому що це може призвести до смертельного випадку.
  - затуляти огляд.
- НЕ виконуйте ніяких операцій з пристроєм під час керування, тому що це може призвести до аварії на дорозі.
- Під час руху водій не повинен відволікатися й дивитись на монітор. Це може призвести до необачності та аварії.
- Якщо вам потрібно скористатися пристроєм підчас руху, уважно стежте за дорогою, щоб не потрапити в аварію.
- Якщо автомобіль не на ручному гальмі, на екрані монітора миггітиме напис “Parking Brake”, зображення виводитись не буде.
  - Це попередження з’являється тільки тоді, коли провід ручного гальма з’єднаний з ручним гальмом автомобіля.

Зауваження щодо електричних з’єднань:
- Заміняти запобіжник можна тільки запобіжником із вказаними у специфікації номінальними характеристиками. Якщо запобіжники часто виходять з ладу, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів.
- Рекомендується підключати гучномовці з максимальною потужністю, що перевищує 50 Вт (як для розташованих спереду, так і для тих, що розміщуються позаду. Рекомендований діапазон опору: від **4 до 8 Ом**).
  У разі, якщо потужність є меншою чим 50 Вт, змініть налаштування “Amplifier Gain” (коефіцієнт підсилення) задля запобігання пошкодженню гучномовців (див. стор. 56 ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).
- Для запобігання короткому замиканню, заізолюйте клеми провідника, ЩО НЕ ВИКОРИСТОВУЄТЬСЯ, ізоляційною стрічкою.
- По закінчені роботи радіатор стає надто гарячим. Будьте обережні, не торкайтесь його при видалені цього пристрою.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

[1] Fitted to the main unit when shipped

Список деталей для установки и подключения

Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством. Если какой-либо из указанных элементов отсутствует, обратитесь к агенту по продажам.

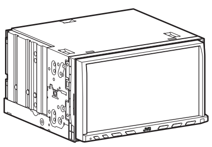
[1] Закреплено на основном устройстве при поставке

Перелік деталей для встановлення та з’єднання

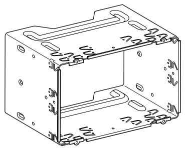
У комплекті з цим пристроєм надаються такі деталі. Якщо бракує якої-небудь деталі, негайно звертайтесь до дилера у вашому регіоні.

[1] приєднаний до головного пристрою під час транспортування

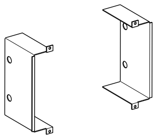
Main unit
Главное устройство
Головний пристрій



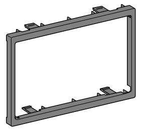
Sleeve*1
Муфта*1
Екран*1



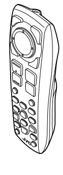
Brackets*1
Декоративную панель*1
Кронштейны*1



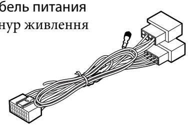
Trim plate
Декоративную панель
Знімна пластина



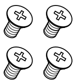
Remote controller
Дистанционного управления
Пульт дистанційного керування



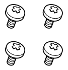
Power cord
Кабель питания
Шнур живлення



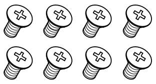
Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)*1
Болты с плоской головкой (M5 x 8 мм)*1
Гвинти з пласкими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)*1



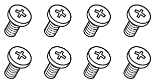
Round head screws (M2.6 x 3 mm)*1
Болты с круглой головкой (M2,6 x 3 мм)*1
Гвинти з напівкруглими голівками (M2,6 × 3 мм)*1



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Болты с плоской головкой (M5 x 8 мм)
Гвинти з пласкими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)

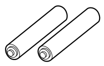


Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Болты с круглой головкой (M5 x 8 мм)
Гвинти з напівкруглими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)

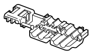


Use these screws when installing the unit without the supplied sleeve.
Используйте эти болты при установке устройства без поставляемой муфты.
Використовуйте ці гвинти для встановлення пристрою без монтажного короба, що постачається в комплекті.

Batteries
Батареи
Батареї



Crimp connector
Обжимные разъемы
Обтиснене рознімання



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1. **Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.**
   - **Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.**
2. **Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.**
3. **Attach the brackets to the main unit.**
   - **Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.**
4. **Do the required electrical connections.**
   - **See pages 3 and 4.**
5. **Install the main unit in the sleeve.**
6. **Attach the trim plate.**

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Однако необходимо выполнить настройки, соответствующие конкретному автомобилю. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобильных систем JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.

Предостережение во время установки

- При установке устройства используйте только прилагаемые болты в соответствии с инструкцией. В случае использования других болтов существует вероятность, что детали могут быть ненадежно закреплены или повреждены.
- Аккуратно затягивайте болты,чтобы не пережать соединительные кабели.
- При установке для обеспечения правильной вентиляции не закрывайте вентилятор на задней панели.

1. Извлеките аудиосистему, изначально установленную в автомобиле, вместе с монтажными кронштейнами.
   - Не теряйте винты и детали, извлеченные из автомобиля, поскольку они будут использоваться в дальнейшем.
2. Вмонтируйте муфту в приборную панель автомобиля.
3. Прикрепите кронштейны к главному устройству.
   - Используйте болты с плоской головкой (M5 x 8 мм), которые входят в комплект поставки. При использовании более длинных болтов можно повредить устройство.
4. Выполните необходимые электрические соединения.
   - См. стр. 3 и 4.
5. Установите главное устройство в муфту.
6. Прикрепите декоративную панель.

ВСТАНОВЛЕННЯ (МОНТАЖ НА ПРИЛАДОВУ ПАНЕЛЬ)

Наведена нижче ілюстрація демонструє типовий процес встановлення. Проте необхідно виконати регулювання у відповідності до типу автомобіля. У разі будь яких запитань або потреби у інформації щодо набору інструментів та спорядження, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів або з компанією, що постачає набір інструментів та спорядження.

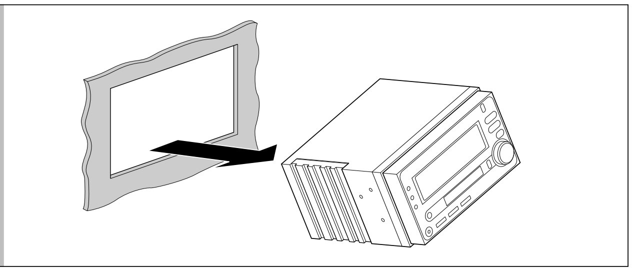
- Якщо ви не впевнені щодо правильності встановлення цього пристрою, залучіть до його встановлення кваліфікованого спеціаліста.

Перед встановленням пристрою

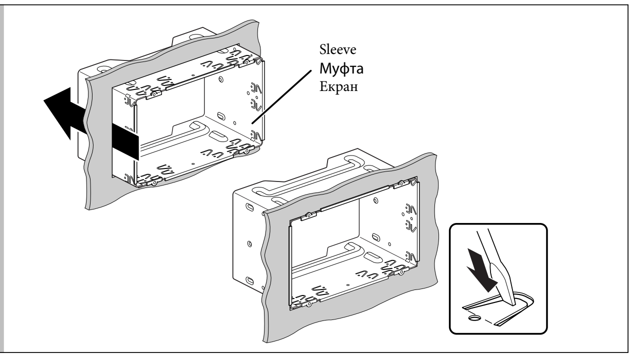
- При встановленні пристрою, використовуйте тільки гвинти з комплекту постачання, відповідно до інструкцій. Якщо використовуються інші гвинти, кріплення окремих частин пристрою може ослабнути або пошкодитись.
- При затягуванні гвинтів чи болтів будьте обережні, щоб не затиснути жоден з'єднувальний шнур.
- При встановленні переконайтеся, що вентилятор задньої панелі не заблокований для забезпечення належної вентиляції.

1. **Вийміть аудіосистему, встановлену в автомобілі виробником, разом з монтажними кронштейнами.**
   - **Зберігайте усі гвинти та деталі, видалені з автомобіля, для подальшого використання.**
2. **Встановіть екран у приладову панель автомобіля.**
3. **Приєднайте кронштейни до головного пристрою.**
   - **Використовуйте лише гвинти із пласкими голівками (M5 x 8 мм), що входять до комплекту поставки. Якщо гвинти довші, вони можуть пошкодити пристрій.**
4. **Виконайте необхідні електричні з'єднання.**
   - **Див. стор. 3 та 4.**
5. **Встановіть головний пристрій всередину екрану.**
6. **Приєднайте знімну пластину.**

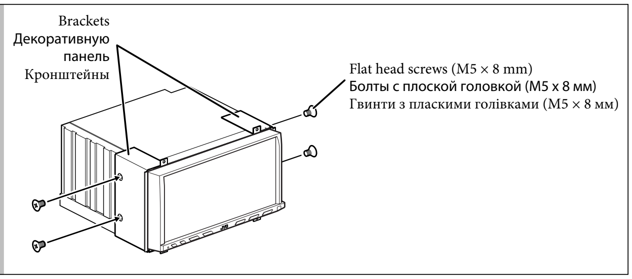
1



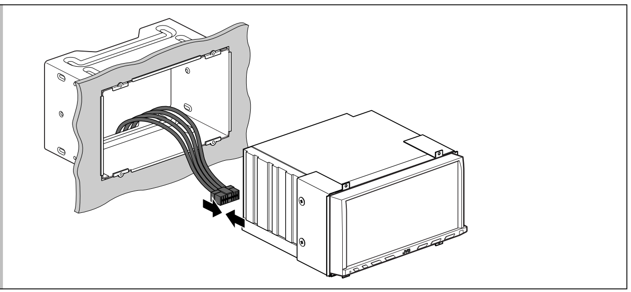
2



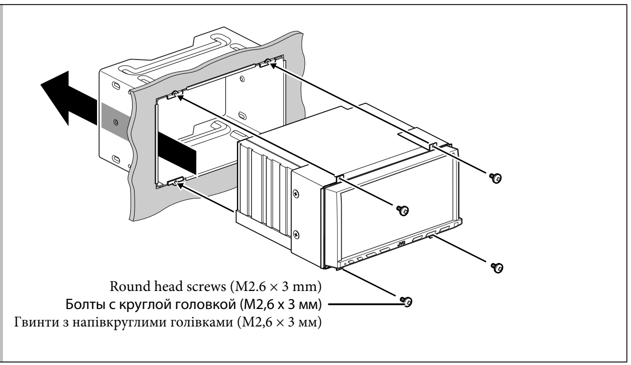
3


Brackets
Декоративную панель
Кронштейны
Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Болты с плоской головкой (M5 x 8 мм)
Гвинти з пласкими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)

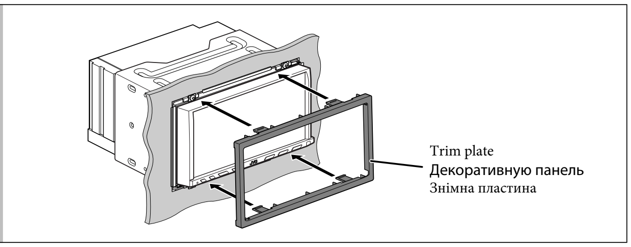
4

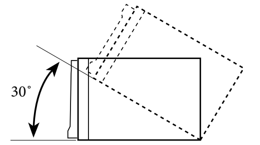


5


Round head screws (M2.6 × 3 mm)
Болты с круглой головкой (M2,6 x 3 мм)
Гвинти з напівкруглими голівками (M2,6 × 3 мм)

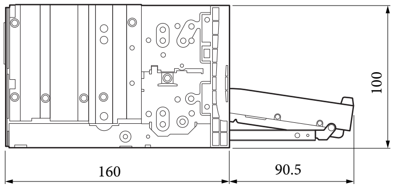
6





Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30 °,принимая во внимание то,что при использовании монитор будет выдвигаться.
Встановіть пристрій під кутом, меншим ніж 30˚, зважаючи на те, що монітор під час його використання буде знаходитися у висунутому стані.

Required space for the monitor ejection
Необходимое пространство для извлечения монитора
Необхідна площа для висування монітору



Unit: mm
Единицы измерения:мм
Пристрій: мм

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

ЕЛЕКТРИЧНІ З'ЄДНАННЯ

Для запобігання коротким замиканням рекомендується перед встановленням пристрою відключити від'ємну клему акумулятора та виконати усі електричні з'єднання.

- **Переконайтеся у тому, що після закінчення встановлення пристрою, виконано його заземлення на шасі авто.**

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

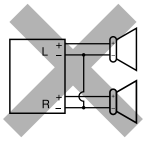
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

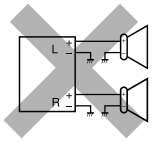
ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

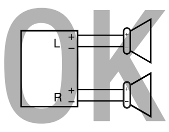
- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.

ЗАСТЕРЕЖЕННЯ щодо приєднання джерела живлення та гучномовців:

- **НЕ з'єднуйте провідники живлення гучномовців з акумулятором. Невиконання такої вимоги призведе до тяжкого ушкодження пристрою.**
- ПЕРЕД тим, як з'єднати провідники живлення з гучномовцями, перевірте схему з'єднання гучномовців вашого авто.

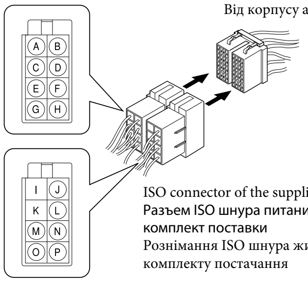






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector
Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO
Якщо ваше авто оснащене рознімання за стандартом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.
- Приєднайте рознімання ISO, як рекомендовано на ілюстрації.



From the car body
От корпуса автомобиля
Від корпусу авто

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки
Рознімання ISO шнура живлення, що входить до комплекту постачання

View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов
Вид зі сторони електричних виводів

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile
Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)
Для деяких авто марки VW/Audi або Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.

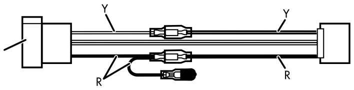
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Вам, можливо, прийдеться внести зміни до з'єднання провідників шнура живлення згідно з ілюстрацією.

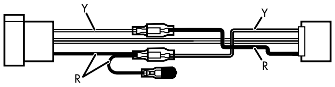
- Перед тим, як встановлювати цей пристрій, зв'яжіться з уповноваженим дилером вашого авто.

Original wiring
Исходная схема соединений
Початкова схема з'єднання рознімань

ISO connector
Разъем ISO
Рознімання ISO

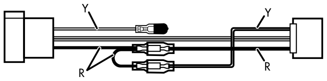


Modified wiring 1
Преобразованная схема соединений 1
Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.
Якщо пристрій не включається, скористуйтеся зміненою схемою з'єднання рознімань 2.

Modified wiring 2
Преобразованная схема соединений 2
Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 2

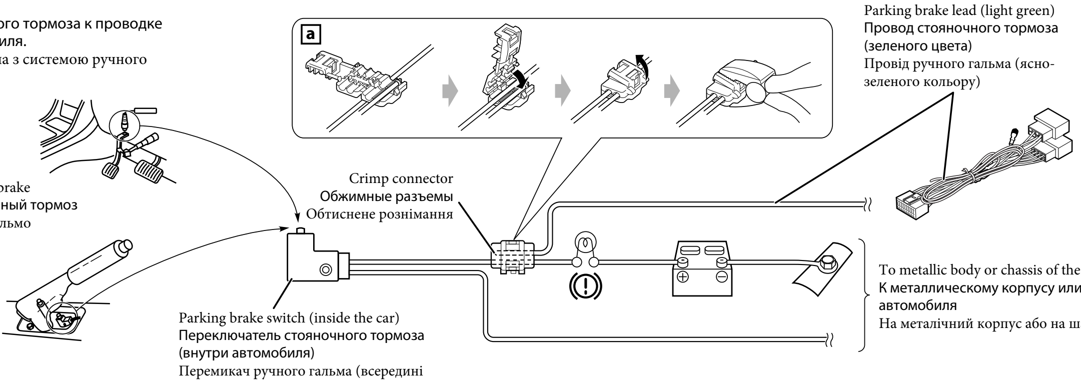


Y: Yellow
Желтый
Жовтий

R: Red
Красный
Червоний

A Connecting the parking brake lead / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза / З'єднання проводу ручного гальма

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.
Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к проводке стояночного тормоза автомобиля.
З'єднайте провід ручного гальма з системою ручного гальма автомобілю.



Parking brake lead (light green)
Провод стояночного тормоза (зеленого цвета)
Провід ручного гальма (ясно-зеленого кольору)

Parking brake
Стояночный тормоз
Ручне гальмо

Crimp connector
Обжимные разъемы
Обтиснене рознімання

Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Переключатель стояночного тормоза (внутри автомобиля)
Перемикач ручного гальма (всередині автомобіля)

To metallic body or chassis of the car
К металлическому корпусу или шасси автомобиля
На металічний корпус або на шасі авто

Connections without using the ISO connector / Подключение без использования разъема ISO / З'єднання без допомоги з'єднувача ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

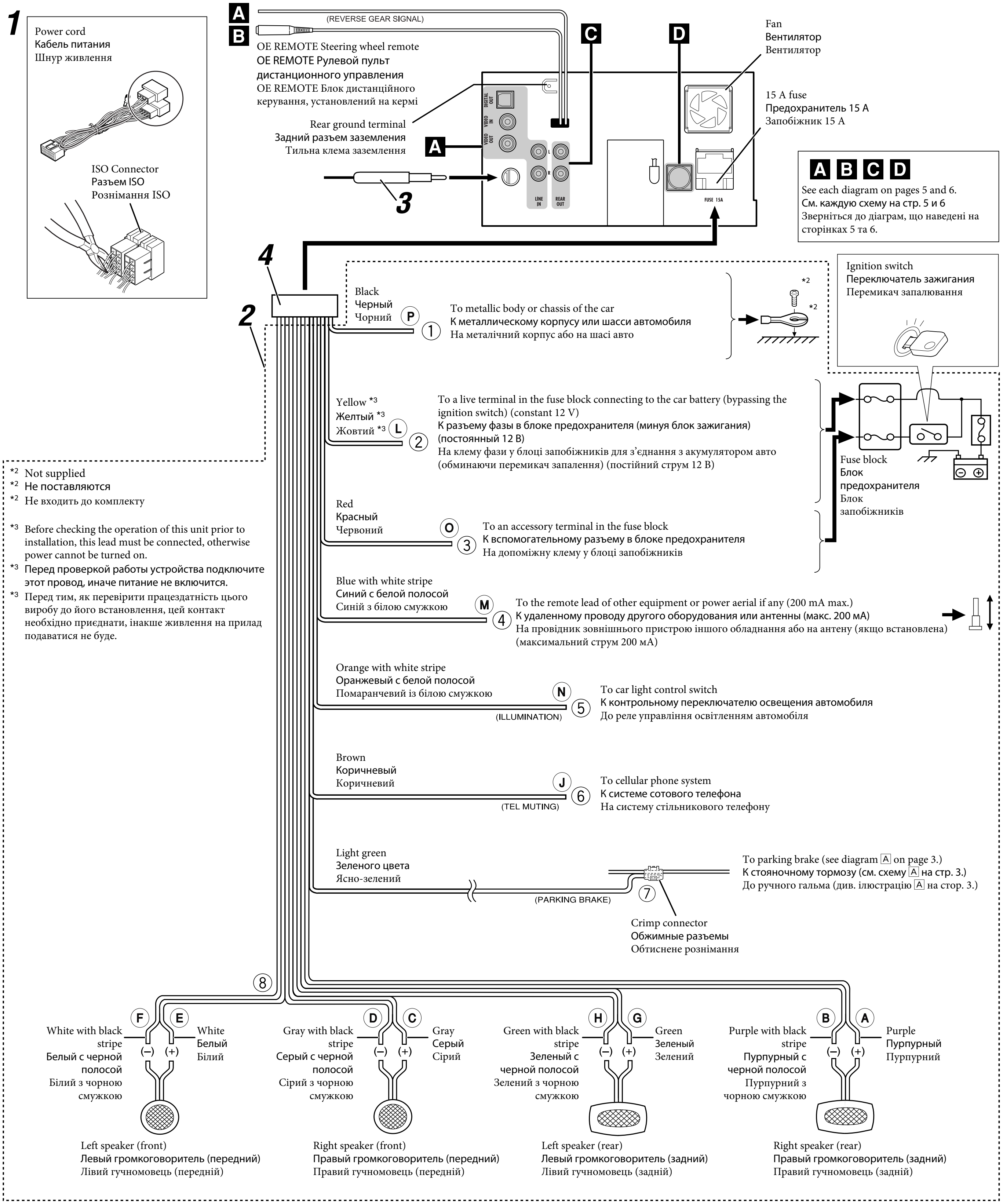
1. **Cut the ISO connector.**
2. **Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.**
3. **Connect the aerial cord.**
4. **Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.**

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.
Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

Перед тим, як з'єднати: Уважно перевірте електричну схему з'єднання вашого авто. Неправильне з'єднання може спричинити тяжке пошкодження вашого пристрою.
Контакти шнура живлення та рознімання, яке йде від корпуса авто можуть мати різні кольори.

1. **Від'єднайте рознімання ISO.**
2. **З'єднайте кольорові провідники шнура живлення у порядку, що наведений нижче на ілюстрації.**
3. **Приєднайте провід антени.**
4. **Виконайте кінцеве приєднання джгута провідників до пристрою.**

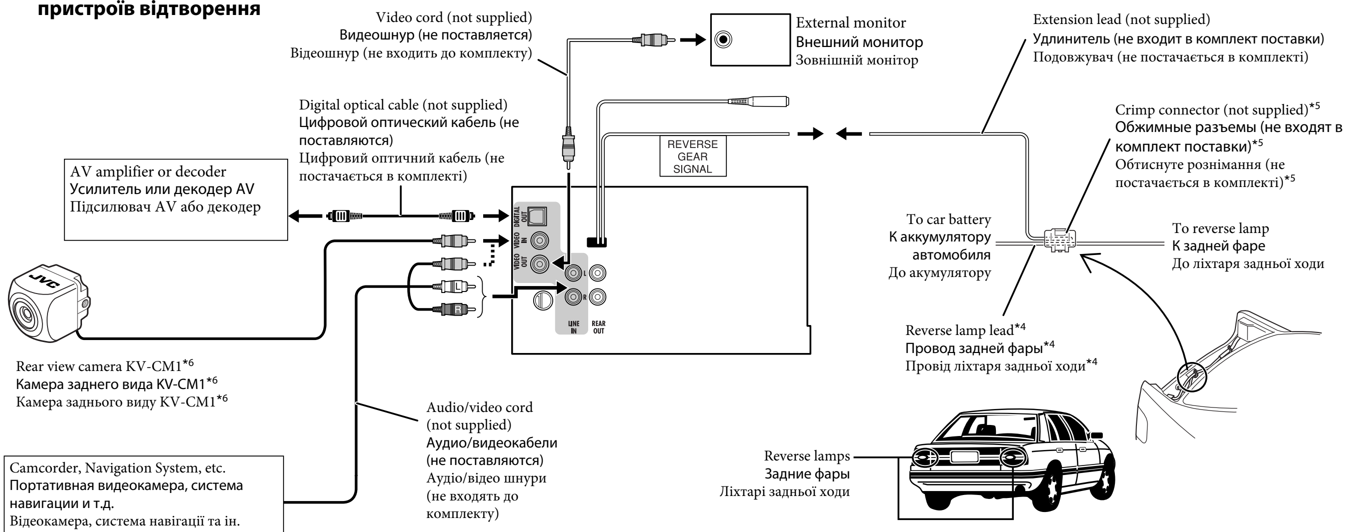

1
Power cord
Кабель питания
Шнур живлення
ISO Connector
Разъем ISO
Рознімання ISO
A
B
(REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL)
OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
OE REMOTE Рулевой пульт дистанционного управления
OE REMOTE Блок дистанційного керування, установлений на кермі
Rear ground terminal
Задний разъем заземления
Тильна клема заземлення
A
C
D
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
3
Fan
Вентилятор
Вентилятор
15 A fuse
Предохранитель 15 A
Запобіжник 15 A
4
2
Black
Черный
Чорний
P
①
To metallic body or chassis of the car
К металлическому корпусу или шасси автомобиля
На металічний корпус або на шасі авто
*2
*2
Ignition switch
Переключатель зажигания
Перемикач запалювання
Yellow *3
Желтый *3
Жовтий *3
L
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
К разъему фазы в блоке предохранителя (минуя блок зажигания) (постоянный 12 В)
На клему фази у блоці запобіжників для з'єднання з акумулятором авто (обминаючи перемикач запалення) (постійний струм 12 В)
Fuse block
Блок предохранителя
Блок запобіжників
Red
Красный
Червоний
O
③
To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
К вспомогательному разъему в блоке предохранителя
На допоміжну клему у блоці запобіжників
Blue with white stripe
Синий с белой полосой
Синій з білою смужкою
M
④
To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any (200 mA max.)
К удаленному проводу другого оборудования или антенны (макс. 200 мА)
На провідник зовнішнього пристрою іншого обладнання або на антену (якщо встановлена) (максимальний струм 200 мА)
Orange with white stripe
Оранжевый с белой полосой
Помаранчевий із білою смужкою
N
⑤
(ILLUMINATION)
To car light control switch
К контрольному переключателю освещения автомобиля
До реле управління освітленням автомобіля
Brown
Коричневый
Коричневий
J
⑥
(TEL MUTING)
To cellular phone system
К системе сотового телефона
На систему стільникового телефону
Light green
Зеленого цвета
Ясно-зелений
⑦
(PARKING BRAKE)
To parking brake (see diagram A on page 3.)
К стояночному тормозу (см. схему A на стр. 3.)
До ручного гальма (див. ілюстрацію A на стор. 3.)
Crimp connector
Обжимные разъемы
Обтиснене рознімання
⑧
F
E
White with black stripe
Белый с черной полосой
Білий з чорною смужкою
White
Белый
Білий
(–)
(+)
D
C
Gray with black stripe
Серый с черной полосой
Сірий з чорною смужкою
Gray
Серый
Сірий
H
G
Green with black stripe
Зеленый с черной полосой
Зелений з чорною смужкою
Green
Зеленый
Зелений
B
A
Purple with black stripe
Пурпурный с черной полосой
Пурпурний з чорною смужкою
Purple
Пурпурный
Пурпурний
Left speaker (front)
Левый громкоговоритель (передний)
Лівий гучномовець (передній)
Right speaker (front)
Правый громкоговоритель (передний)
Правий гучномовець (передній)
Left speaker (rear)
Левый громкоговоритель (задний)
Лівий гучномовець (задній)
Right speaker (rear)
Правый громкоговоритель (задний)
Правий гучномовець (задній)

A B C D
See each diagram on pages 5 and 6.
См. каждую схему на стр. 5 и 6
Зверніться до діаграм, що наведені на сторінках 5 та 6.

[*2] Not supplied
[*2] Не поставляются
[*2] Не входить до комплекту

[*3] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
[*3] Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.
[*3] Перед тим, як перевірити працездатність цього виробу до його встановлення, цей контакт необхідно приєднати, інакше живлення на прилад подаватися не буде.

A Connections for external component playback / Подключения для воспроизведения с внешнего устройства / З’єднання для зовнішніх пристроїв відтворення


Video cord (not supplied)
Видеошнур (не поставляется)
Відеошнур (не входить до комплекту)
External monitor
Внешний монитор
Зовнішній монітор
Extension lead (not supplied)
Удлинитель (не входит в комплект поставки)
Подовжувач (не постачається в комплекті)
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Цифровой оптический кабель (не поставляются)
Цифровий оптичний кабель (не постачається в комплекті)
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
Обжимные разъемы (не входят в комплект поставки)*5
Обтисніть рознімання (не постачається в комплекті)*5
AV amplifier or decoder
Усилитель или декодер AV
Підсилювач AV або декодер
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
To car battery
К аккумулятору автомобиля
До акумулятору
To reverse lamp
К задней фаре
До ліхтаря задньої ходи
JVC
Reverse lamp lead*4
Провод задней фары*4
Провід ліхтаря задньої ходи*4
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6
Камера заднего вида KV-CM1*6
Камера заднього виду KV-CM1*6
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Аудио/видеокабели (не поставляются)
Аудіо/відео шнури (не входять до комплекту)
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
Портативная видеокамера, система навигации и т.д.
Відеокамера, система навігації та ін.
Reverse lamps
Задние фары
Ліхтарі задньої ходи

[*4] Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

[*5] Refer to $\boxed{a}$ in diagram $\boxed{A}$ on page 3.

[*6] Set “AV Input” setting to “Camera” when using (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[*4] Требуется только при подключении камеры заднего вида к разъему VIDEO IN.

[*5] См. $\boxed{a}$ на схеме $\boxed{A}$ на стр. 3.

[*6] Установите для настройки “AV Input” значение “Camera” при использовании камеры (см. стр. 55 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ).

[*4] Потрібен тільки в разі приєднання камери заднього виду до входу VIDEO IN.

[*5] див. $\boxed{a}$ у діаграмі $\boxed{A}$ на стор. 3.

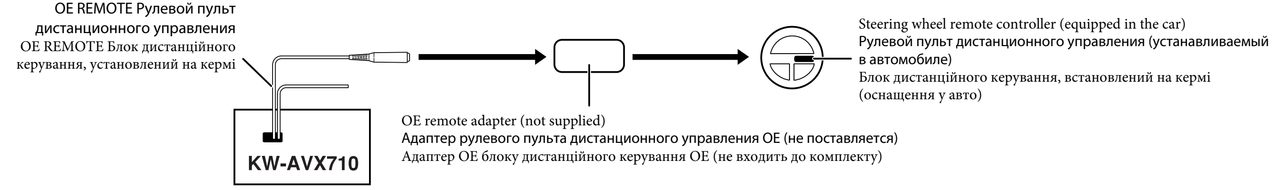
[*6] При використанні задайте параметр “Camera” (фотокамера) для налаштування “AV Input” (аудіовідеовхід) (див. стор. 55 розділу ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).

B Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления / З’єднання з блоком дистанційного керування, що встановлений на кермі

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC’s OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.

Якщо авто оснащене блоком дистанційного керування, який встановлюється на кермі, можна керувати пристроєм за його допомогою. Щоб зробити це, потрібен адаптер OE блоку дистанційного керування компанії JVC (не входить до комплекту), що підходить до даного типу авто. За додатковою інформацією зверніться до свого регіонального дилера JVC.


OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
OE REMOTE Рулевой пульт дистанционного управления
OE REMOTE Блок дистанційного керування, установлений на кермі
KW-AVX710
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления OE (не поставляется)
Адаптер OE блоку дистанційного керування OE (не входить до комплекту)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Рулевой пульт дистанционного управления (устанавливаемый в автомобиле)
Блок дистанційного керування, встановлений на кермі (оснащення у авто)

C Connecting an external amplifier / Подключение внешнего усилителя / З’єднання з зовнішнім підсилювачем

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

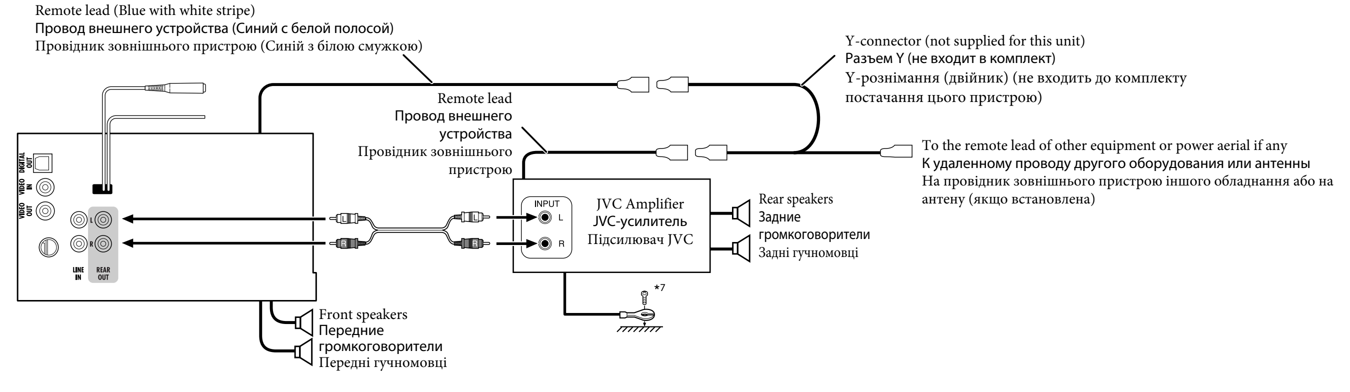
- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

Для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы можно подключить усилитель.

- Для подачи питания на усилитель подключите провода внешнего устройства (синие с белой полосой) к проводам данного устройства и усилителя. (Для подключения другого оборудования с помощью проводов внешнего устройства необходимо приобрести Y-образные разъемы.)
- Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.
- Для получения более чистого звука и предотвращения внутреннего перегрева устройства можно отключить встроенный усилитель и использовать для усиления аудиосигнала только внешний усилитель. См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 56.

Для покращення характеристик стереосистеми до неї можна підключити підсилювач.

- Можна подати живлення на підсилювач, приєднавши до нього провід дистанційного вмикання (синій із білою смужкою). (Для приєднання іншого обладнання за допомогою проводів дистанційного вмикання необхідно додатково придбати Y-рознімання).
- Відключіть гучномовці від цього пристрою, приєднайте їх до підсилювача. Залиште провідники гучномовців такими, що не використовуються.
- Можна вимкнути вбудований підсилювач і спрямувати звуковий сигнал тільки на зовнішній підсилювач, щоб отримати якісний звук і запобігти збільшенню температури всередині пристрою. Див. ІНСТРУКЦІЇ на стор. 56.


Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Провод внешнего устройства (Синий с белой полосой)
Провідник зовнішнього пристрою (Синій з білою смужкою)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Разъем Y (не входит в комплект)
Y-рознімання (двійник) (не входить до комплекту постачання цього пристрою)
Remote lead
Провод внешнего устройства
Провідник зовнішнього пристрою
To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any
К удаленному проводу другого оборудования или антенны
На провідник зовнішнього пристрою іншого обладнання або на антену (якщо встановлена)
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
JVC-усилитель
Підсилювач JVC
Rear speakers
Задние громкоговорители
Задні гучномовці
*7
Front speakers
Передние громкоговорители
Передні гучномовці

[*7] Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place not coated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

[*7] Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.

[*7] Надійно прикрутіть провідник заземлення до металічного корпусу або до шасі авто у місці, яке не має фарбового покриття (якщо воно є, видаліть фарбу до підключення провідника). Невиконання цієї вимоги може призвести до пошкодження пристрою.

D Connections to the CD changer jack / Соединения с устройством автоматической смены компакт-дисков / З’єднання із гніздом пристрою для змінення компакт-дисків

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter
	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod
	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter
	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter
	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 и т. д.
Тюнер DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.

Компонентный	Адаптер
	Название модели
Устройство Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod
	KS-PD100
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	Адаптер линейного входа
	KS-U57
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	Адаптер входа AUX
	KS-U58

При подключении нескольких устройств (максимум: трех) рекомендуется подключить устройства последовательно, как описано ниже.

У разі приєднання зовнішніх компонентів, також зверніться до посібника, що входить до комплекту постачання вказаних компонентів та адаптера.

УВАГА:
Перед тим як приєднати зовнішній компонент, переконайтеся утому, що ваш пристрій вимкнений.

Наведені нижче компоненти виробництва компанії JVC можна приєднати через гніздо пристрою для зміни компакт-дисків.

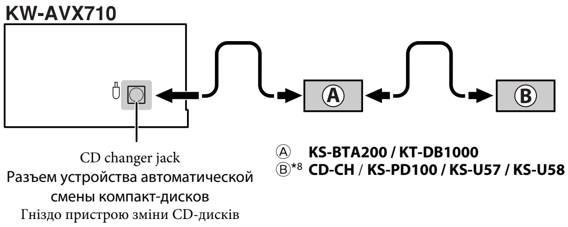
Компонент виробництва JVC	Назва моделі
Пристрій для зміни компакт-дисків (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 та ін.
Тюнер цифрового радіомовлення JVC	KT-DB1000

За допомогою різних адаптерів виробництва JVC можна також приєднувати такі компоненти.
- Можливо, з’єднувальні кабелі вам доведеться придбати окремо.

Компонент	Адаптер
	Назва моделі
Пристрій Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Інтерфейсний адаптер для iPod
	KS-PD100
Портативний аудіопрогравач із гніздами лінійних виходів	Адаптер лінійного входу
	KS-U57
Портативний аудіопрогравач зі стереофонічним мініатюрним штекером 3,5 мм	Адаптер вхідного сигналу від зовнішнього пристрою
	KS-U58

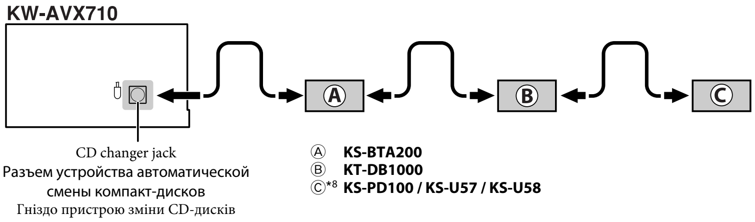
У разі приєднання більш ніж одного компонента (не більше трьох) рекомендується приєднувати їх послідовно, згідно з наведеними нижче поясненнями.

When connecting two components in series
Последовательное подключение двух устройств
У разі послідовного приєднання двох компонентів


KW-AVX710
Ⓐ
Ⓑ
CD changer jack
Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков
Гніздо пристрою зміни CD-дисків

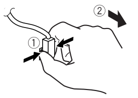
Ⓐ **KS-BTA200 / KT-DB1000**
Ⓑ*8 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

When connecting three components in series
При подключении трех устройств последовательно
У разі послідовного приєднання дрьох компонентів


KW-AVX710
Ⓐ
Ⓑ
Ⓒ
CD changer jack
Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков
Гніздо пристрою зміни CD-дисків

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ **KT-DB1000**
Ⓒ*8 **KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / Отключение от разъема / Відключення з’єднувача



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Крепко возьмитесь за верхнюю часть разъема (①), затем выдерните его (②).
Візьміться за верхню частину (①) з’єднувача, потім витягніть його (②).

*8 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 55).
*8 Для використання цих компонентів, в налаштуваннях зовнішнього входу встановіть “EXT IN” (зовнішній вхід) - (див. стор. 55 розділу ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.
iPod є торговою маркою Apple Inc., зареєстрованою у Сполучених Штатах та інших країнах.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the “–” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car’s chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the “–” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  - * Have you reset your unit?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
  - * Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
  - * Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
  - * Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
  - * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
  - * Заземлены ли разъемы “–” правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
  - * Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
  - * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
  - * Заземлены ли разъемы “–” правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
  - * Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

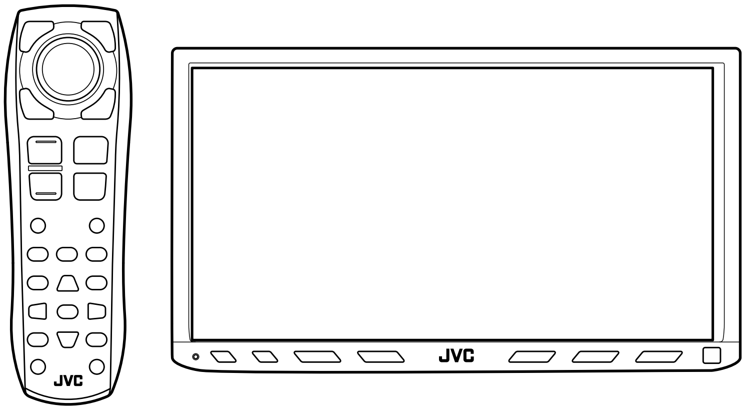
НЕСПРАВНОСТІ

- **Вийшов з ладу запобіжник.**
  - * Чи правильно приєднані червоний та чорний провідники?
- **Не можна включити живлення.**
  - * Чи приєднаний жовтий провідник?
- **Звук з гучномовців відсутній.**
  - * Чи не замкнуто “на коротко” вихідні провідники гучномовця?
- **Звук спотворений.**
  - * Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
  - * Чи заземлені разом провідники “–” лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Звук чути з перешкодами.**
  - * Чи приєднано тильну клему заземлення до шасі авто за допомогою коротших та товстіших шнурів?
- **Пристрій нагрівається.**
  - * Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
  - * Чи заземлені разом провідники “–” лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Цей пристрій не працює взагалі.**
  - * Чи ви переналаштовували пристрій?

ENGLISH
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
RECEPTOR DVD CON MONITOR
RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR

KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Para cancelar la demonstración en pantalla, consulte la página 8.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l’installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1779-003A
[EU]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

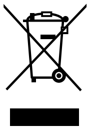
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...

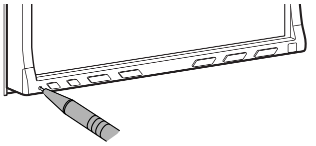
– Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.

– Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.



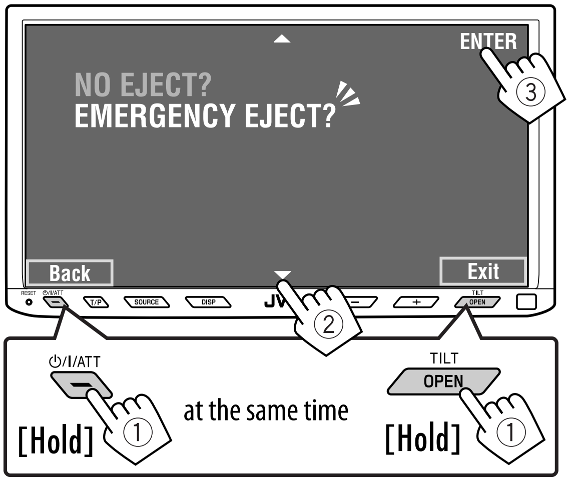
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 16

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 30
Listening to the CD changer.............. 37
Listening to the DAB tuner 39
Listening to the iPod........................ 43
Using other external components..... 45

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 48
Assigning titles to the sources 49
Menu operations 50

REFERENCES

Maintenance 60
More about this unit 61
Troubleshooting 68
Specifications 72

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 2)*[1] ALL 2 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*[2], +R/+RW*[3]) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*[1] *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*[2] *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*[3] *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

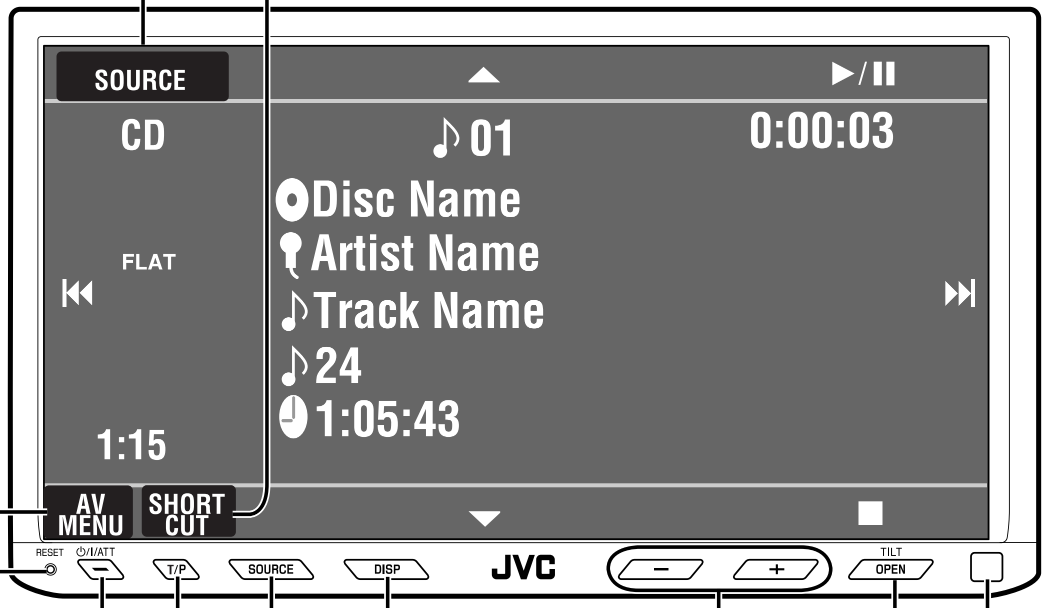
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 50

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
1:15
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
♪Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

- **Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.**
- **Display <PTy Search> menu.** [Hold]
  ☞ page 12

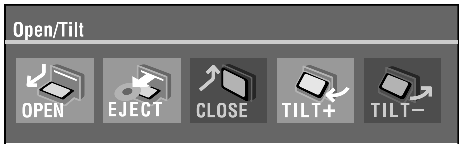
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

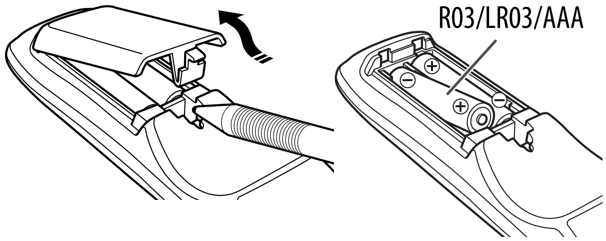
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

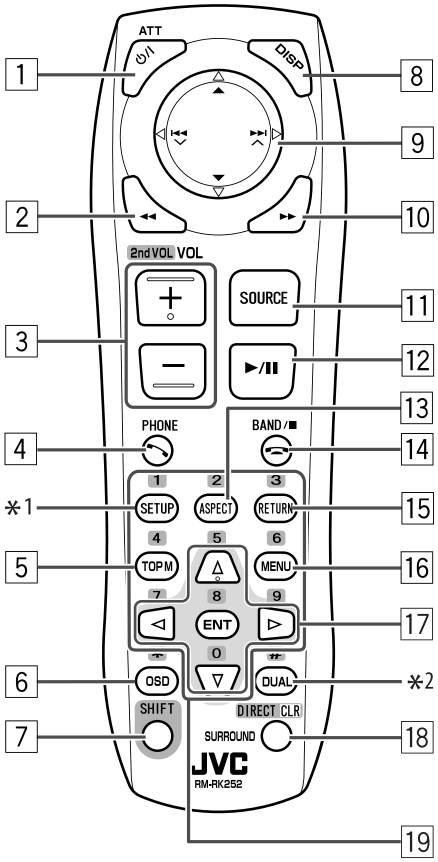
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features


ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
*1
*2

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as "2nd VOL."

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "✳."

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**

- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:

- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For DAB tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼: Select the services.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for ensembles.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:

- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:

- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:

- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:

- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 “TUNER”/”DAB”: Selects the bands.
“DISC”: Stops playback.
“Bluetooth PHONE”: Ends the call.
“Bluetooth AUDIO”: Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for “CD-CH.”

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for “DISC.”
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as “SURROUND.”

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- “TUNER”/”DAB”: Selects the preset station/ service directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
*2 *Not used for this unit.*
*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

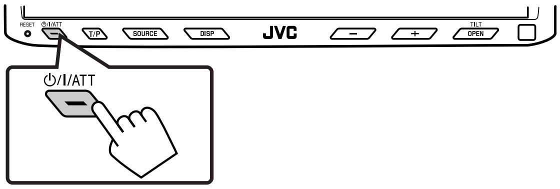
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

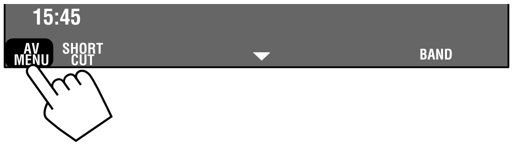
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 52)

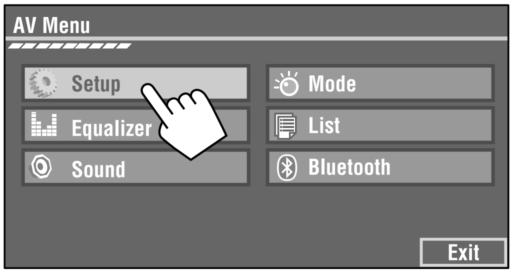
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

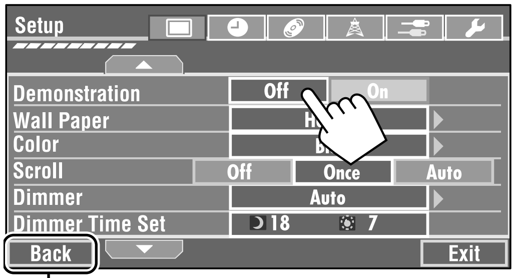

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

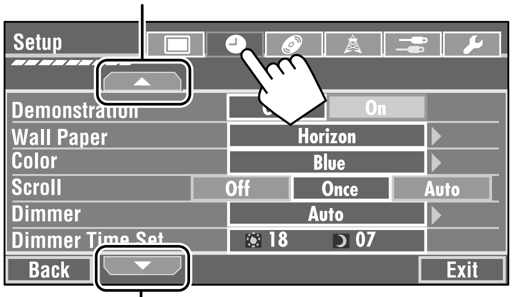
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
7
Back
Exit

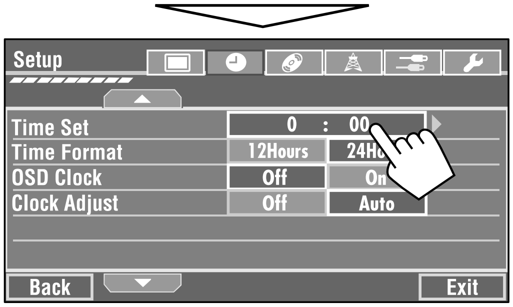
Return to the previous screen.

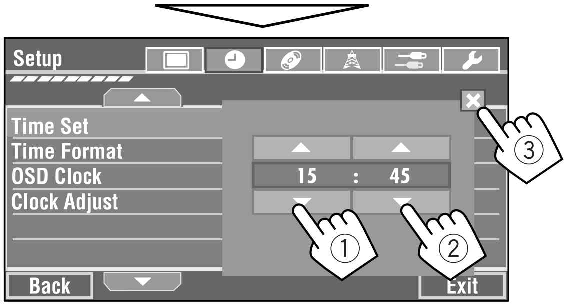
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

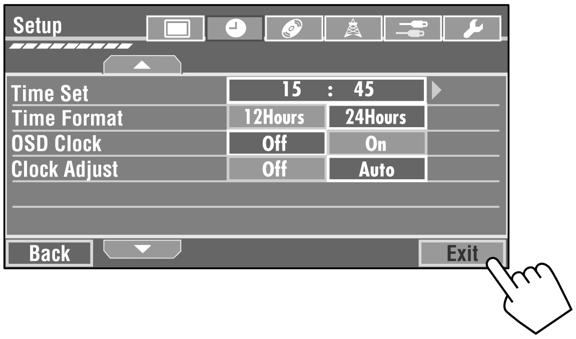

Setup
Demonstration
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
18
07
Back
Exit

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set
0 : 00
Time Format
12Hours
24Ho
OSD Clock
Off
On
Clock Adjust
Off
Auto
Back
Exit


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
Clock Adjust
15 : 45
①
②
③
Back
Exit

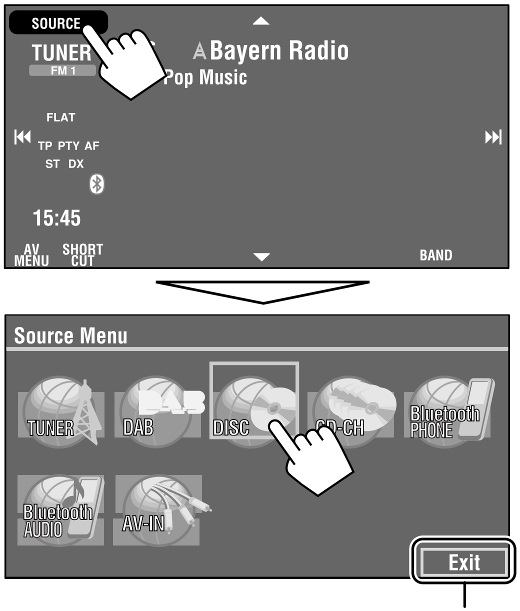
❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup
Time Set
15 : 45
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Clock Adjust
Off
Auto
Back
Exit

Selecting the playback source

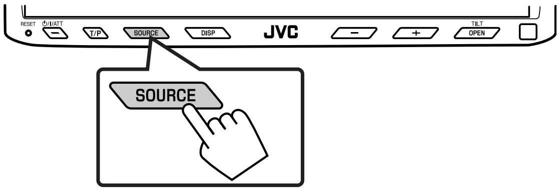
- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 55).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DAB
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit

Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
SOURCE

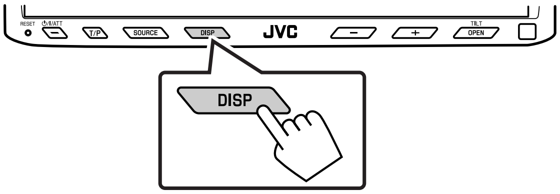
TUNER → **DAB** → **DISC (DVD/VCD/CD)** →**CD-CH, iPod,** or **EXT-IN** → **Bluetooth PHONE** → **Bluetooth AUDIO** → **AV-IN** → (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

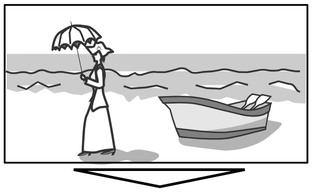
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

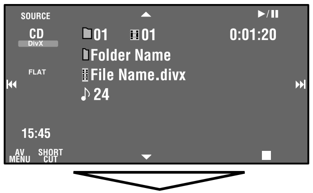

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

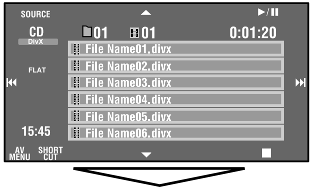
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



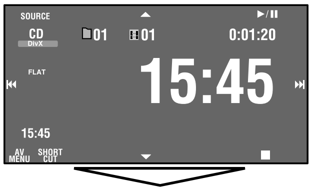
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list

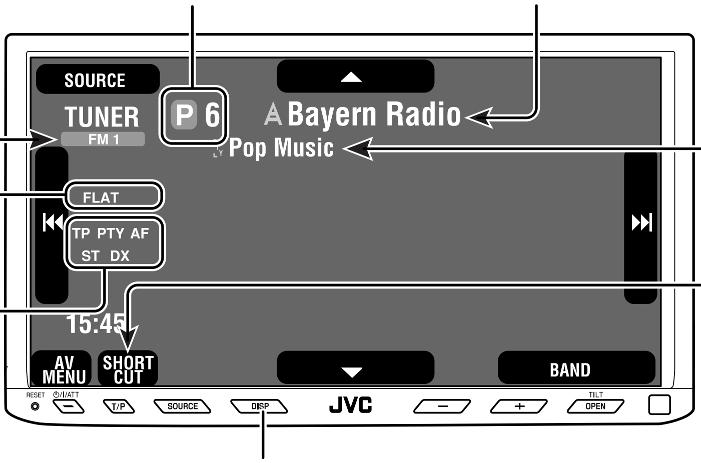

SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
15:45
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 55)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
PS (station name) for FM RDS. If no PS signal is coming in, the tuned frequency appears.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tuner/Standby Reception indicators
PTY code for FM RDS
☞ page 12
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

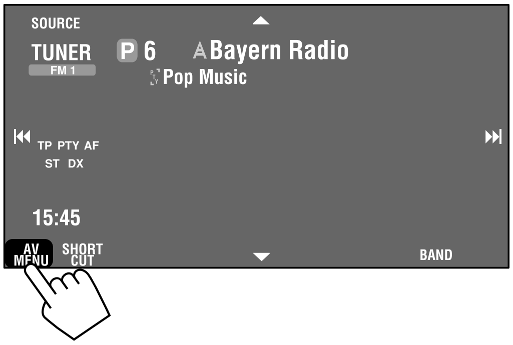
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➛FM1➛FM2➛FM3➛AM

❸ **Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

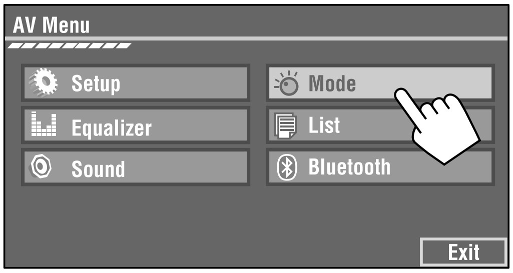
- Manual Search: Hold either [I◄◄]or [►►I] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

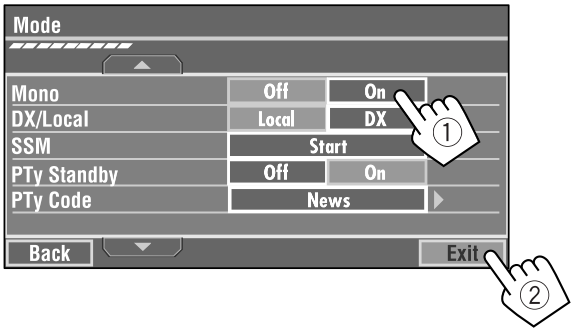
1 **Press [AV MENU].**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Pop Music
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Mode

Mono	Off	On ①
DX/Local	Local	DX
SSM	Start	
PTy Standby	Off	On
PTy Code	News	

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

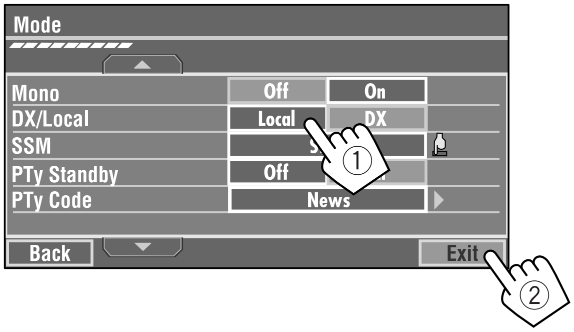
Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit
①
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

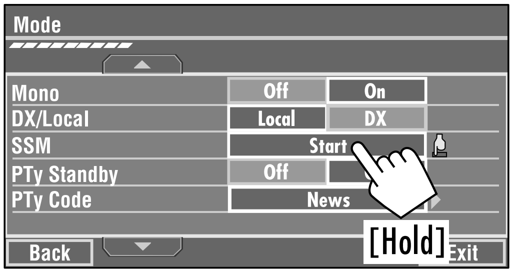
FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3

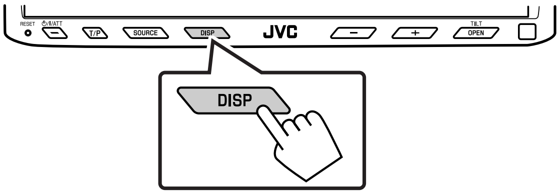

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
PTy Code
News
Back
[Hold]
Exit

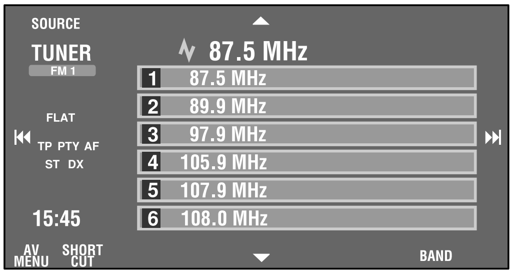
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

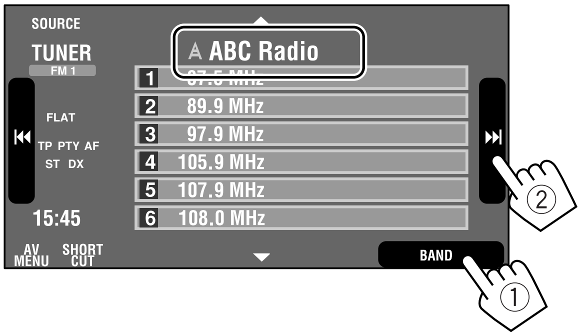
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 **Display the Preset List.**

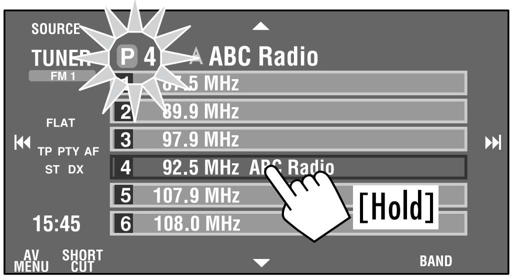

RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
ABC Radio
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

3 **Select a preset number.**

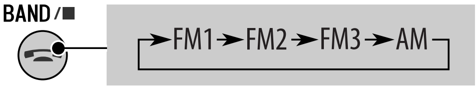

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

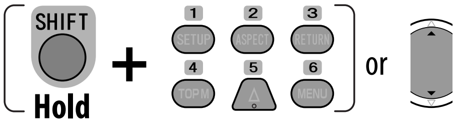
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

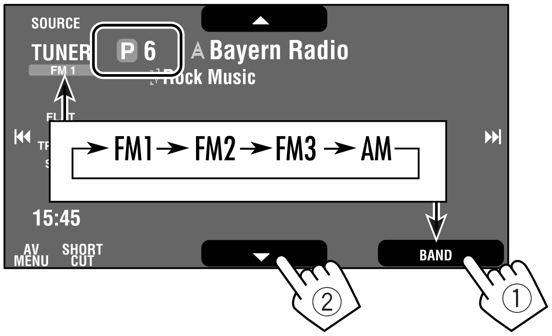

BAND/■
FM1→FM2→FM3→AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

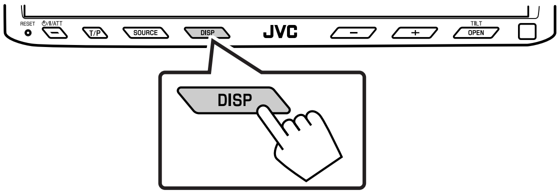
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

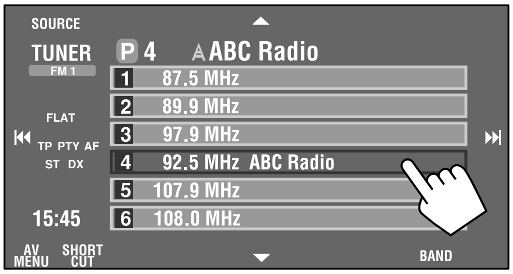

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 6
Bayern Radio
Rock Music
FM1→FM2→FM3→AM
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
ABC Radio
FLAT
TP PTY AF
ST DX
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

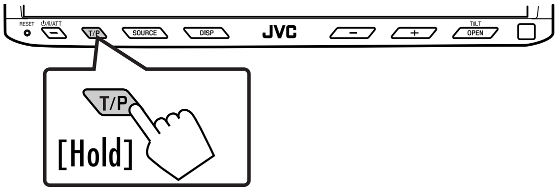
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz ABC Radio
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

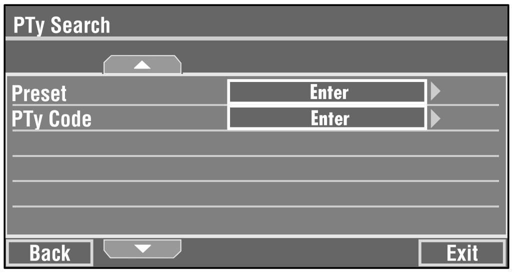
The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme—PTY Search

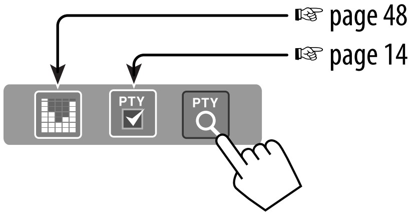
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

1 Display <PTy Search> menu.


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
T/P
[Hold]


PTy Search
Preset
Enter
PTy Code
Enter
Back
Exit

You can also easily access <**PTy Search**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

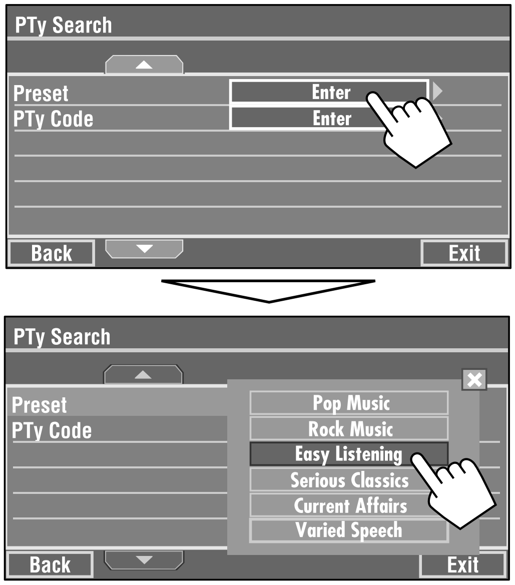


☞ page 48

☞ page 14

2 Select a PTY code.

- In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.
  If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes.

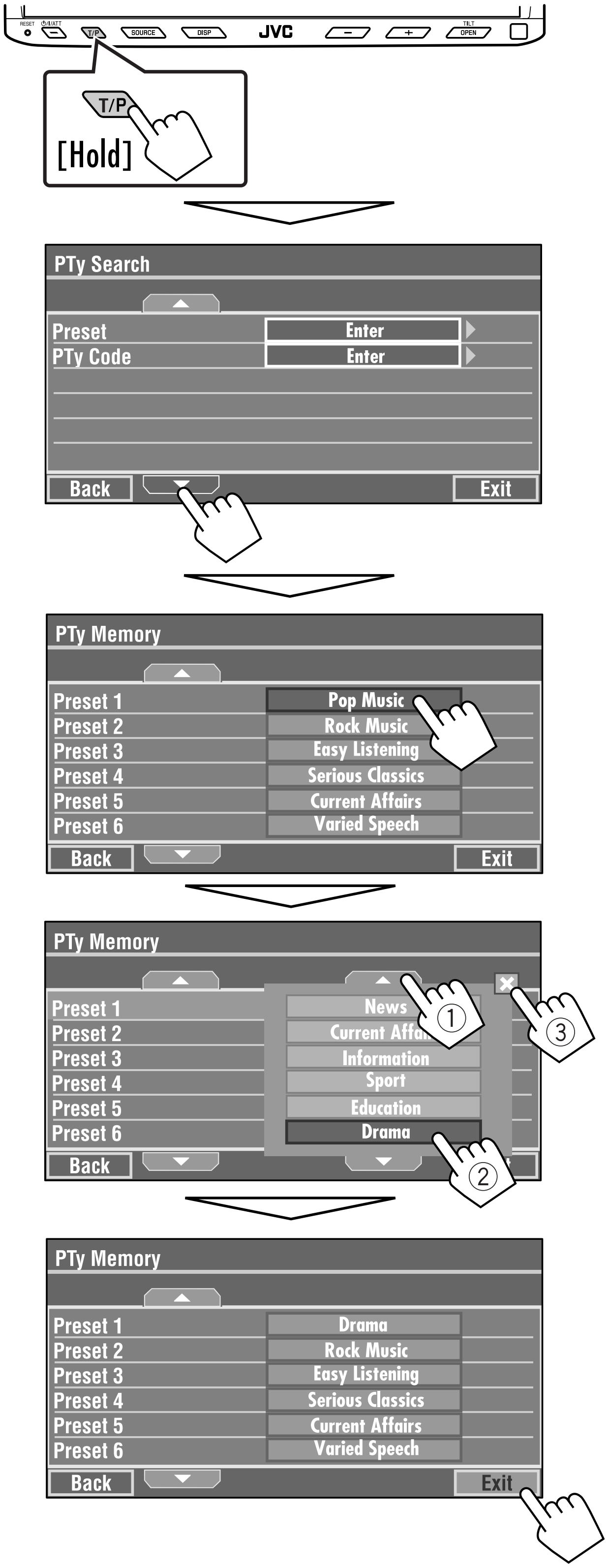

PTy Search
Preset
PTy Code
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit
PTy Search
Preset
PTy Code
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Serious Classics
Current Affairs
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

PTY Search starts.
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Available PTY codes:
News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.
Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
T/P
[Hold]
PTy Search
Preset
PTy Code
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit
PTy Memory
Preset 1
Preset 2
Preset 3
Preset 4
Preset 5
Preset 6
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Serious Classics
Current Affairs
Varied Speech
Back
Exit
PTy Memory
Preset 1
Preset 2
Preset 3
Preset 4
Preset 5
Preset 6
News
Current Affa
Information
Sport
Education
Drama
①
②
③
Back
PTy Memory
Preset 1
Preset 2
Preset 3
Preset 4
Preset 5
Preset 6
Drama
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Serious Classics
Current Affairs
Varied Speech
Back
Exit

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator
Press T/P on the monitor panel to activate.	**TP**
The unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (☞ page 54).	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
Press T/P to deactivate.	Goes off

PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, press [**Mode**], then press [**On**] for <**PTy Standby**>. (☞ next column)	**PTY**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**PTy Standby**> in step **3** on the next column.	Goes off

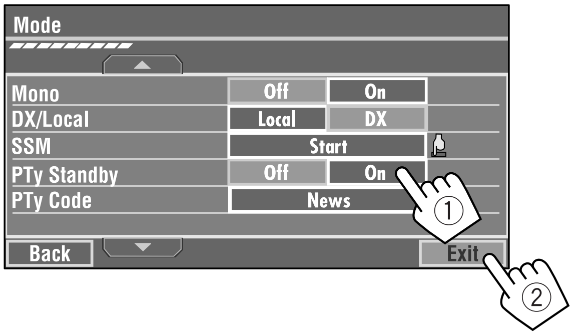
- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby/PTY Standby Reception also works for the DAB tuner and searches for the services.

To activate PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

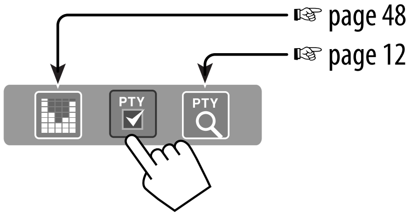
2 **Press [Mode].**

3



PTY Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**News**>: the initial setting.

You can easily activate or deactivate the PTY Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

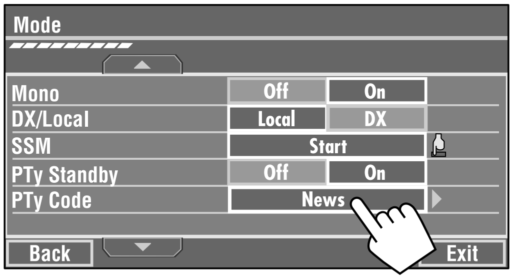


To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

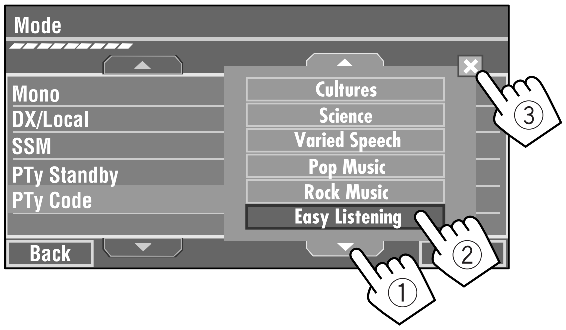
2 **Press [Mode].**

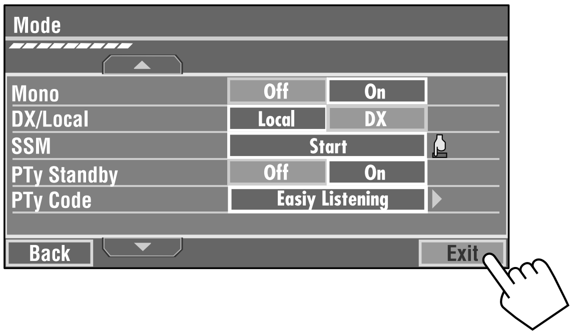
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
News
Back
Exit

4 **Select your favorite PTY code.**

Ex.: Selecting <Easy Listening>

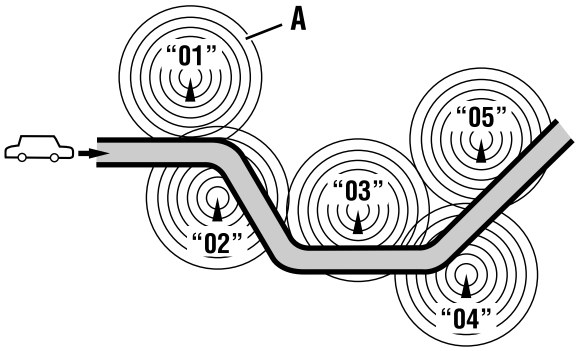

Mode
Mono
DX/Local
SSM
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Cultures
Science
Varied Speech
Pop Music
Rock Music
Easy Listening
Back
①
②
③


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
PTy Standby
Off
On
PTy Code
Easiy Listening
Back
Exit

Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)


A
"01"
"02"
"03"
"04"
"05"

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see <**AF Regional**>. (☞ page 54)

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)." (☞ page 42)

Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another station broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting. To activate this function, select <**On**> for <**Program Search**>.(☞ page 54)

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.

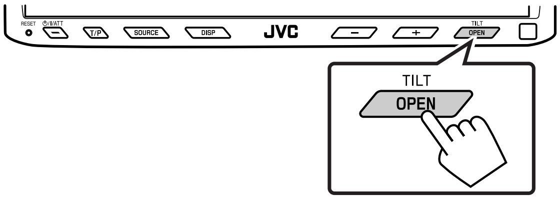
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "🛇" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "🛇," operations will not be accepted.

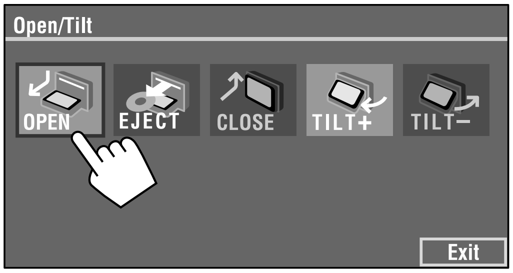
❶ Open the monitor panel.



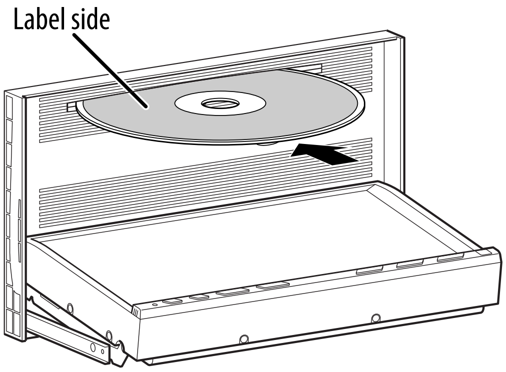
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

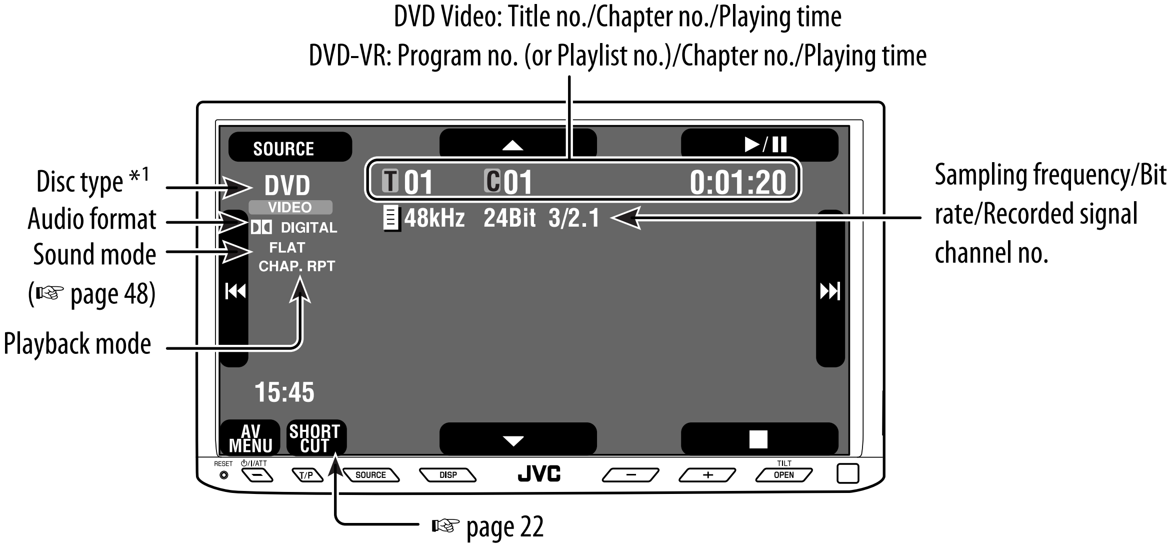
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 65)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR


SOURCE
▶/II
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T 01
C 01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time

DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time

Disc type *1

Audio format

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

Playback mode

Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.

☞ page 22

[▶ / II]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

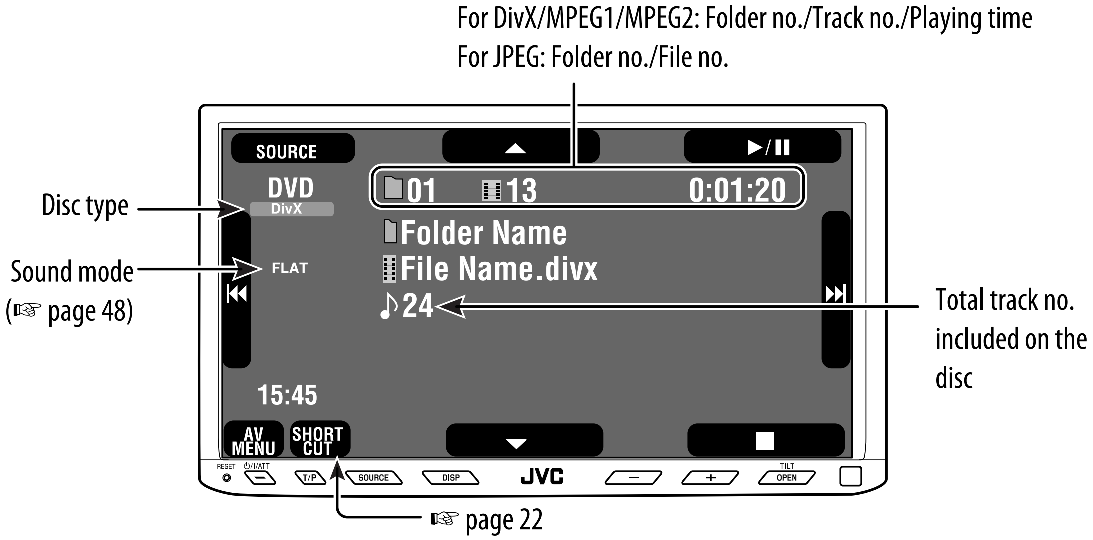
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

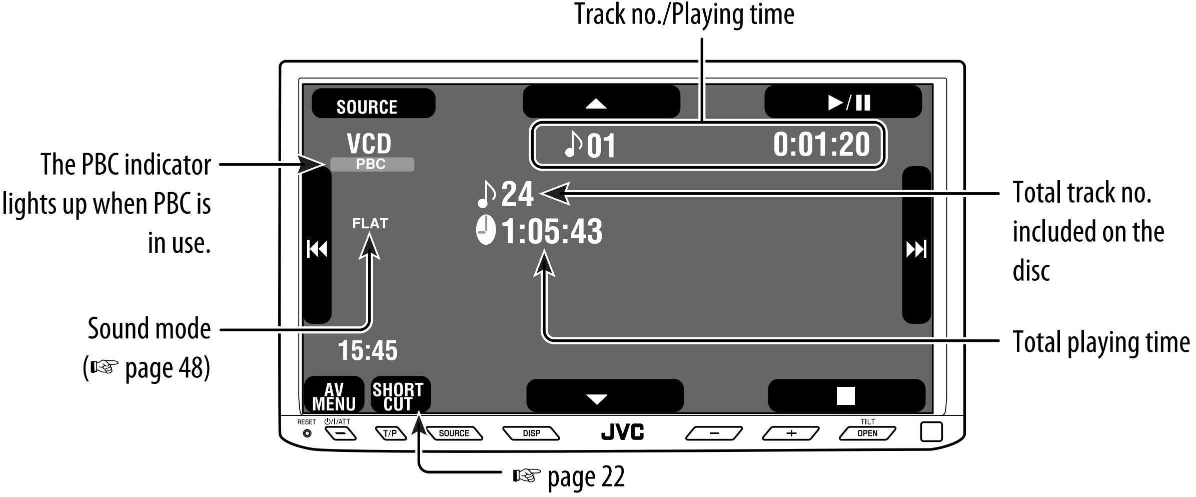
- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX MPEG JPEG


For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.
Disc type
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 22
SOURCE
DVD
DivX
FLAT
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮ ⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD


Track no./Playing time
The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Total track no. included on the disc
Total playing time
☞ page 22
SOURCE
VCD
PBC
FLAT
♪01
0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

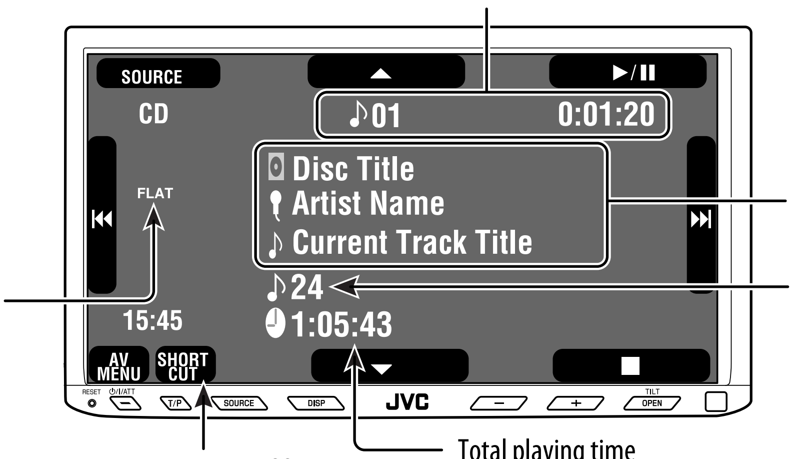
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮ ⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

*1 *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD

Track no./Playing time


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪24
1:05:43
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN

Only for CD Text *3

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

Total track no. included on the disc

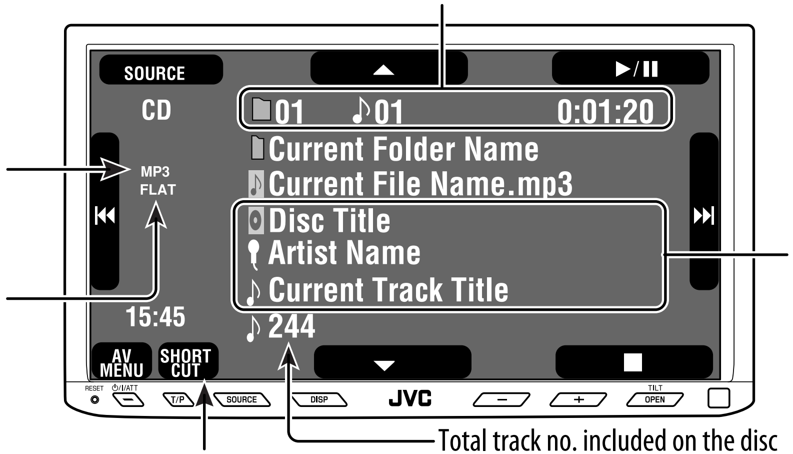
☞ page 22

Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV

Folder no./Track no./Playing time


SOURCE
CD
MP3
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪244
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN

Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)

Sound mode (☞ page 48)

Tag data appears only when it is recorded.

Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 22

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

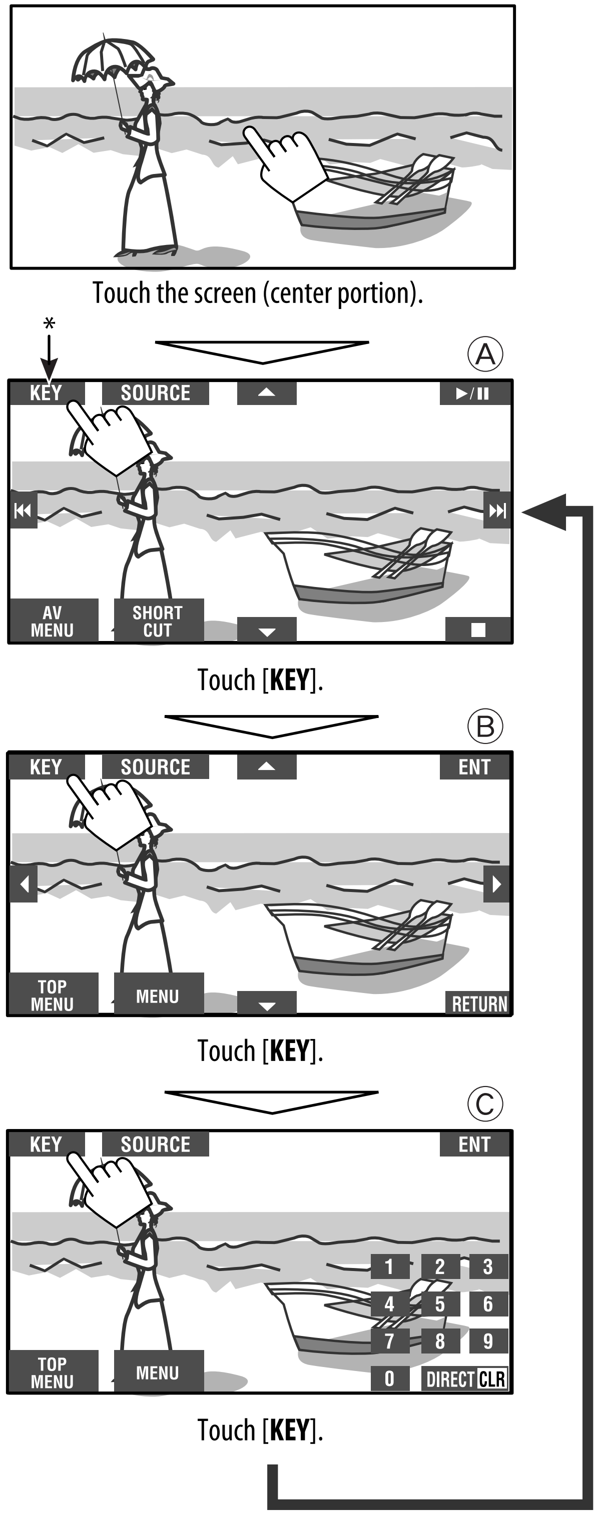
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 52)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 23 to 27 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮◀ ▶⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

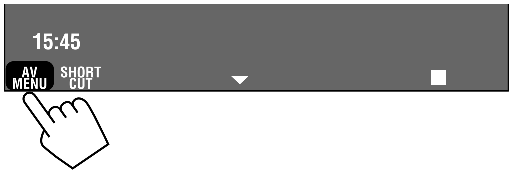
For entering the numbers

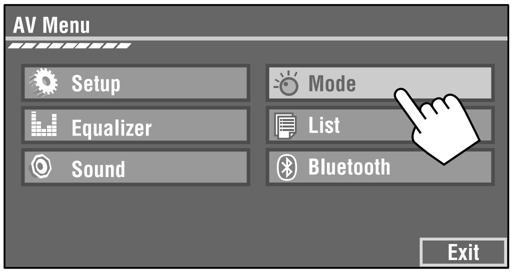
[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

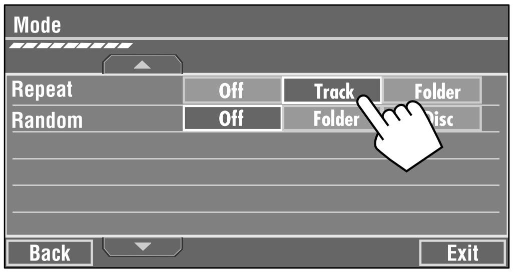
Ex.: To enter “105,” press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

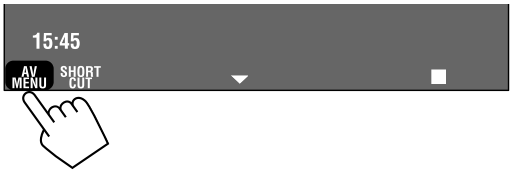
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

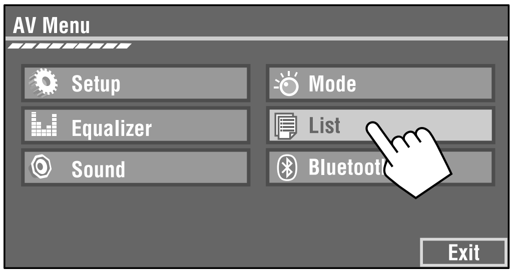
Selecting tracks on the list

If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

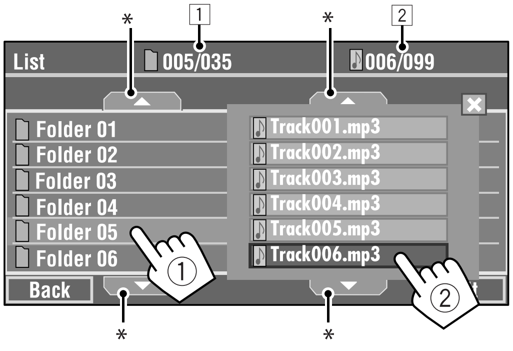
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 **Select a folder (①), then a track (②).**

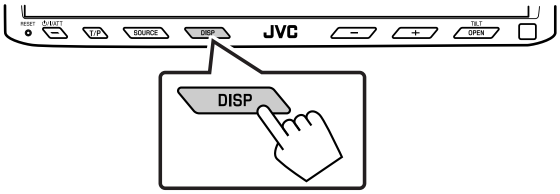

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

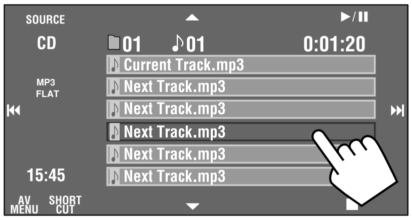
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

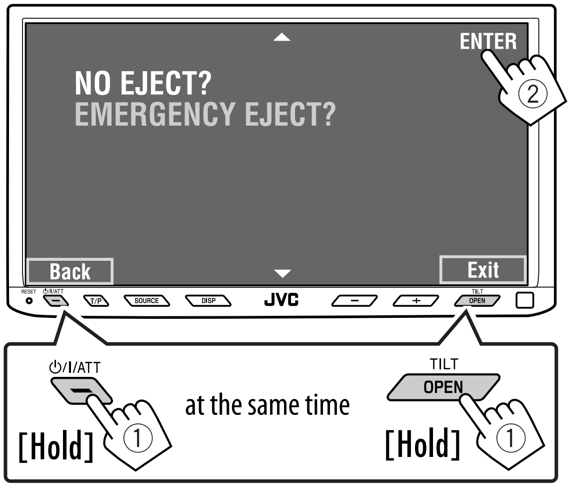

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
▶/II
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

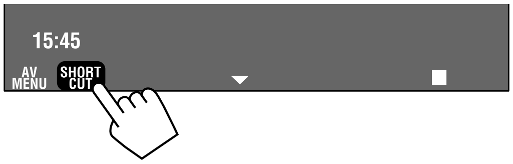

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

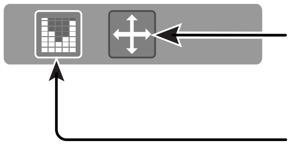
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

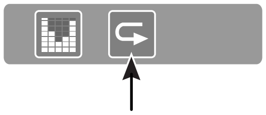
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 52)

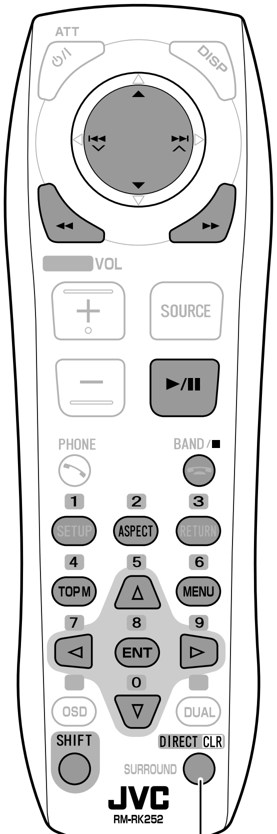
Sound mode (☞ page 48)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 21)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

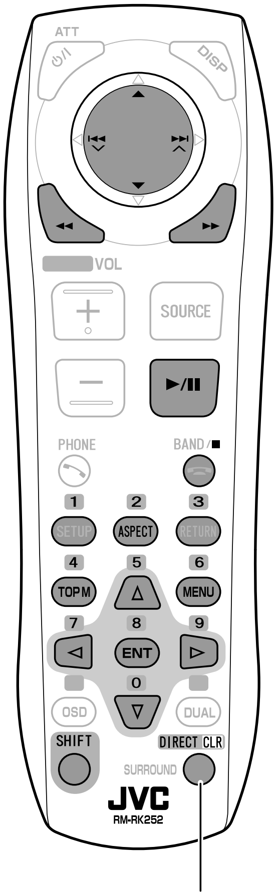
---

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 28 and 29)


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD VR

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(◄◄ ►►) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3

▲ ▼ : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR ➡ 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice ➡ 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 28)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

3 8 ENT To erase the screen.

---

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4 (No sound can be heard.)

◄◄ ►► : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

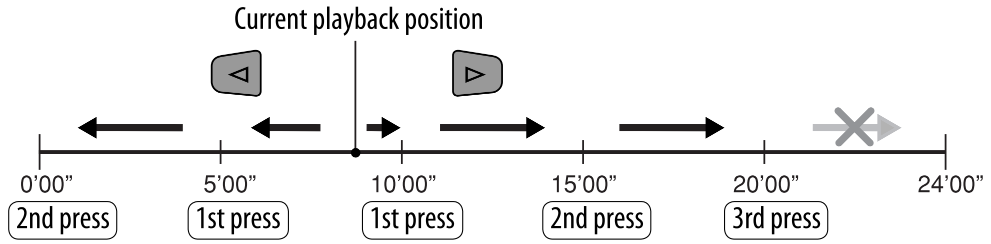
2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

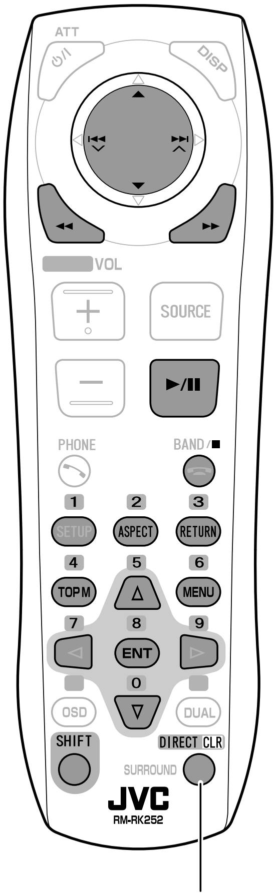
For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1. 4 TOP M / 6 MENU
2. Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ Δ ◁ ▷
3. 8 ENT

---

*4 *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

*5 *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear):
Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

(⏮ ⏭) : Select file.

(▲ ▼) : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT :
Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) → ENT :
Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1
Forward slow motion during pause*2
(No sound can be heard.)

- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT :
Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT :
Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■
2 Select the desired track.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

---

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*
*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*4]

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*5]

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select track.

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*4]

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*5]

▲▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select folder.

[*4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

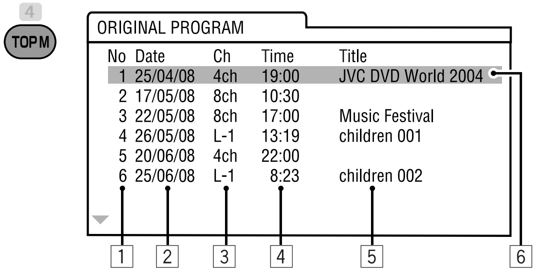
[*5] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

DVD VR

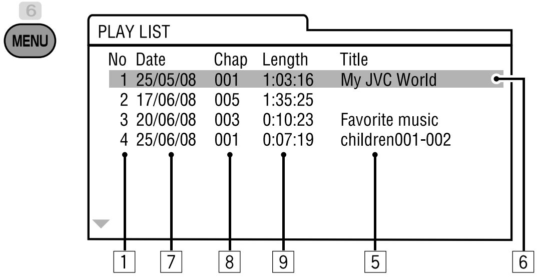
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.

▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT

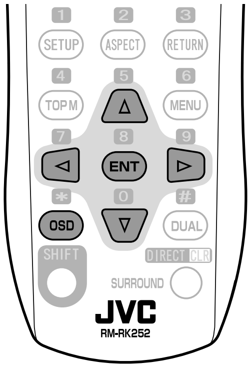
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

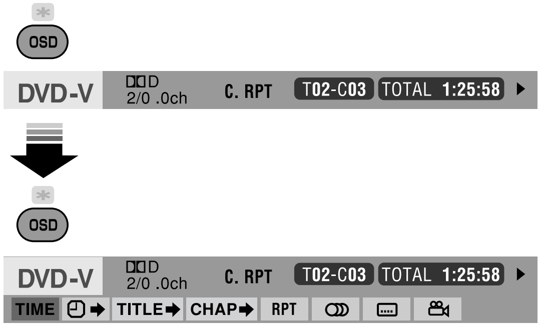
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.


1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
OSD
0
#
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 29)


OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

◁ ▷ ➡ 8 ENT

3 Make a selection.

If a pop-up menu appears...

▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT

- For entering time/numbers...

◁ ▷ :

Move the entry position

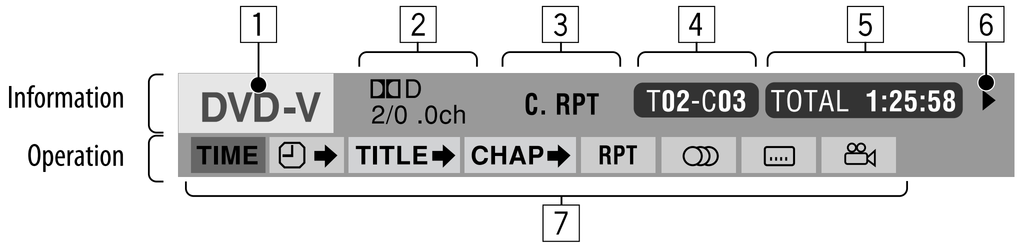
▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT :

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar

OSD

On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode [*1]

DVD Video:

C. RPT: Chapter repeat
T. RPT: Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT: Chapter repeat
PG. RPT: Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat
F. RND: Folder random
A. RND: All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT: Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT: Track repeat
A. RND: All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track [*2]
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track [*2]

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀I/I▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
◷➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play [*1]
RND	Random play [*1]
⊂⊃	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

[*1] ☞ *page 21*

[*2] *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

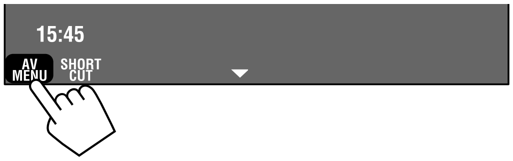
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

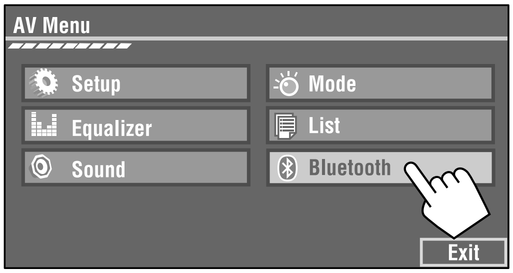
Preparation:

Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

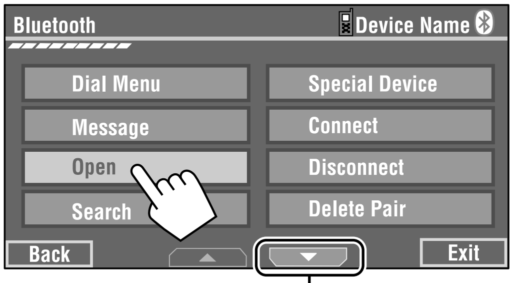
1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

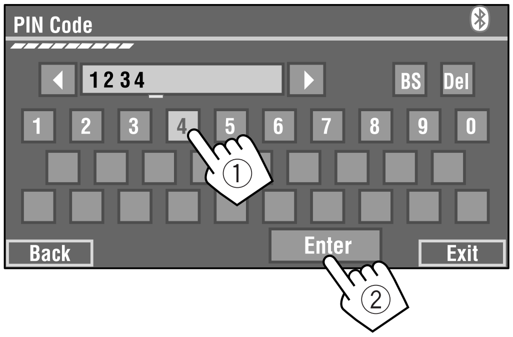

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 58 and 59).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU].

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

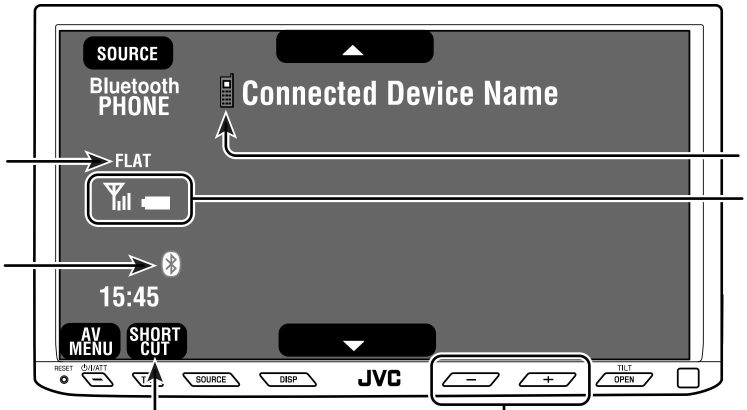
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone



Sound mode (☞ page 48)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

*1 Status of the device Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 34

Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**] Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function

[▲ ▼] Select the registered device
("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

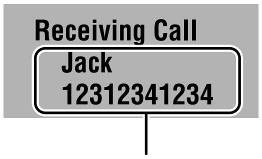
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 58 and 59

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 59)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 59)

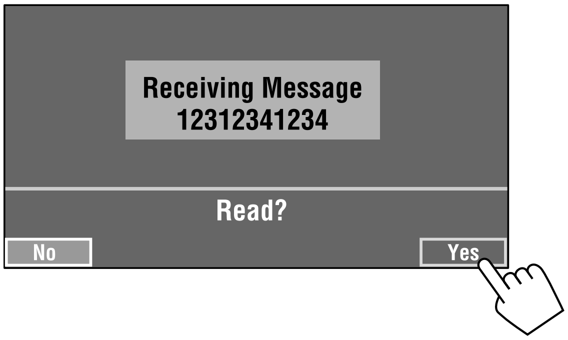
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 59)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

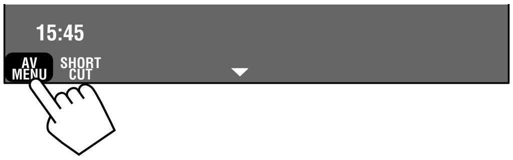
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 58)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 58 and 59)

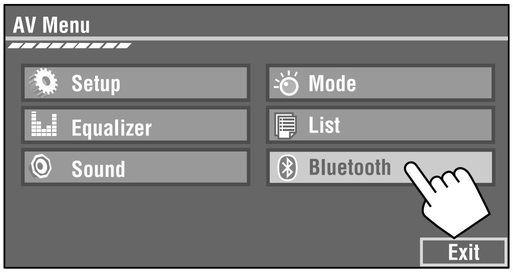
To make a call

1



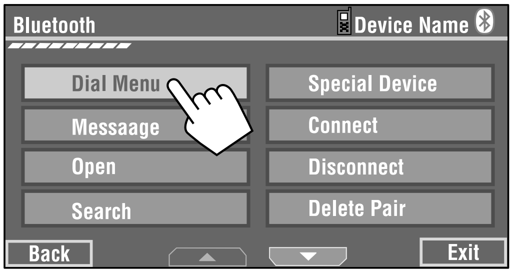
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2



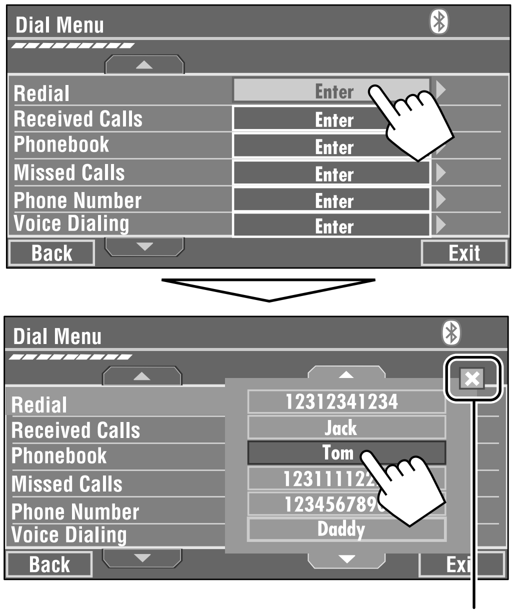
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 Select a calling method, then call.



Dial Menu
Redial
Enter
Received Calls
Enter
Phonebook
Enter
Missed Calls
Enter
Phone Number
Enter
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Back
Exit

Cancel

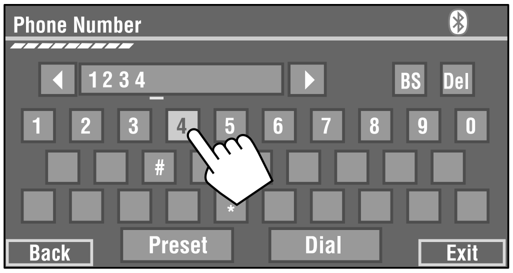
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 34).
Voice Dialing	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

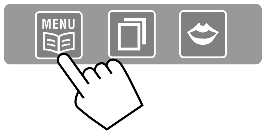
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

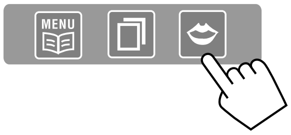
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 35)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

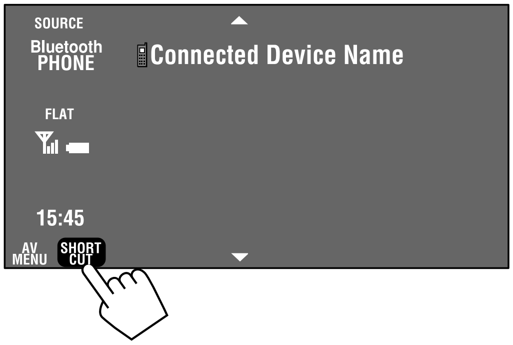
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



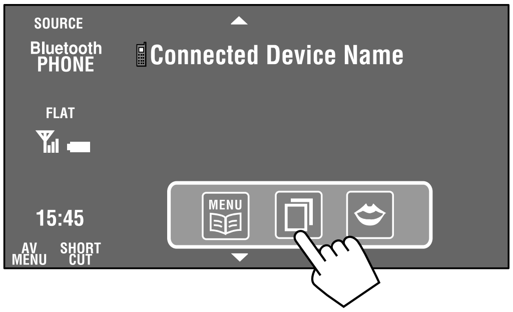
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

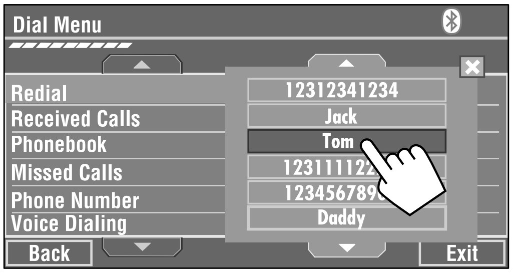
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

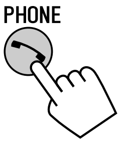
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
15:45
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112…
12345678…
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

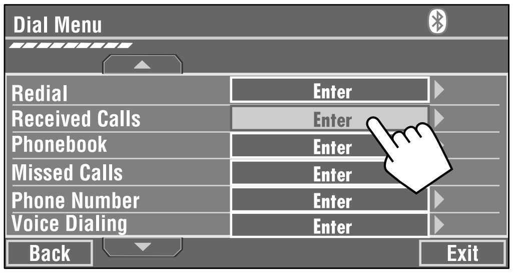
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**].

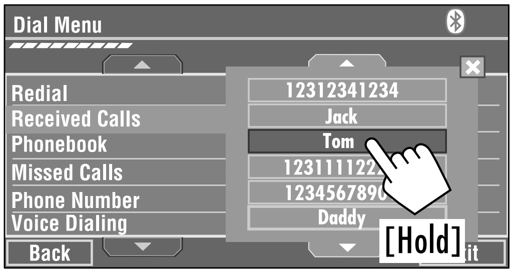
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

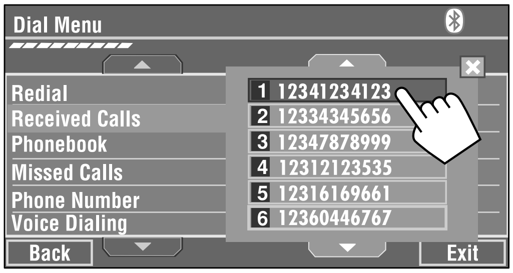

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
123111122
1234567890
Daddy
[Hold]
Back
Exit

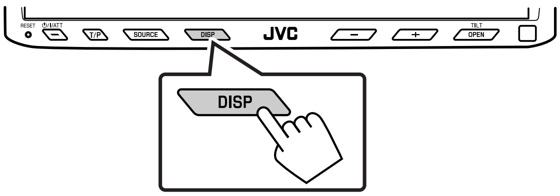
3 Select a preset number.

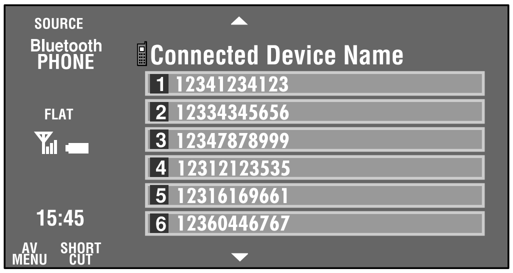

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

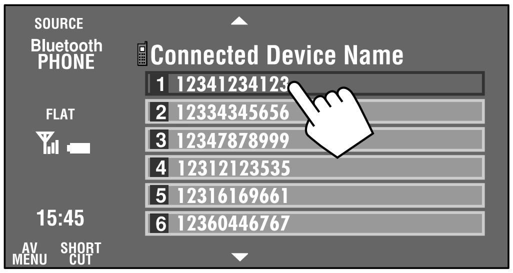
To call a preset number

1


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

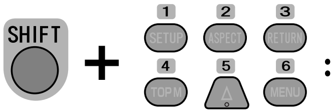
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.

PHONE :

- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).

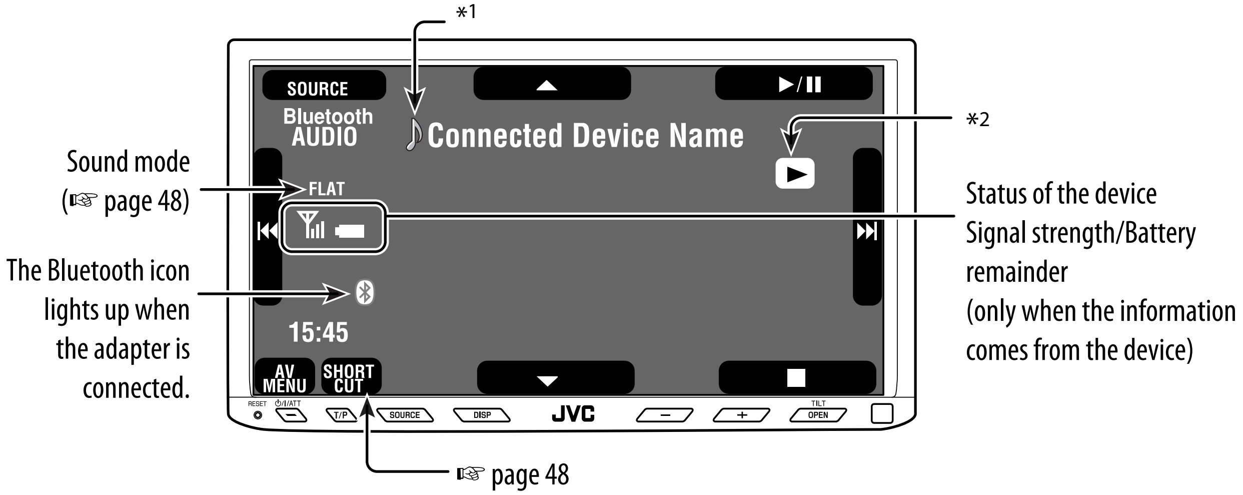
BAND/■ : End the call.

2nd VOL VOL + / − : Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU

[Hold] : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
Connected Device Name
▶/II
*2
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
FLAT
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)
JVC
☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / II] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

---

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, ☎ appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.

▶/II BAND/■ : Start and pause playback.

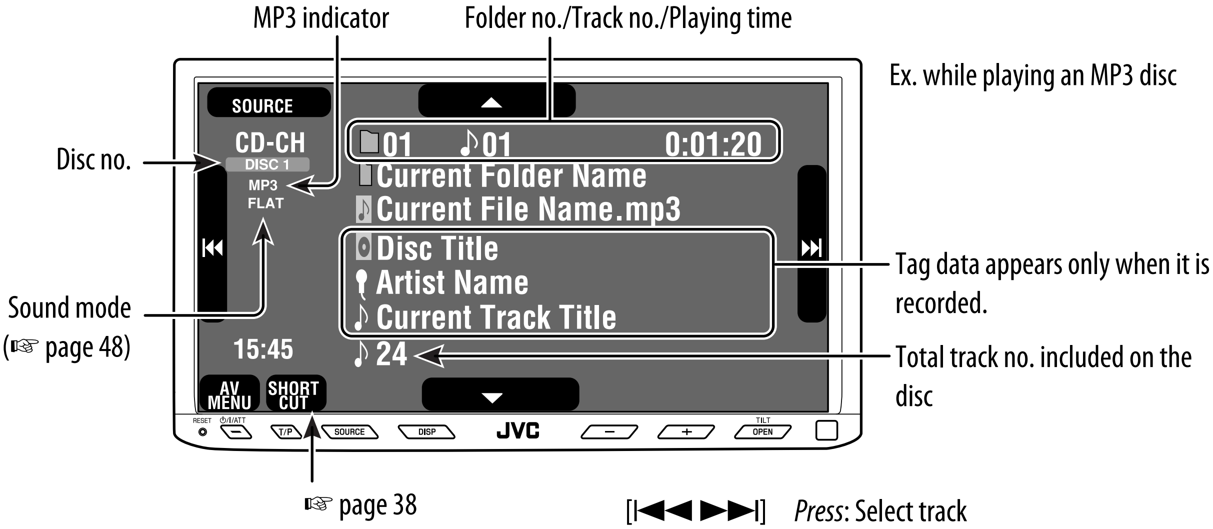
(I◀◀ ▶▶I) : Reverse/forward skip

2nd VOL VOL + − : Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:

If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 38
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01
01
0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
15:45
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Ex. while playing an MP3 disc

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folders (only for MP3) *Hold*: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

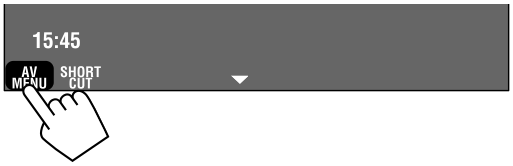
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

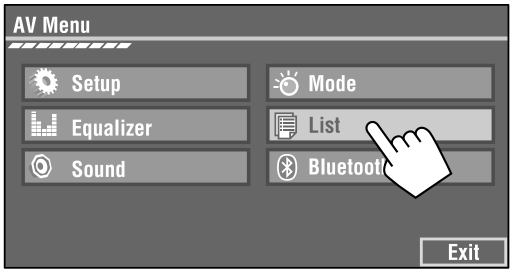
❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

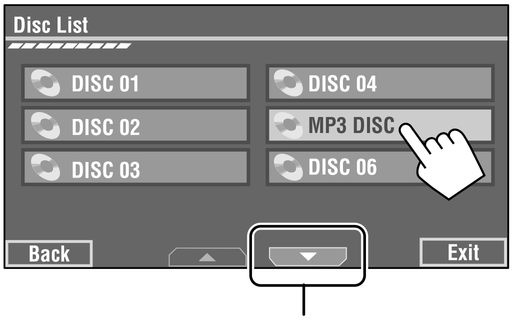
❷


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

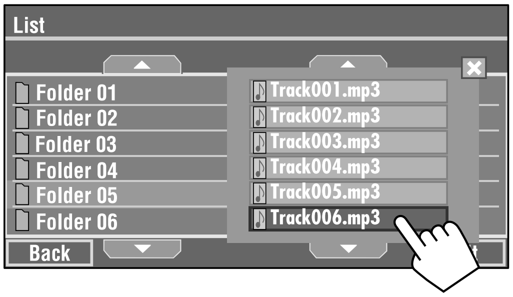

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 22)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

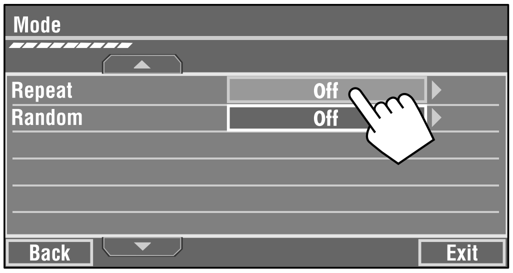
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

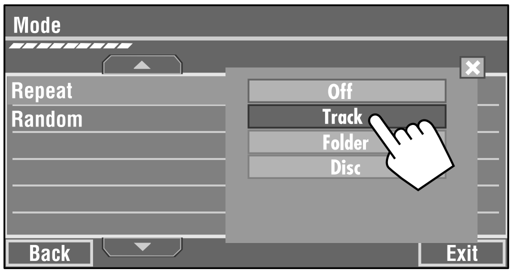
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3





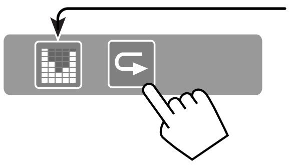
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

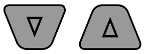
Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

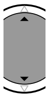
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

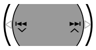
☞ page 48



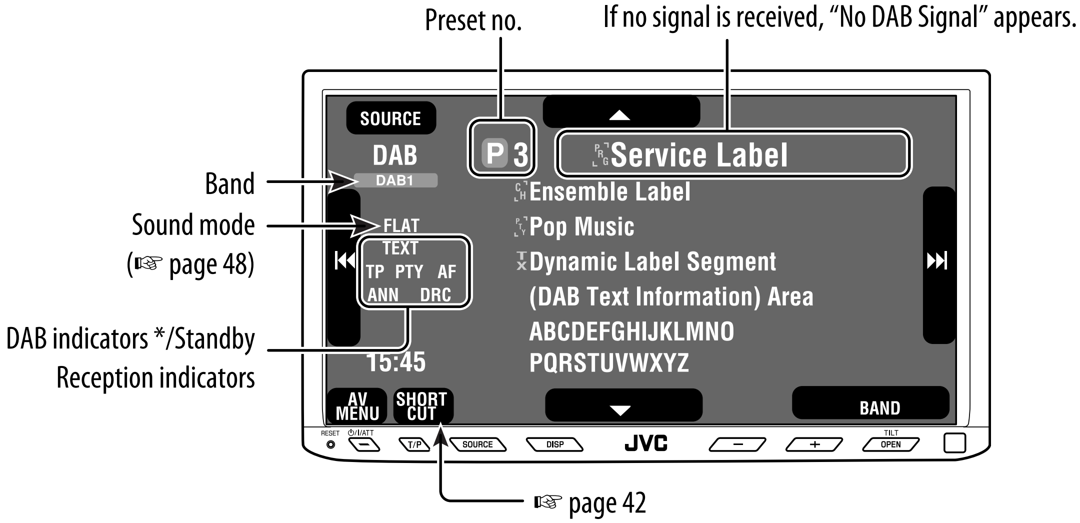
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.


: Select disc.


: Select folder (MP3 only).


- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the DAB tuner


Preset no.
If no signal is received, “No DAB Signal” appears.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
DAB indicators */Standby
Reception indicators
☞ page 42
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
P 3
Service Label
Ensemble Label
Pop Music
Dynamic Label Segment
(DAB Text Information) Area
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO
PQRSTUVWXYZ
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

* *While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [BAND].**

→ DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 ┐ (back to DAB1)

❸ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◀◀]or [▶▶|] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.

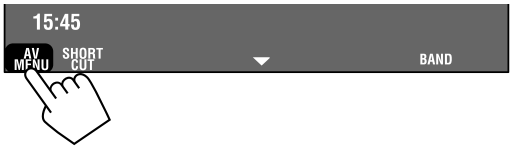
❹ **Press [▼] or [▲] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

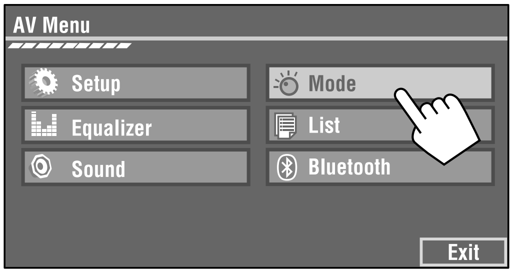
Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

- The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals.

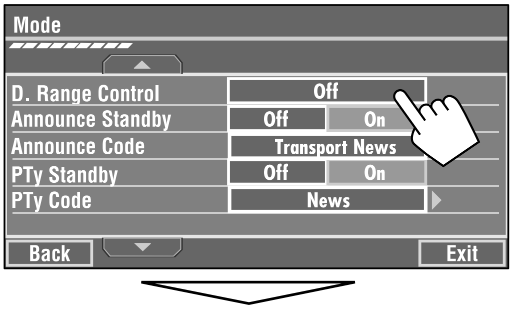
1


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

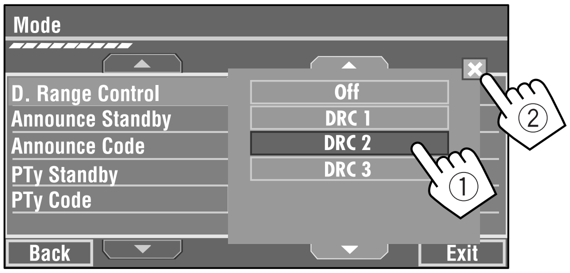
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

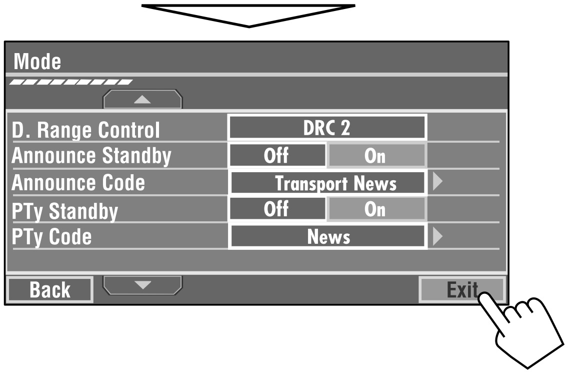
3


Mode
Back
Exit

D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News


Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code
Off
DRC 1
DRC 2
DRC 3
①
②
Back
Exit

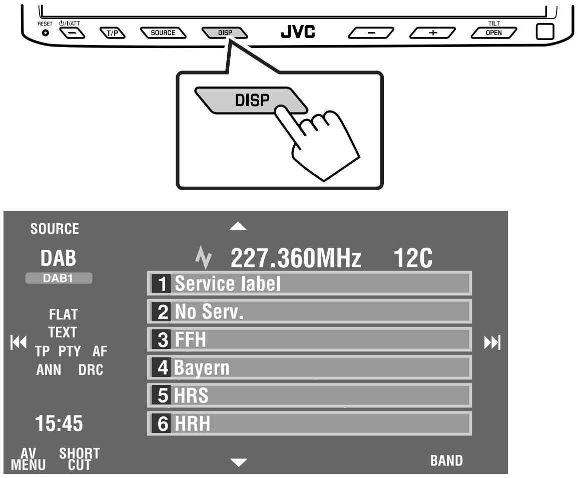
- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.


Mode
Back
Exit

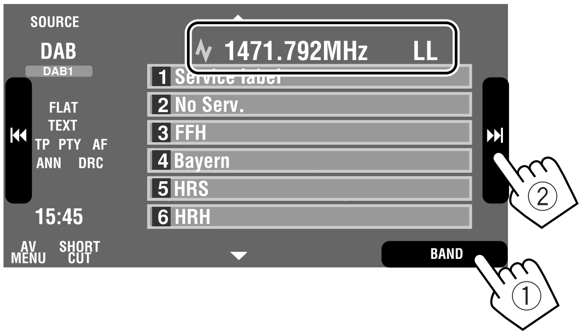
D. Range Control: DRC 2
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

Manual presetting

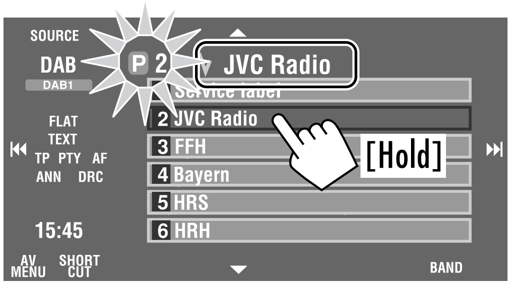
1 Display the Preset List.


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
DISP
SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
227.360MHz
12C
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 Tune in to a service you want to preset.


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
1471.792MHz
LL
1 Service label
2 No Serv.
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

3 Select a preset number.

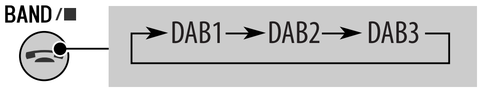

SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 2
JVC Radio
Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
[Hold]
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The service selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 2.

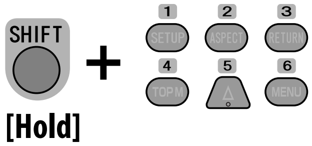
Selecting preset services

On the remote:

1

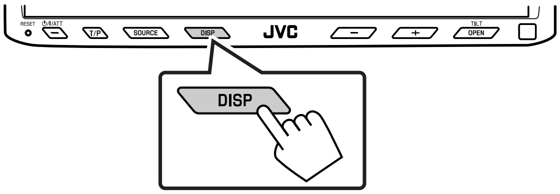

BAND/■
DAB1
DAB2
DAB3

2

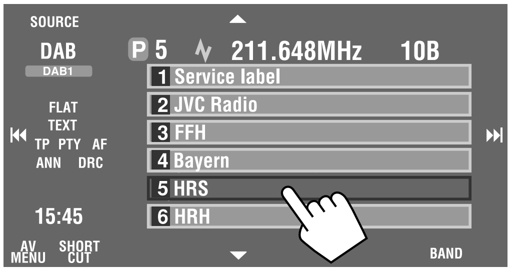

SHIFT
+
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
[Hold]

On the unit:

1


RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
DAB
DAB1
P 5
211.648MHz
10B
1 Service label
2 JVC Radio
3 FFH
4 Bayern
5 HRS
6 HRH
FLAT
TEXT
TP PTY AF
ANN DRC
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 14 for FM RDS stations.

- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Activating/deactivating Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

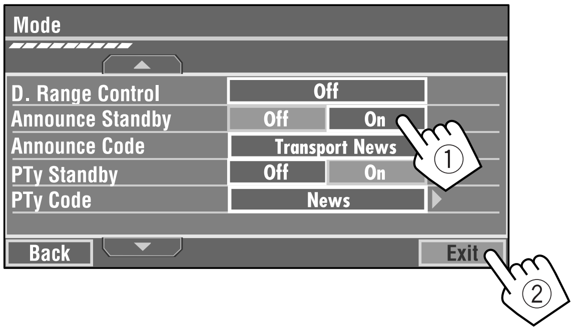
Announcement Standby Reception	**Indicator**
To activate, display <**AV Menu**> screen, then select <**Mode**>, press [**On**] for <**Announce Standby**>. (☞ below)	**ANN**
The unit will temporarily switch to your favorite service from any source other than FM/AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another service providing the related signals.	Flashes
To deactivate, press [**Off**] for <**Announce Standby**> (☞ below).	Goes off

To activate Announcement Standby Reception

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3

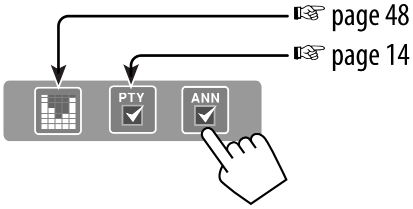

Mode
Back
Exit
①
②

D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off On
PTy Code: News

Announcement Standby Reception is now activated for PTY code <**Transport News**>: the initial setting.

Continued on the next page

You can easily activate and deactivate Announcement Standby Reception by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

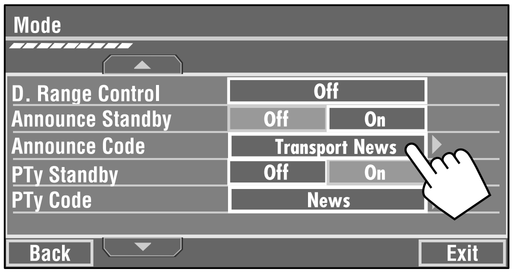


To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception

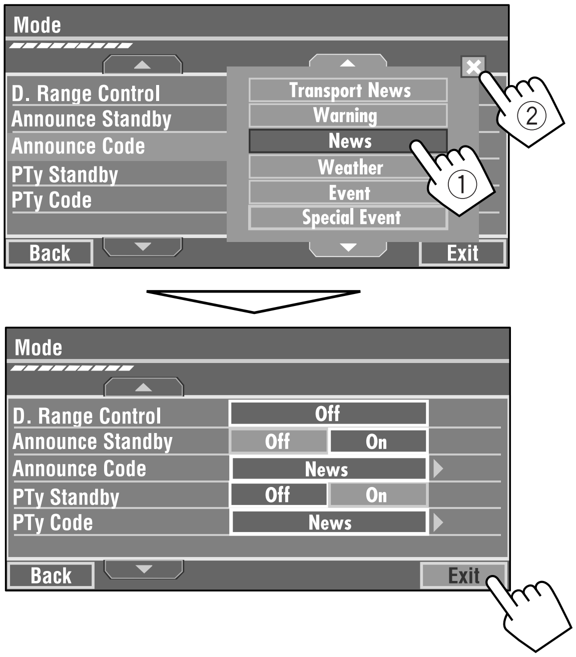
1 **Press [AV MENU].**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3


Mode
D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: Transport News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

4 **Select your favorite announcement type.**


Mode
D. Range Control
Announce Standby
Announce Code
PTy Standby
PTy Code

Mode
D. Range Control: Off
Announce Standby: Off / On
Announce Code: News
PTy Standby: Off / On
PTy Code: News

Available announcement types:
Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News

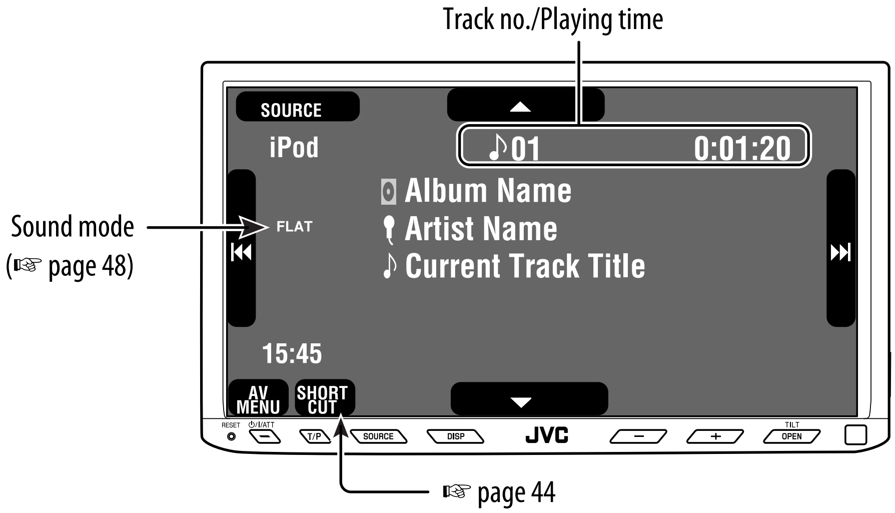
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, select <**Off**> for <**DAB AF**>. (☞ page 54)

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
☞ page 44
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
FLAT
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ **Artists** ↔ **Albums** ↔ **Songs** ↔ **Genres** ↔ **Composers** ↔ (back to the beginning)

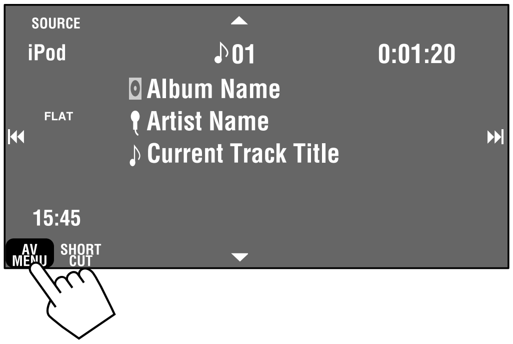
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

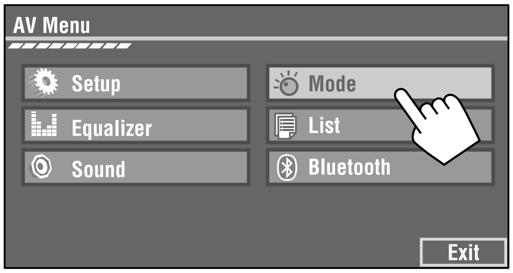
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

Selecting playback modes

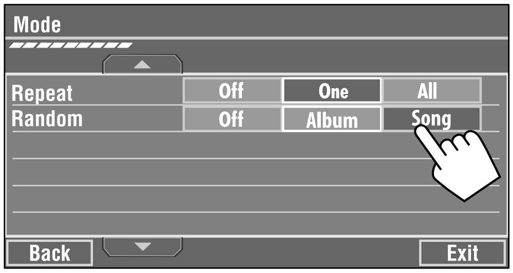
1


SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.

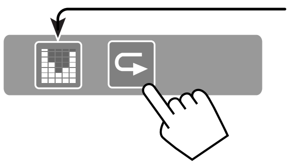

Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

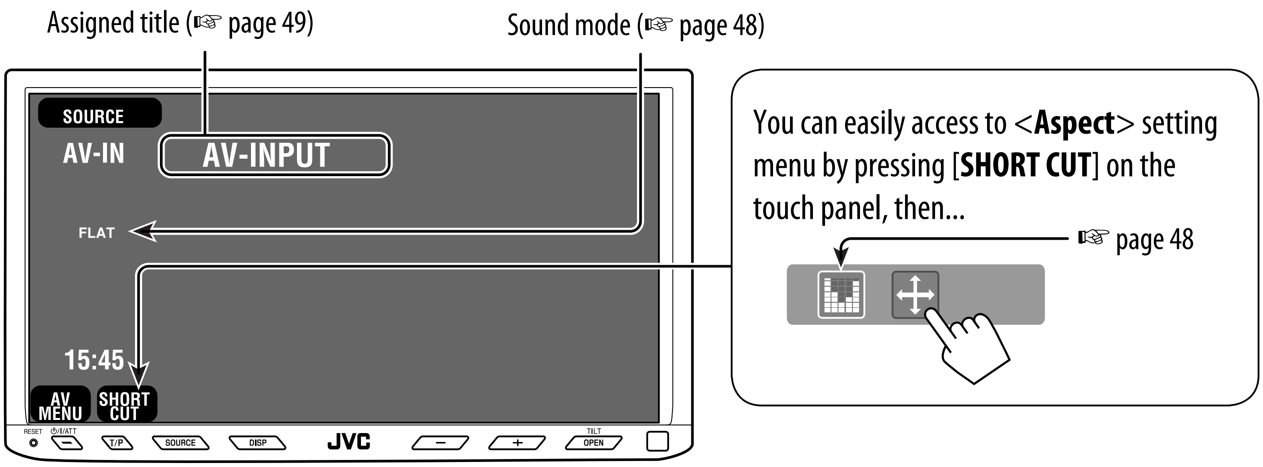


☞ page 48

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


Assigned title (☞ page 49)
Sound mode (☞ page 48)
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 48

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

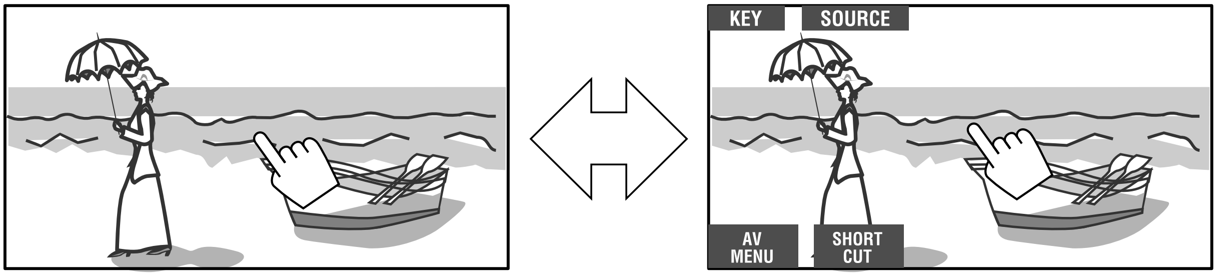
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is "AV-IN."

Continued on the next page

Navigation screen

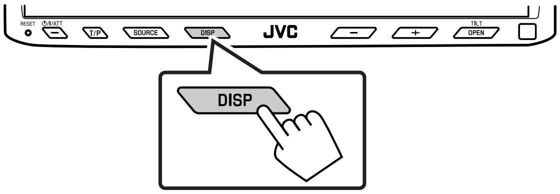
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 55)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

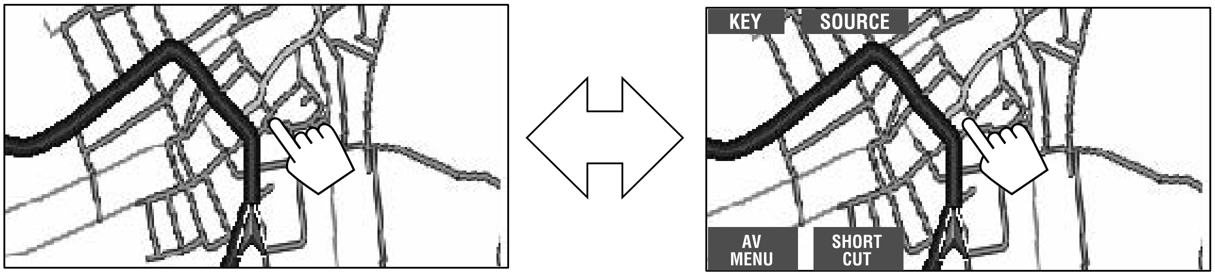


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 52)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 20) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

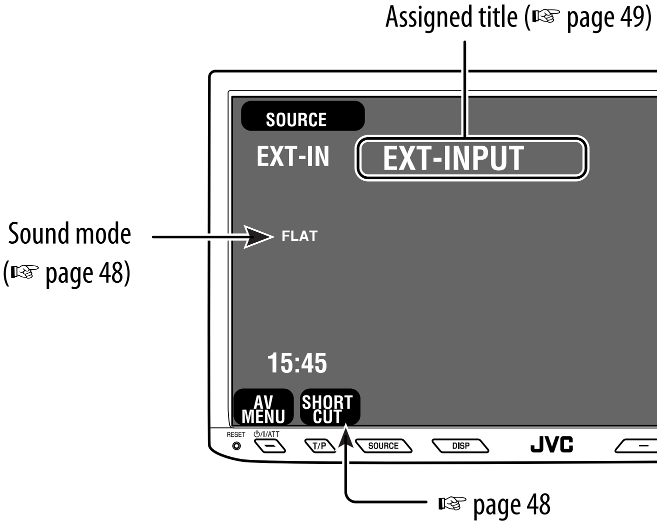
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 55)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


Assigned title (☞ page 49)
SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
Sound mode
(☞ page 48)
FLAT
15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 48

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

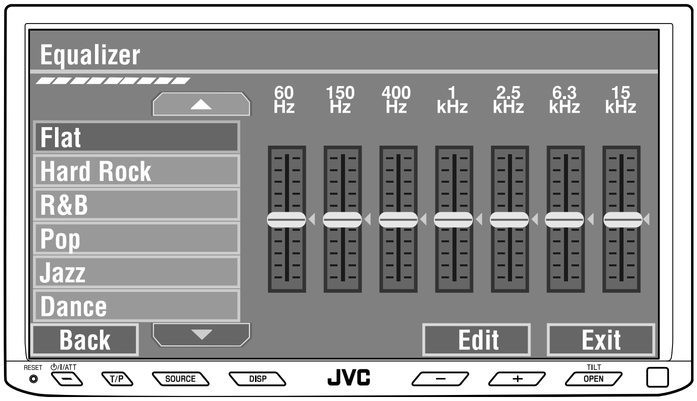
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 55)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

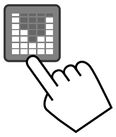
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

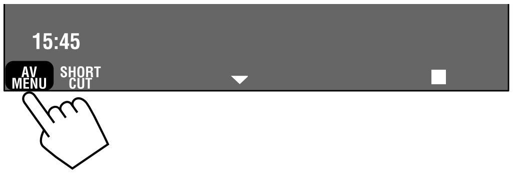
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

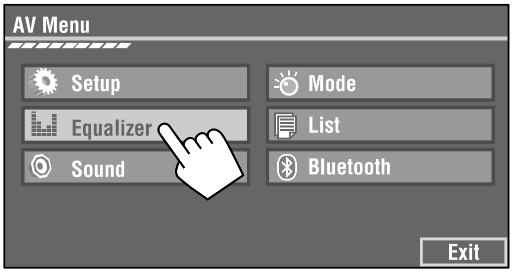
While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



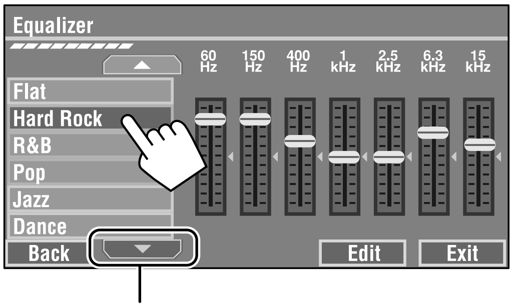
❶


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**

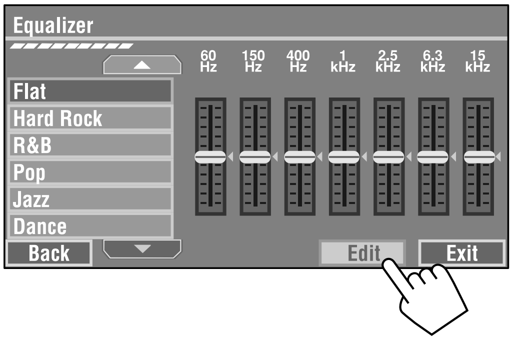

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

Move to other six sound modes

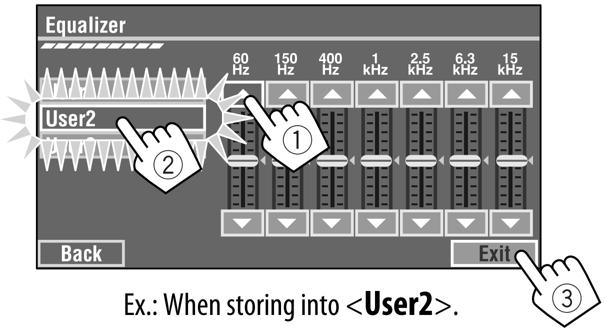
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

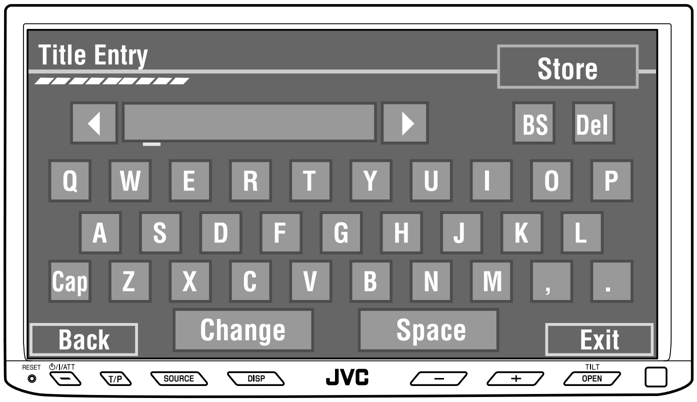

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
③
Back
Exit

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

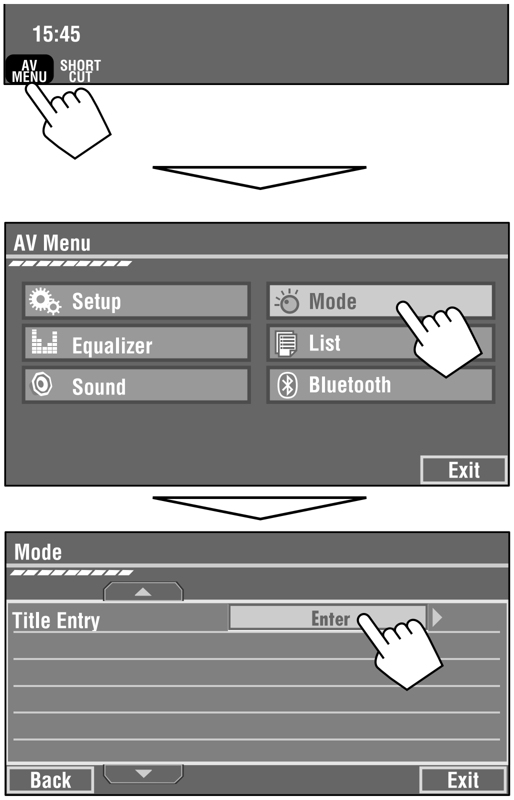
In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

You can assign titles to "AV-IN" and "EXT-IN."

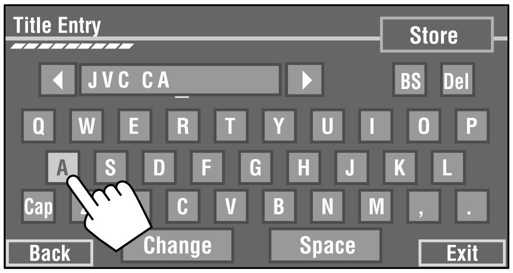
❶ Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN] or [EXT-IN]. (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.


15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

❸ Assign a title.

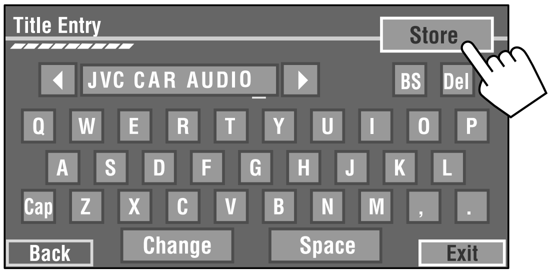

Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CA

You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 67).

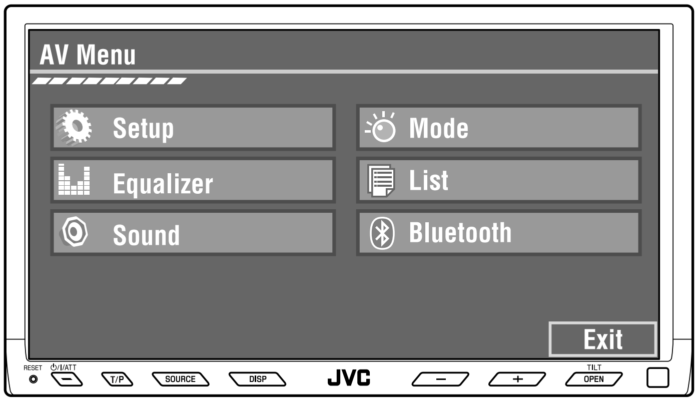
- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CAR AUDIO

Menu operations

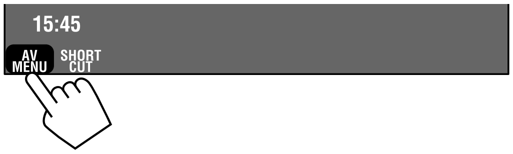

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
T/P
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

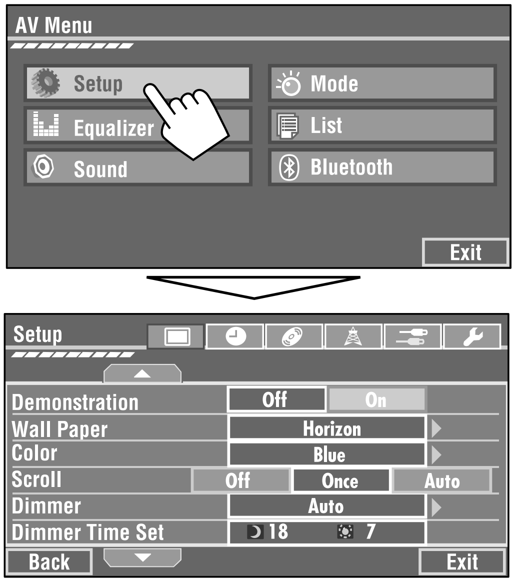
- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶

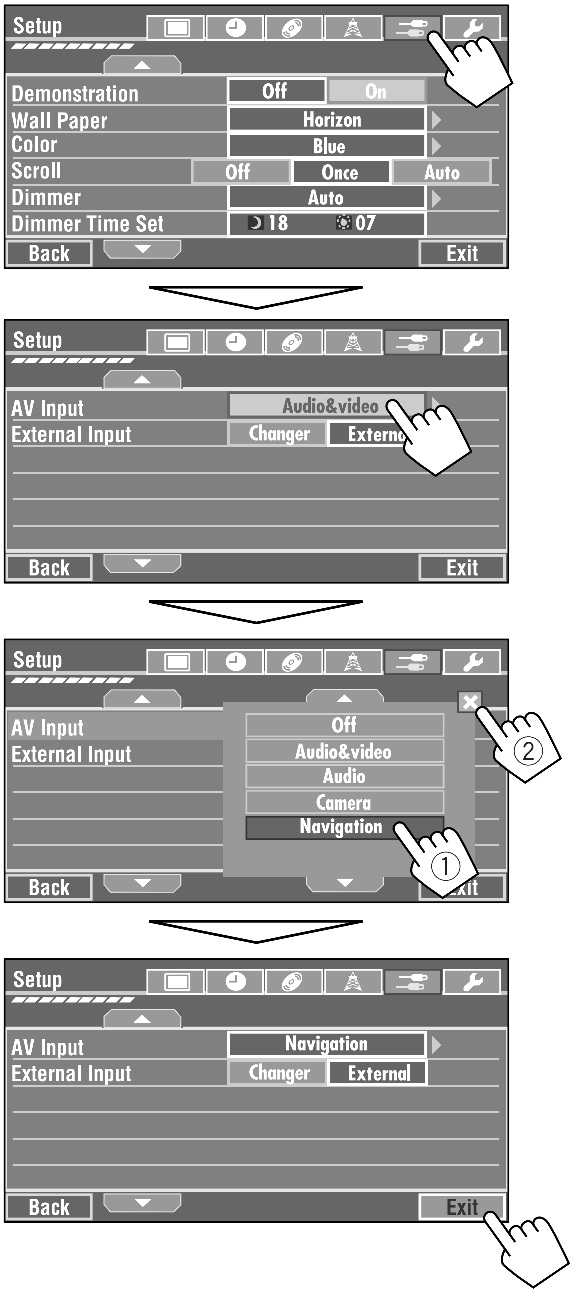

15:45
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Demonstration Off On
Wall Paper Horizon
Color Blue
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 18 7
Back
Exit

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Demonstration Off On
Wall Paper Horizon
Color Blue
Scroll Off Once Auto
Dimmer Auto
Dimmer Time Set 18 07
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input Audio&video
External Input Changer External
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
External Input
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
①
②
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input Navigation
External Input Changer External
Back
Exit

Setup

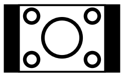
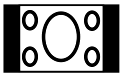
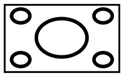
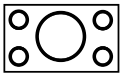
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.[*1] **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust[*2]	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. • You cannot adjust <**Tint**>. (fixed)

Initial: **Underlined**

[*1] *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

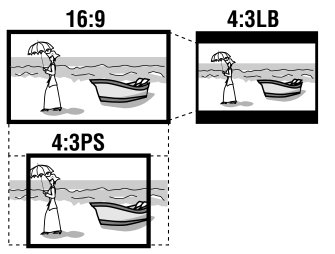
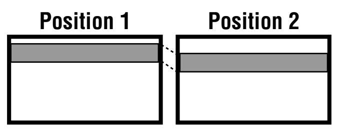
[*2] *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

Initial: <u>**Underlined**</u>

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td>Display</td><td>Aspect*1</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Full:</u>
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Language*2</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
<u>English</u>, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected, ☞ [67].</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial <u>0:00</u> ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, <u>24Hours</u> ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
<u>Off</u>, On</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Clock Adjust</td><td>Select <Auto> to adjust the clock automatically using the clock time (CT) data from an FM RDS station.
Off, <u>Auto</u> ☞ [8]</td></tr>
</table>

*1 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*2 *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language***3	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Audio Language*3	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Subtitle*3	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 66).
	Monitor Type*3 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*3 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [28] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*3	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*3	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*3	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 65) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*3 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional	When the received signals from the current station become weak... **Off**: Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. **AF Reg.** (Regional): Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. **AF**: Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up). ☞ [15]
	TA Volume	**00** to **30** or **50***2; Initial **15** ☞ [14]
	Program Search	**Off**, **On** ☞ [15]
	DAB AF*3	**Off**, **On** ☞ [42]

*1 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*2 *Depends on the amplifier gain control. (☞ page 56)*

*3 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	**AV Input***4	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [45, 46] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***5 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*6	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***7: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [37, 43] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [47] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner, this setting is not required. They are automatically detected.
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting*8	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1, Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the car phone system.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

*4 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*5 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*6 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*7 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

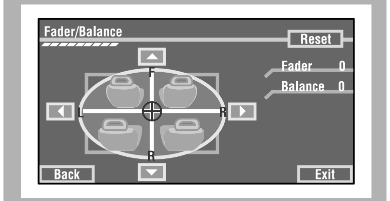
*8 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Initial: **Underlined**

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [48]

Sound

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 50.

Mode*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
PTy Standby	Only for FM/DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [14]
PTy Code	Only for FM/DAB. (Initial **News**) ☞ [15]
Title Entry	Only for “AV-IN” and “EXT-IN.” ☞ [49]
Repeat	☞ [21, 38, 44]
Random	☞ [21, 38, 44]
D.(Dynamic) Range Control	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **DRC1, DRC2, DRC3**) ☞ [40]
Announce Standby	Only for DAB. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [41]
Announce Code	Only for DAB. (Initial **Transport News**) ☞ [42]

*1 *Items listed under <***Mode***> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 22)

For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 37)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [33]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [30]
Search	☞ [31]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 30 or 31) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 30 and 31), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

---

*1 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

*2 *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*3 *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 33. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Initial: **Underlined**

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

Moisture condensation

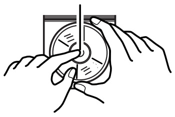
Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

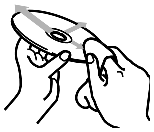
When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.

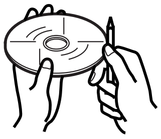
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

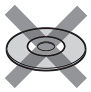
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



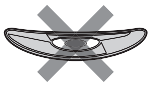
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

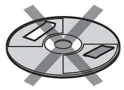
SingleCD—8 cm disc



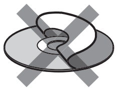
Warped disc



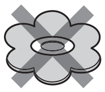
Sticker and sticker residue



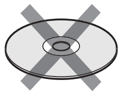
Stick-on label



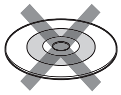
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

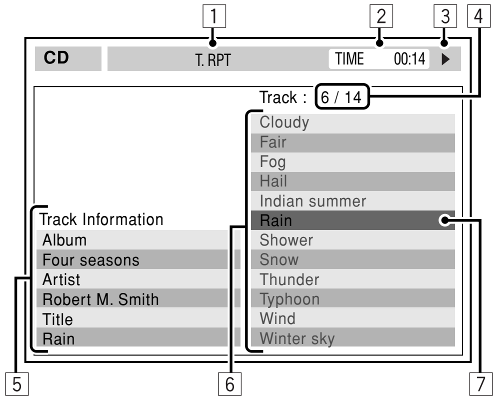
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



CD T. RPT TIME 00:14 ▶

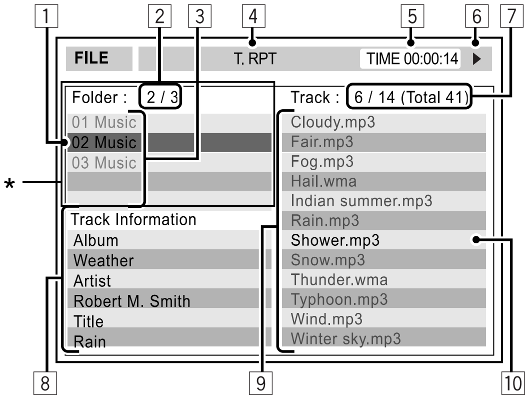
Track : 6 / 14

Cloudy
Fair
Fog
Hail
Indian summer
Rain
Shower
Snow
Thunder
Typhoon
Wind
Winter sky

Track Information
Album
Four seasons
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain

1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
*
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 31)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 37), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB tuner

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano *1
  – iPod video (5th Generation) *2
  *1 When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.
  *2 It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 53)

<D. Audio Output> **Playback disc**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 49)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 52)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windscreen may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 51)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 11)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 22)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	**Remedies/Causes**
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 30)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try “0000” or “1234.” • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 31, 58)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.” • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• “New Device” cannot be selected for “Bluetooth AUDIO.”	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select “New Device,” disconnect it. (☞ page 31)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

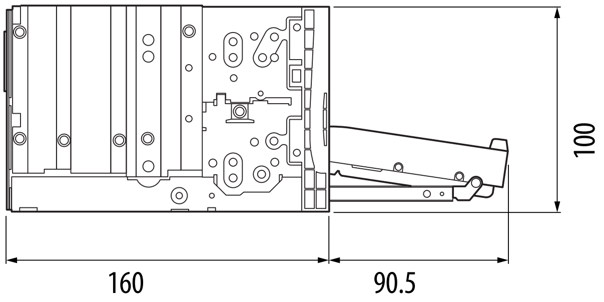
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• “No Disc” appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “No Magazine” appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
DAB tuner	• “No DAB Signal” appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• “Antenna Power NG” appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• “Disconnect” appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• “No Files” appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 51)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, OE REMOTE, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μV
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 10 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.9 kg (including trims and sleeve)

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

¿Tiene PROBLEMAS con la operación?

Por favor reinicialice su unidad

Consulte la página de Cómo reposicionar su unidad

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

JVC

EN, SP, FR

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

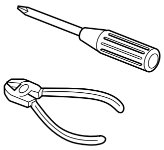
1207MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KW-AVX716/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement

LVT1779-008A
[EU]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, SP, FR
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - – This warning appears only when the parking brake lead is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. *Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.*

ADVERTENCIAS

- *NO instale ningún receptor o tienda ningún cable en una ubicación donde;*
  - *– donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.*
  - *– donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.*
  - *– donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.*
- *NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.*
- *El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Podría producirse un descuido, y causar un accidente.*
- *Si necesita operar la unidad mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente a su alrededor pues de lo contrario, se podría producir un accidente de tráfico.*
- *Si el freno de estacionamiento no está aplicado, parpadeará "Parking Brake" en el monitor, y no se visualizará la imagen reproducida.*
  - *– Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.*

Notas sobre las conexiones eléctricas:

- *Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.*
- *Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de* **4 Ω a 8 Ω**).
  Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amplifier Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 56 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- *Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.*
- *El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.*

FRANÇAIS

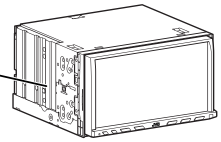
Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC..

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:
  - – où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
  - – où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
  - – où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.
- Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake" clignote sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.
  - – Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**).
  Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 56 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

*1 Fitted to the main unit when shipped

Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

Con esta unidad se suministran las siguientes piezas. Si hay algún elemento faltante, póngase inmediatamente en contacto con su concesionario.

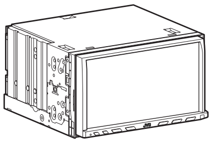
**1 Fijado a la unidad principal cuando se expide de fábrica*

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

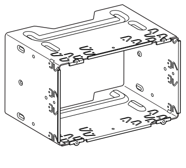
Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, contactez votre revendeur immédiatement.

*1 Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.

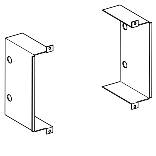
Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal



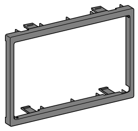
Sleeve*1
*Cubierta*1*
Manchon*1



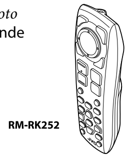
Brackets*1
*Ménsulas*1*
Supports*1



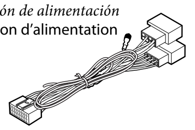
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



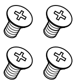
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande



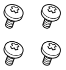
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



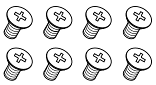
Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)*1
*Tornillos de cabeza plana (M5 x 8 mm)*1*
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)*1



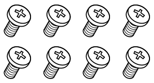
Round head screws (M2.6 x 3 mm)*1
*Tornillos de cabeza esférica (M2,6 x 3 mm)*1*
Vis à tête ronde (M2,6 x 3 mm)*1



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Tornillos de cabeza plana (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)

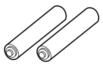


Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
Tornillos de cabeza esférica (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête ronde (M5 x 8 mm)

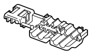


Use these screws when installing the unit without the supplied sleeve.
Utilice estos tornillos cuando instale la unidad sin la funda suministrada.
Utilisez ces vis lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans le manchon fourni.

Batteries
Pilas
Piles



Crimp connector
Conector de sujeción
Raccord à sertir



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
  - Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.

3 Attach the brackets to the main unit.
  - Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

4 Do the required electrical connections.
  - See pages 3 and 4.

5 Install the main unit in the sleeve.

6 Attach the trim plate.

INSTALACIÓN (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Sin embargo usted deberá efectuar los ajustes correspondientes a su automóvil. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- *Si no está seguro de poder instalar la unidad correctamente, déjela en manos de un técnico cualificado.*

Antes de instalar la unidad

- *Al instalar la unidad, asegúrese de usar los tornillos suministrados, de acuerdo con las instrucciones. El uso de otros tornillos podrá provocar flojedad de o daños a las piezas.*
- *Al apretar los tornillos o los pernos, asegúrese de que ningún cable de conexión quede pillado.*
- *Al efectuar la instalación, asegúrese de no bloquear el ventilador del panel trasero a fin de mantener una ventilación correcta.*

1 *Desmonte el sistema de audio instalado originalmente en el coche, junto con los ménsulas de montaje.*
  - *Asegúrese de guardar todos los tornillos y piezas quitados de su vehículo para poderlos usar en el futuro.*

2 *Instale la cubierta en el cubretablero del automóvil.*

3 *Fije los ménsulas a la unidad principal.*
  - *Asegúrese de usar los tornillos de cabeza plana suministrados (M5 × 8 mm). El uso de tornillos más largos producir daños a la unidad.*

4 *Realice todas las conexiones eléctricas necesarias.*
  - *Consulte las páginas 3 y 4.*

5 *Coloque la unidad principal en la cubierta.*

6 *Fije la placa de guarnición.*

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.
- Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.
- Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.

1 Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.
  - Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.

2 Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.

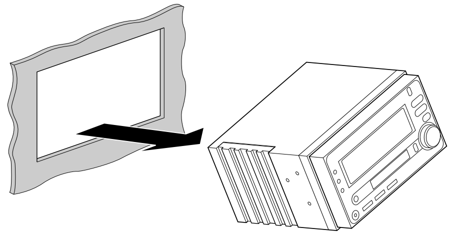
3 Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.
  - Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis —(M5 × 8 mm). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.

4 Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.
  - Référez-vous aux pages 3 et 4.

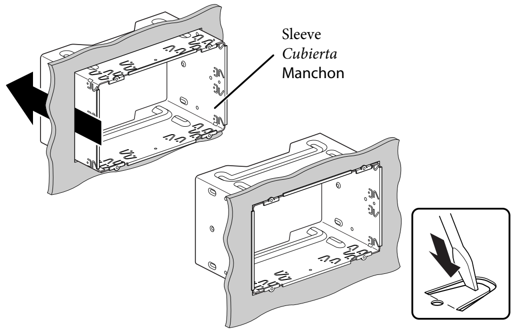
5 Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.

6 Fixez la plaque d'assemblage

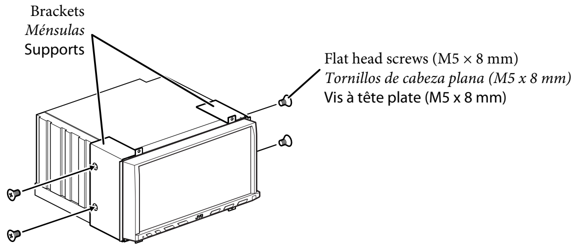
1



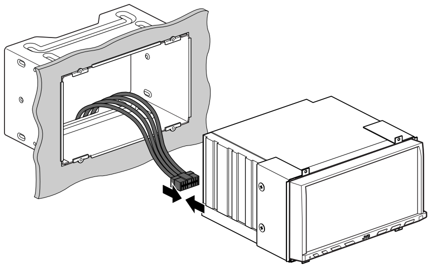
2



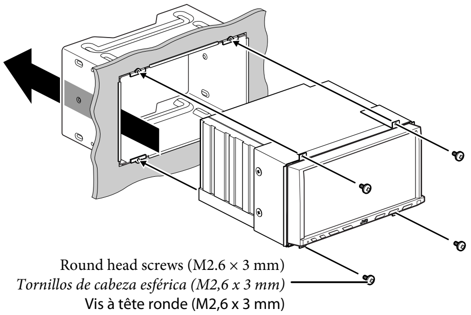
3


Brackets
Ménsulas
Supports
Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Tornillos de cabeza plana (M5 x 8 mm)
Vis à tête plate (M5 x 8 mm)

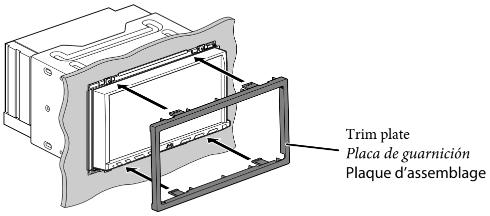
4

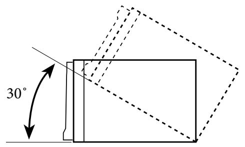


5


Round head screws (M2.6 × 3 mm)
Tornillos de cabeza esférica (M2,6 x 3 mm)
Vis à tête ronde (M2,6 x 3 mm)

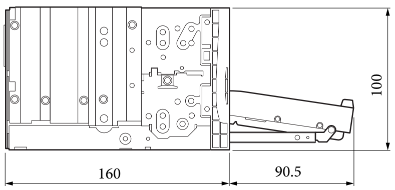
6





Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30˚, teniendo en cuenta que el monitor debe extraerse para su uso.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation.

Required space for the monitor ejection
Espacio requerido para la expulsión del monitor
Espace requis pour le déploiement du moniteur



Unit: mm
Unidad: mm
Unité: mm

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

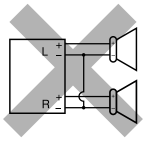
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

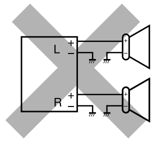
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

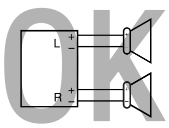
- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- *ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.*

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

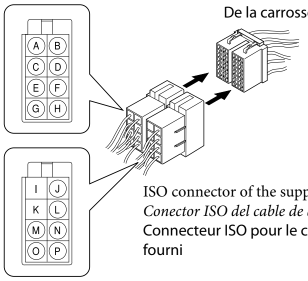






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector
Si su automóvil está equipado con el conector ISO
Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Conecte los conectores ISO tal como se indica en la ilustración.*
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.



From the car body
Desde la carrocería del vehículo
De la carrosserie de la voiture

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Conector ISO del cable de alimentación suministrado
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni

View from the lead side
Vista desde el lado del conductor
Vue à partir du côté des fils

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile
Para algunos automóviles VW/Audi u Opel (Vauxhall)
Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

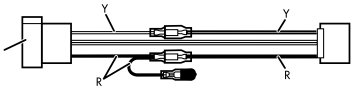
Podría ser necesario modificar el conexionado del cable de alimentación suministrado, tal como se indica en la ilustración.

- *Antes de instalar esta unidad, consulte a su concesionario de automóviles autorizado.*

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.

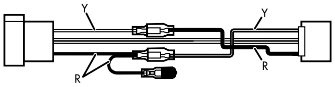
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

Original wiring
Conexionado original
Câblage original



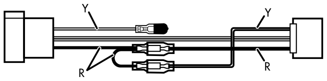
ISO connector
Conector ISO
Connecteur ISO

Modified wiring 1
Conexionado modificado 1
Câblage modifié 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Si la unidad no se enciende, utilice el conexionado modificado 2.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension

Modified wiring 2
Conexionado modificado 2
Câblage modifié 2

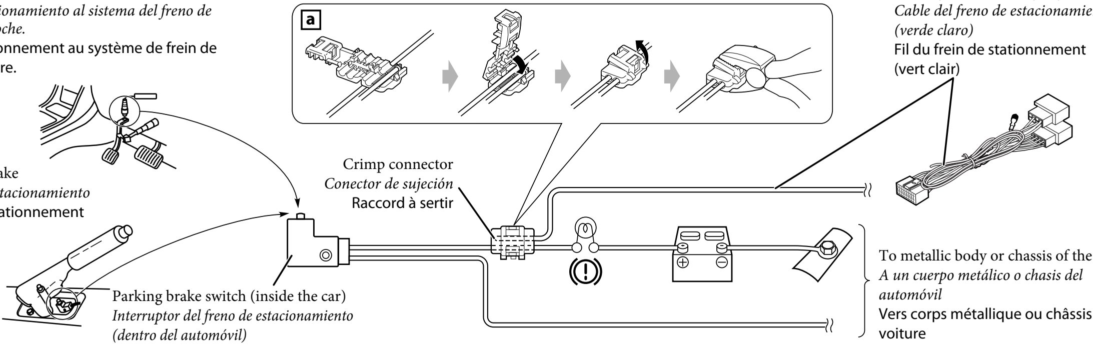


Y: Yellow
Amarillo
Jaune

R: Red
Rojo
Rouge

A Connecting the parking brake lead / Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento / Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.
Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema del freno de estacionamiento instalado en el coche.
Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.



Parking brake lead (light green)
Cable del freno de estacionamiento (verde claro)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)

Parking brake
Freno de estacionamiento
Frein de stationnement

Crimp connector
Conector de sujeción
Raccord à sertir

Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Interruptor del freno de estacionamiento (dentro del automóvil)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (intérieur de la voiture)

To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture

Connections without using the ISO connector / Conexión sin usar el conector ISO / Connexions sans utiliser le connecteur ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

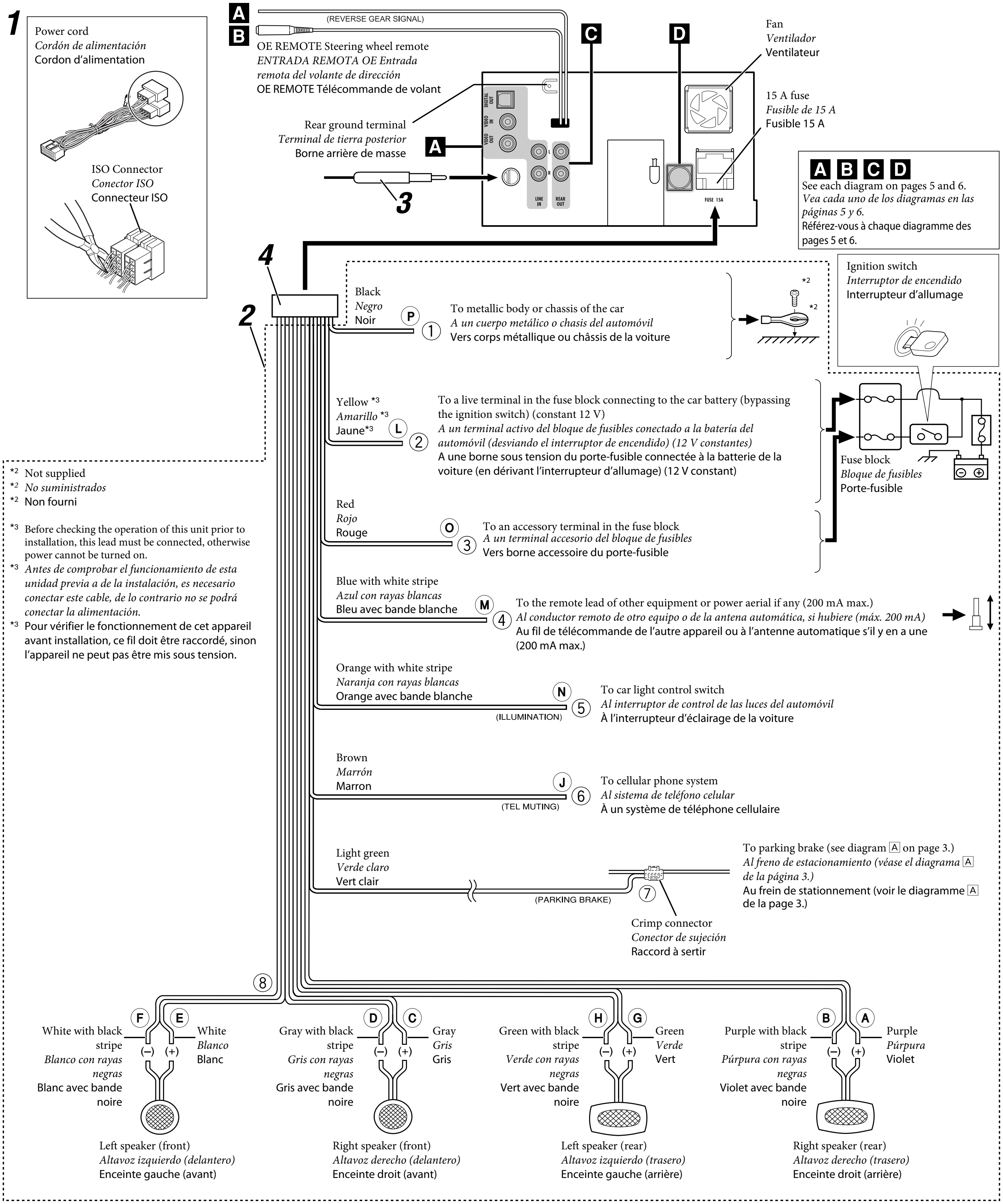
1. **Cut the ISO connector.**
2. **Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.**
3. **Connect the aerial cord.**
4. **Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.**

Antes de la conexión: *Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.*
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

1. *Corte el connector ISO.*
2. *Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.*
3. *Conecte el cable de antena.*
4. *Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.*

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. Coupez le connecteur ISO.
2. Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
3. Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
4. Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.


1
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation
ISO Connector
Conector ISO
Connecteur ISO
A
(REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL)
B
OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
ENTRADA REMOTA OE Entrada remota del volante de dirección
OE REMOTE Télécommande de volant
C
D
Fan
Ventilador
Ventilateur
15 A fuse
Fusible de 15 A
Fusible 15 A
Rear ground terminal
Terminal de tierra posterior
Borne arrière de masse
A
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
LINE IN
REAR OUT
L
R
FUSE 15A
3
4
2
Black
Negro
Noir
P
①
*2
*2
Ignition switch
Interruptor de encendido
Interrupteur d'allumage
Yellow *3
*Amarillo *3*
Jaune*3
L
②
Fuse block
Bloque de fusibles
Porte-fusible
Red
Rojo
Rouge
O
③
Blue with white stripe
Azul con rayas blancas
Bleu avec bande blanche
M
④
Orange with white stripe
Naranja con rayas blancas
Orange avec bande blanche
N
⑤
(ILLUMINATION)
Brown
Marrón
Marron
J
⑥
(TEL MUTING)
Light green
Verde claro
Vert clair
⑦
(PARKING BRAKE)
Crimp connector
Conector de sujeción
Raccord à sertir
⑧
F
E
White with black stripe
Blanco con rayas negras
Blanc avec bande noire
White
Blanco
Blanc
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Altavoz izquierdo (delantero)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
D
C
Gray with black stripe
Gris con rayas negras
Gris avec bande noire
Gray
Gris
Gris
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
Altavoz derecho (delantero)
Enceinte droit (avant)
H
G
Green with black stripe
Verde con rayas negras
Vert avec bande noire
Green
Verde
Vert
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
Altavoz izquierdo (trasero)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
B
A
Purple with black stripe
Púrpura con rayas negras
Violet avec bande noire
Purple
Púrpura
Violet
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)
Altavoz derecho (trasero)
Enceinte droit (arrière)

A B C D
See each diagram on pages 5 and 6.
Vea cada uno de los diagramas en las páginas 5 y 6.
Référez-vous à chaque diagramme des pages 5 et 6.

① To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture

② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
A un terminal activo del bloque de fusibles conectado a la batería del automóvil (desviando el interruptor de encendido) (12 V constantes)
A une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constant)

③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
A un terminal accesorio del bloque de fusibles
Vers borne accessoire du porte-fusible

④ To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any (200 mA max.)
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo o de la antena automática, si hubiere (máx. 200 mA)
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil ou à l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une (200 mA max.)

⑤ To car light control switch
Al interruptor de control de las luces del automóvil
À l'interrupteur d'éclairage de la voiture

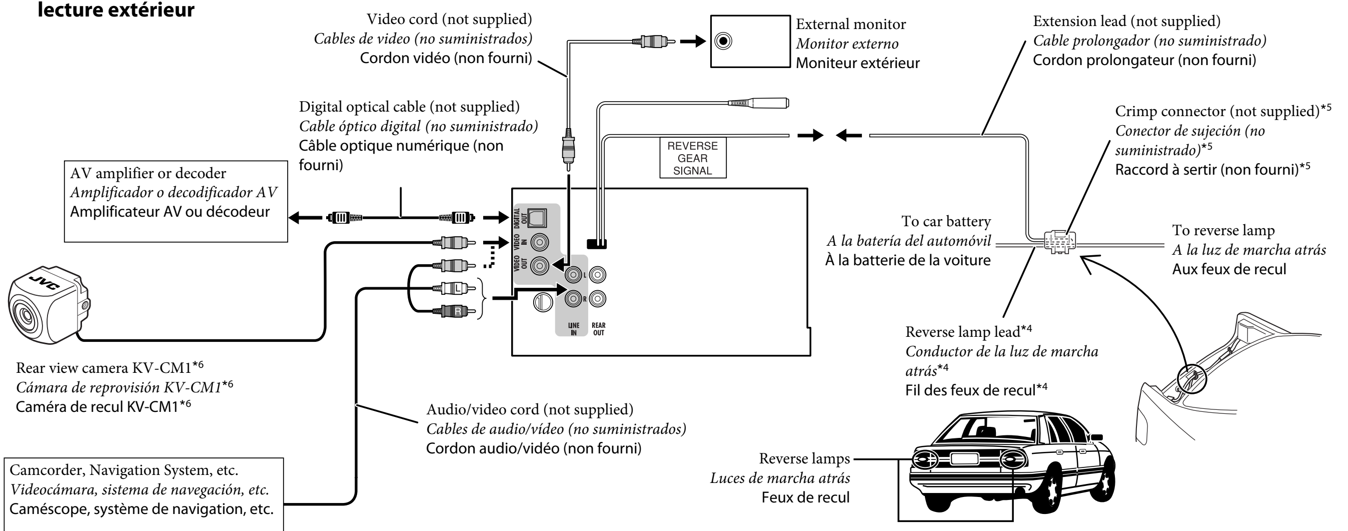
⑥ To cellular phone system
Al sistema de teléfono celular
À un système de téléphone cellulaire

⑦ To parking brake (see diagram A on page 3.)
Al freno de estacionamiento (véase el diagrama A de la página 3.)
Au frein de stationnement (voir le diagramme A de la page 3.)

*2 Not supplied
*2 *No suministrados*
*2 Non fourni

*3 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*3 *Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.*
*3 Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.

A Connections for external component playback / Conexiones para la reproducción del componente externo / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur


Video cord (not supplied)
Cables de video (no suministrados)
Cordon vidéo (non fourni)
External monitor
Monitor externo
Moniteur extérieur
Extension lead (not supplied)
Cable prolongador (no suministrado)
Cordon prolongateur (non fourni)
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Cable óptico digital (no suministrado)
Câble optique numérique (non fourni)
Crimp connector (not supplied)[*5]
Conector de sujeción (no suministrado)[*5]
Raccord à sertir (non fourni)[*5]
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
AV amplifier or decoder
Amplificador o decodificador AV
Amplificateur AV ou décodeur
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
To car battery
A la batería del automóvil
À la batterie de la voiture
To reverse lamp
A la luz de marcha atrás
Aux feux de recul
Reverse lamp lead[*4]
Conductor de la luz de marcha atrás[*4]
Fil des feux de recul[*4]
Rear view camera KV-CM1[*6]
Cámara de reprovisión KV-CM1[*6]
Caméra de recul KV-CM1[*6]
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Cables de audio/vídeo (no suministrados)
Cordon audio/vidéo (non fourni)
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
Videocámara, sistema de navegación, etc.
Caméscope, système de navigation, etc.
Reverse lamps
Luces de marcha atrás
Feux de recul
JVC

[*4] Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

[*5] Refer to a in diagram A on page 3.

[*6] Set “AV Input” setting to “Camera” when using (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[*4] *Se requiere solamente cuando se conecta una cámara de retrovisión al terminal VIDEO IN.*

[*5] *Consulte* a *en el diagrama* A *de la página 3.*

[*6] *Para usar, ajuste “AV Input” a “Camera” (consulte la página 55 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).*

[*4] Requis uniquement lors de la connexion d’une caméra de recul à la prise VIDEO IN.

[*5] Reportez vous à a du diagramme A de la page 3.

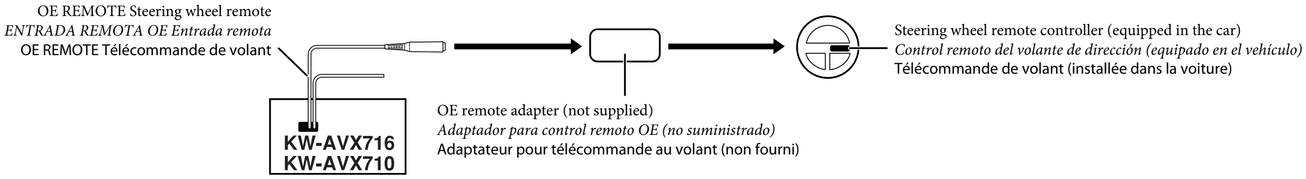
[*6] Réglez “AV Input” sur “Camera” lors de l’utilisation (voir page 55 du MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS).

B Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller /Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC’s OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Si su vehículo está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá hacer funcionar este receptor utilizando dicho control. Para ello, se requiere un adaptador para control remoto OE de JVC (no suministrado) que corresponda con su vehículo. Para mayor información, consulte con su concesionario car audio de JVC.

Si votre voiture est munie d’une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d’autoradio JVC pour les détails.


OE REMOTE Steering wheel remote
ENTRADA REMOTA OE Entrada remota
OE REMOTE Télécommande de volant
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Control remoto del volante de dirección (equipado en el vehículo)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Adaptador para control remoto OE (no suministrado)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)

C Connecting an external amplifier / Conexión de un amplificador externo / Connexion d’un amplificateur extérieur

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

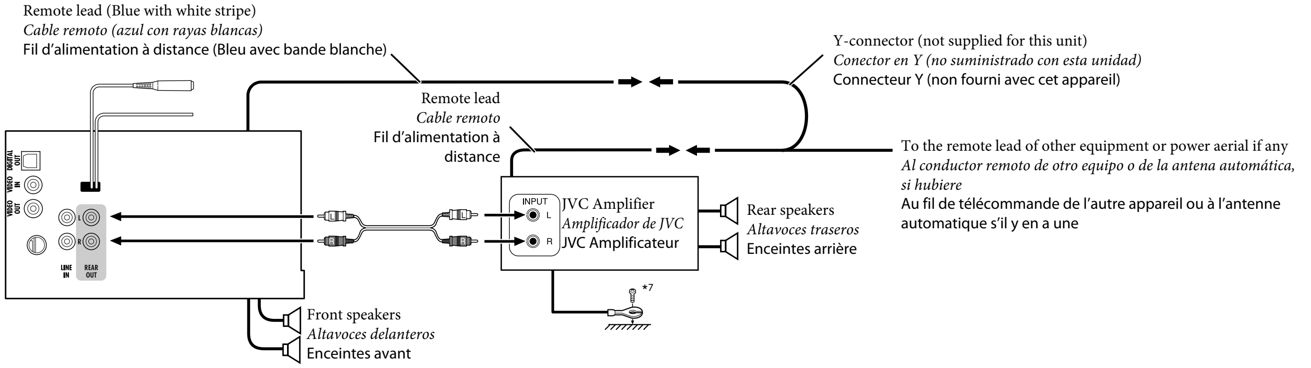
- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 56 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

Puede conectar un amplificador para mejorar su sistema car estéreo.

- *Puede suministrar alimentación al amplificador conectando los conductores remotos (azul con rayas blancas) de esta unidad al amplificador. (Para conectar otro equipo usando los conductores remotos, se deben adquirir separadamente conectores en Y).*
- *Desconecte los altavoces de la unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los conductores de los altavoces de la unidad quedan sin usar.*
- *Puede desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio sólo al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar la generación de calor dentro de la unidad. Consulte la página 56 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.*

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système stéréo.

- Vous pouvez alimenter l’amplificateur en connectant les fils de télécommande (bleu à bande blanche(de cet appareil à l’amplificateur. (Pour connecter un autre appareil en utilisant les fils de télécommande, vous devez acheter des connecteurs Y séparément.)
- Déconnectez les enceintes de l’appareil principal et connectez-les aux amplificateurs. Laissez les fils d’enceintes de l’appareil inutilisés.
- Vous pouvez mettre hors service l’amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement vers un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs pour obtenir des sons plus clairs et éviter un échauffement interne de l’appareil. Référez-vous à la page 56 du MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS..


Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Cable remoto (azul con rayas blancas)
Fil d’alimentation à distance (Bleu avec bande blanche)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Conector en Y (no suministrado con esta unidad)
Connecteur Y (non fourni avec cet appareil)
Remote lead
Cable remoto
Fil d’alimentation à distance
To the remote lead of other equipment or power aerial if any
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo o de la antena automática, si hubiere
Au fil de télécommande de l’autre appareil ou à l’antenne automatique s’il y en a une
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
Amplificador de JVC
JVC Amplificateur
Rear speakers
Altavoces traseros
Enceintes arrière
*7
Front speakers
Altavoces delanteros
Enceintes avant

[*7] Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place not coated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

[*7] *Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.*

[*7] Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n’est pas recouvert de peinture (s’il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d’abord la peinture avant d’attacher le fil). L’appareil peut être endommagé si cela n’est pas fait correctement.

D Connections to the CD changer jack / Conexión al jack del cambiador de CD / Connexions à la prise du changeur de CD

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter
	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod
	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter
	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter
	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.

PRECAUCIÓN:
Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.

Componente JVC	Nombre del modelo
Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Sintonizador DAB de JVC	*KT-DB1000*

También puede conectar los siguientes componentes mediante los diversos adaptadores JVC.

- *Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.*

Componente	Adaptador
	Nombre del modelo
Dispositivo Bluetooth	*Adaptador Bluetooth*
	KS-BTA200
iPod	*Adaptador de interfaz para iPod*
	KS-PD100
Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de salida de línea	*Adaptador de entrada por línea*
	KS-U57
Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm	*Adaptador de entrada AUX*
	KS-U58

Cuando conecte más de un componente (máximo: tres), se recomienda que conecte los componentes en serie, como se explica a continuación.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Tuner DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

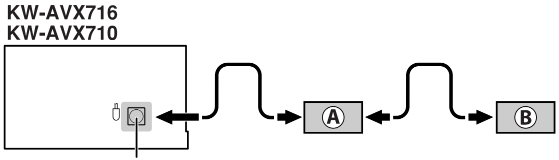
Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.

- Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.

Appareil	Adaptateur
	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	Adaptateur Bluetooth
	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod
	KS-PD100
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne
	KS-U57
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire
	KS-U58

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

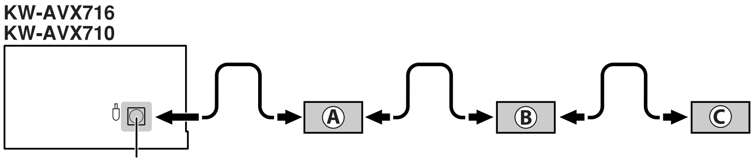
When connecting two components in series
Cuando conecta dos componentes en serie
Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200 / KT-DB1000**
Ⓑ*8 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

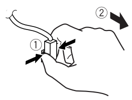
When connecting three components in series
Cuando conecta tres componentes en serie
Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série



CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ **KT-DB1000**
Ⓒ*8 **KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / *Para desconectar el conector* / Pour déconnecter le connecteur



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (①) y seguidamente, extráigalo (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACIÓN DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
  * *¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?*
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
  * *¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?*
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
  * *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?*
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
  * *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?*
  * *¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?*
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
  * *¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?*
- **La unidad se calienta.**
  * *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?*
  * *¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?*
- **Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
  * *¿Reinicializó el receptor?*

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
  * Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
  * Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- **Le son est déformé.**
  * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
  * Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  * La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
  * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
  * Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
  * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

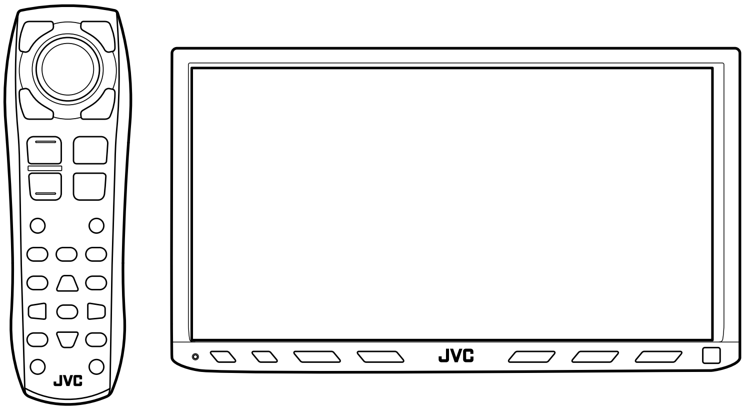
---

*8 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 55 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 *Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 55 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).*
*8 Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 55 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710

LCD DVD 收音組合機
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 8 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書

LVT1780-005A
[UT]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

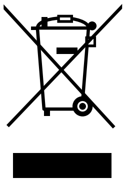
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス１Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

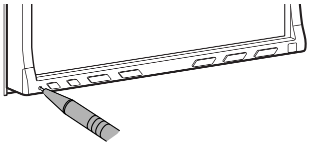
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.



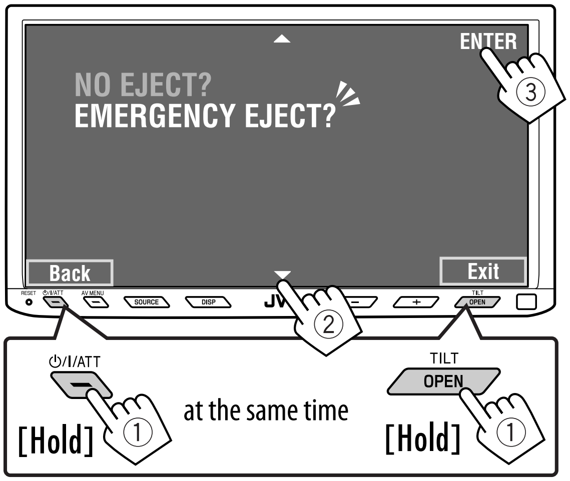
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the iPod........................ 36
Using other external components..... 38

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 41
Assigning titles to the sources 42
Menu operations 43

REFERENCES

Maintenance 52
More about this unit 53
Troubleshooting 60
Specifications 64

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 3)*1 ALL 3 3 4 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

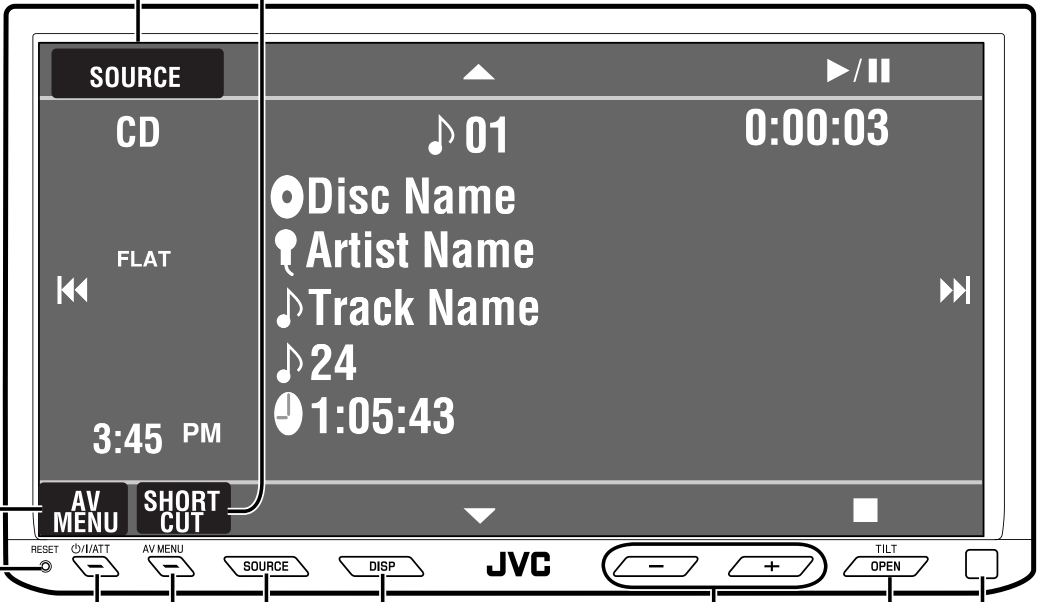
*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
Track Name
24
1:05:43
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 43

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 43

- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

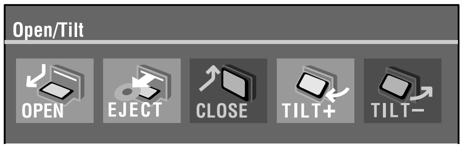
- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.

- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

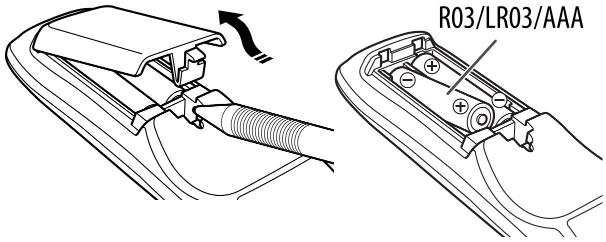
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

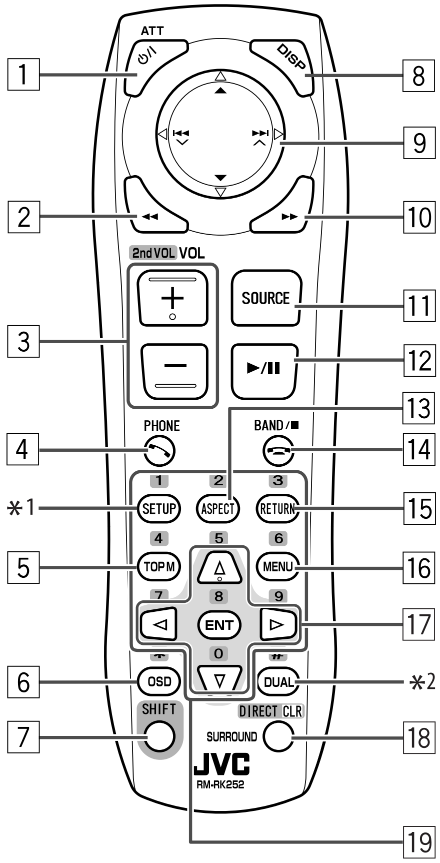
Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
∗1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
∗2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as "2nd VOL."

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "∗."

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER": Selects the preset station directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
*2 *Not used for this unit.*
*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

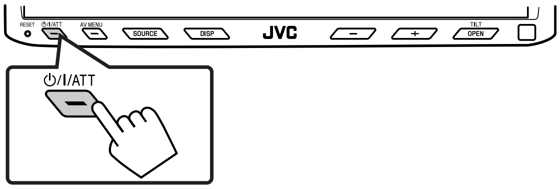
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

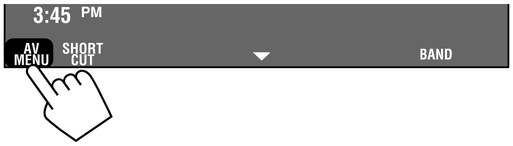
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 45)

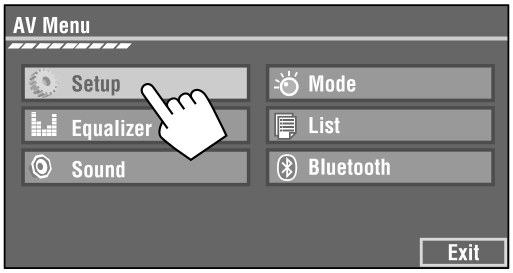
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

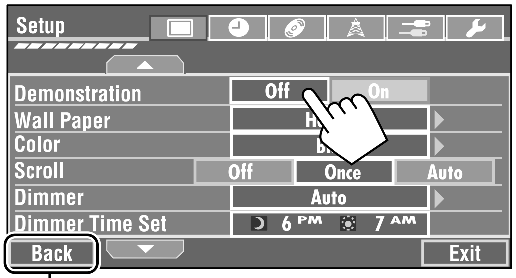

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

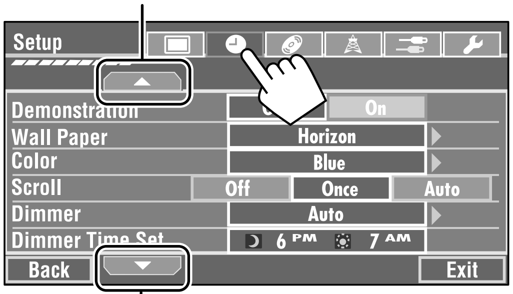
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

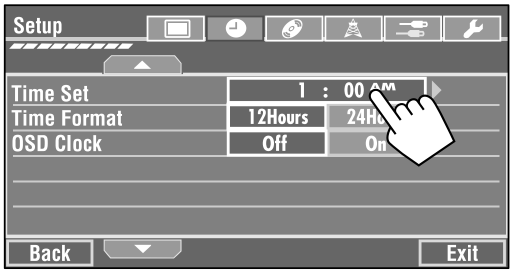
Return to the previous screen.

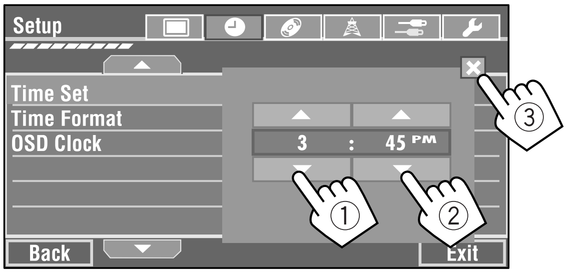
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

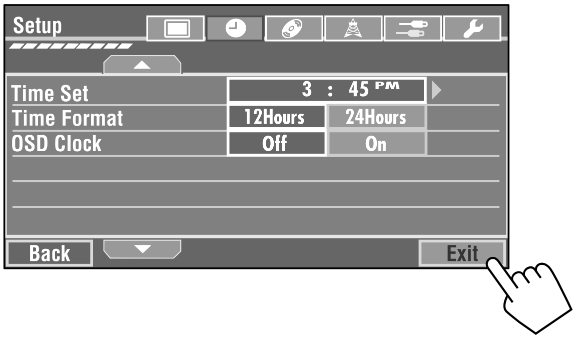

Setup
Demonstration
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set
1 : 00 AM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
3 : 45 PM
①
②
③
Back
Exit

❻ Finish the procedure.

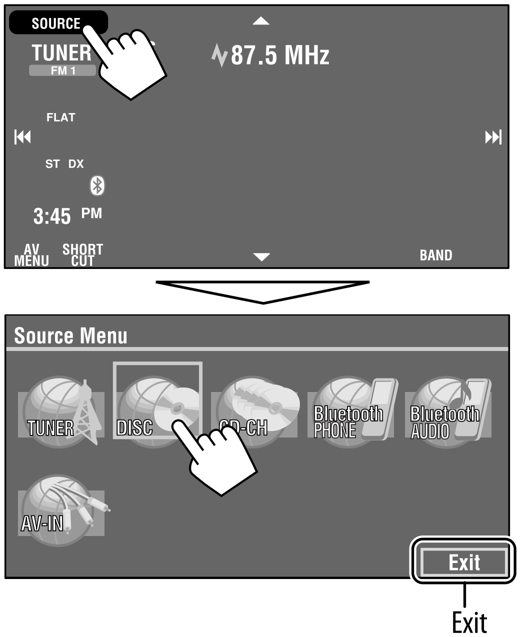

Setup
Time Set
3 : 45 PM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit

Common operations

Selecting the playback source

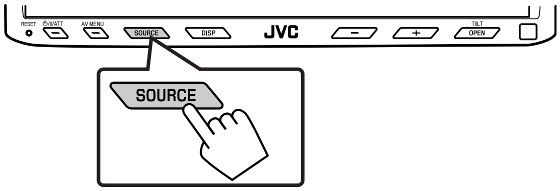
- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 47).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit

Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
SOURCE

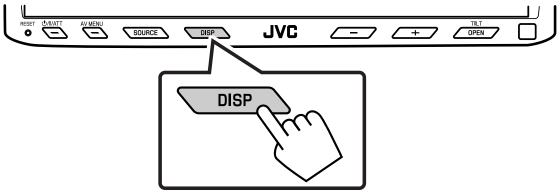
TUNER → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) →CD-CH, iPod, or **EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN →** (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

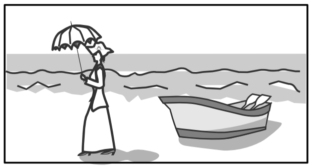
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

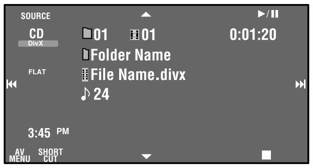

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

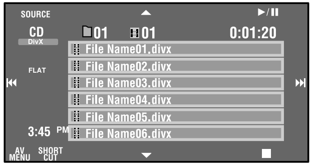
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



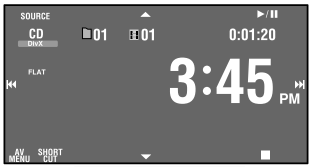
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list

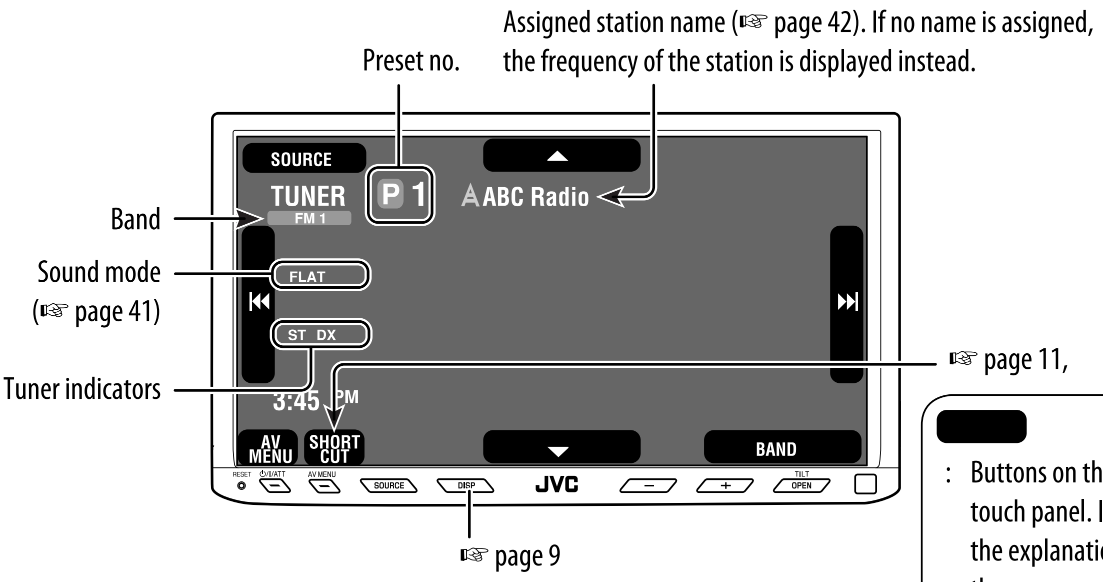

SOURCE
CD
DivX
01 01
0:01:20
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 47)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 42). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 11,
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

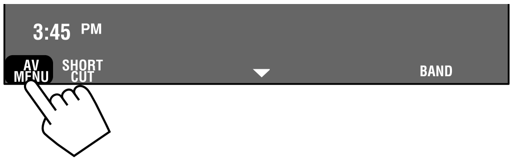
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➛FM1➛FM2➛FM3➛AM

❸ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [I◀◀]or [▶▶I] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

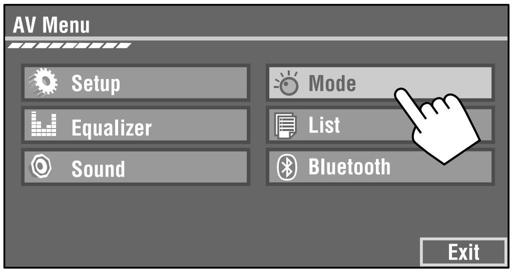
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Press [AV MENU].

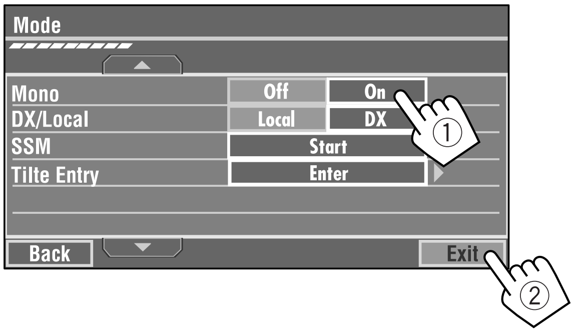

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Tilte Entry
Enter
Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

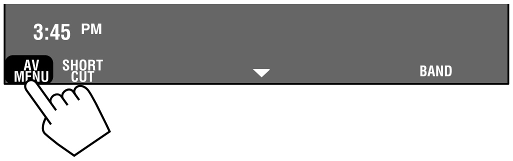
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

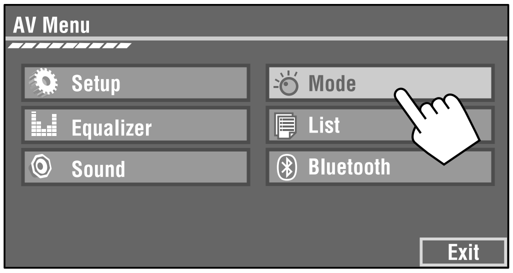
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

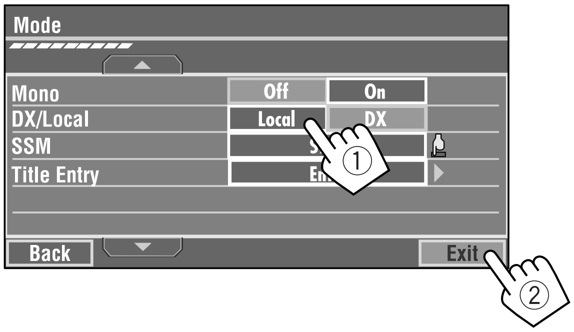

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

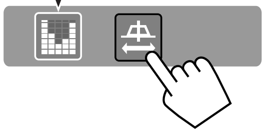

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

- You can also change <**IF Band Width**> setting (for details, ☞ page 47).
  <**IF Band Width**> menu can be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then..

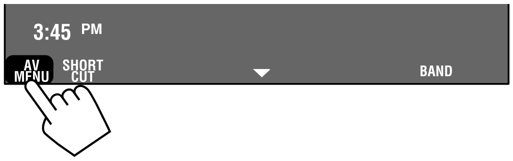
☞ page 41



FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

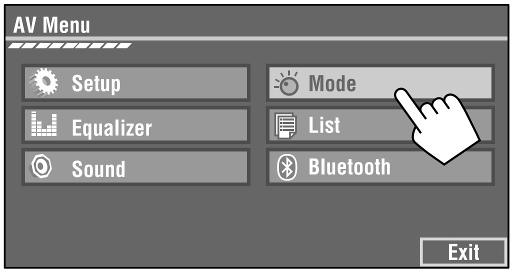
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

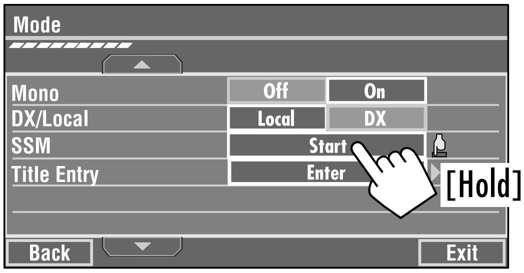

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

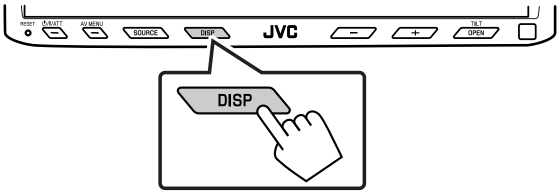

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

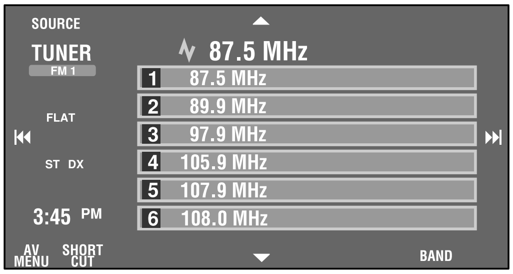
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

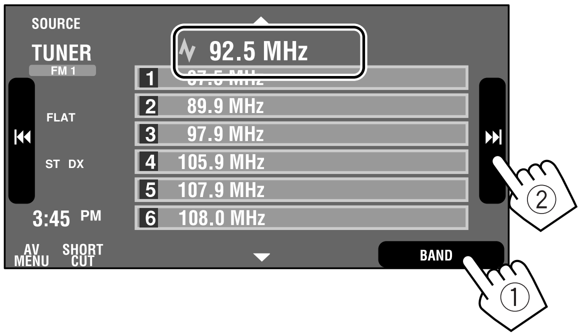
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 **Display the Preset List.**

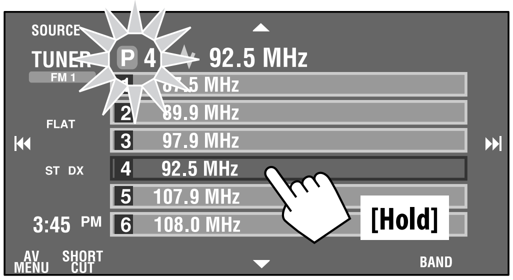

RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
92.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
①
②

3 **Select a preset number.**

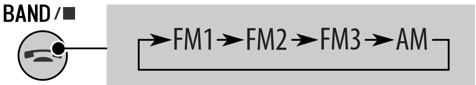

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
92.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
[Hold]
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

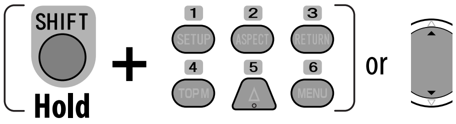
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

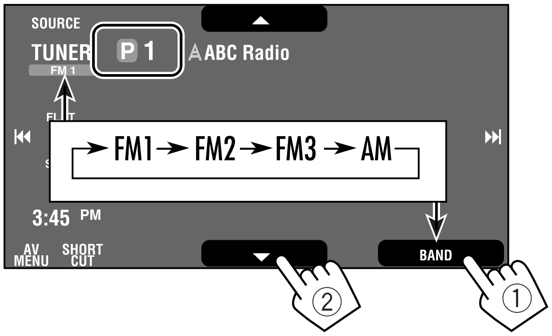

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

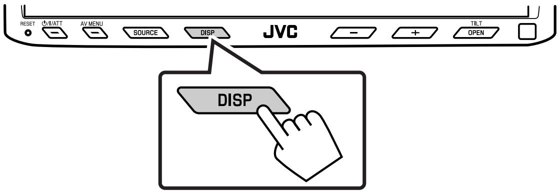
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

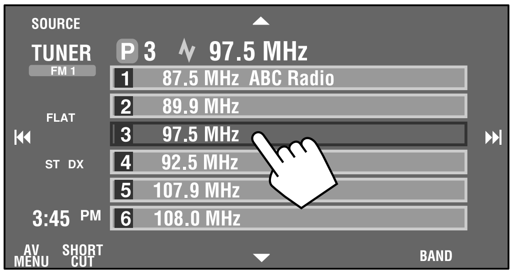

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 3
97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

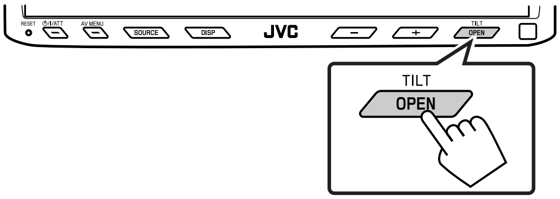
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

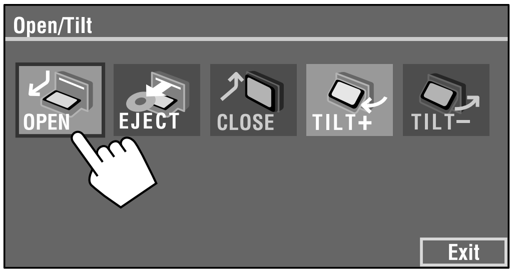
❶ Open the monitor panel.



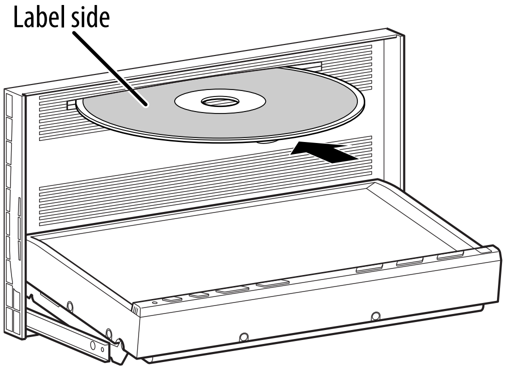
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

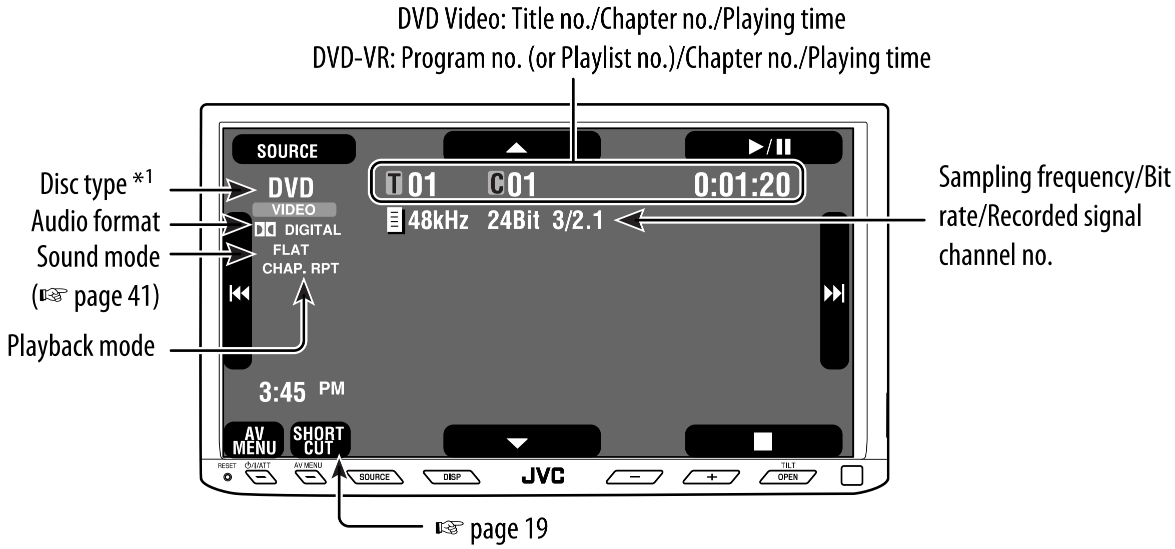
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 57)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video   DVD VR


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T 01
C 01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

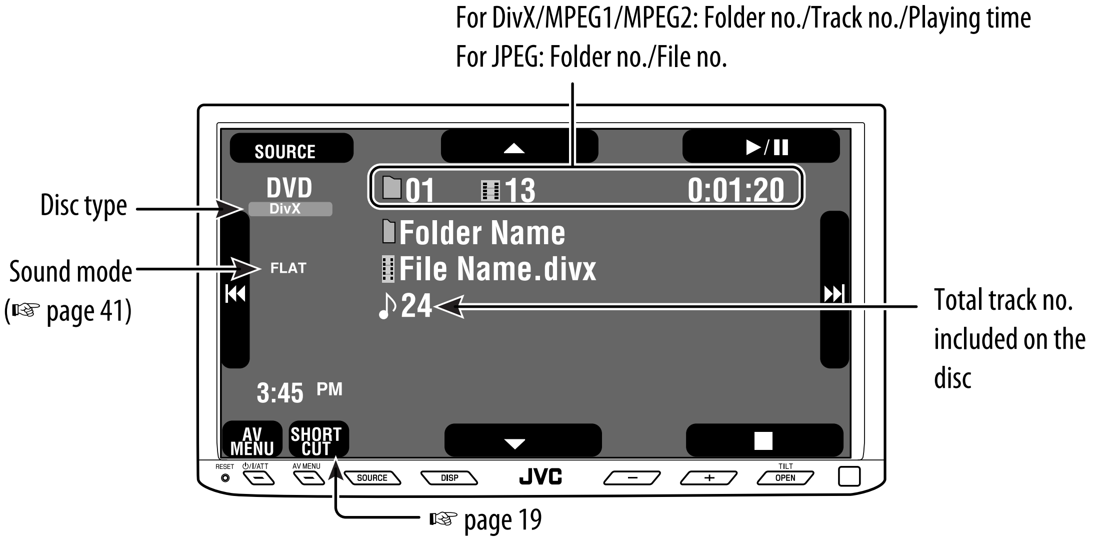
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX **MPEG** **JPEG**


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
DVD
DivX
FLAT
01 13 0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.

Disc type

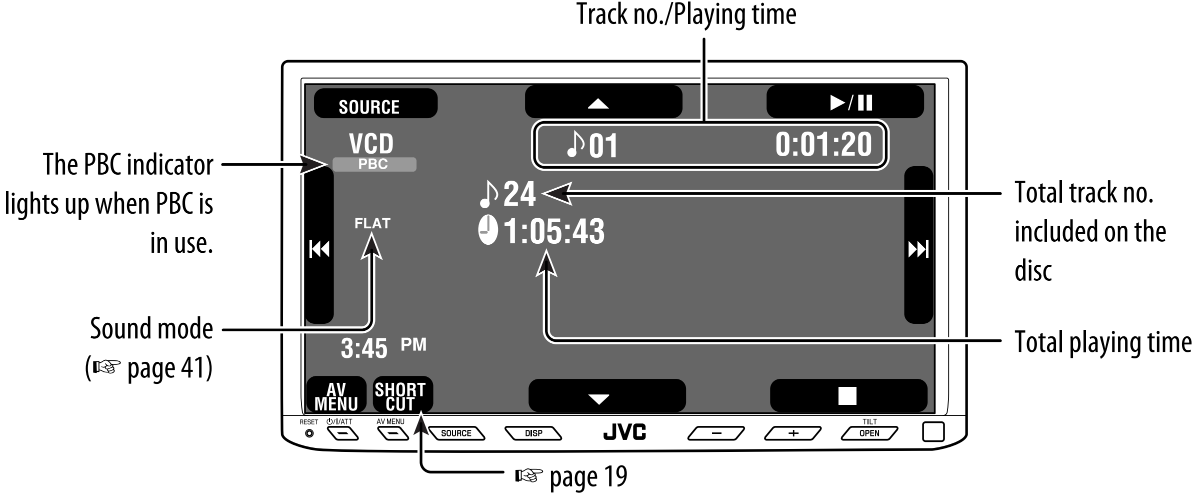
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮◀◀ ▶▶⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
VCD
PBC
♪01 0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Track no./Playing time

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

☞ page 19

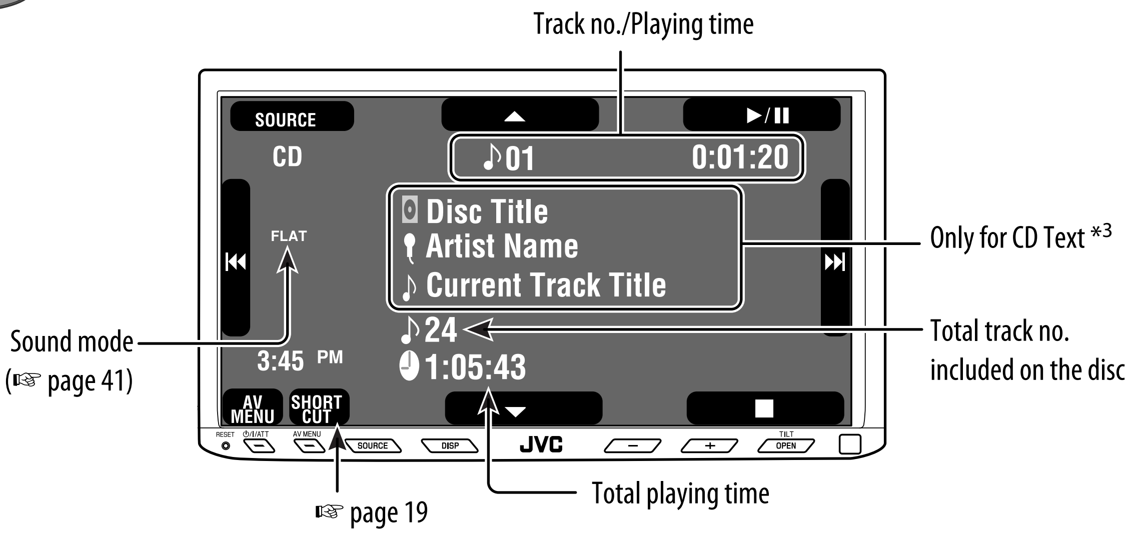
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮◀◀ ▶▶⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

---

*1 *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

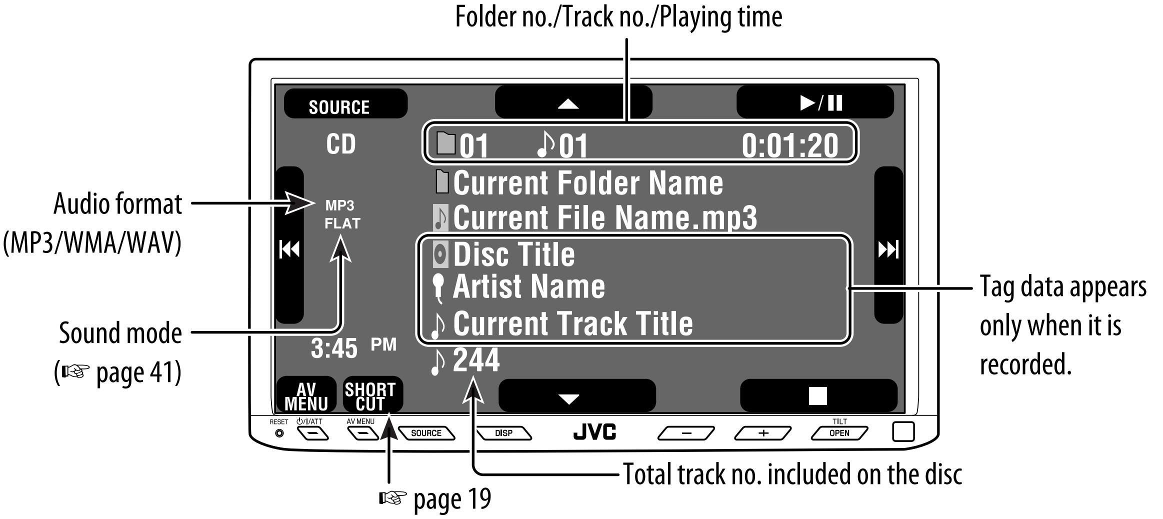
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
FLAT
Only for CD Text *3
♪24
Total track no. included on the disc
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
3:45 PM
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 19
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
MP3
FLAT
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
3:45 PM
♪244
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

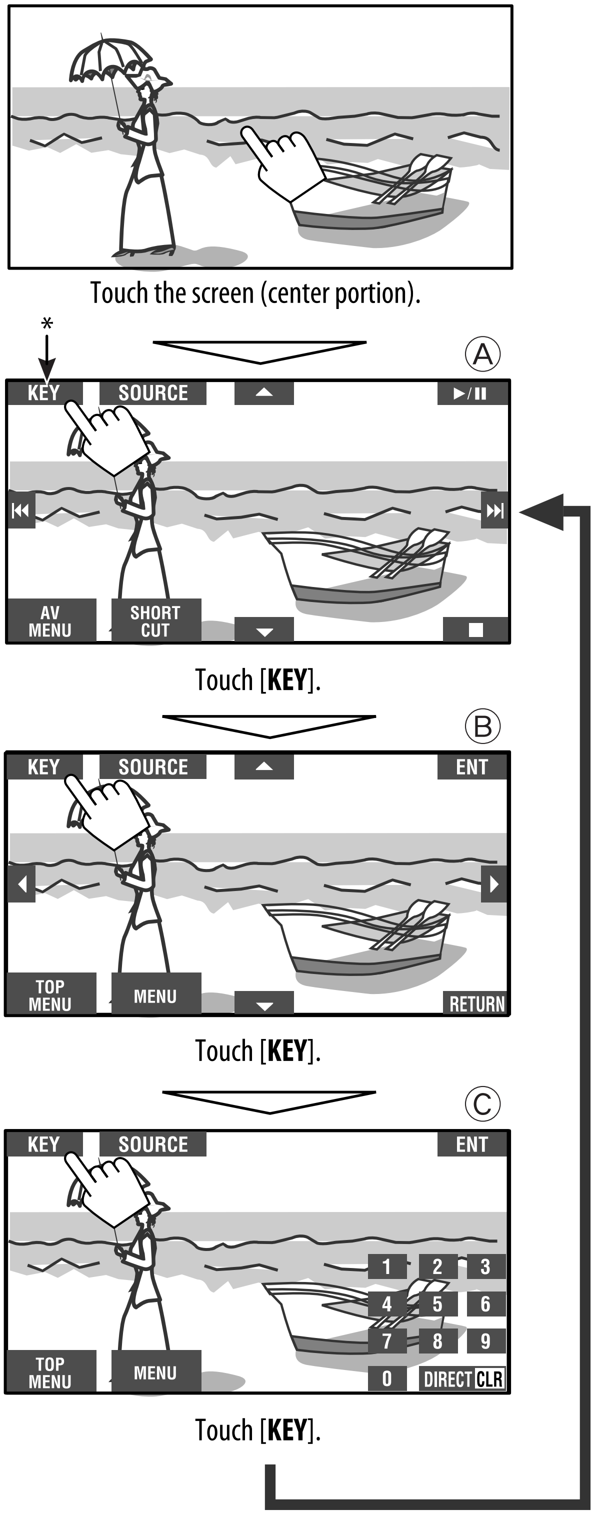
[3] *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

[4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 45)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [***KEY***] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

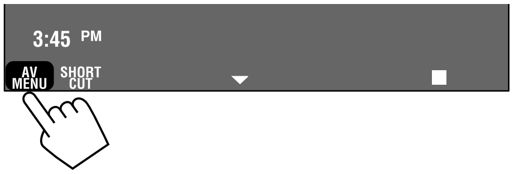
[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

Ex.: To enter “105,” press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

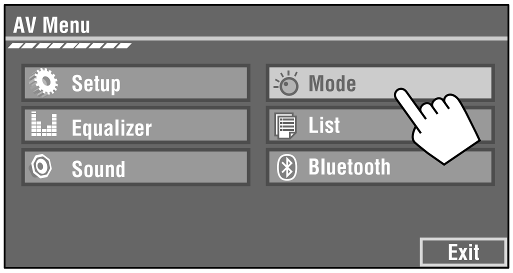
You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

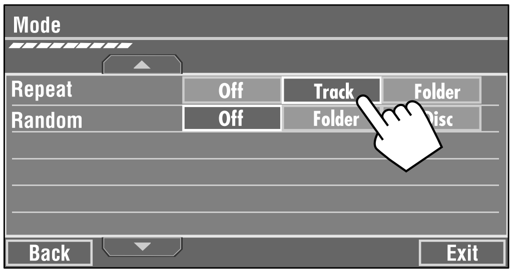

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Equalizer
Sound
Mode
List
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

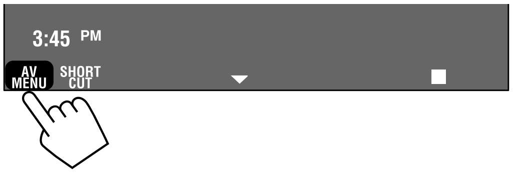
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*[1]	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*[1] **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*[1] *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

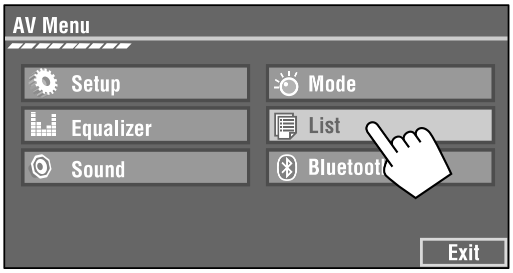
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

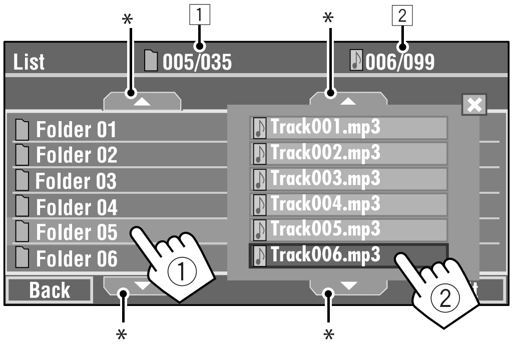

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 **Select a folder (①), then a track (②).**

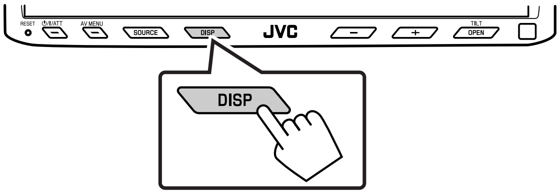

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

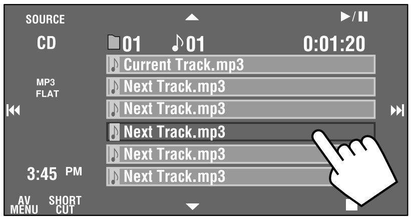
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

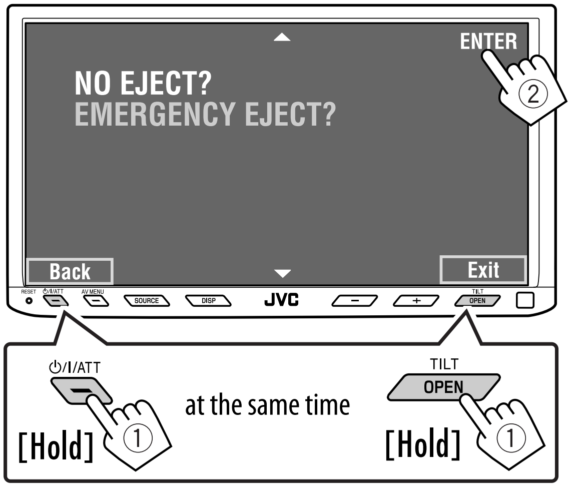

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

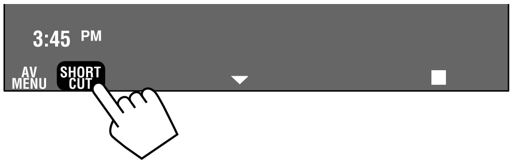

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold] ①
[Hold] ①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

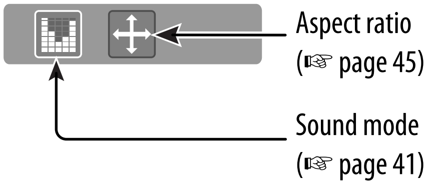
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1

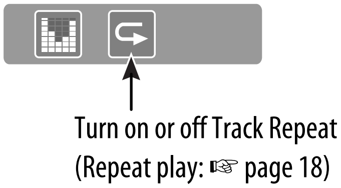

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

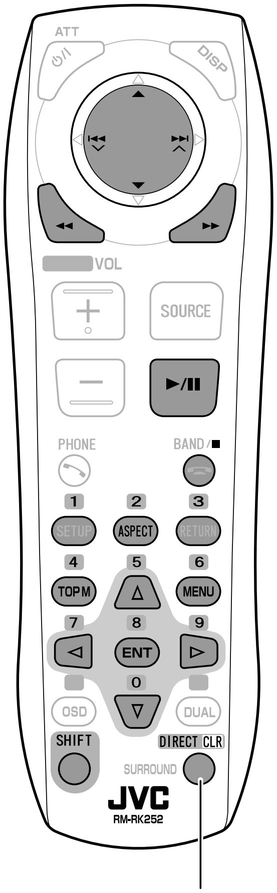
- For video software:


Aspect ratio
(☞ page 45)
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)

- For audio software:


Turn on or off Track Repeat
(Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD Video

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*3] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (**DIRECT CLR** → **0 ▽** … **9 ▷**) → **ENT** :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (**DIRECT CLR** twice → **0 ▽** … **9 ▷**) → **ENT** :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 **4 TOP M** / **6 MENU**

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

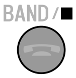
3 **8 ENT**

[*1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

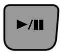
[*2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[*3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

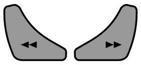
You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)



: Stop playback.

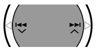


: Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

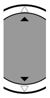


: Reverse/forward search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*5 (No sound can be heard.)

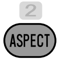
- Reverse slow motion does not work.



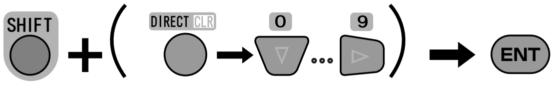
: *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*6



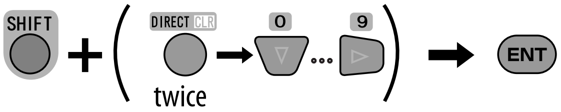
: Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).



: Select aspect ratio.

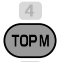

SHIFT
+
DIRECT CLR
0
9
ENT

: Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

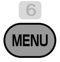

SHIFT
+
DIRECT CLR
twice
0
9
ENT

: Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

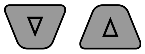
Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

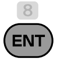
1 

: For Original Program



: For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. 

3 

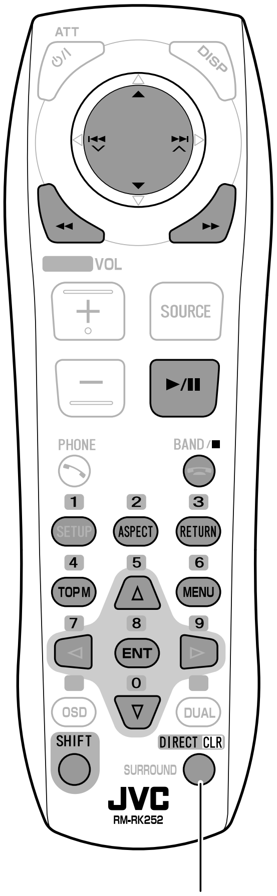
To erase the screen.

---

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*5 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*6 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DivX MPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :

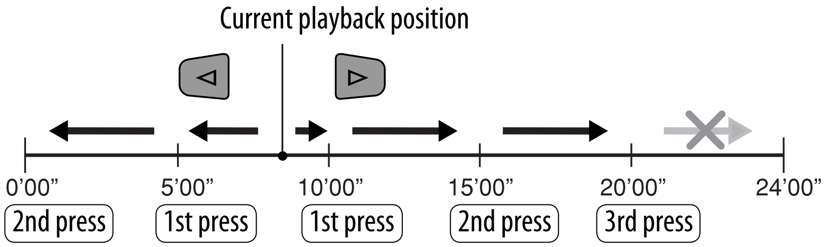
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ Δ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

---

*1 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3*

*2 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

(⏮ ⏭) : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)

- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT :
Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.

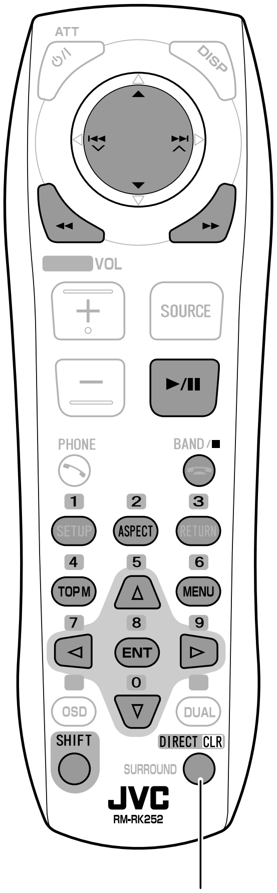
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search[1]

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search[2]

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track.

---

[1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[2] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search[3]

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search[4]

(▲ ▼) : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
twice
Select folder.

---

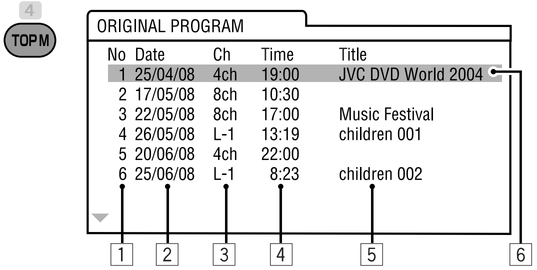
[3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

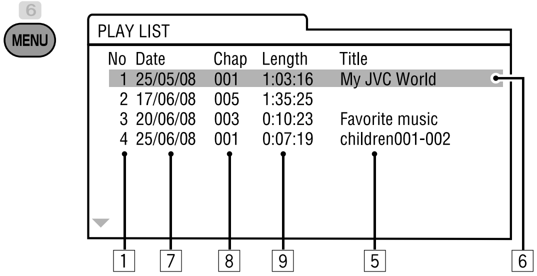
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

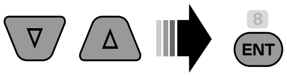
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



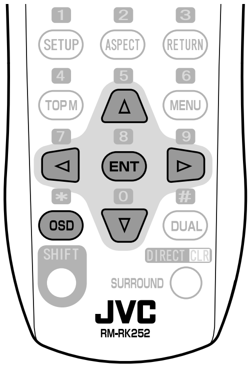
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

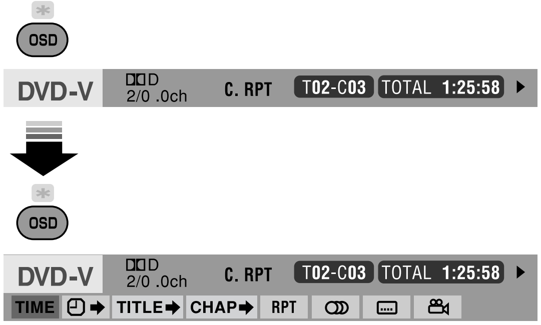
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

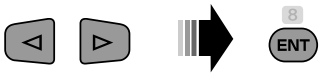

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
*
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT
CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)


OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

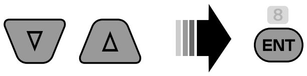
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

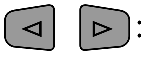


3 Make a selection.

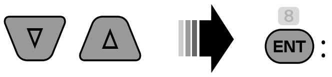
If a pop-up menu appears...



- For entering time/numbers...


:

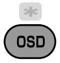
Move the entry position



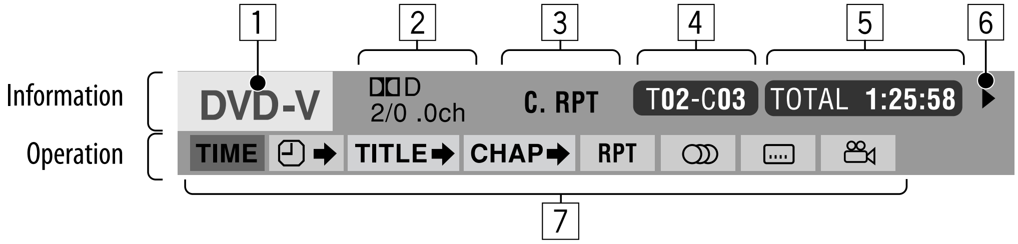
:

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode *1

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track *2
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track *2

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙/❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
🕘➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play *1
RND	Random play *1
◯◯	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

*1 ☞ *page 18*

*2 *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

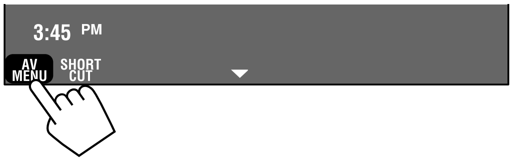
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

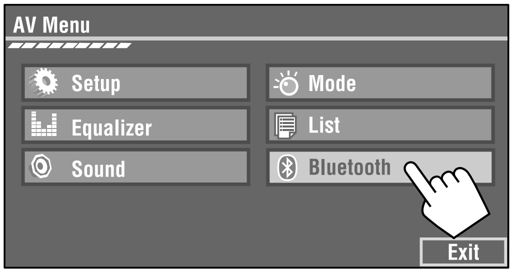
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

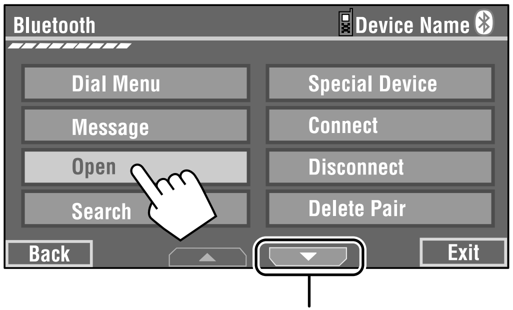

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

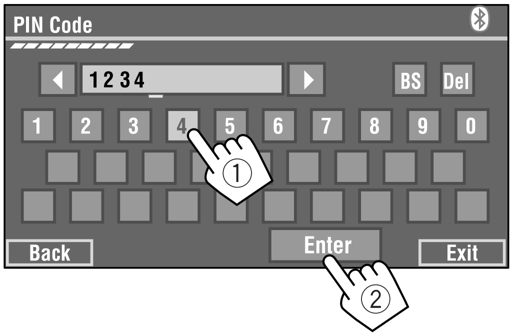

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 50 and 51).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

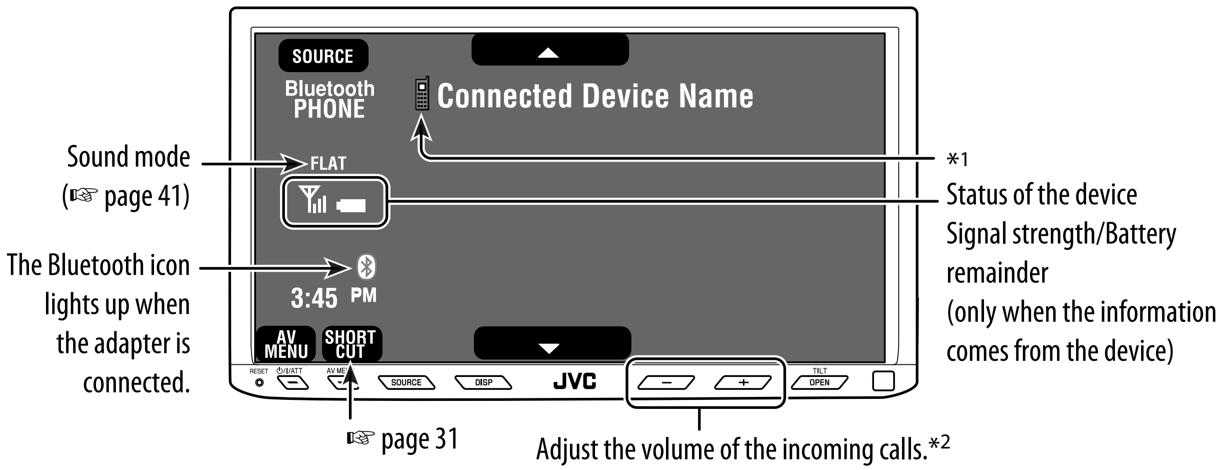
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
☞ page 31
Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2
*1
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

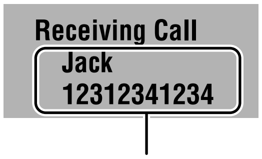
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 50 and 51

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 51)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

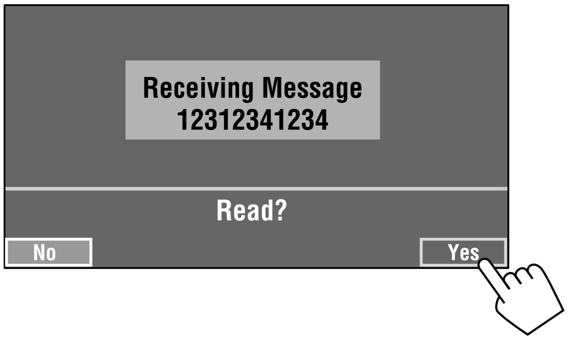
- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 51)

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 51)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to “Bluetooth PHONE.”

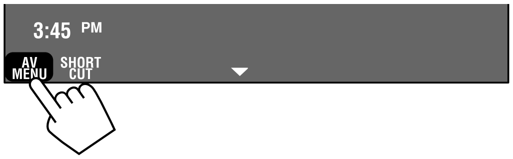
To read the message later, press **[No].**

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 50)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 50 and 51)

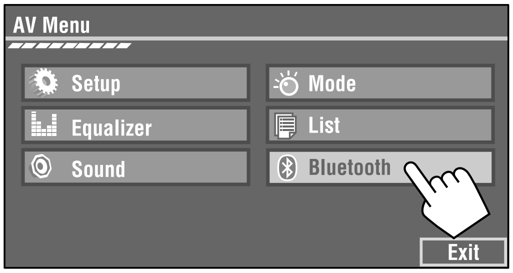
To make a call

1

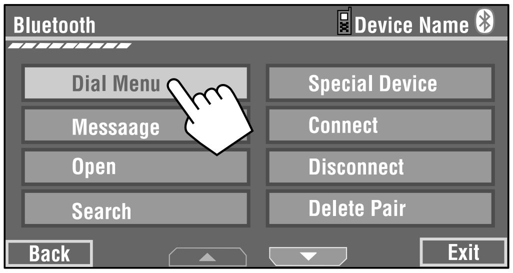

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

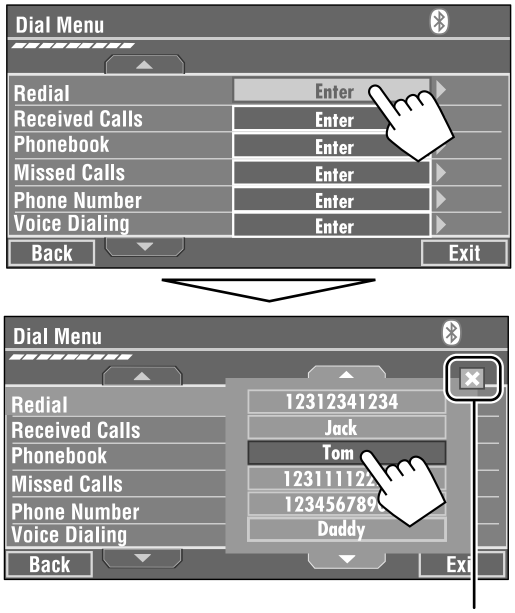
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 Select a calling method, then call.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy

Cancel

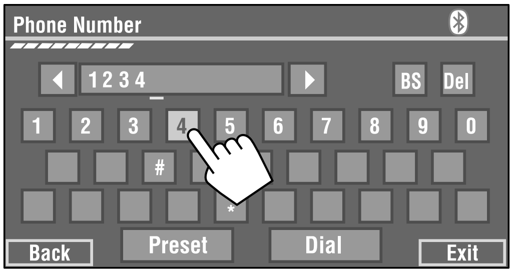
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → “Entering a phone number” (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

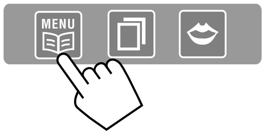
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

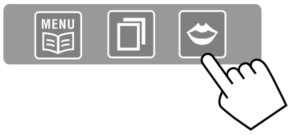
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

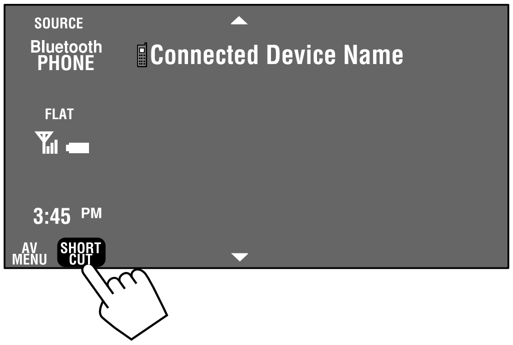
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



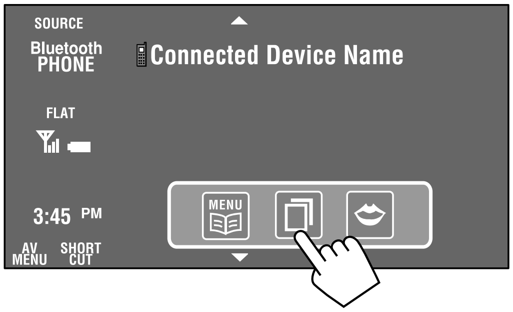
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

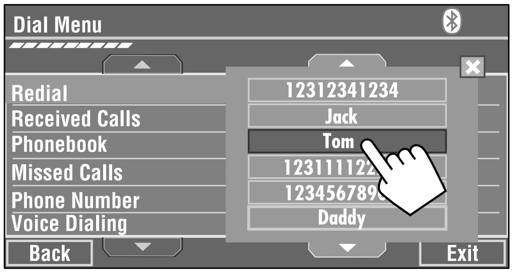
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

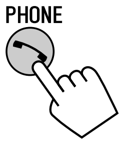
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

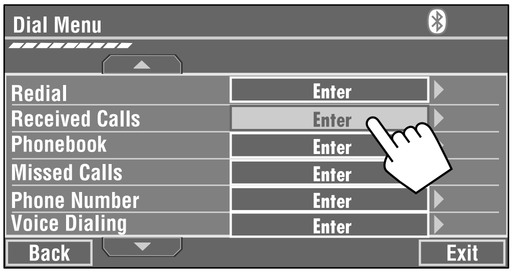
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

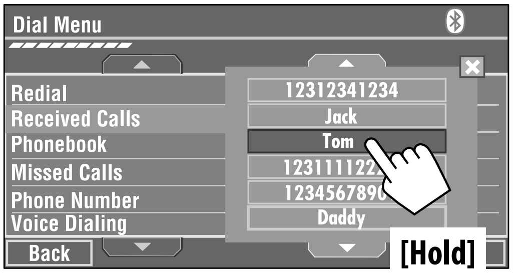
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

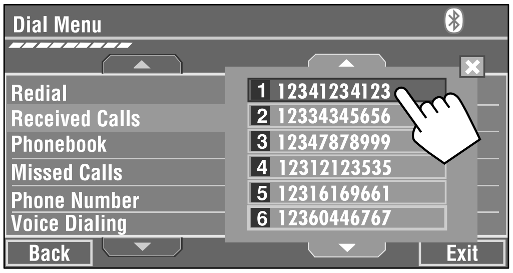

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111222
1234567890
Daddy
Back
[Hold]

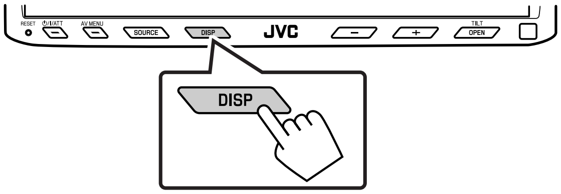
3 Select a preset number.

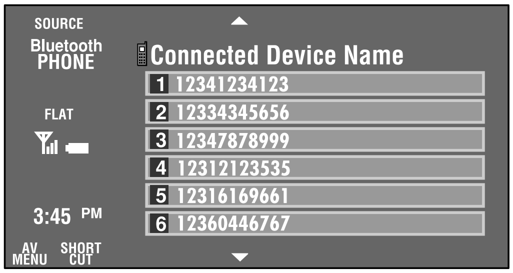

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

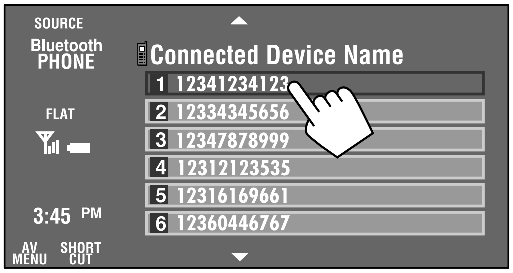
To call a preset number

1

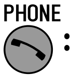

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

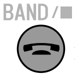
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

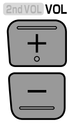
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.



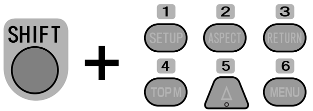
:
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).



: End the call.

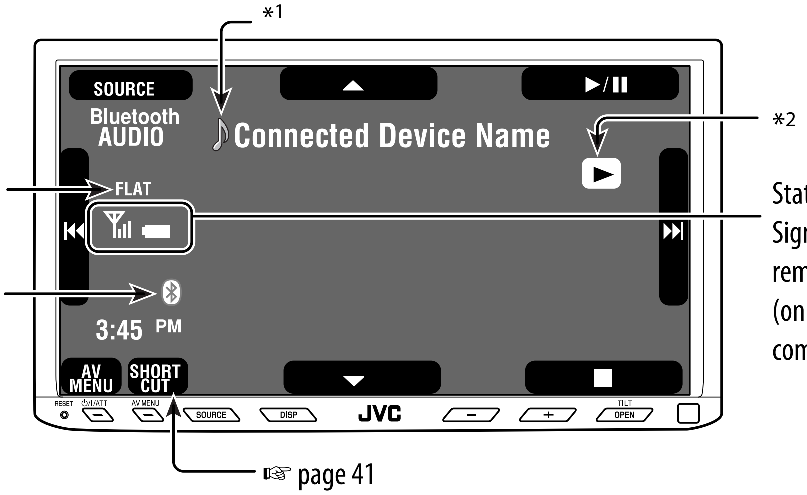


: Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1
2
3
4
5
6
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU

[Hold] : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

*1

*2

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

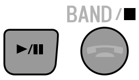
*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

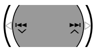
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Start playback.**

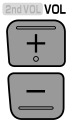
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.



: Start and pause playback.



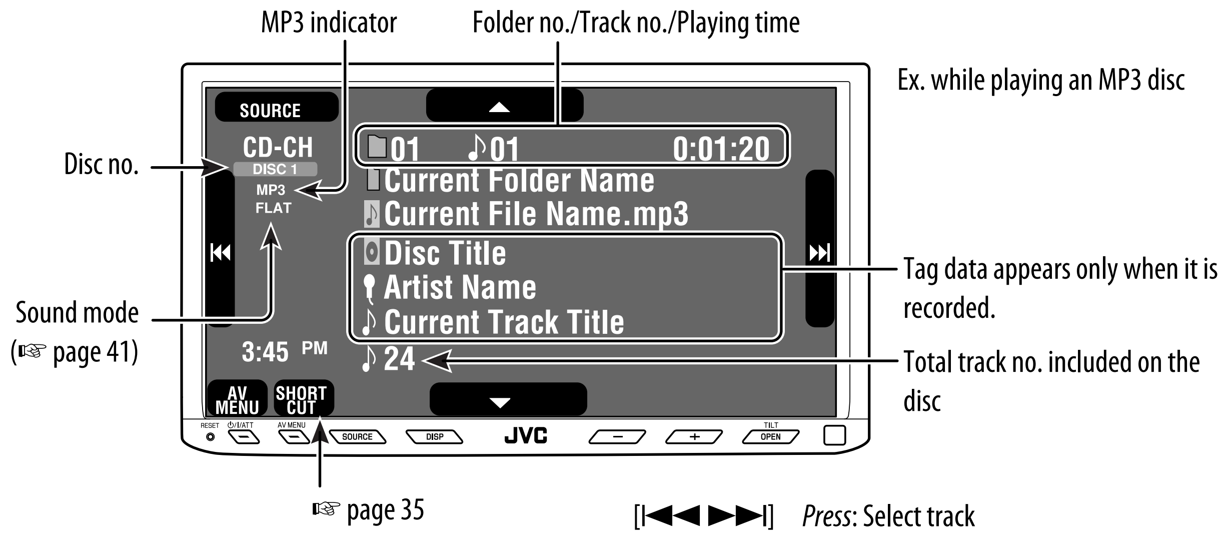
: Reverse/forward skip



: Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Ex. while playing an MP3 disc
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
♪24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 35

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folders (only for MP3) *Hold*: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

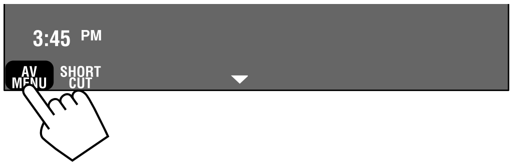
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

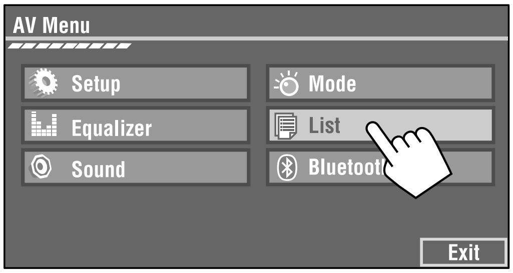
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

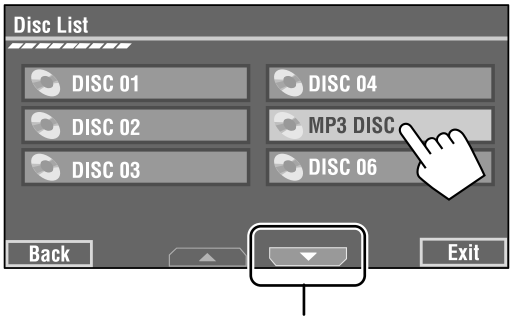

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

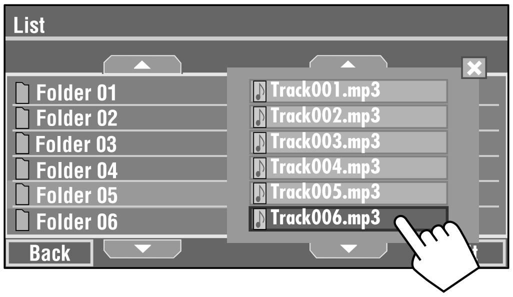

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

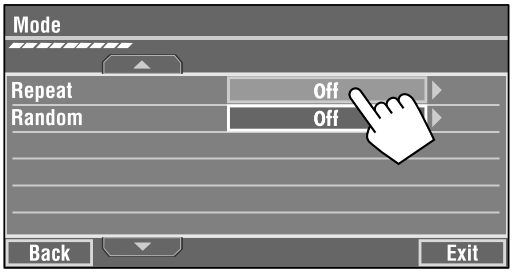
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

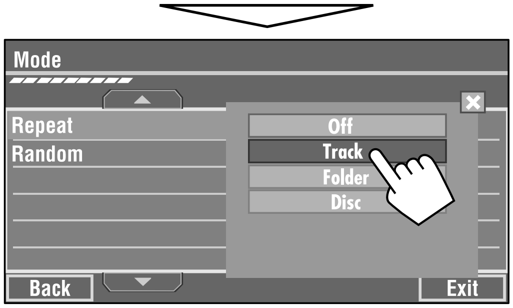
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 **Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3





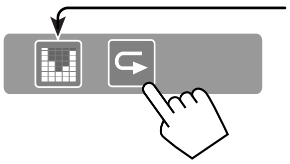
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

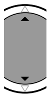
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

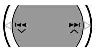
☞ page 41



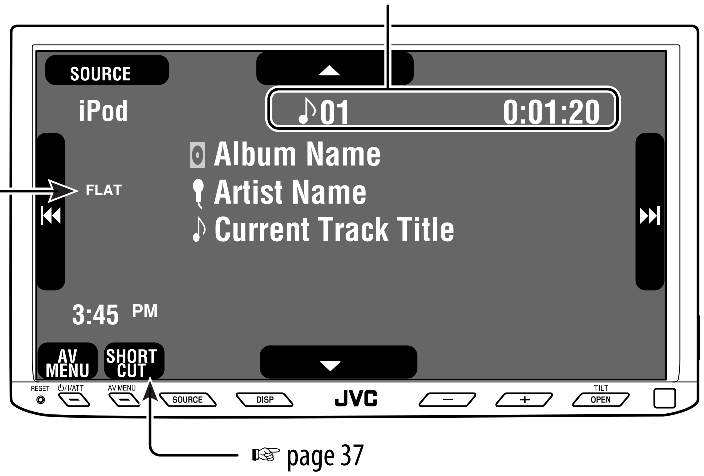
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

∇ Δ : Select disc.


: Select folder (MP3 only).


- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the iPod


SOURCE
iPod
♪01 0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Track no./Playing time

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

☞ page 37

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ **Artists** ↔ **Albums** ↔ **Songs** ↔ **Genres** ↔ **Composers** ↔ (back to the beginning)

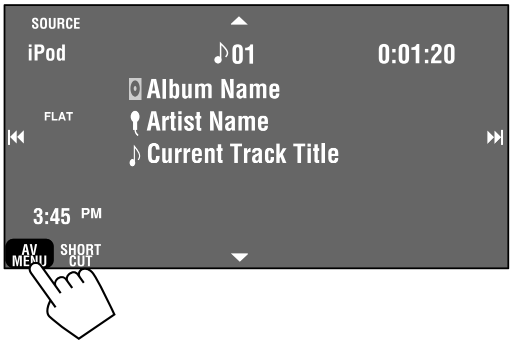
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

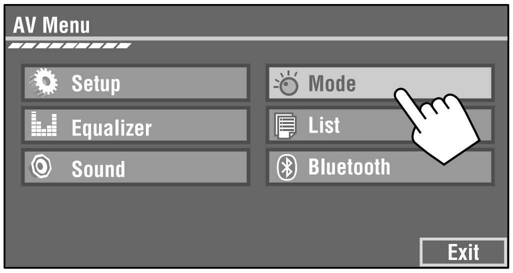
Selecting playback modes

1

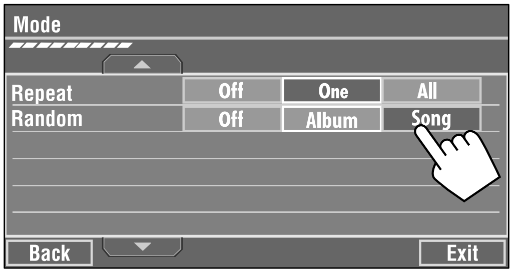

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

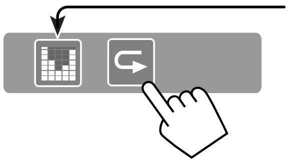
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

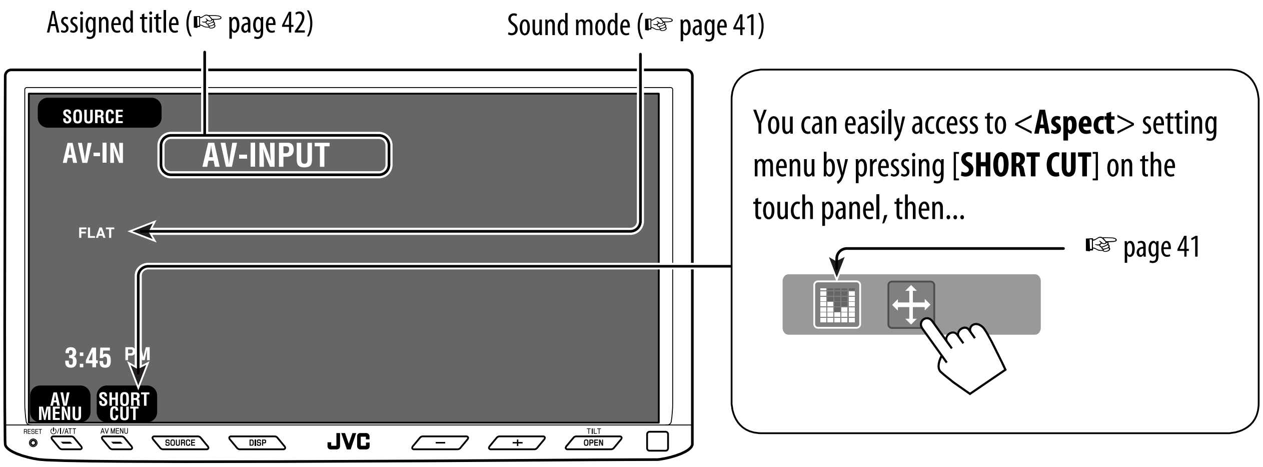
☞ page 41



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


Assigned title (☞ page 42)
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 41

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

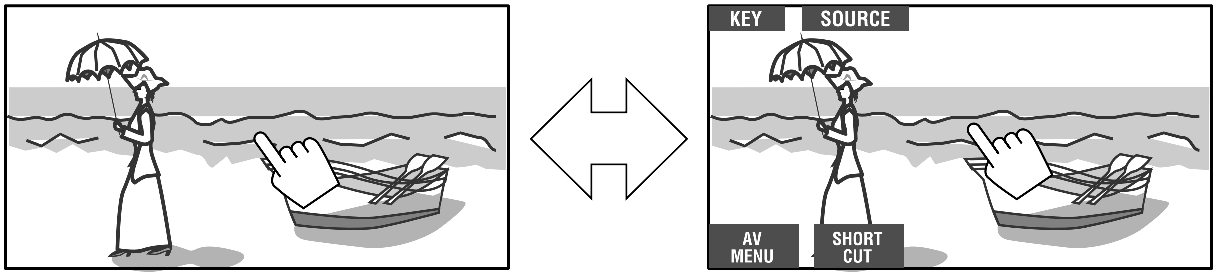
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

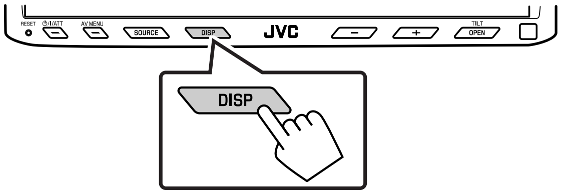
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 47)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

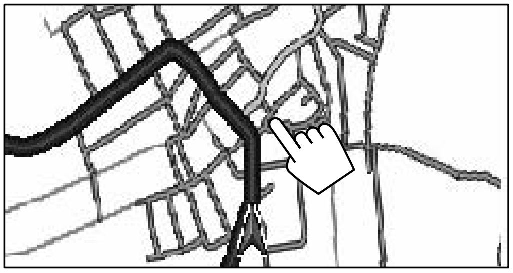


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 45)

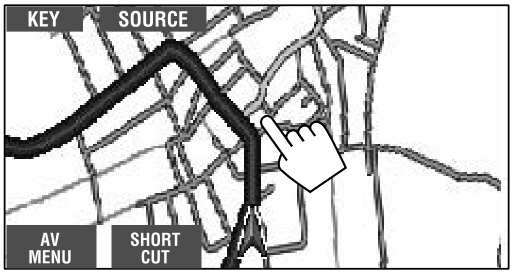
* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).



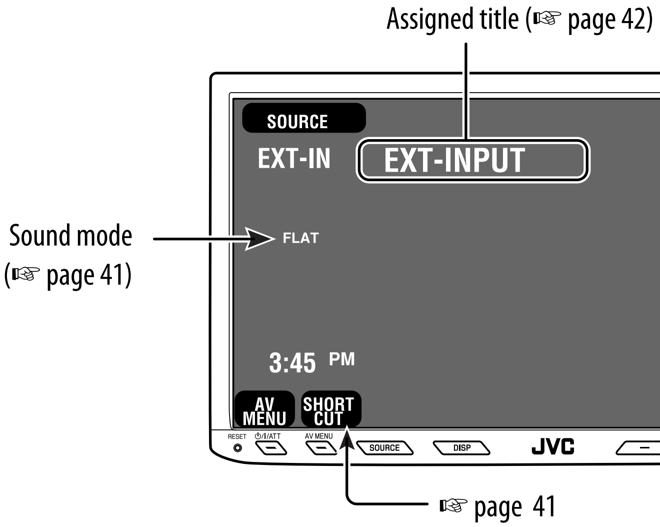
Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 47)
- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).



Assigned title (☞ page 42)
SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

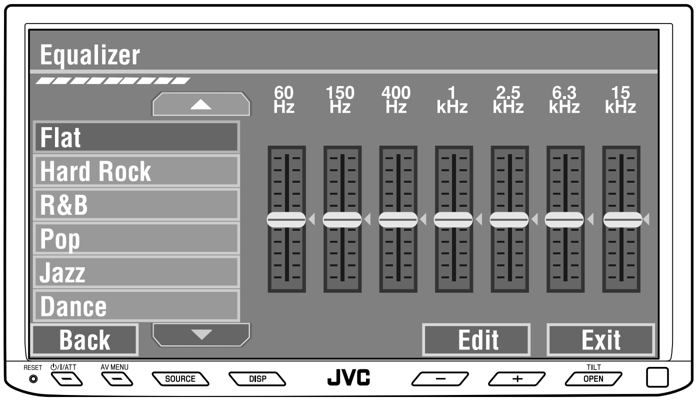
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

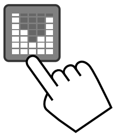
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

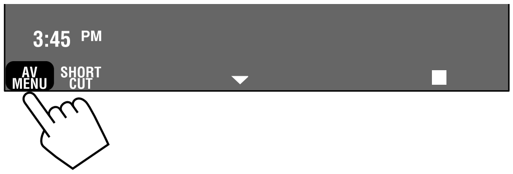
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

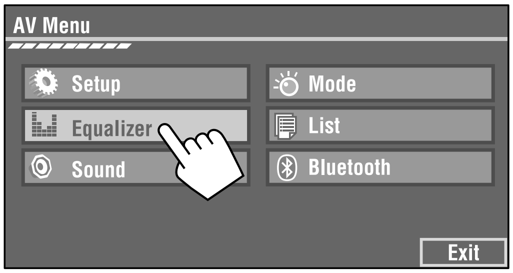


❶

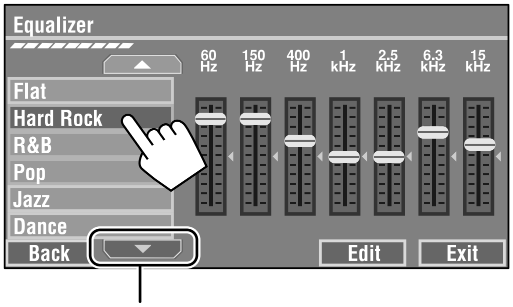

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

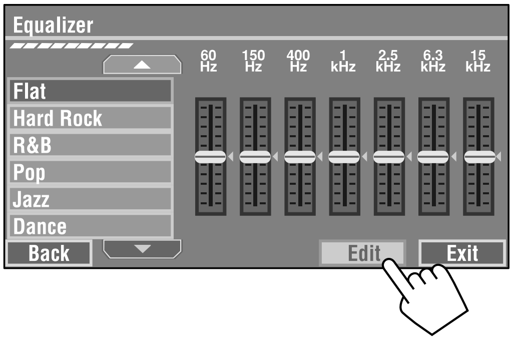
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 58.

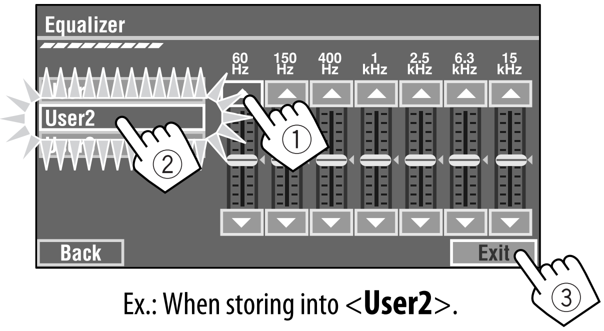
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

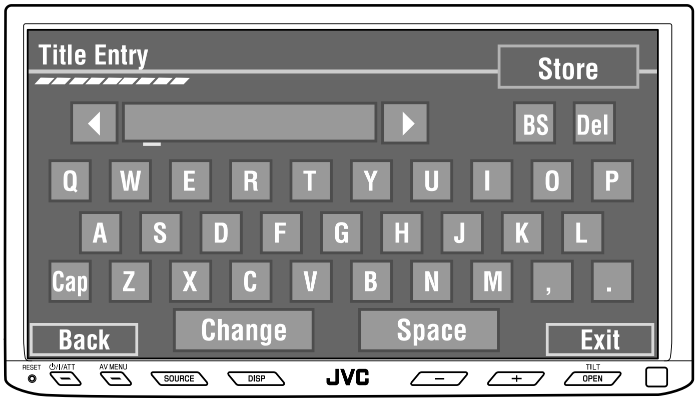

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
Back
Exit
③

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

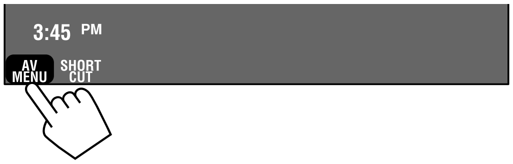
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

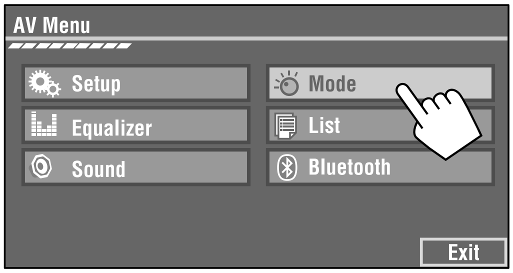
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

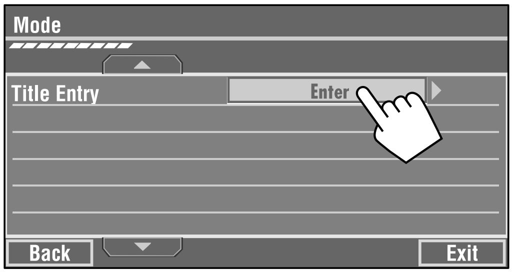
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

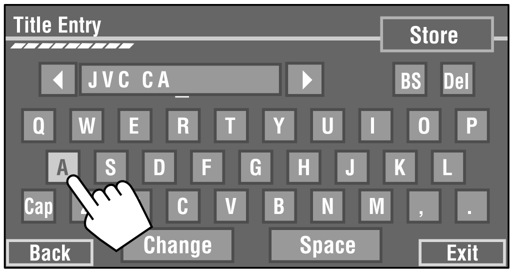

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

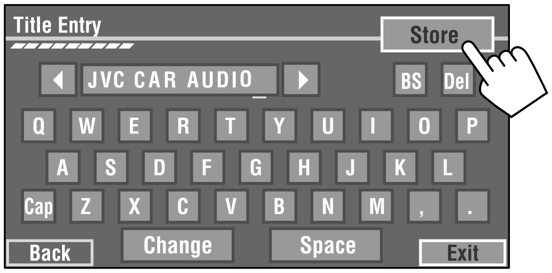
❸ Assign a title.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

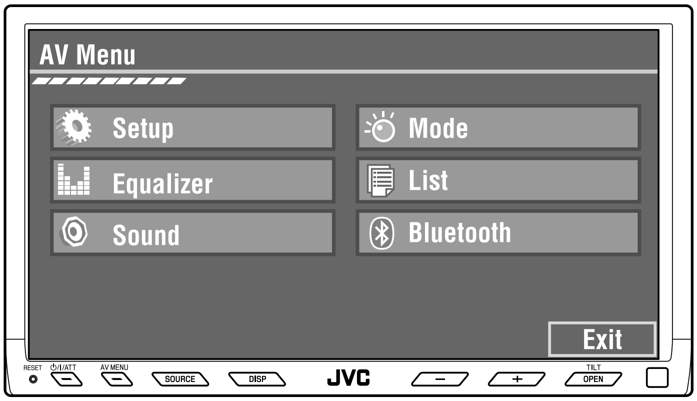
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 59).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/ lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

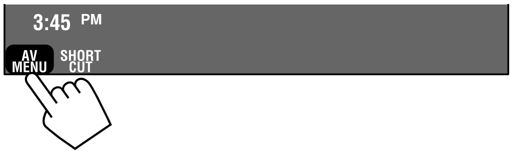

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

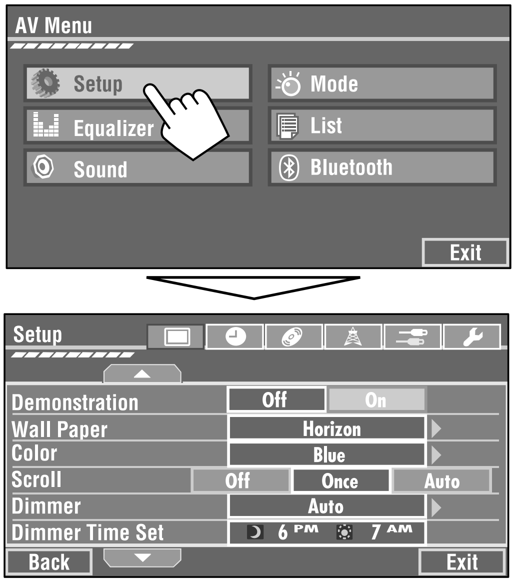
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

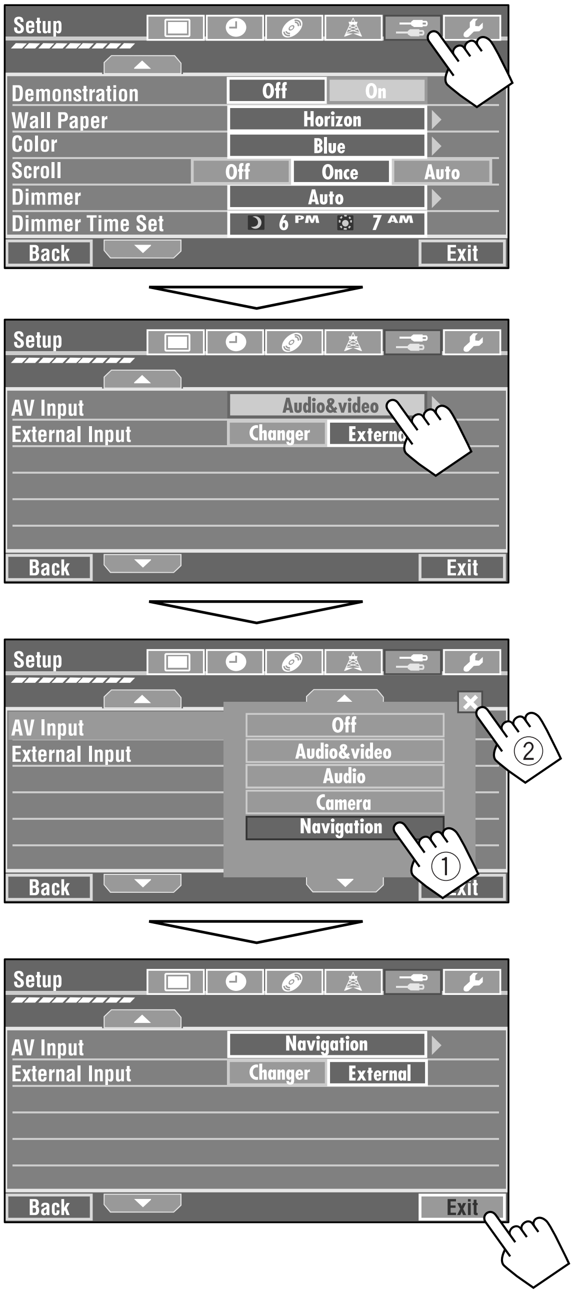
❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration: Off On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off Once Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Back
Exit
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
②
①

Demonstration: Off On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off Once Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

AV Input: Audio&video
External Input: Changer Externa

AV Input: Navigation
External Input: Changer External

Setup

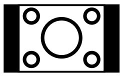
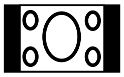
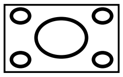
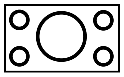
The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. (only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>, ☞ next page) • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

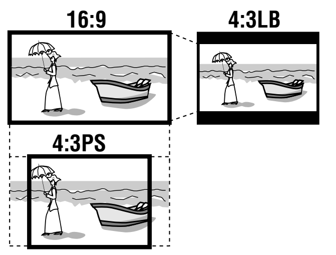
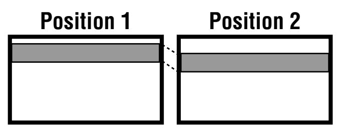
*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Display</td><td>Aspect*3</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Full:</u>
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Language*4</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
<u>English</u>, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [59]</td></tr>
<tr><td>NTSC/PAL</td><td>Select the color system of the external monitor connected—NTSC, <u>PAL</u>.
• Turn off the power and turn it on again to make the new setting effective.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial <u>1:00AM</u> ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
<u>12Hours</u>, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8]
<u>Off</u>, On</td></tr>
</table>

[3] *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

[4] *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Disc	**Menu Language***[1]	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Audio Language*[1]	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Subtitle*[1]	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Monitor Type*[1]  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*[1]  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*[1]	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*[1]	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*[1]	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 57) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*[1] *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input***2	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [38, 39] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***3 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*4	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***5: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 36] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [40] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.

*2 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*3 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*4 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*5 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

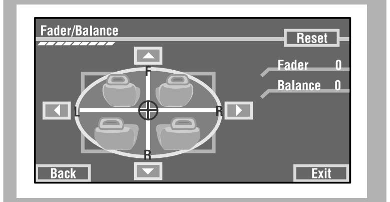
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [41]

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader 0 Balance 0	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*[1]

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry	Only for FM/AM stations, "AV-IN," and "EXT-IN." ☞ [42]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 37]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 37]

*[1] *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For "DISC": Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)

For "CD-CH": Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*[1]

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *[2]	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message*[3]	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

*[1] *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

*[2] *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*[3] *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

Moisture condensation

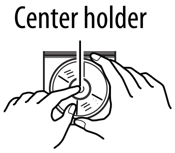
Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



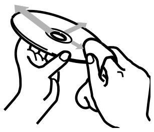
- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

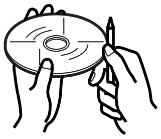
A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

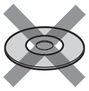
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



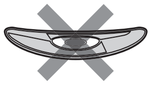
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

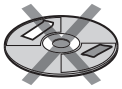
SingleCD—8 cm disc



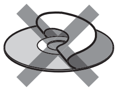
Warped disc



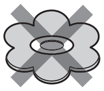
Sticker and sticker residue



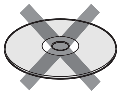
Stick-on label



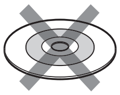
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

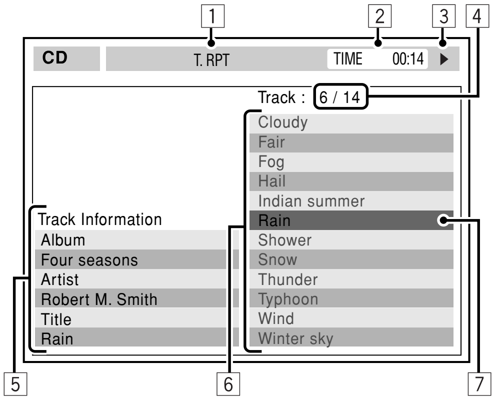
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

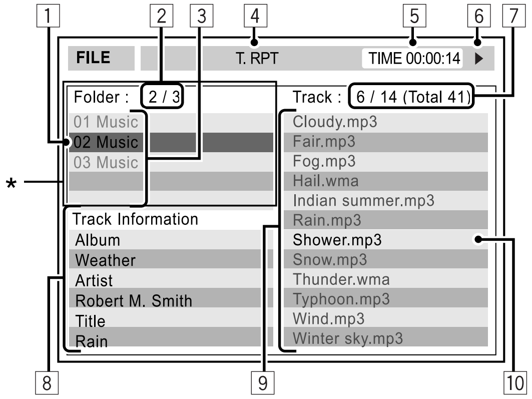
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
❓ : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *1
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *2

  *1 When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *2 It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 46)

<D. Audio Output>		**Output signals**		
Playback disc		**<Stream>**	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode \ Frequency	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 42)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 44)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 50)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

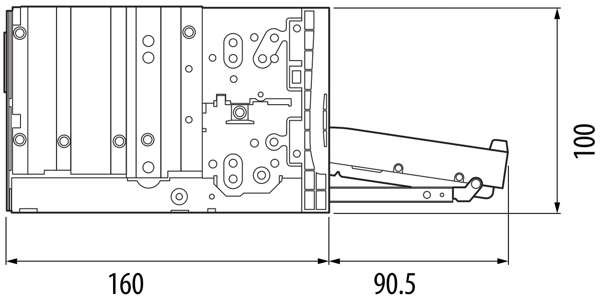
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• “No Disc” appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “No Magazine” appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• “Disconnect” appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• “No Files” appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC/PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	171 mm × 97 mm × 21 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.6 kg

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

EN, CT

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

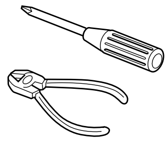
0208MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KW-AVX716/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊
การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง

LVT1780-008A
[U/UT]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, CT, TH
©2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

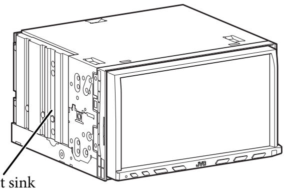
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V 、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

- 切勿在以下位置安裝本機或連接電纜;
  - 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置,否則可能引發交通事故。
  - 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置，否則可能引發致命的交通事故。
  - 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在操作方向盤的過程中操作本機，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 駕駛時，駕駛員切勿緊盯顯示器。這可能會導致疏忽並引發事故。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 若手剎車未嚙合，"Parking Brake" 字樣在顯示器上閃爍，且無法播放圖片。
  - 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

進行電路連接時注意:

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω － 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "Amplifier Gain" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 49 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住未使用電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

คำเตือน

- อย่าติดตั้งเครื่องเล่นหรือเดินสายไฟในตำแหน่งที่;
  - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของพวงมาลัยและคันเกียร์ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัตเหตุขึ้
  - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของอุปกรณ์ป้องกันควาปลอดภัย เช่น แอร์แบค เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายร้ายแรงถึงชีวิตขึ้นได้
  - อาจกีดขวางสายตา
- อย่าใช้งานขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ผู้ขับต้องไม่มองที่จอมอนิเตอร์ขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจนำไปสู่ความประมาทเลินเล่อและก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุได้
- หากต้องการใช้งานเครื่องขณะขับขี่ ต้องแน่ใจว่าได้ใช้ความระมัดระวังอย่างดีเพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการเกิดอุบัติเหตุ
- หากไม่ได้ใส่เบรกมือ ข้อความ "Parking Brake" จะกะพริบที่หน้าจอ และจะไม่มีภาพแสดงขึ้นมา
  - คำเตือนนี้จะปรากฏขึ้นเฉพาะเมื่อต่อสายเบรกกับระบบเบรกในรถยนต์ไว้เท่านั้น

ม้อนูลในการต่อระบบไฟ:

- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟิวสหากฟิว์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้า นขายเครื่องียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำให้ต่อลำโพง ที่มีกำลังขับงสุดเกินกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลัง มีค่าความต้านทาน **4 Ω ถึง 8 Ω**) ถ้ากำลังขับต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "Amplifier Gain" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 49 คำแนะนำ)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วยเท ปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit.
If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

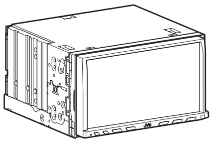
用於安裝和連接的零件清單

本機配備以下零件。
若發現缺少任何一件零件，請即刻聯絡您的分銷商。

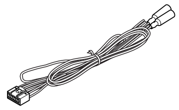
รายการ่วนประกอบำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้ หากมีสิ่งใดไม่ครบ กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายโดยทันที

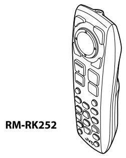
Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง



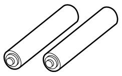
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束
ายเคเบิลกำลัง



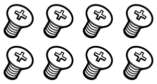
Remote controller
遙控器
รีโมตคอนโทรล



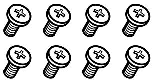
Batteries
電池
แบตเตอรี่



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
平頭螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)
สกรูหัวแบน (M5 x 8 มม)



Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
圓頭螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)
สกรูหัวกลม (M5 x 8 มม)



Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ

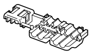
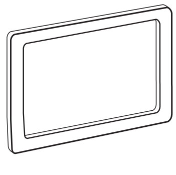


Plate for use with a Nissan car
用於日產汽車的框
แผ่นสำหรับใช้กับรถนิสสัน



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

安裝 (裝設、固定在儀表板內)

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。但是在實際安裝時，您應該根據您的汽車作適當的調整。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

安裝本機之前

- 當裝上本機時,必須按照指示使用配備的螺絲釘。如果使用其它的螺絲釘，相關零件可能會鬆脫或損壞。
- 當鎖緊螺絲釘或螺栓時，切記不要壓擠到任何連接電線。
- 當安裝上後，切記不要阻擋到後面板的風扇以維持適當的通風。

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม์เข้า)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปั ญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากับผู้ขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษั

- หากคุณไม่มั่นใจในวิธีการติดตั้งเครื่องีเยงอย่างถูกวิธี โปรดให้ช่างผู้ชำนาญทำการติดตั้งเท่านัม

ก่อนการติดตั้งตัวเครื่อง

- เมื่อจะทำการติดตั้งตัวเครื่อง โปรดใช้สกรูที่แนบมาตามคำแนะนำ หากยึดเครื่องด้วยสกรูแบบอื่น อาจทำให้ชิ้นส่วนหลวมหรือเกิดความเสียหายได้
- เมื่อจะขันแน่นกรูหรือลักเกลียว ต้องระวังไม่ให้หนีบายเชื่อมต่อ
- กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่ามิได้ปิดกั้นพัดลมตรงแผงหน้ากากด้านหลัง เพื่อให้การระบายอากาศเป็นไปอย่างเหมาะสมเมื่อติดตั้ง

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.

Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 to 6.

4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

1 拆卸原本安裝在汽車內的音響系統，以及其裝配架。

備注: 請務必保留所有從您汽車拆卸的螺絲和零件做日後使用。

2 將 (從汽車拆卸的) 裝配架安上本機 (參閱下圖)。

3 執行必要的電路連接。
- 參閱第 3 至 6 頁。

4 使用在步驟 ***1*** 拆卸的螺絲安裝本機。

以下以豐田 (Toyota) 汽車安裝為例。請聯絡您的 JVC 汽車音響分銷商有關更多細節。

1 ถอดระบบเครื่องเสียงที่ติดตั้งในรถไว้ตั้งแต่แรก พร้อมทั้งแท่นรอง

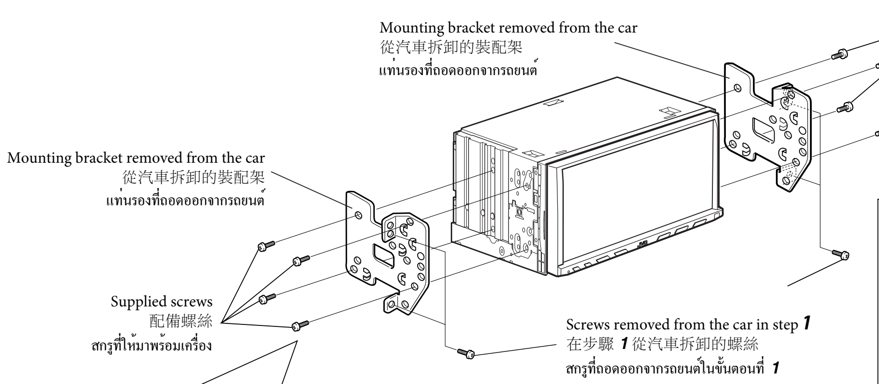
หมายเหตุ: ดูให้แน่ใจว่าเก็บสกรูและ
ชิ้นส่วนทั้งหมดที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์ของท่านไว้ใช้ต่อไป

2 ติดแท่นรอง (ที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์) เข้ากับชุดประกอบนี้ (ดูที่ด้านล่าง)

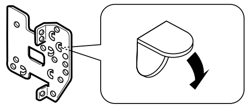
3 ดำเนินการต่อระบบไฟฟ้าที่จำเป็น
- ดูหน้า 3 ถึง 6

4 ติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้โดยใช้สกรูที่ถอดออกในขั้นตอนท ***1***

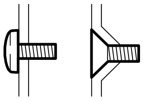
ตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้เป็นการติดตั้งในรถยนต์โตโยต้า สำหรับรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติม กรุณาปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC


Mounting bracket removed from the car
從汽車拆卸的裝配架
แท่นรองที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์
Supplied screws
配備螺絲
สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง
Mounting bracket removed from the car
從汽車拆卸的裝配架
แท่นรองที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์
Supplied screws
配備螺絲
สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง
Screws removed from the car in step 1
在步驟 1 從汽車拆卸的螺絲
สกรูที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์ในขั้นตอนที่ 1

If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.
若有必要，請重新裝上凸緣。
หากจำเป็น ให้งอแผ่นยึด



Select the appropriate type fitting to your audio system space.
選擇適合您的音響系統安裝空間的型號。
เลือกแบบที่เหมาะสมกับพื้นที่ระบบเครื่องเสียง



Note: When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

備注: 安裝本機進裝配架時，請務必使用配備的螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)。若使用比較長的螺絲，有關螺絲可能會損壞本機。

หมายเหตุ: ขณะติดตั้งเครื่องบนแท่นรอง ขอให้ดูให้แน่ใจว่าใช้สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง (M5 x 8 มม) หากใช้สกรูยาวกว่าที่ระบุอาจทำให้เครื่องเสียได้

When installing the unit in a Nissan car
當安裝本機於日產汽車時
เมื่อติดตั้งเครื่องในรถนิสสัน

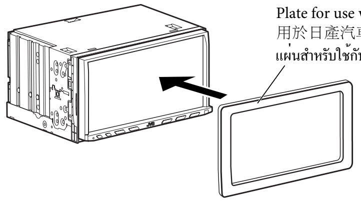
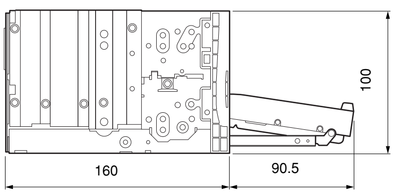


Plate for use with a Nissan car
用於日產汽車的框
แผ่นสำหรับใช้กับรถนิสสัน

Required space for the monitor ejection
拆卸屏幕所需之空間
พื้นที่ว่างที่ต้องการสำหรับดันจอภาพออก

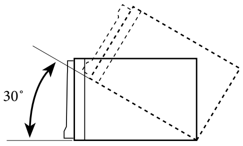


Unit: mm
單位: mm (毫米)
หน่วย: มม

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

將本機安裝在少於 30˚ 的角度，您必須考慮到屏幕可以在使用時彈出。

ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30˚ โดยคำนึงถึงเวลาจอมอนิเตอร์ดีดออกในระหว่างการใช้



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

電路連接

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，拔開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。

電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。

2 將天線的電線連接起來。

3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออก แล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

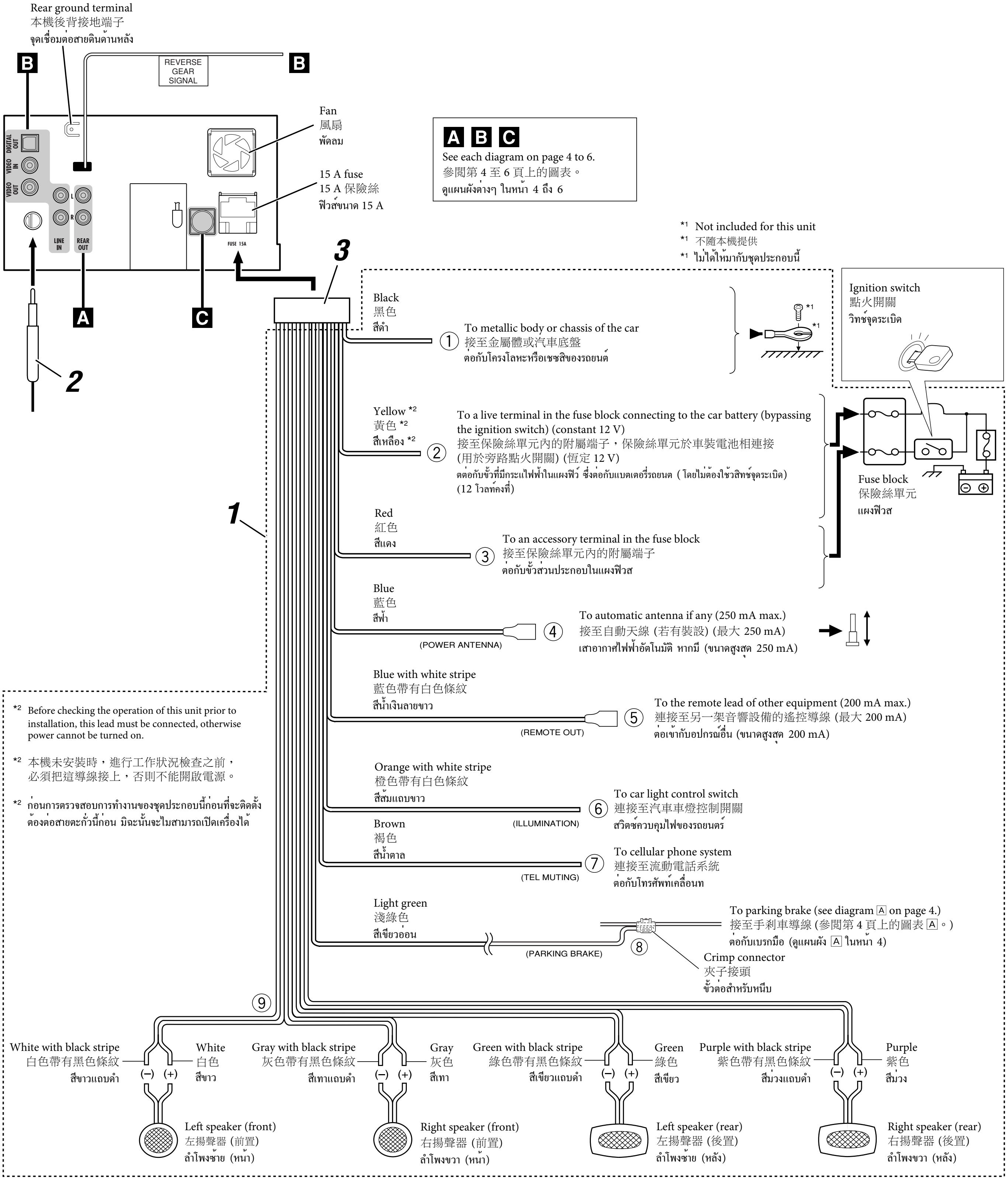
- **ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถังรถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง**

ก่อตทำกาตเชต่อมต่อ: ตตวจ อตกาตเดิต ายไฟใตตยตต์อย่างตะมัดตะวัอย่าให้ผิดพตาดใตกาตเชต่อมต่อชุดปตะกอตชุดตี กาตเชต่อมต่อผิดพตาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเสียหายต้ายแตงกัตชุดปตะ
กอตตี้ได้าตตะกั่วของ ายไฟ แตะของอุปกตต์ต่อเชต่อมจากตัวต งตตอาจมี ที่ไม่เหมตอตกัต

1 ต่อสายไฟีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง

2 เชื่อมต่อกับายอากาศ

3 สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้


Rear ground terminal
本機後背接地端子
จุดเชื่อมต่อสายดินด้านหลัง
B
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
B
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Fan
風扇
พัดลม
15 A fuse
15 A 保險絲
ฟิวส์ขนาด 15 A
FUSE 15A
3
A
C
2
1
Black
黑色
สีดำ
①
Yellow *2
黃色 *2
สีเหลือง *2
②
Red
紅色
สีแดง
③
Blue
藍色
สีฟ้า
(POWER ANTENNA)
④
Blue with white stripe
藍色帶有白色條紋
สีน้ำเงินลายขาว
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤
Orange with white stripe
橙色帶有白色條紋
สีส้มแถบขาว
(ILLUMINATION)
⑥
Brown
褐色
สีน้ำตาล
(TEL MUTING)
⑦
Light green
淺綠色
สีเขียวอ่อน
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑧
Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ
⑨
*1
*1
Ignition switch
點火開關
วิทช์จุดระเบิด
Fuse block
保險絲單元
แผงฟิวส์
White with black stripe
白色帶有黑色條紋
สีขาวแถบดำ
White
白色
สีขาว
Gray with black stripe
灰色帶有黑色條紋
สีเทาแถบดำ
Gray
灰色
สีเทา
Green with black stripe
綠色帶有黑色條紋
สีเขียวแถบดำ
Green
綠色
สีเขียว
Purple with black stripe
紫色帶有黑色條紋
สีม่วงแถบดำ
Purple
紫色
สีม่วง
(–) (+)
(–) (+)
(–) (+)
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
左揚聲器 (前置)
ลำโพงซ้าย (หน้า)
Right speaker (front)
右揚聲器 (前置)
ลำโพงขวา (หน้า)
Left speaker (rear)
左揚聲器 (後置)
ลำโพงซ้าย (หลัง)
Right speaker (rear)
右揚聲器 (後置)
ลำโพงขวา (หลัง)

A B C
See each diagram on page 4 to 6.
參閱第 4 至 6 頁上的圖表。
ดูแผนผังต่างๆ ในหน้า 4 ถึง 6

*1 Not included for this unit
*1 不隨本機提供
*1 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้

① To metallic body or chassis of the car
接至金屬體或汽車底盤
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชซสิของรถยนต์

② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子，保險絲單元於車裝電池相連接 (用於旁路點火開關) (恆定 12 V)
ตต่อกับขั้วที่มีกระแไฟฟ้าในแผงฟิว์ ซึ่งต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต (โดยไม่ต้องใช้วสิทช์จุดระเบิด) (12 โวลท์คงที่)

③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子
ต่อกับขั้วส่วนประกอบในแผงฟิวส

④ To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
接至自動天線 (若有裝設) (最大 250 mA)
เสาอากาศไฟฟ้าอัตโนมัติ หากมี (ขนาดสูงสุด 250 mA)

⑤ To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
連接至另一架音響設備的遙控導線 (最大 200 mA)
ต่อเข้ากับอปกรณ์อื่น (ขนาดสูงสุด 200 mA)

⑥ To car light control switch
連接至汽車車燈控制開關
สวิตซ์ควบคุมไฟของรถยนตร์

⑦ To cellular phone system
連接至流動電話系統
ต่อกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนท

⑧ To parking brake (see diagram 🄰 on page 4.)
接至手剎車導線 (參閱第 4 頁上的圖表 🄰。)
ต่อกับเบรกมือ (ดูแผนผัง 🄰 ในหน้า 4)

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

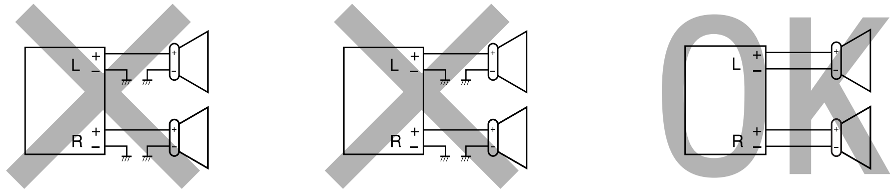
*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

*2 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไมสามารถเปิดเครื่องได้

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:
- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

ข้อควรระวัง สำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:
- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้นชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเขากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจอบการเดินายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยียก่อน



A Connecting the parking brake lead

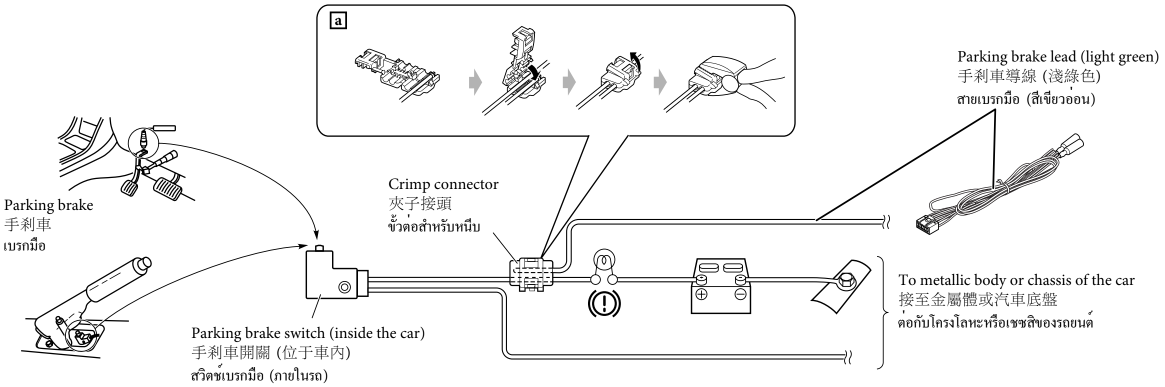
Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.

連接至手刹車導線

將手刹車導線連接至車內的手刹車系統。

ต่อสายเบรกมือ

ต่อสายเบรกมือกับระบบเบรกมือของรถยนต

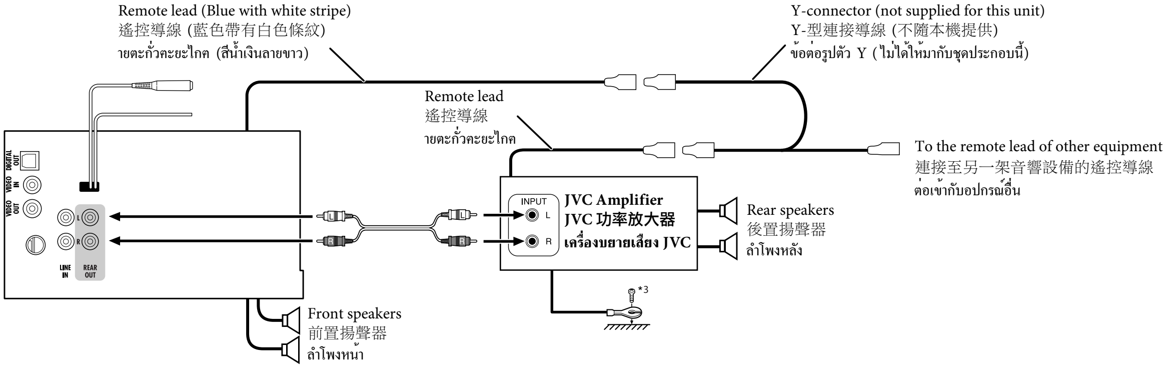

a
Parking brake lead (light green)
手刹車導線 (淺綠色)
สายเบรกมือ (สีเขียวอ่อน)
Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ
Parking brake
手刹車
เบรกมือ
To metallic body or chassis of the car
接至金屬體或汽車底盤
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชซสิของรถยนต์
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
手刹車開關 (位于車內)
สวิตช์เบรกมือ (ภายในรถ)

A Connecting an external amplifier / 連接外部功率放大器 / การต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

您可以連接功率放大器來升級您的汽車音響系統。
- 您可以將本機的遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋) 連接到功率放大器，藉此為其供電。
  (要使用遙控導線連接其他設備，需單獨購置 Y 型連接導線。)
- 將揚聲器和本機拔開，再連接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器導線放置不用。
- 您可以關閉內建功率放大器，將音頻信號僅傳送到外接功率放大器，從而得到清晰的音質，並防止本機內部積聚熱量。參閱使用說明書的第 49 頁。

เพื่อคุณภาพเสียงที่ดีขึ้น ท่านสามารถต่อแอมพลิฟายเออร์เข้ากับระบบเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ได้
- ท่านสามารถจ่ายไฟให้กับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ได้ด้วยการต่อสายรีโมท (สีฟ้าแถบขาว) ของเครื่องกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ (หากต้องการต่อกับอุปกรณ์อื่นด้วยการใช้สายรีโมทต้องซื้อขั้วต่อรูปตัว Y แยกต่างหาก)
- ถอดสายลำโพงออกจากเครื่องแล้วต่อกับแอมปลิฟายเออร์ ปล่อยสายลำโพงทิ้งไว้ไม่ต้องใช้
- สามารถปิดสวิตช์แอมพลิฟายเออร์ในตัว แล้วส่งสัญญาณเสียงไปยังแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอกโดยเฉพาะ เพื่อให้ได้เสียงที่คมชัดและป้องกันไม่ให้เกิดความร้อนสะสมขึ้นภายในชุดประกอบ ดูที่หน้า 49 ของคำแนะนำในการใช้

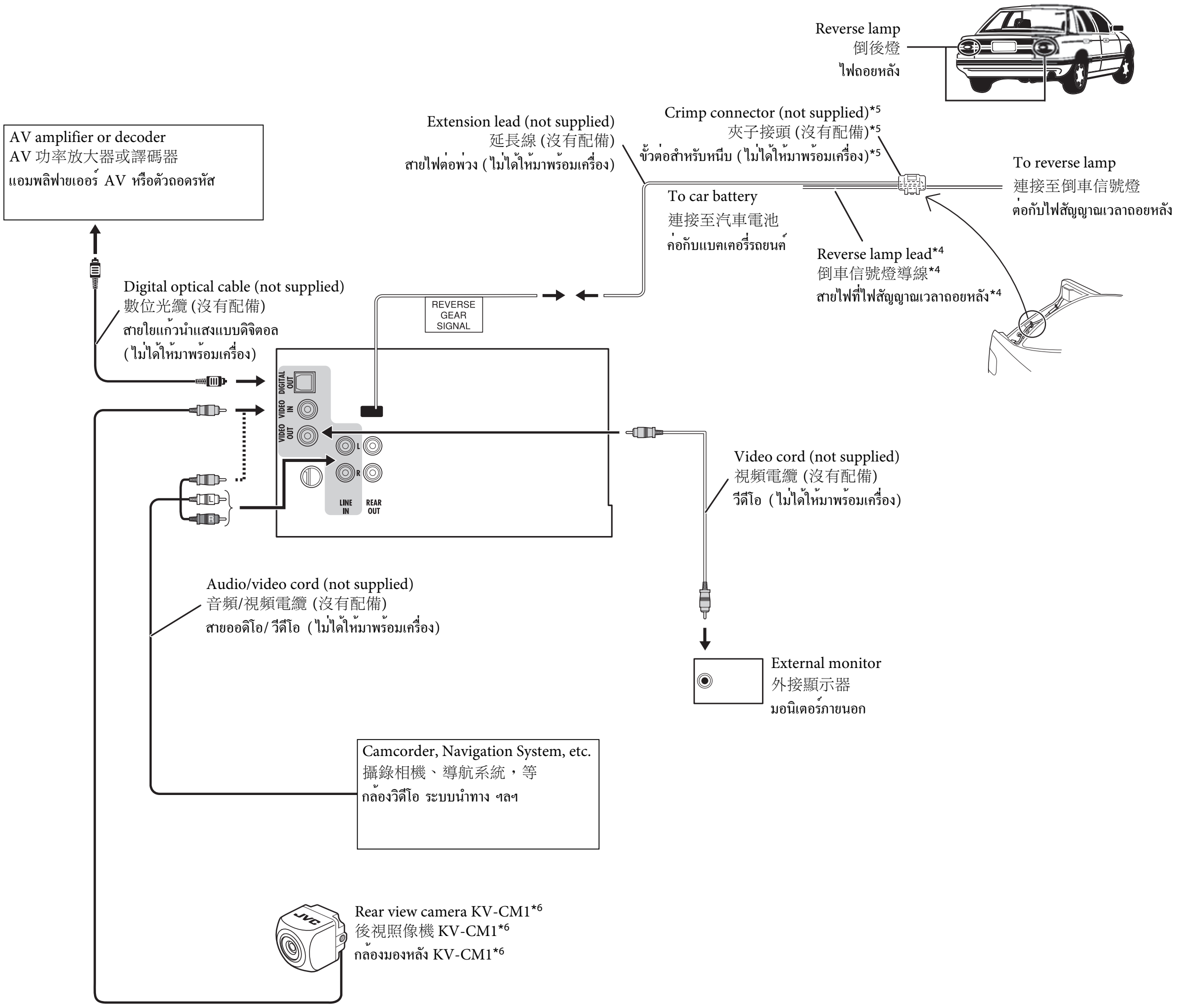

Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋)
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกต (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Y-型連接導線 (不隨本機提供)
ข้อต่อรูปตัว Y (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)
Remote lead
遙控導線
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกต
To the remote lead of other equipment
連接至另一架音響設備的遙控導線
ต่อเข้ากับอปกรณ์อื่น
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
LINE IN
REAR OUT
L
R
INPUT
JVC Amplifier
JVC 功率放大器
เครื่องขยายเสียง JVC
Rear speakers
後置揚聲器
ลำโพงหลัง
*3
Front speakers
前置揚聲器
ลำโพงหน้า

[*3] **Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.**

[*3] 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋 (如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去)。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

[*3] ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเขากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ—ตรงส่วน ที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดดีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได

B Connections for external component playback / 連接到外接部件 / การเชื่อมต่อสำหรับการเล่นอุปกรณ์ภายนอก


Reverse lamp
倒後燈
ไฟถอยหลัง
Extension lead (not supplied)
延長線 (沒有配備)
สายไฟต่อพ่วง (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
夾子接頭 (沒有配備)*5
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)*5
To reverse lamp
連接至倒車信號燈
ต่อกับไฟสัญญาณเวลาถอยหลัง
AV amplifier or decoder
AV 功率放大器或譯碼器
แอมพลิฟายเออร์ AV หรือตัวถอดรหัส
To car battery
連接至汽車電池
ต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์
Reverse lamp lead*4
倒車信號燈導線*4
สายไฟที่ไฟสัญญาณเวลาถอยหลัง*4
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
數位光纜 (沒有配備)
สายใยแก้วนำแสงแบบดิจิตอล
(ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Video cord (not supplied)
視頻電纜 (沒有配備)
วีดีโอ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
音頻/視頻電纜 (沒有配備)
สายออดิโอ/ วีดีโอ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
External monitor
外接顯示器
มอนิเตอร์ภายนอก
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
攝錄相機、導航系統，等
กล้องวิดีโอ ระบบนำทาง ฯลฯ
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6
後視照像機 KV-CM1*6
กล้องมองหลัง KV-CM1*6
JVC

---

*4 Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

*5 Refer to $\boxed{a}$ in diagram $\boxed{A}$ on page 4.

*6 Set “AV Input” setting to “Camera” when using (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*4 僅對應連接後視照像機至 VIDEO IN 插頭時。

*5 參閱 $\boxed{a}$ 在圖 $\boxed{A}$ 的第 4 頁。

*6 使用時，將 “Camera” 設定為 “AV Input” (參閱使用說明書的第 47 頁)。

*4 ใช้เฉพาะเมื่อต่อกล้องมองหลังกับช่อง VIDEO IN

*5 ดู $\boxed{a}$ ในแผนผัง $\boxed{A}$ ในหน้า 4

*6 ตั้ง “AV Input” เข้ากับ “Camera” เมื่อต้องการใช้งาน (ดูหน้า 47 คำแนะนำ)

C Connections to the CD changer jack / 連接到 CD 換碟機插孔 / การเชื่อมต่อกับหัวต่อซีดีเชนเจอร์

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

連接外接部件時，另請參閱部件及轉換器之使用手冊。

小心:
連接外接部件之前，請確保關閉本機。

您可以將以下 JVC 部件連接到 CD 換碟器插孔。

JVC 部件	型號名稱
CD 換碟器 (CD-CH)	CH-X1500，等

您也可透過各種 JVC 轉換器連接以下部件。
- 連接線可能需要單獨購置。

部件	轉換器	型號名稱
藍牙裝置	藍牙轉換器	KS-BTA200
iPod	iPod 介面轉換器	KS-PD100
帶線路輸出插孔的可攜式音頻播放器	線路輸入轉換器	KS-U57
帶 3.5 毫米迷你音響插孔的可攜式音頻播放器	AUX 輸入轉換器	KS-U58

當連接多個部件時 (最多：2)，建議您依下方所示串聯部件。

เมื่อเชื่อมต่ออุปกรณ์ภายนอก ให้ดูข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอกและอะแดปเตอร์จากคู่มือที่ให้มาด้วย

ข้อควรระวัง:
ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอก กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าปิดเครื่องอยู่

ท่านสามารถเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบ JVC ต่อไปนี้เข้ากับช่องเสียบซีดีเชนเจอร์

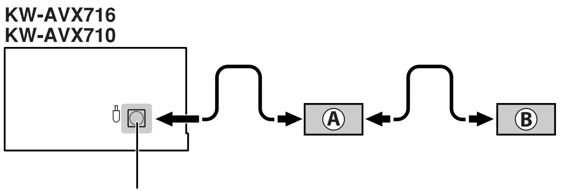
ส่วนประกอบ JVC	ชื่อรุ่น
ซีดีเชนเจอร์ (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 ฯลฯ

เชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ผ่านอะแดปเตอร์แบบต่างๆ ของ JVC ได้เช่นกัน
- อาจต้องซื้อสายเชื่อมต่อต่างหาก

ส่วนประกอบ	อะแดปเตอร์	ชื่อรุ่น
อุปกรณ์บลูทูธ	อะแดปเตอร์บลูทูธ	KS-BTA200
iPod	อินเทอร์เฟส อะแดปเตอร์สำหรับรุ่น iPod	KS-PD100
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพาพร้อมขั้วต่อ Line Output	อะแดปเตอร์ Line Input	KS-U57
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพาพร้อมช่องเสียบแบบ 3.5 มม. Stereo Mini	อะแดปเตอร์ AUX Input	KS-U58

เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบมากกว่าหนึ่งชิ้น (สูงสุดสองชิ้น) ขอแนะนำให้ท่านเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบแบบอนุกรมตามคำอธิบายข้างล่าง

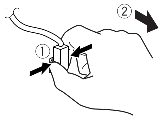
When connecting two components in series
當串聯兩個部件時
เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบสองชิ้นแบบอนุกรม



CD changer jack
CD 換碟器插孔
ช่องเสียบต่อของเครื่องเล่นซีด CD

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ[*7] **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / 拆開連接器 / ปลดขั้วต่อ



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
抓緊連接器上部 (①)，然後將之拉出 (②)。
จับด้านบนของขั้วต่อให้แน่น (①) จากนั้นจึงดึงออก (②)

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPod 是 Apple Inc. (蘋果公司) 在美國及其他國家注冊的商標。

iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ

[*7] To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[*7] 要使用這些部件，請正確設定外部輸入 (參閱使用說明書的第 47 頁)。

[*7] ในการใช้ส่วนประกอบเหล่านี้ ให้ตั้งค่าการรับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอกให้ถูกต้อง (ดูหน้า 47 คำแนะนำ)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**

* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **Unit becomes hot.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**

* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**

* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？

- **電源不能接通。**

* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？

- **揚聲器沒有聲音。**

* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？

- **聲音失真。**

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L) ，右 (R) 端子的負極 "–" 是否共同接地？

- **噪音干擾音響。**

* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？

- **本機發熱。**

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L) ，右 (R) 端子的負極 "–" 是否共同接地？

- **本機完全不能正確操作。**

* 您有沒有重設本機？

การตรวจจอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

- **ฟิวส์ขาด**

* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่

- **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**

* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่

- **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**

* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่

- **เสียงเพี้ยน**

* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

- **เสียงรบกวน**

* มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องส่วนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่

- **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**

* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

- **เครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย**

* ได้ทำการรีเซ็ตเครื่องหรือยัง

JVC

ENGLISH

中 文

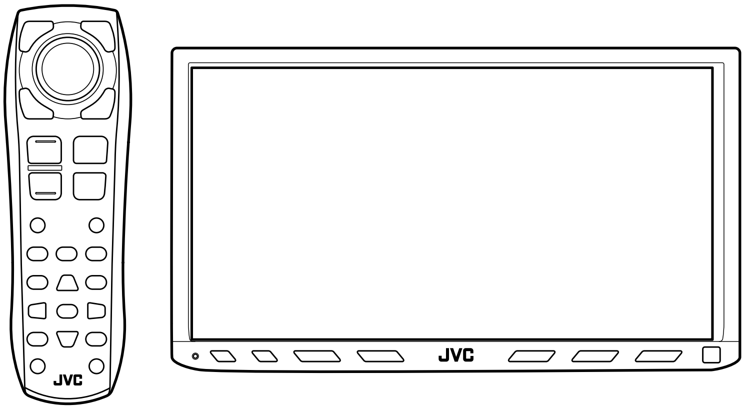
ไทย

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710

配備屏幕的 DVD 接收器
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710

เครื่องเล่น DVD พร้อมจอภาพ
KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710

DIVX
DIVX ULTRA
DOLBY DIGITAL
DVD VIDEO
dts Digital Out
COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 8 頁。
ดูที่หน้า 8 เพื่อยกเลิกการสาธิตภาพประกอบ

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。
กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書
คำแนะนำ

LVT1780-002A
[U]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

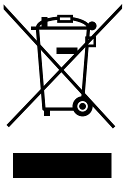
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス１Ｍレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

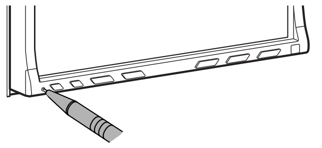
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.



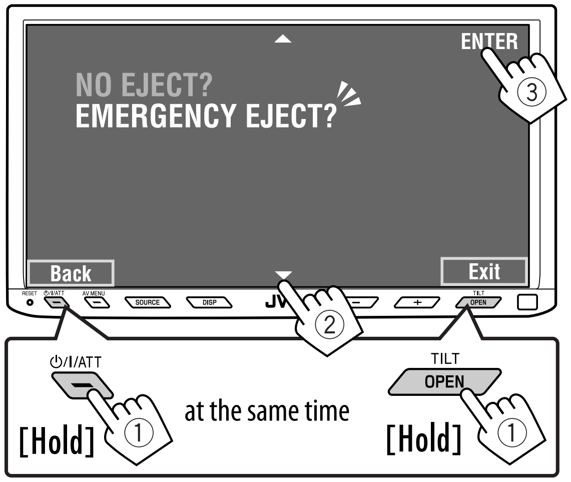
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel............ 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations................................ 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the iPod........................ 36
Using other external components..... 38

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 41
Assigning titles to the sources 42
Menu operations 43

REFERENCES

Maintenance.................................... 52
More about this unit 53
Troubleshooting.............................. 60
Specifications.................................. 64

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 3)*1 ALL 3 3 4 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

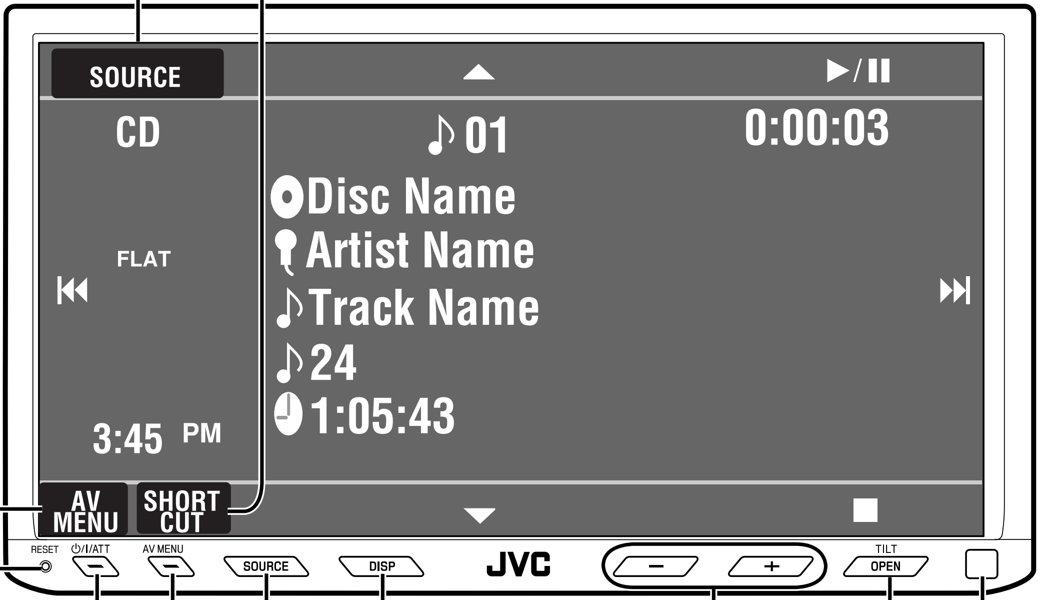
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 43

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
CD
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 43

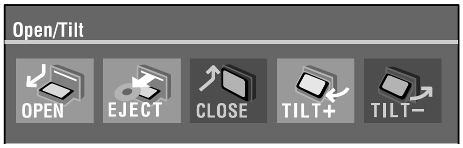
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

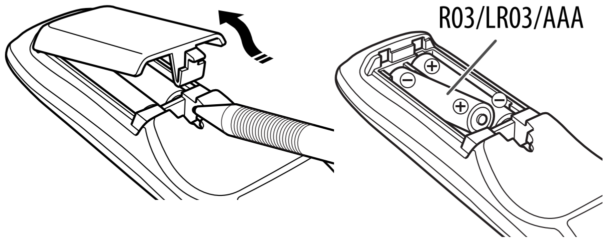
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

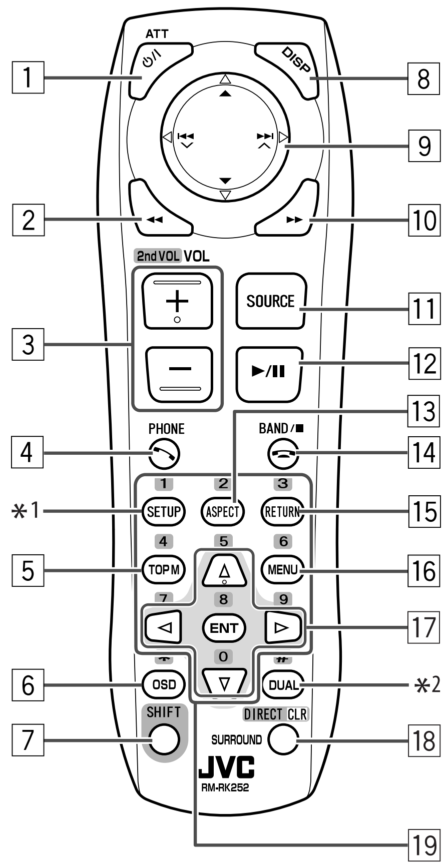
Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
✻1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
✻2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “✻.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER": Selects the preset station directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*

*2 *Not used for this unit.*

*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

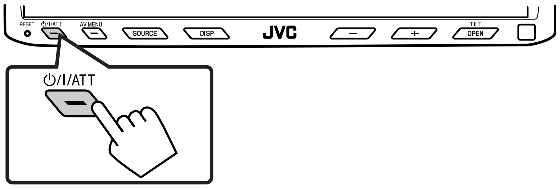
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

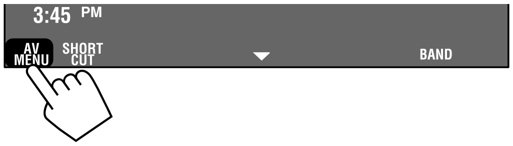
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 45)

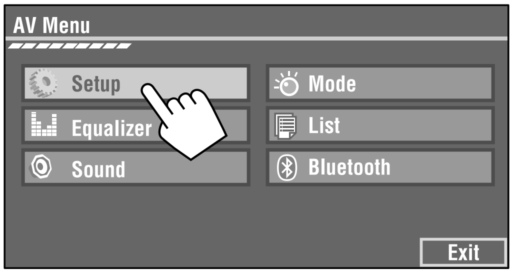
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

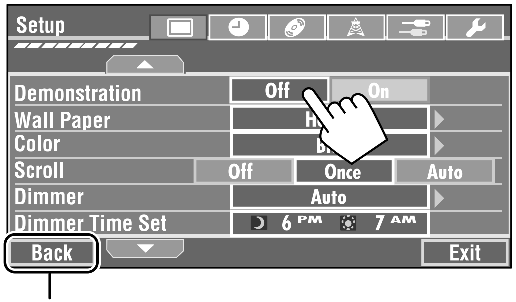

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

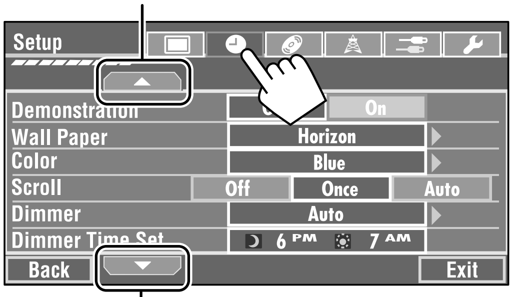
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

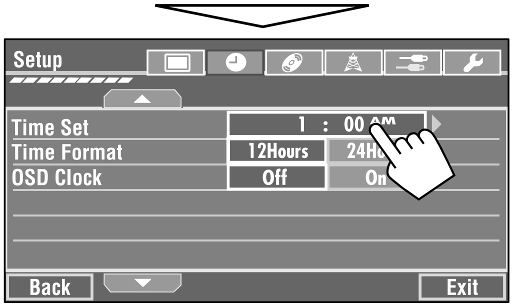
Return to the previous screen.

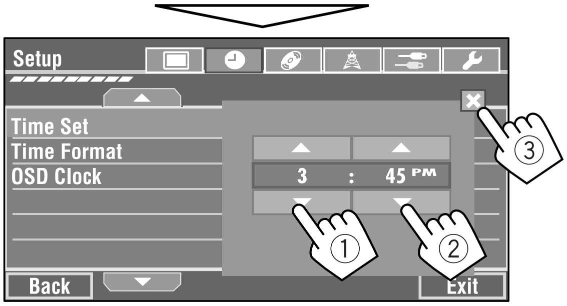
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

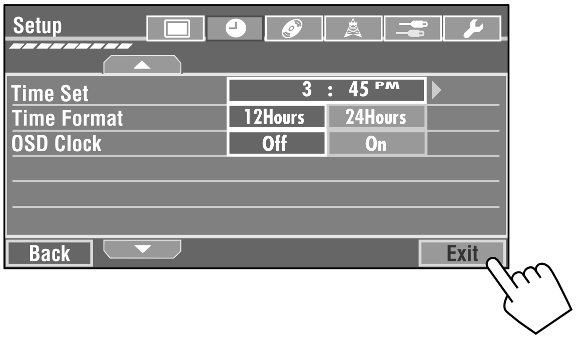

Setup
Demonstration
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set
1 : 00 AM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
3 : 45 PM
①
②
③
Back
Exit

❻ Finish the procedure.

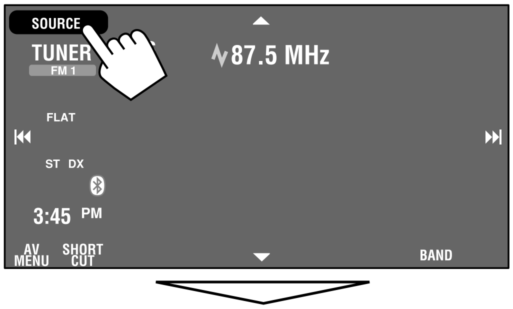

Setup
Time Set
3 : 45 PM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit

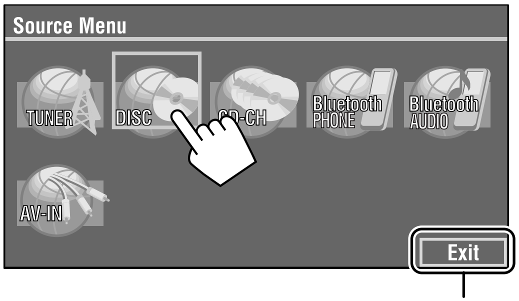
Common operations

Selecting the playback source

- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 47).

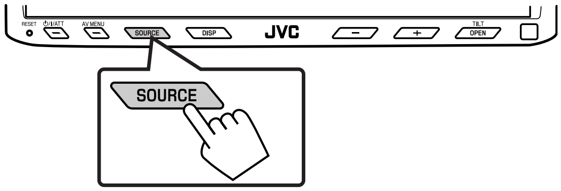
On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND


Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit

Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
SOURCE

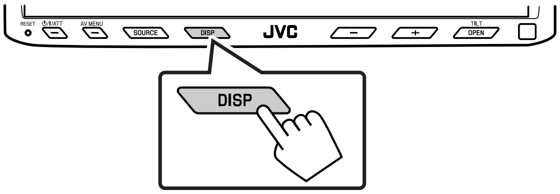
TUNER → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) →CD-CH, iPod, or **EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN →** (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

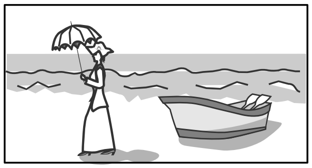
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

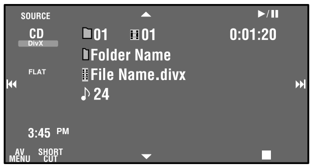

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

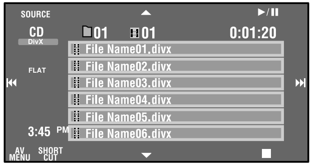
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



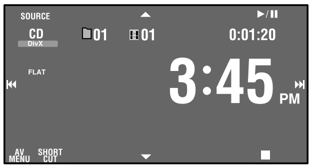
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

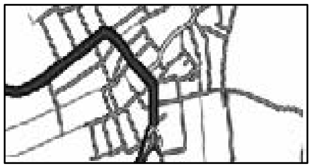
Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

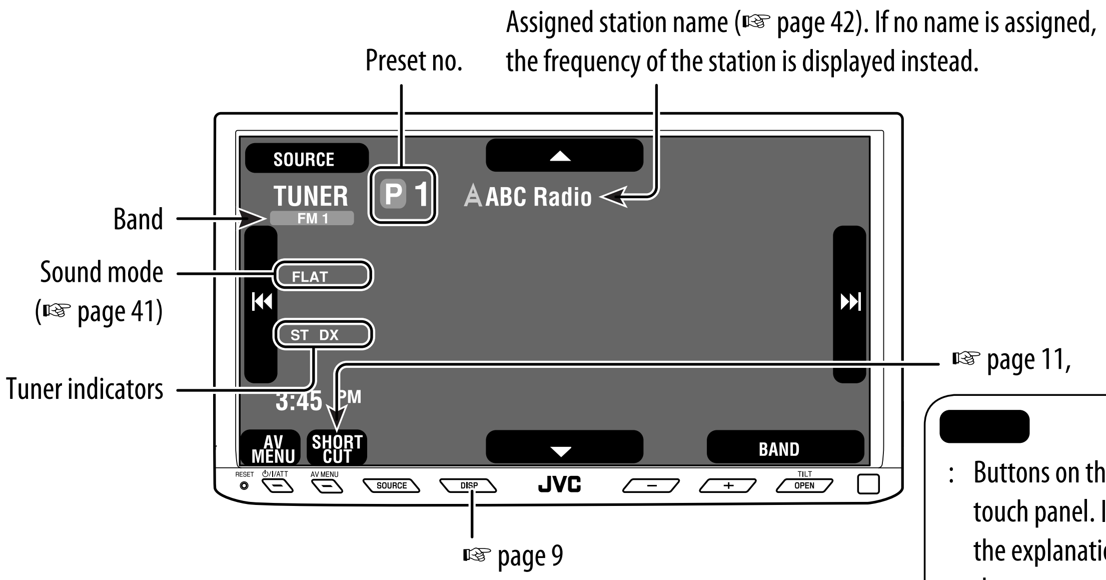
Clock time in large numbers



Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 47)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 42). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 11,
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

■ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

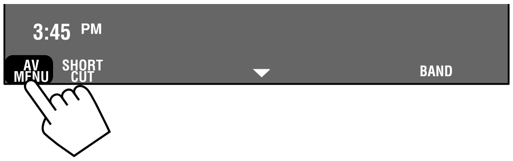
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➔FM1➔FM2➔FM3➔AM

❸ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◄◄]or [►►|] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

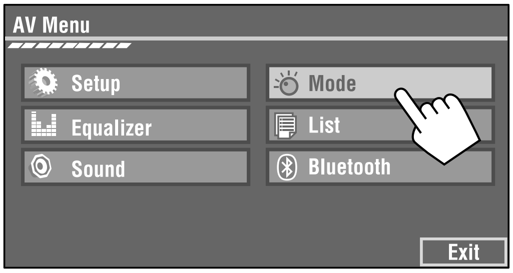
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

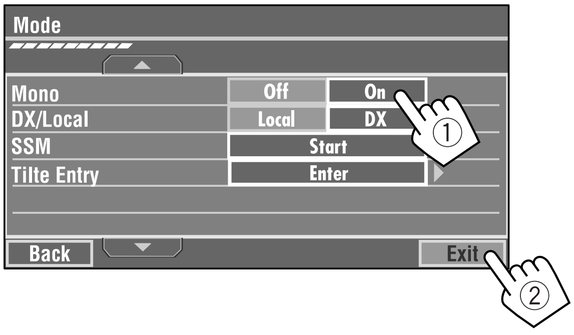

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Tilte Entry
Enter
Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

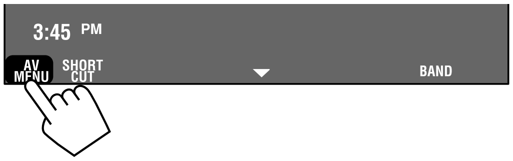
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

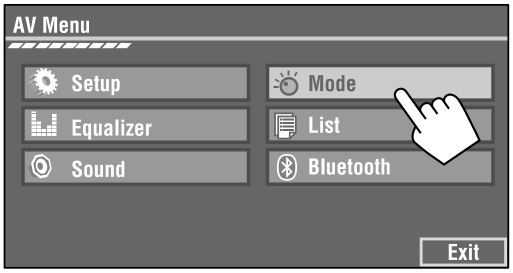
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 Press [AV MENU].

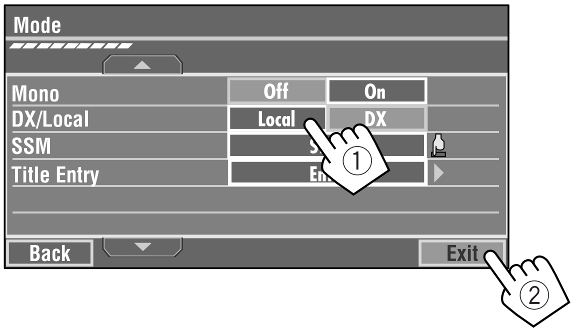

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

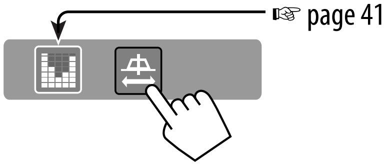
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

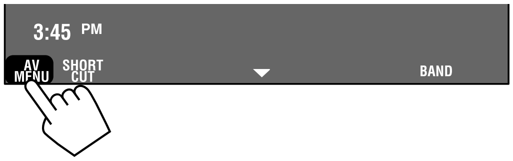
- You can also change <**IF Band Width**> setting (for details, ☞ page 47).
  <**IF Band Width**> menu can be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then..



FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

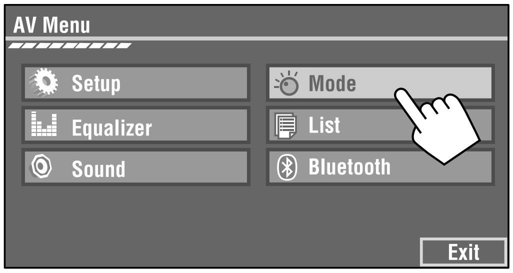
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 Press [AV MENU].

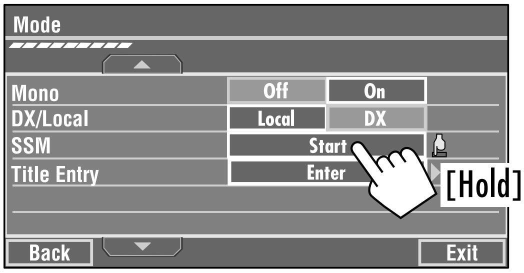

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

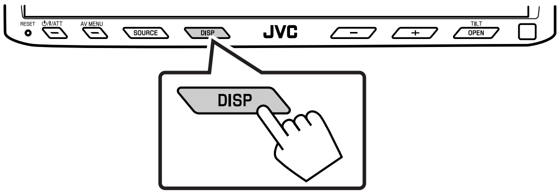

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

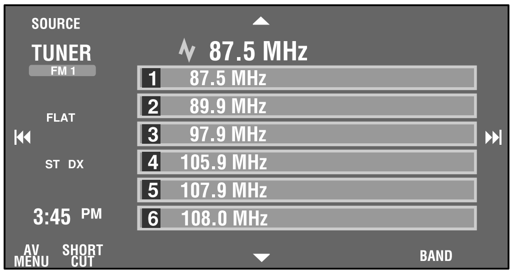
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

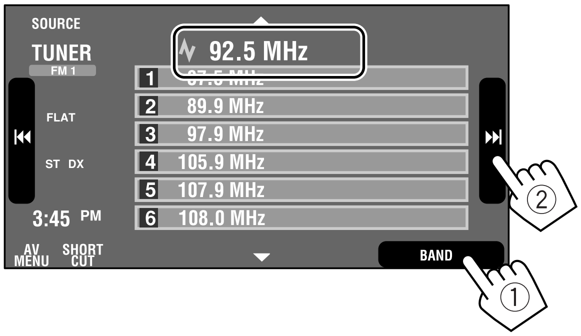
1 **Display the Preset List.**


RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

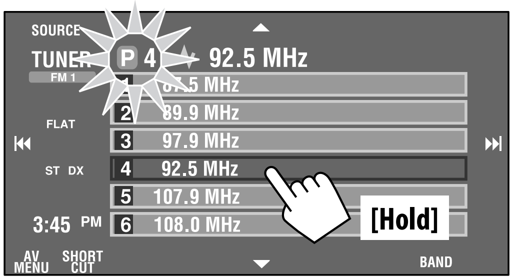
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

92.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

3 **Select a preset number.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

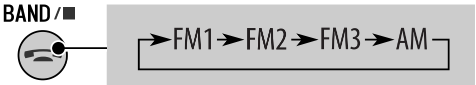
P 4 92.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

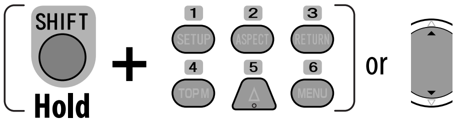
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

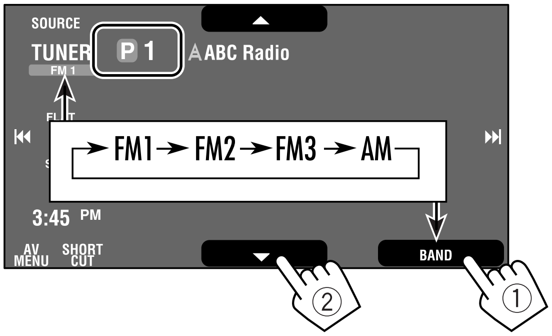

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

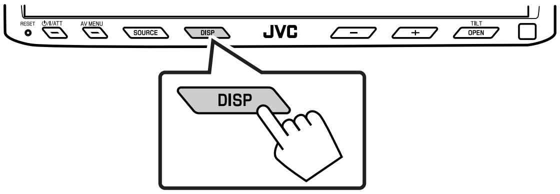
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

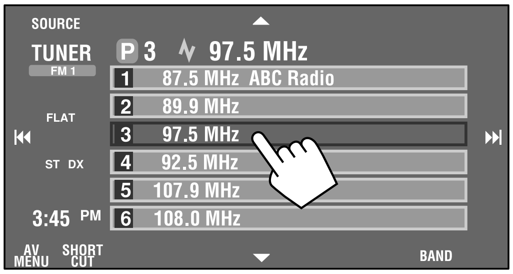

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

P 3 97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz

Disc operations

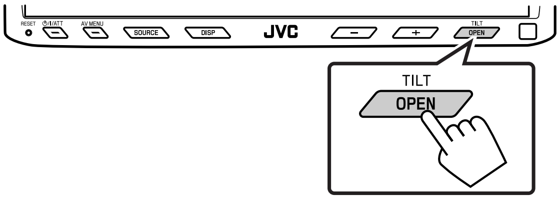
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

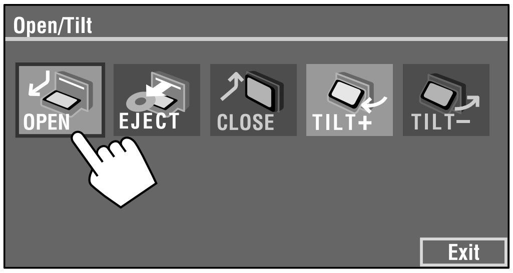
❶ Open the monitor panel.



<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

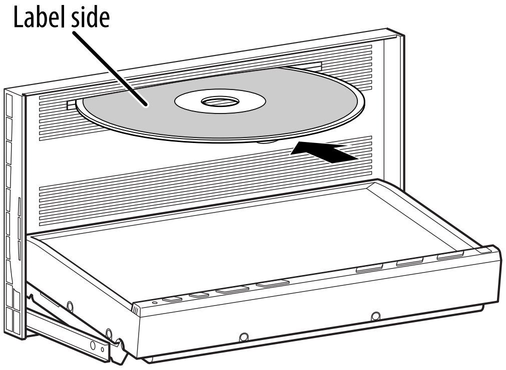
❷ Press [OPEN].



Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

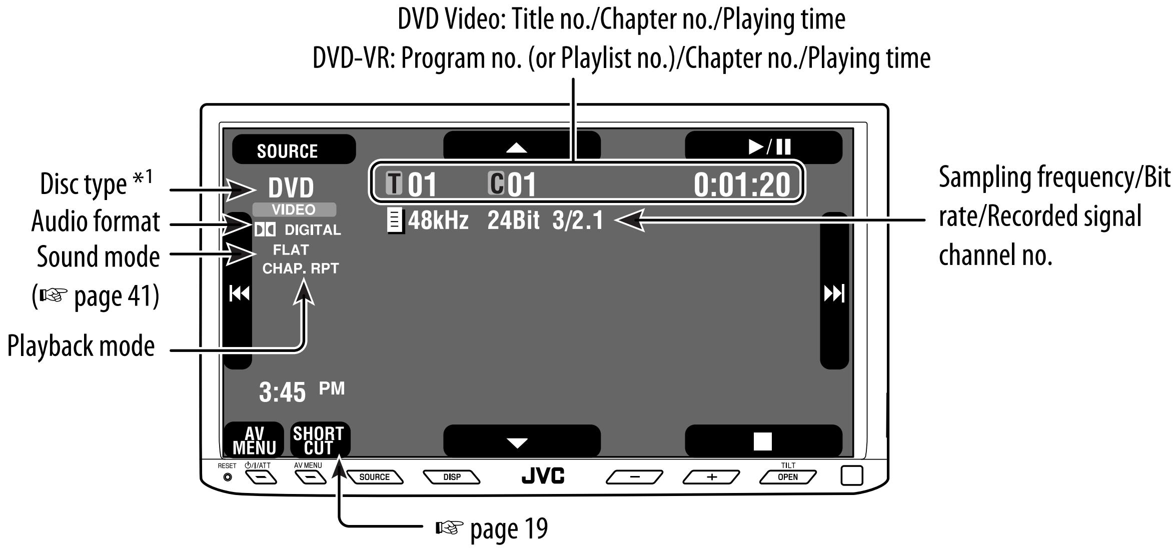
When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 57)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
☞ page 19
SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T01
C01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

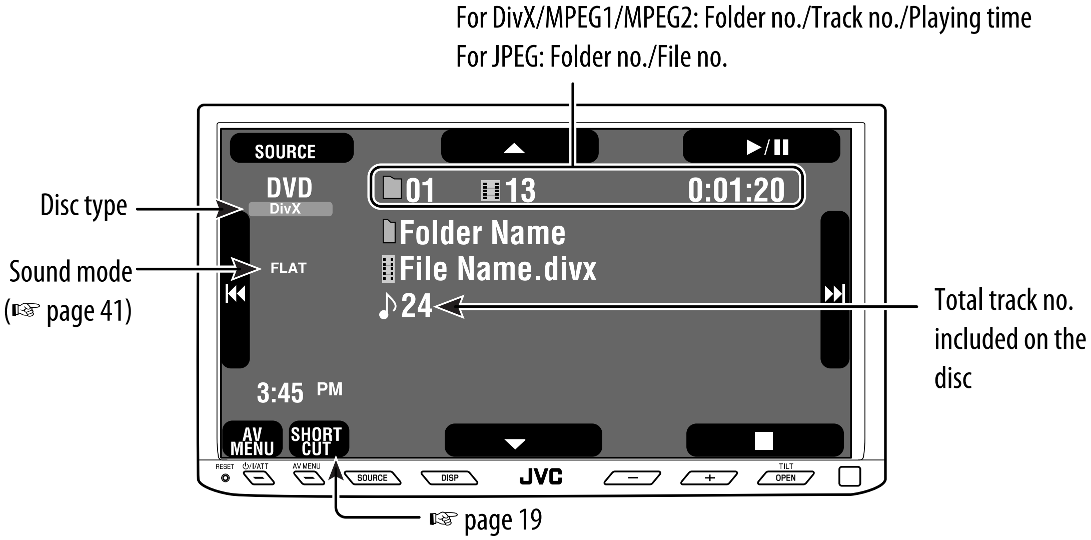
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

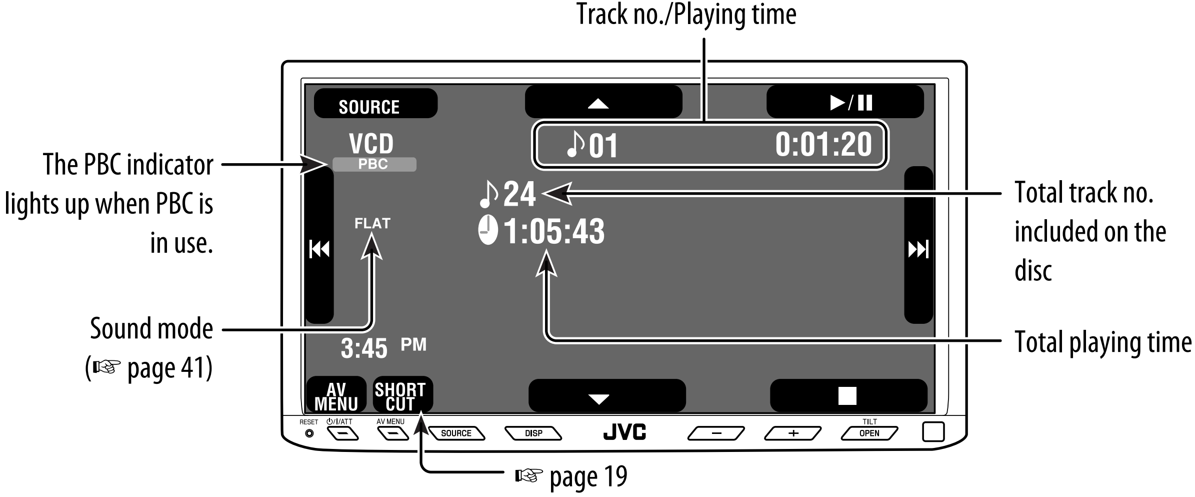
- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX **MPEG** **JPEG**


For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.
Disc type
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 19
SOURCE
DVD
DivX
FLAT
01 13 0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD

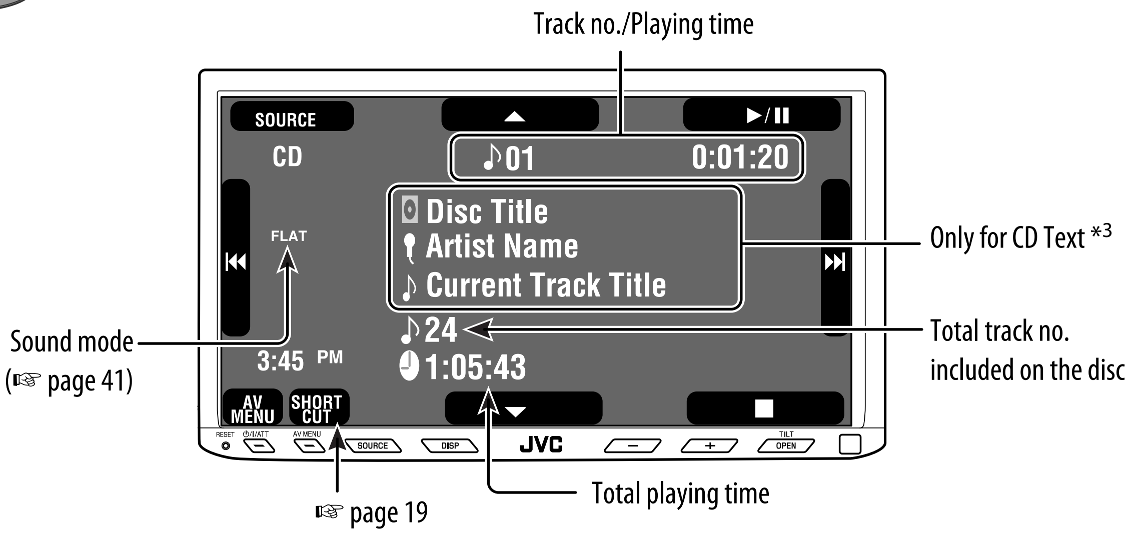

Track no./Playing time
The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Total track no. included on the disc
Total playing time
☞ page 19
SOURCE
VCD
PBC
FLAT
01 0:01:20
24
1:05:43
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

[*1] *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

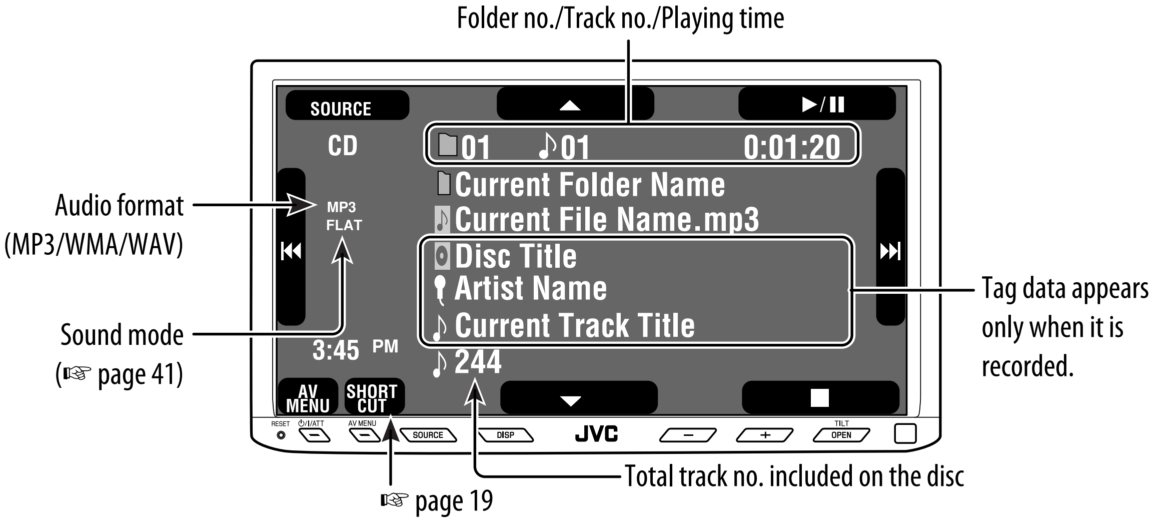
[*2] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
♪24
1:05:43
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
Only for CD Text *3
Total track no. included on the disc
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
☞ page 19
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
MP3
FLAT
♪244
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
☞ page 19
Total track no. included on the disc

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

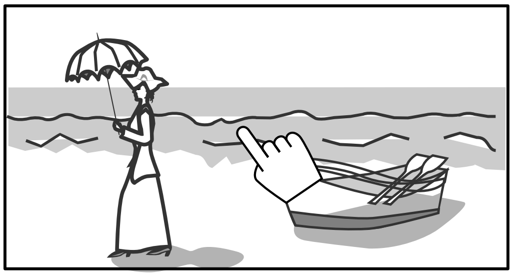
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

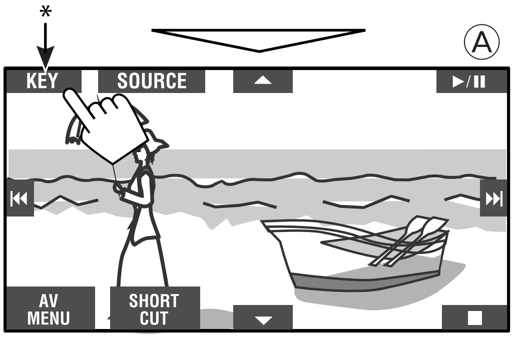
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

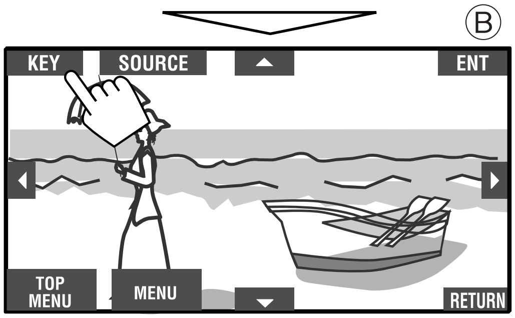
- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 45)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



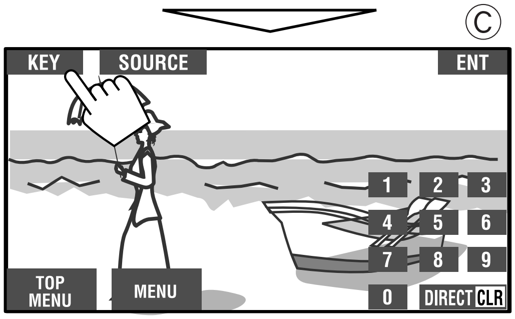
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / **II**]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

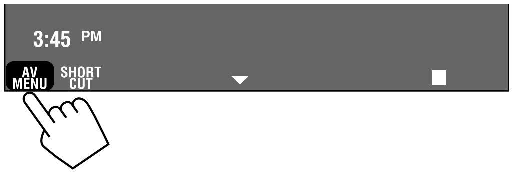
Ex.: To enter “105,” press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

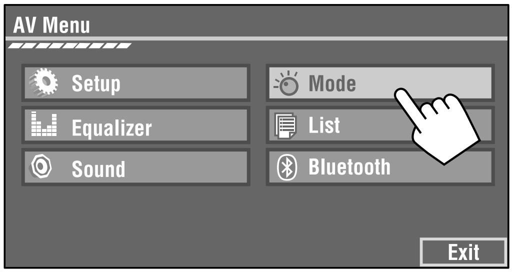
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

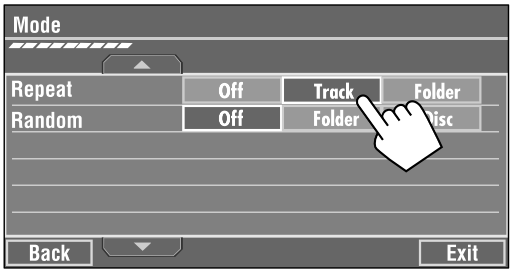

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

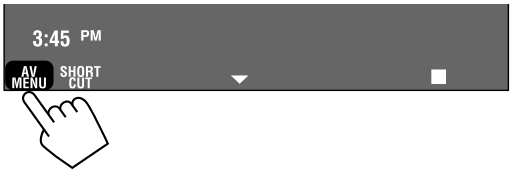
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*1 *You can also use [***SHORT CUT***] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

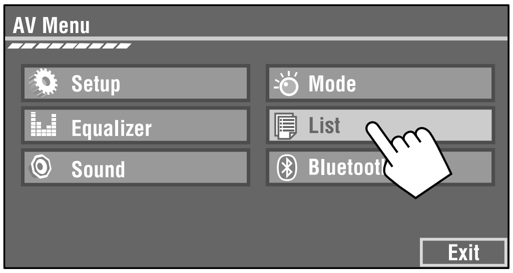
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

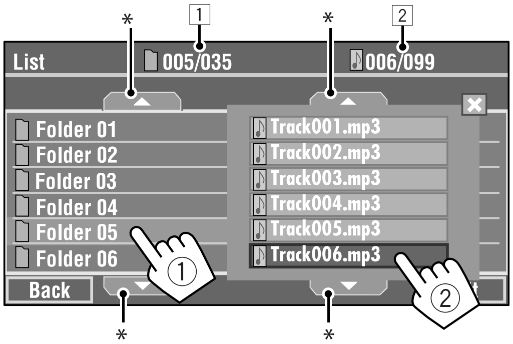

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select a folder (①), then a track (②).

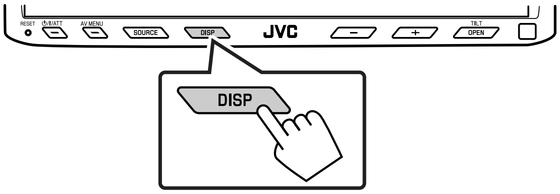

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

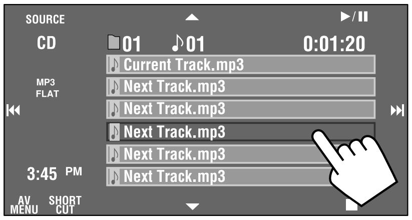
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

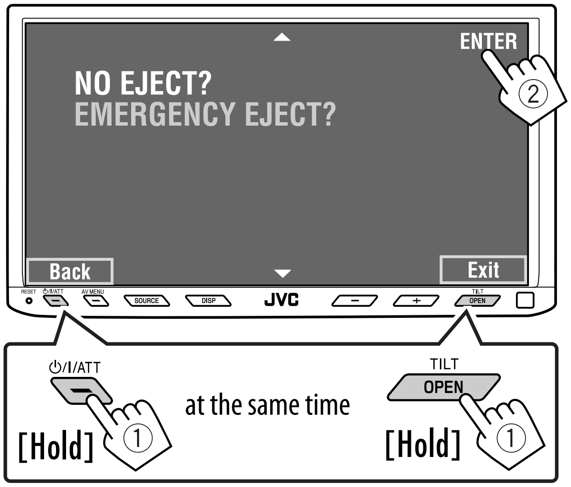

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

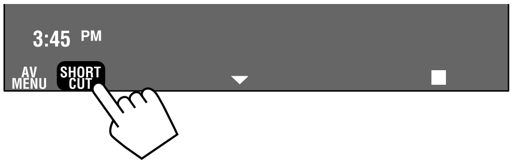

ENTER
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
②
Back
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

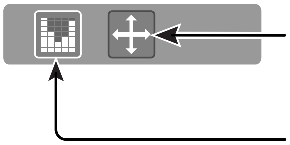
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

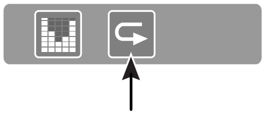
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 45)

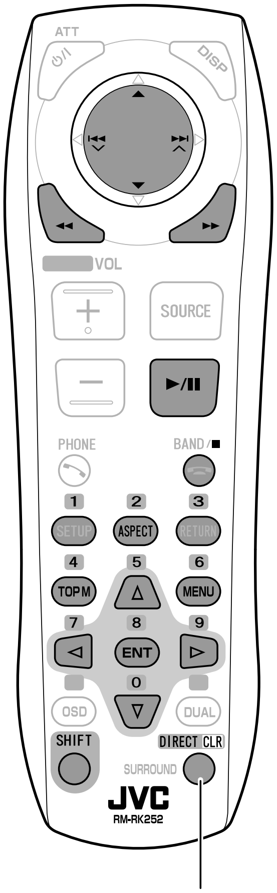
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD Video

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[4] (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause[5] (No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[6]

(▲ ▼) : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

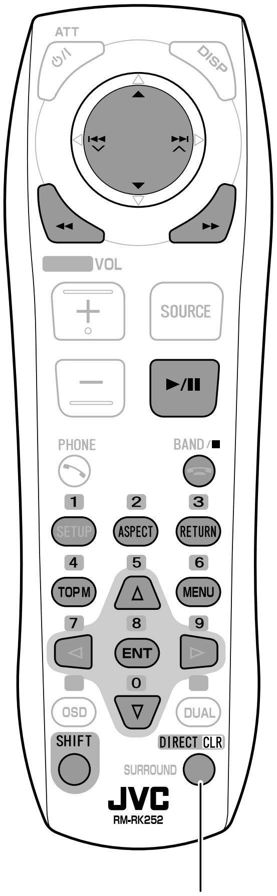
3 8 ENT To erase the screen.

---

[4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[5] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[6] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DivX **MPEG**

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

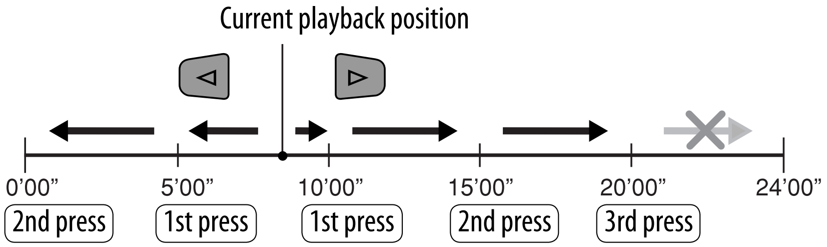
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1. 4 TOP M / 6 MENU
2. Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆ ◁ ▷
3. 8 ENT

[*1] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

[*2] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

(⏮ ⏭) : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT : Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) ➡ ENT

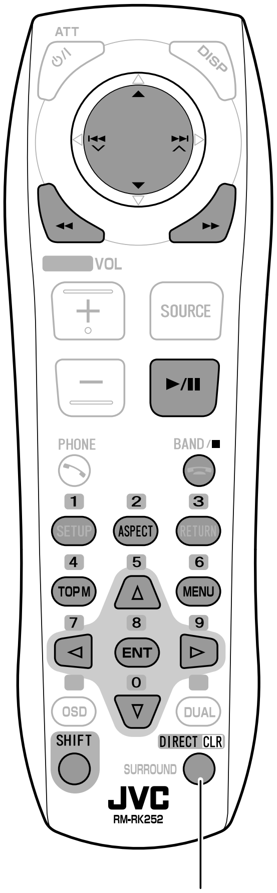
- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

---

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*1

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select track.

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*3

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*4

▲▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
twice
Select folder.

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

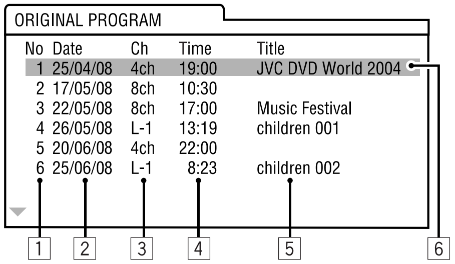
Using the list screens

DVD VR

You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.

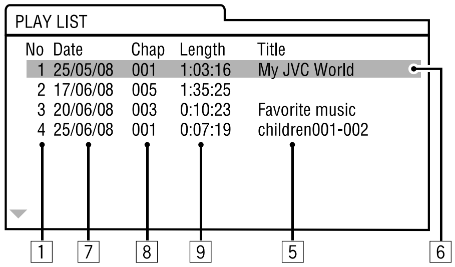
4 TOP M



ORIGINAL PROGRAM

No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002

6 MENU



PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.

▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT

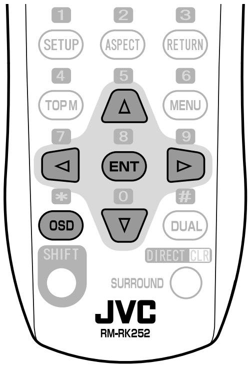
To erase the screen

- 1 Original Program/Playlist number
- 2 Recording date
- 3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
- 4 Start time of recording
- 5 Title of the program/playlist*
- 6 Highlight bar (current selection)
- 7 Creating date of playlist
- 8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
- 9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

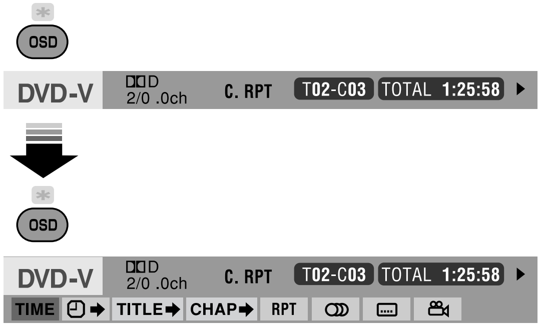
Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.



1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
* OSD
0
# DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)



OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

◁ ▷ ➡ 8 ENT

3 Make a selection.

If a pop-up menu appears...

▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT

- For entering time/numbers...

◁ ▷ :

Move the entry position

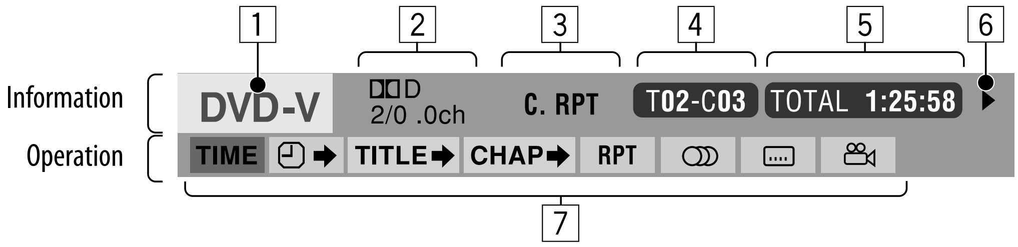
▽ △ ➡ 8 ENT :

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar

* OSD

On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode[*1]

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track[*2]
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track[*2]

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙/❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
🕘➔	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➔	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➔	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➔	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play[*1]
RND	Random play[*1]
ꝏ	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

[*1] ☞ *page 18*

[*2] *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

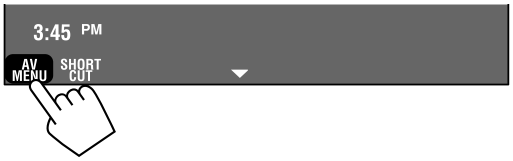
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

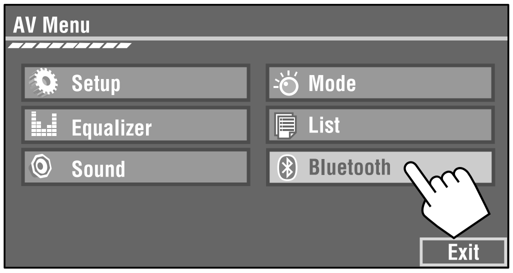
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1
- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

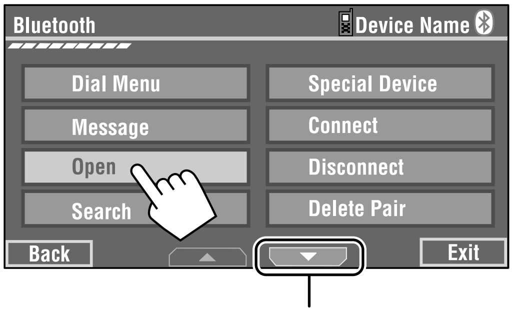

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

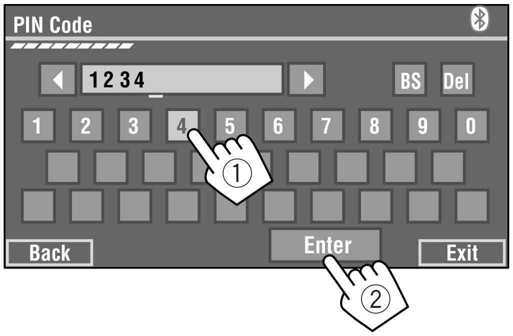

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

> The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 50 and 51).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

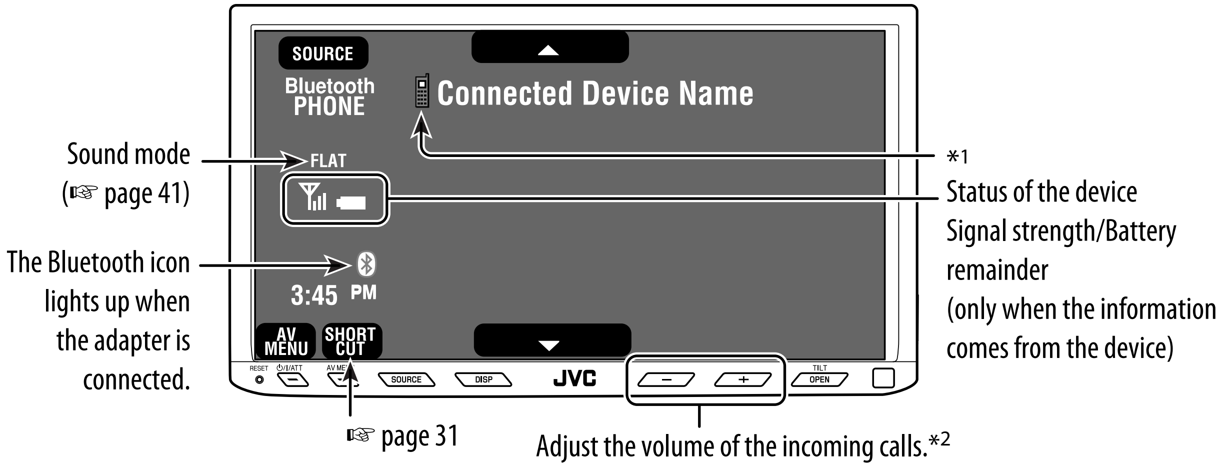
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
☞ page 31
*1
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)
Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device (“New Device” appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*
*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

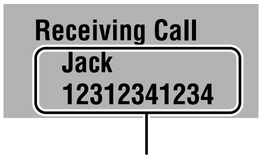
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 50 and 51

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to “Bluetooth PHONE” automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 51)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

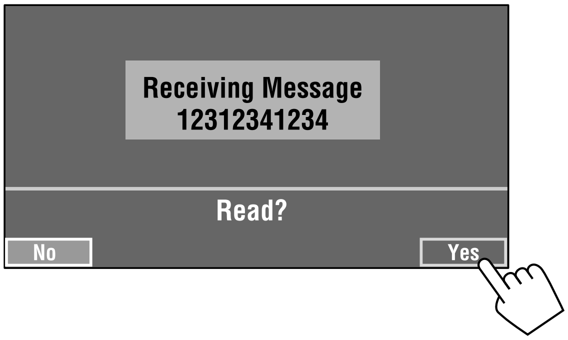
- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 51)

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 51)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

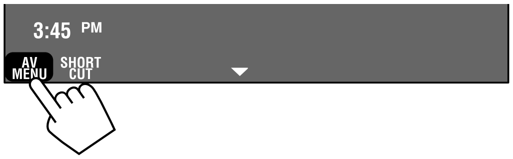
To read the message later, press **[No].**

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 50)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 50 and 51)

To make a call

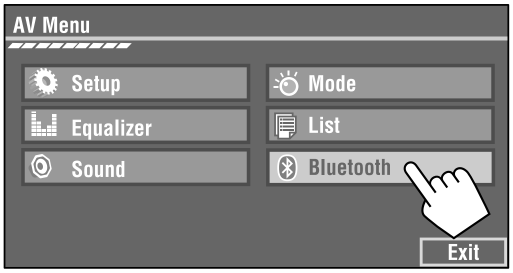
1



3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

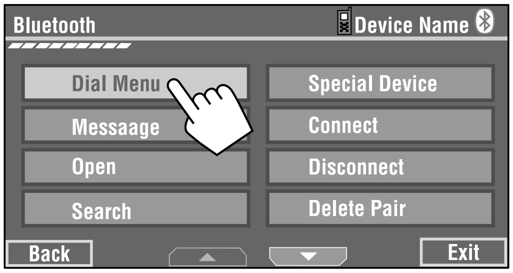
- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2



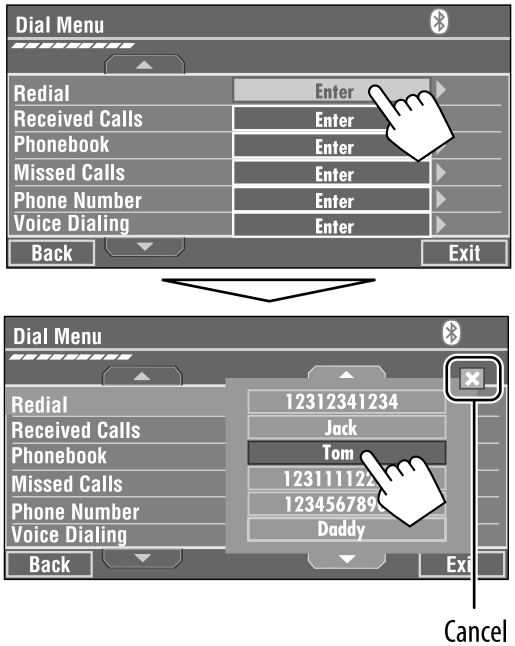
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**



Dial Menu
Redial
Enter
Received Calls
Enter
Phonebook
Enter
Missed Calls
Enter
Phone Number
Enter
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
12345678
Daddy
Back
Exi

Cancel

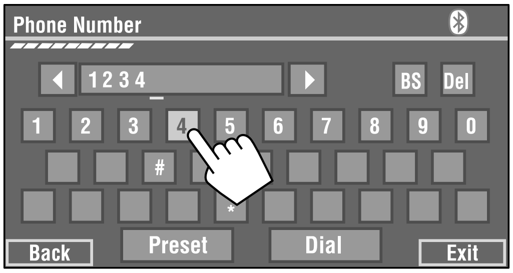
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/❙/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

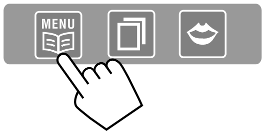
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

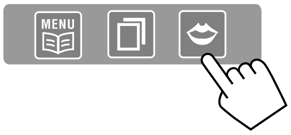
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

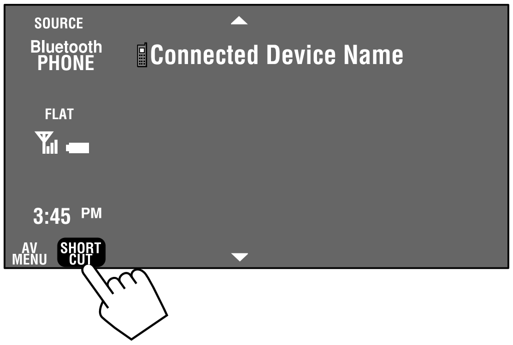
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



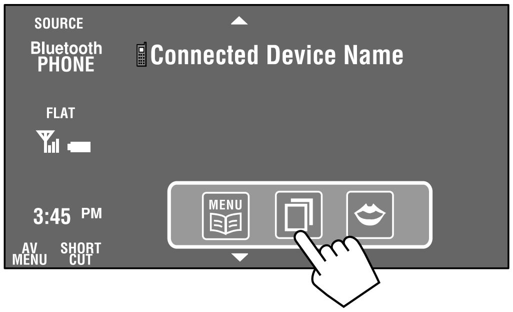
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

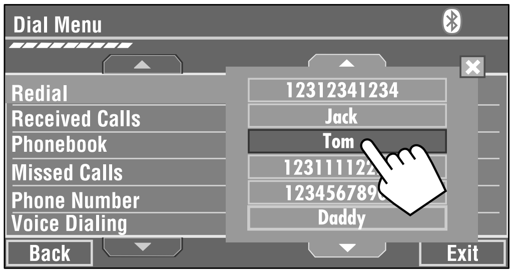
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

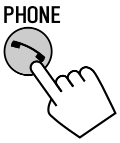
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
123456789
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

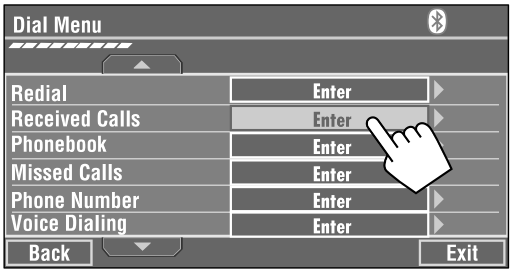
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

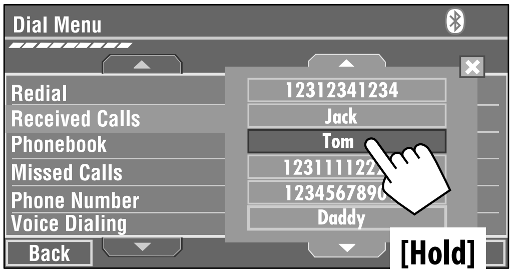
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

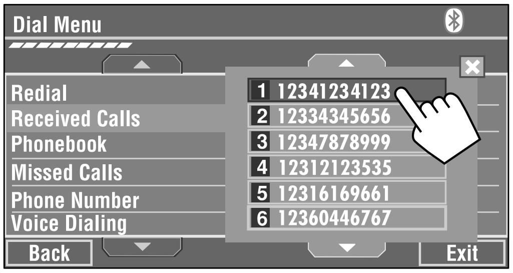

Dial Menu
Redial
Enter
Received Calls
Enter
Phonebook
Enter
Missed Calls
Enter
Phone Number
Enter
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Back
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
[Hold]

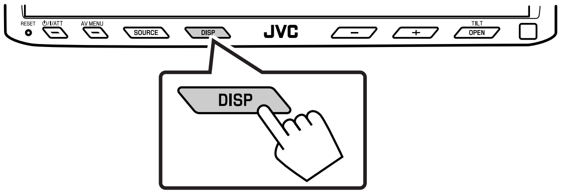
3 Select a preset number.

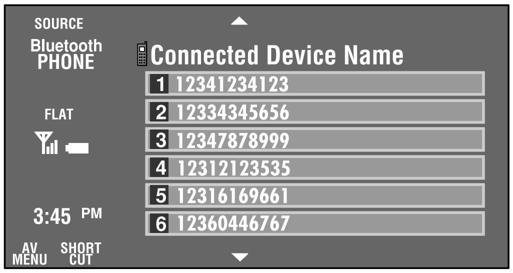

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Back
Exit
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

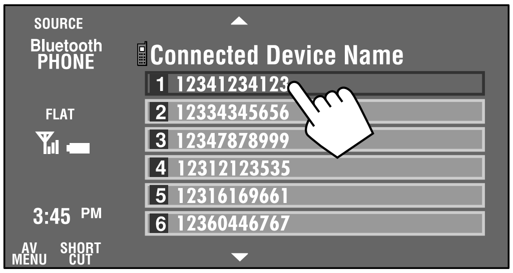
To call a preset number

1

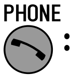

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

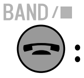
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

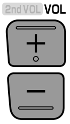
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.



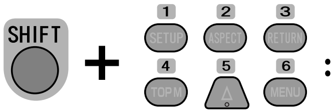
:
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).



: End the call.

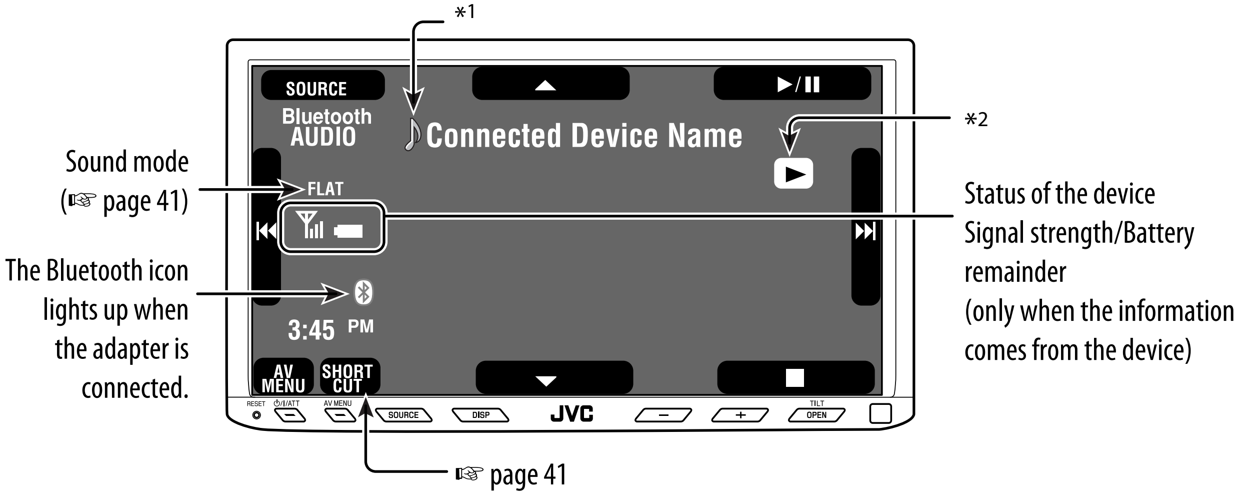


: Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU

[Hold] : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
*2
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
FLAT
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device (“New Device” appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

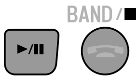
*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*
*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*
*3 *You cannot select “New Device” when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

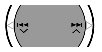
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

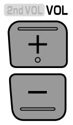
❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.



: Start and pause playback.

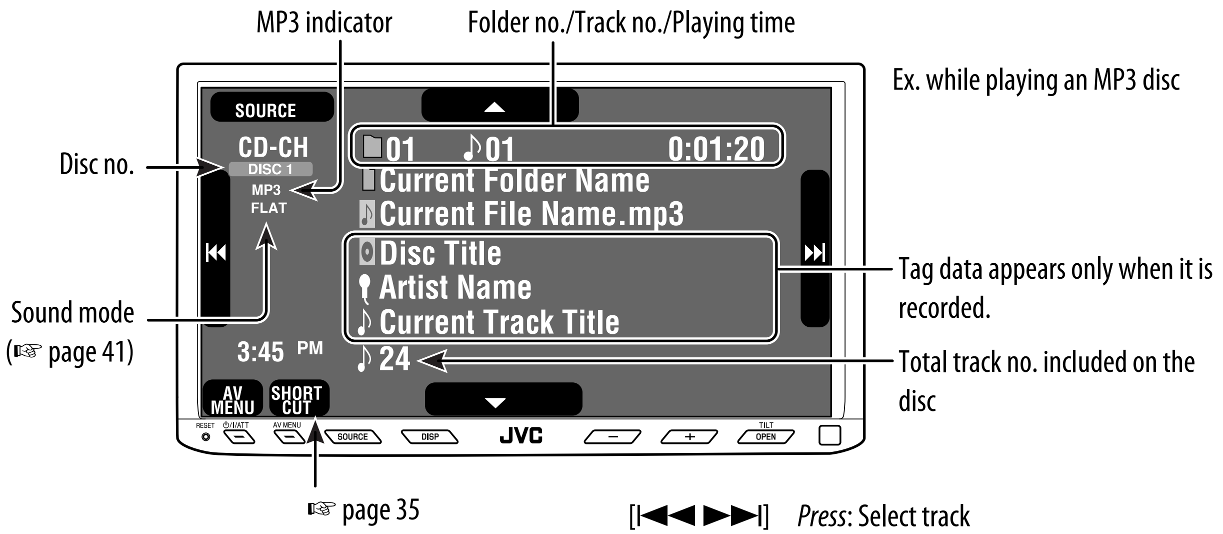

: Reverse/forward skip



: Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Ex. while playing an MP3 disc
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 35
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01 01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folders (only for MP3) *Hold*: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

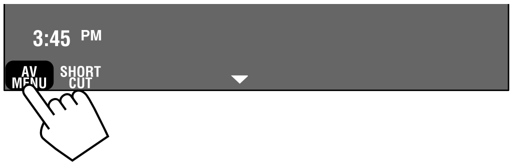
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

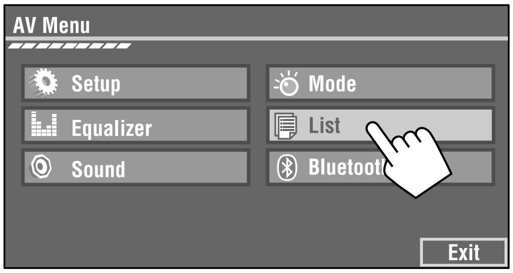
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

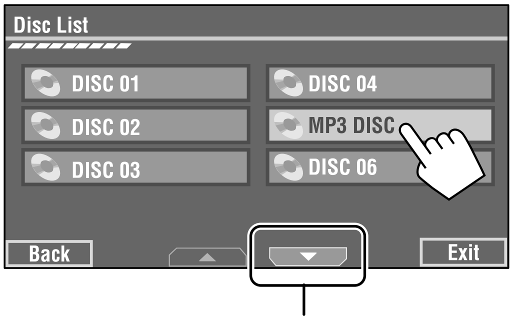

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

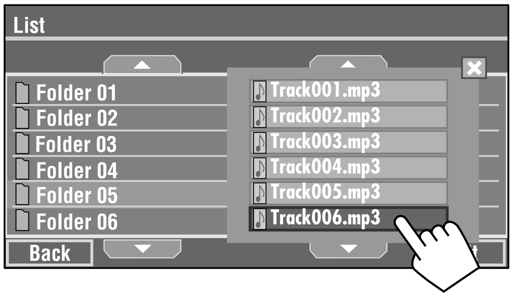

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

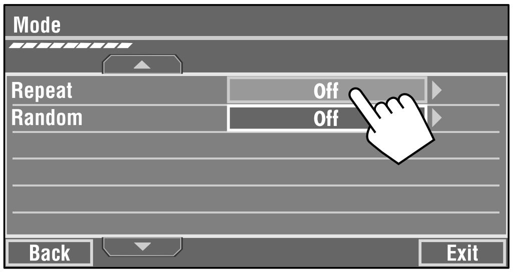
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

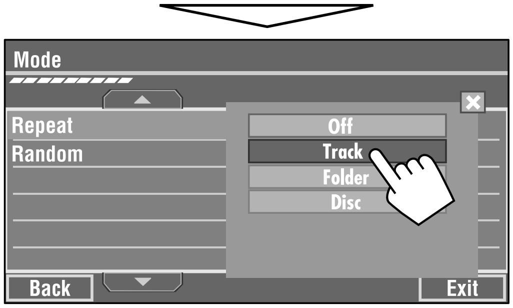
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 **Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3





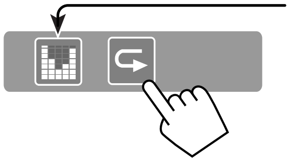
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
MP3	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

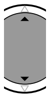
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

☞ page 41

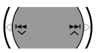


You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

∇ Δ : Select disc.

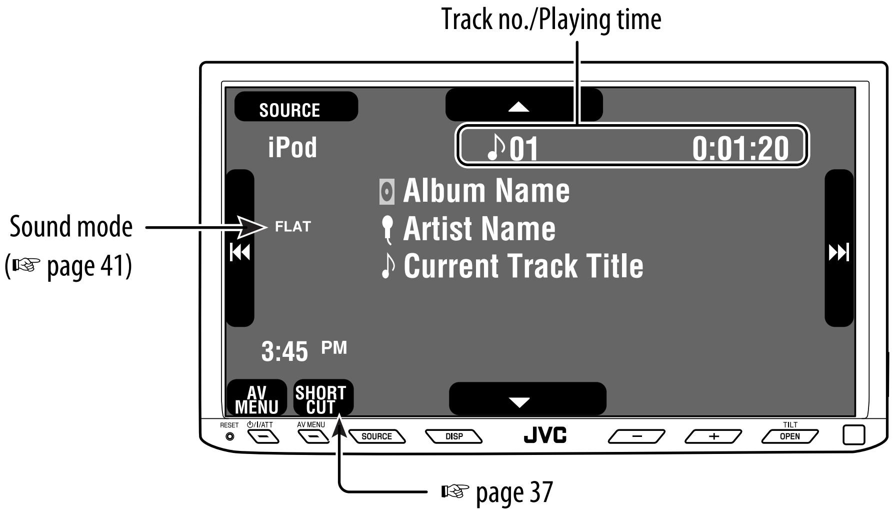


: Select folder (MP3 only).



- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 37

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player’s menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select the desired item.
Press: Select an item.
Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

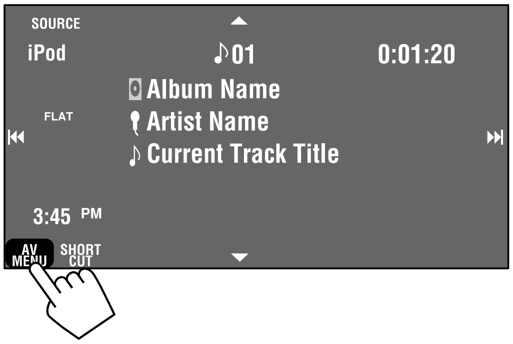
Playlists ↔ **Artists** ↔ **Albums** ↔ **Songs** ↔ **Genres** ↔ **Composers** ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

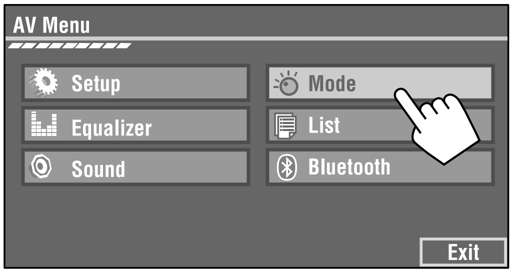
Selecting playback modes

1

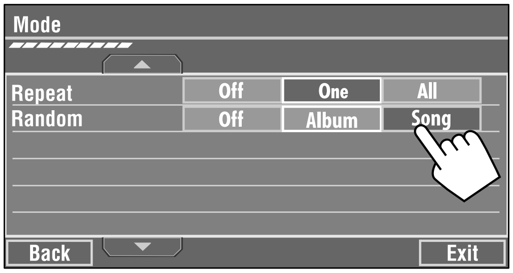

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.

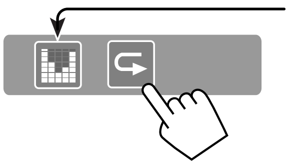

Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

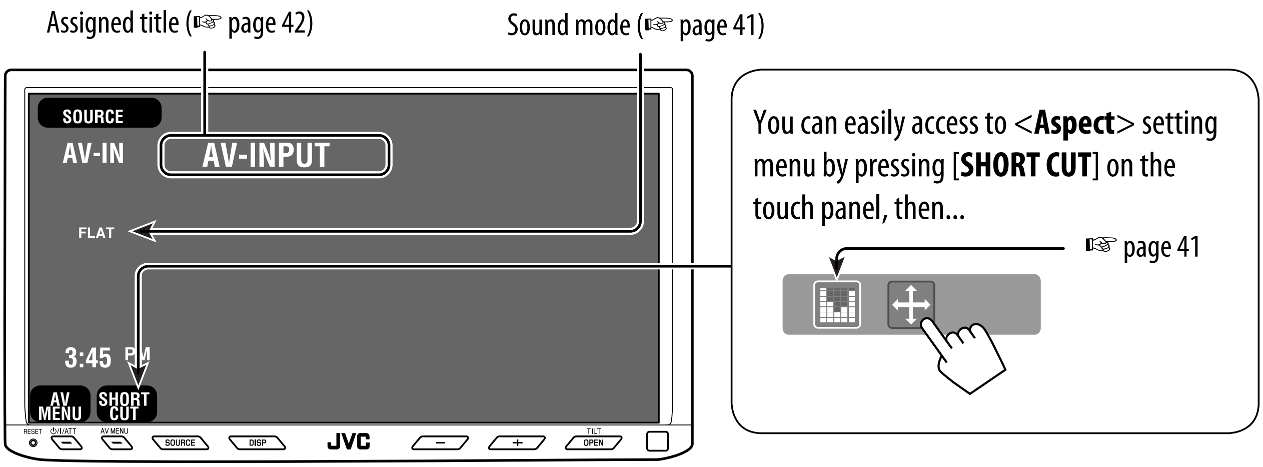


☞ page 41

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 42)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

☞ page 41

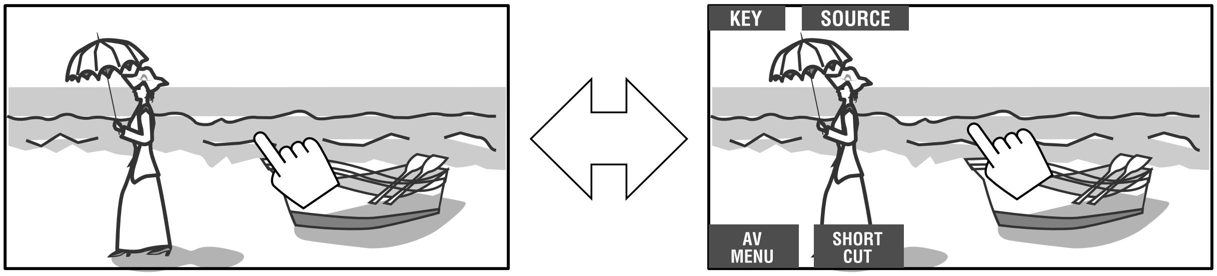
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

Navigation screen

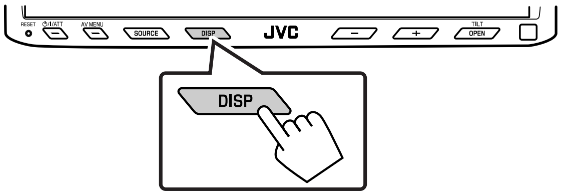
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 47)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

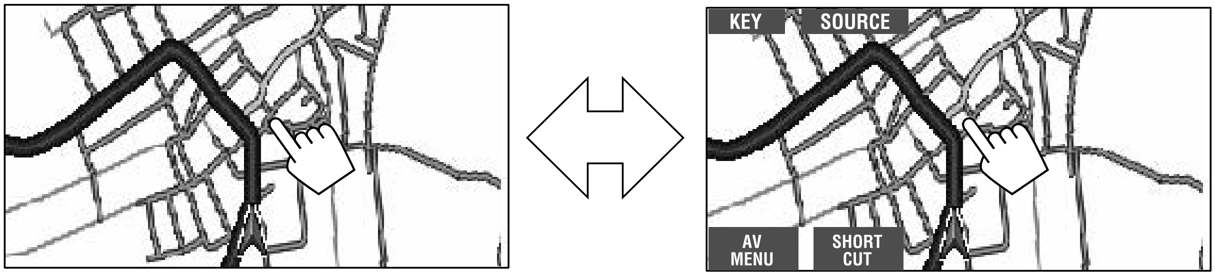


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 45)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

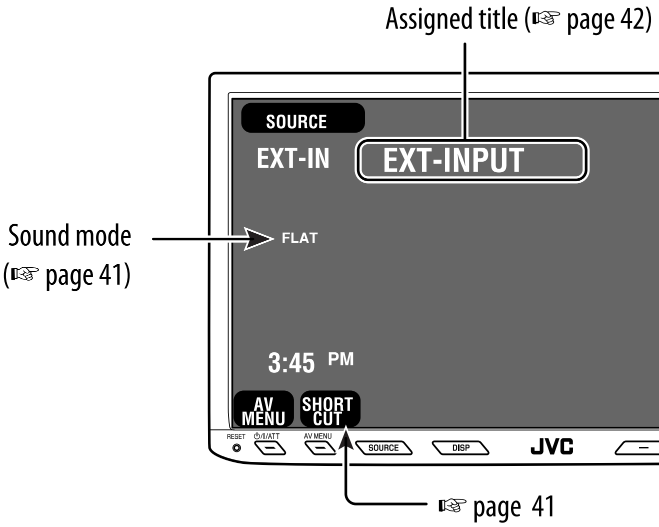
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 47)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


Assigned title (☞ page 42)
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
☞ page 41
SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

Preparation:

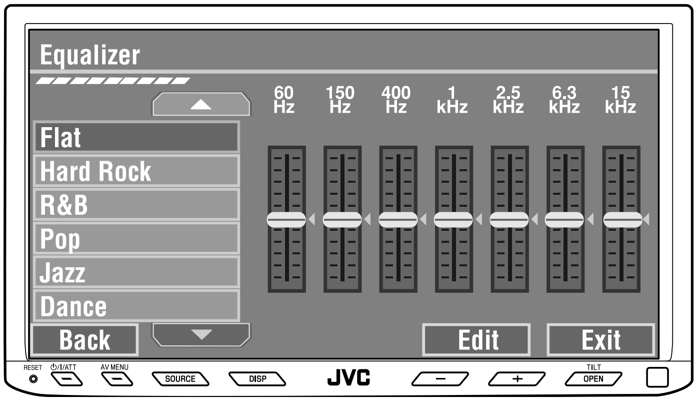
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

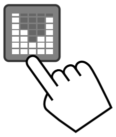
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

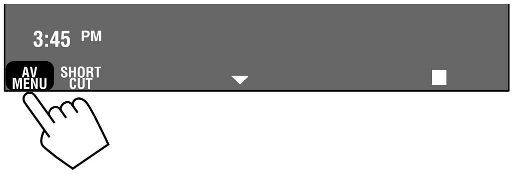
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

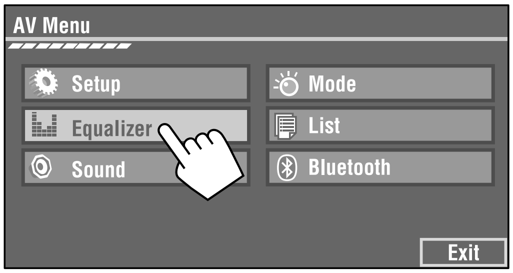


❶

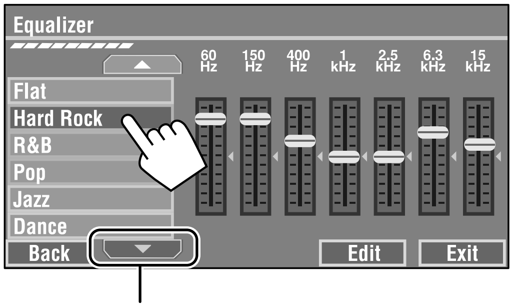

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

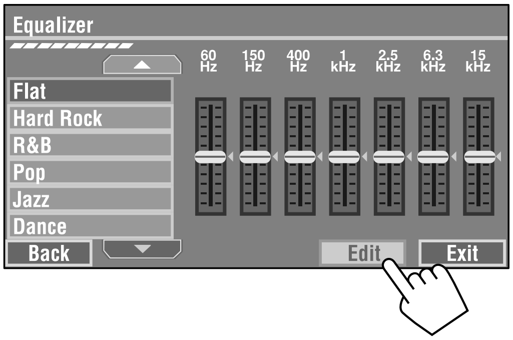
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 58.

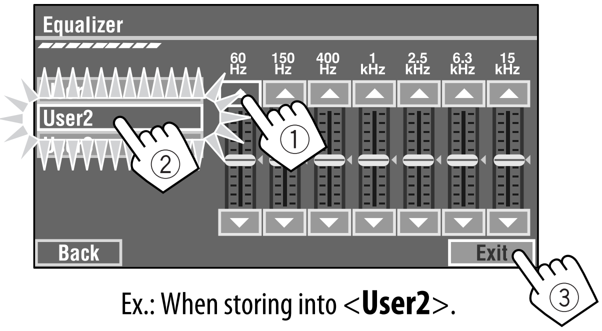
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

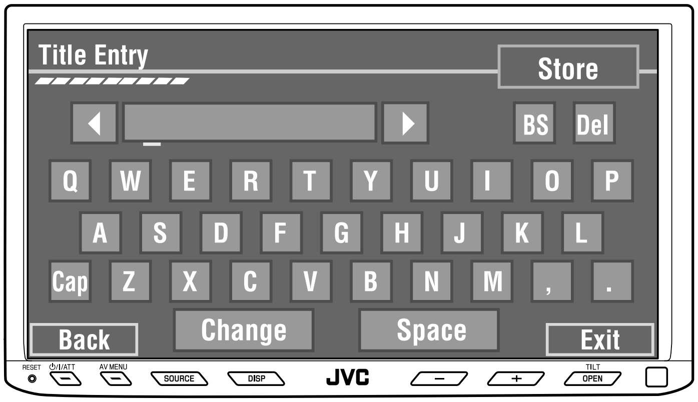

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
Back
Exit
③

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

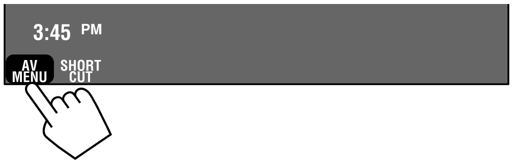
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

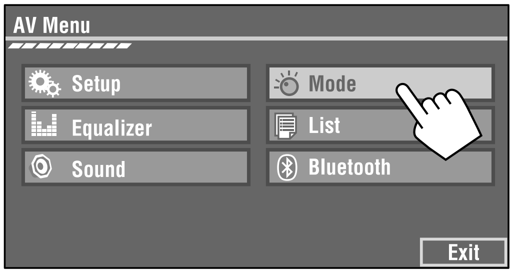
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

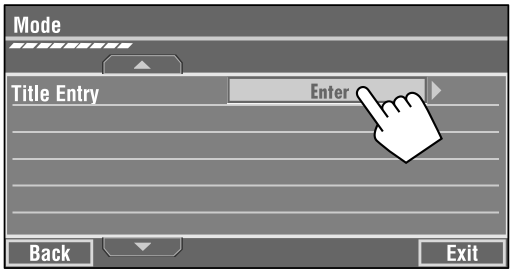
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

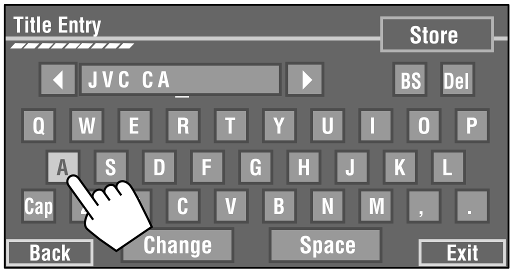

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

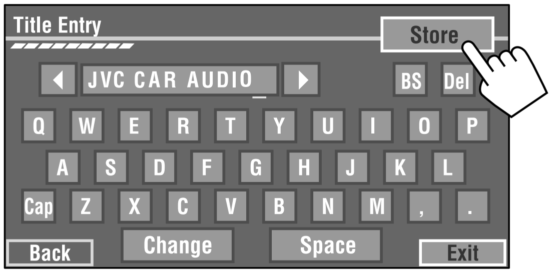
❸ Assign a title.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

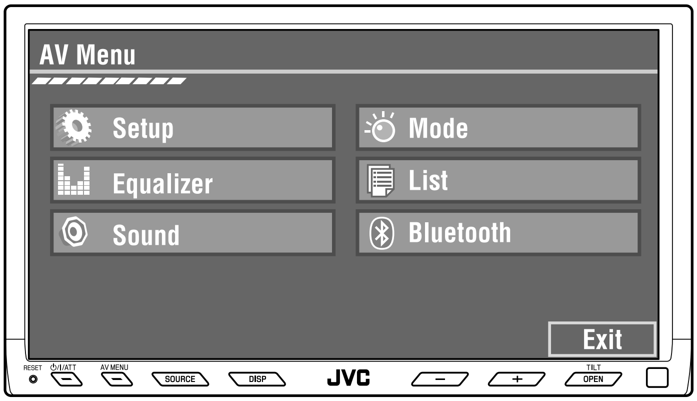
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 59).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

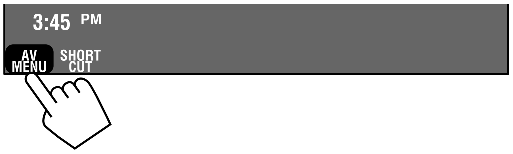

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
–
+
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

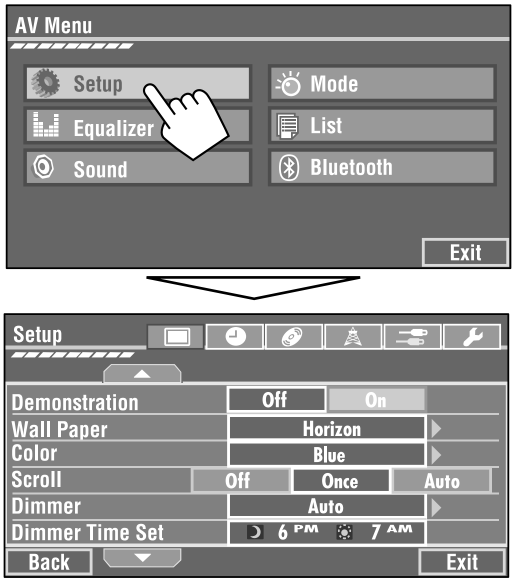
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

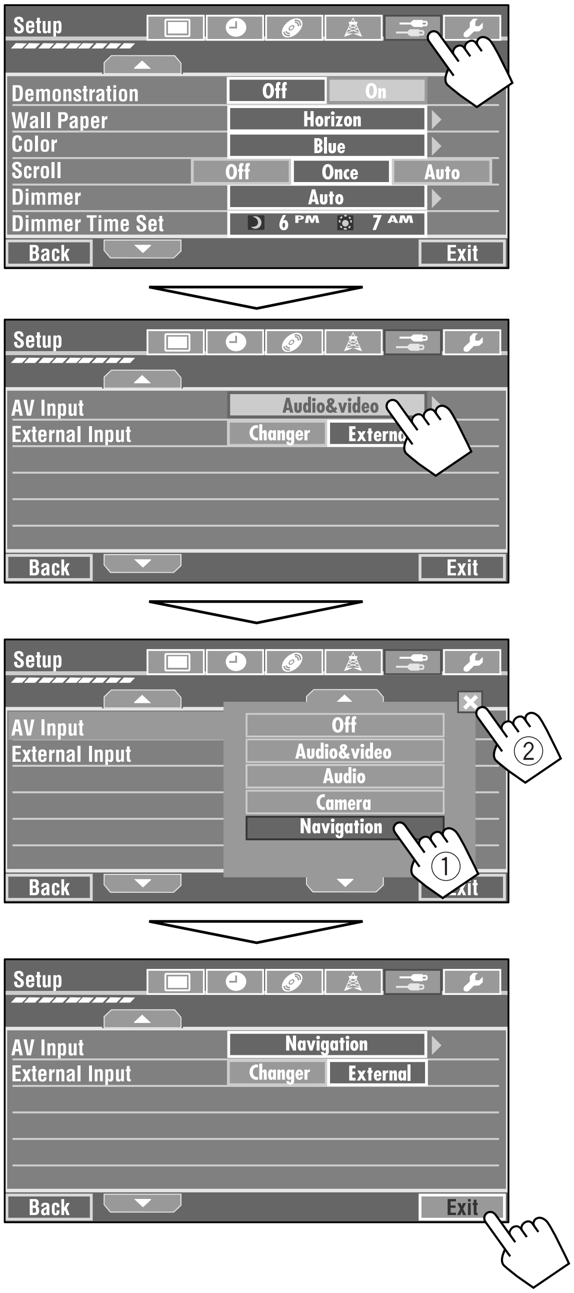
- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
Audio&video
External Input
Changer
Externa
Back
Exit
Setup
AV Input
External Input
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
①
②
Back
Setup
AV Input
Navigation
External Input
Changer
External
Back
Exit

Setup

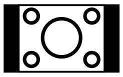
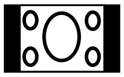
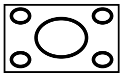
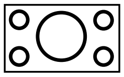
The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for “DISC” (common) and the other for “AV-IN.” **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. (only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>, ☞ next page) • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is “DISC” (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or “AV-IN.”*

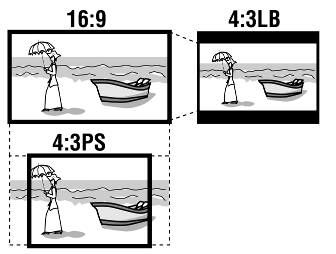
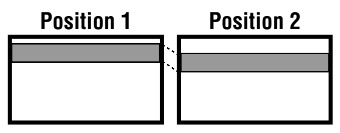
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Aspect***3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
	Language*4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português** • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [59]
	NTSC/PAL	Select the color system of the external monitor connected—**NTSC**, **PAL**. • Turn off the power and turn it on again to make the new setting effective.
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **1:00AM** ☞ [8]
	Time Format	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. **12Hours, 24Hours** ☞ [8]
	OSD Clock	When <**On**> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8] **Off, On**

	Aspect ratio of incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Auto:	• For "DISC": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

---

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language**[*1]	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Audio Language[*1]	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Subtitle[*1]	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Monitor Type[*1]  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position[*1]  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type[*1]	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)[*1]	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output[*1]	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 57) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

[*1] *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***[1]	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*[1]	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input***[2]	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [38, 39] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***[3] : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*[4]	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***[5]: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 36] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [40] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.

*[2] *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*[3] *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*[4] *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*[5] *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

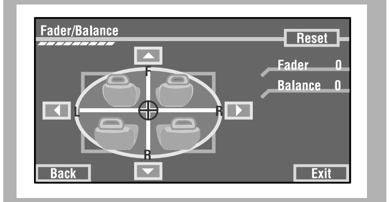
	Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [41]

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*[1]

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry	Only for FM/AM stations, “AV-IN,” and “EXT-IN.” ☞ [42]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 37]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 37]

*[1] *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)

For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

[*1] *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

[*2] *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

[*3] *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

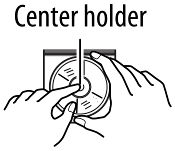
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



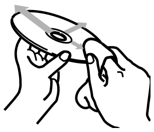
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

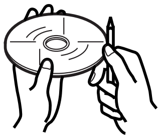
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

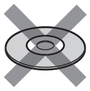
To play new discs



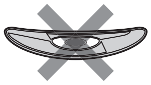
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

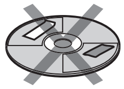
SingleCD—8 cm disc



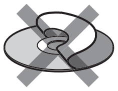
Warped disc



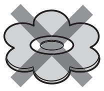
Sticker and sticker residue



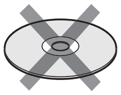
Stick-on label



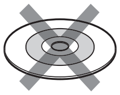
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  - * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/ program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/ MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

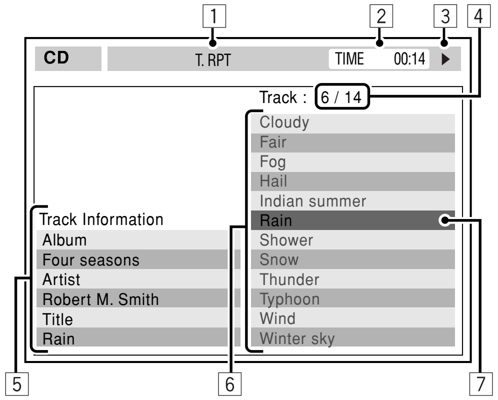
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

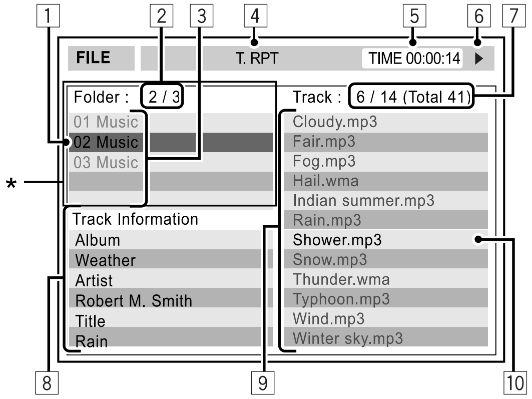
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *[1]
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *[2]

  *[1] When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *[2] It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 46)

Playback disc	**<D. Audio Output>**	**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode / Frequency	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 42)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 44)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try “0000” or “1234.” • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 50)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.” • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• “New Device” cannot be selected for “Bluetooth AUDIO.”	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select “New Device,” disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

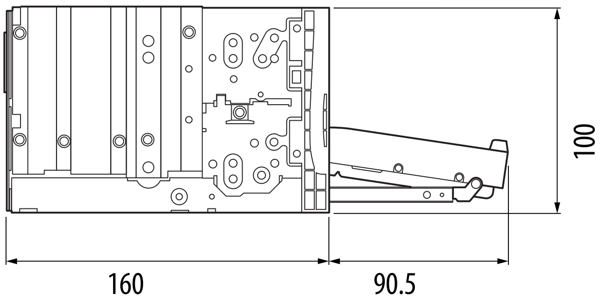
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "No Files" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC/PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	171 mm × 97 mm × 21 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.6 kg

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

หากมีปัญหาในการใช้งาน

กรุณากดปุ่มตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นใหม่

กรุณาดูหน้าวิธีตั้งค่าเครื่องใหม่

EN, CT, TH

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

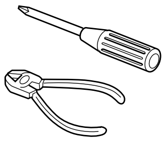
1207MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KW-AVX716/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊
การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง

LVT1780-008A
[U/UT]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, CT, TH
©2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

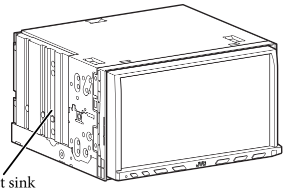
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
散熱片
แผ่นระบายความร้อน

中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V 、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

- 切勿在以下位置安裝本機或連接電纜;
  - 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置,否則可能引發交通事故。
  - 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置，否則可能引發致命的交通事故。
  - 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在操作方向盤的過程中操作本機，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 駕駛時，駕駛員切勿緊盯顯示器。這可能會導致疏忽並引發事故。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 若手剎車未嚙合，"Parking Brake" 字樣在顯示器上閃爍，且無法播放圖片。
  - 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

進行電路連接時注意:

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω – 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "Amplifier Gain" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 49 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住未使用電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

คำเตือน

- อย่าติดตั้งเครื่องเล่นหรือเดินสายไฟในตำแหน่งที่;
  - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของพวงมาลัยและคันเกียร์ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัตเหตุขึ้
  - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของอุปกรณ์ป้องกันควาปลอดภัย เช่น แอร์แบค เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายร้ายแรงถึงชีวิตขึ้นได้
  - อาจกีดขวางสายตา
- อย่าใช้งานขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ผู้ขับต้องไม่มองที่จอมอนิเตอร์ขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจนำไปสู่ความประมาทเลินเล่อและก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุได้
- หากต้องการใช้งานเครื่องขณะขับขี่ ต้องแน่ใจว่าได้ใช้ความระมัดระวังอย่างดีเพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการเกิดอุบัติเหตุ
- หากไม่ได้ใส่เบรกมือ ข้อความ "Parking Brake" จะกะพริบที่หน้าจอ และจะไม่มีภาพแสดงขึ้นมา
  - คำเตือนนี้จะปรากฏขึ้นเฉพาะเมื่อต่อสายเบรกกับระบบเบรกในรถยนต์ไว้เท่านั้น

ม้อนูลในการต่อระบบไฟ:

- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟิวสหากฟิว์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้ า นขายเครื่องงียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำให้ต่อลำโพง ที่มีกำลังขับงสุดเกินกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลังมีค่าความต้านทาน **4 Ω ถึง 8 Ω**) ถ้ากำลังขับต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "Amplifier Gain" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 49 คำแนะนำ)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วยเท ปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit.
If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

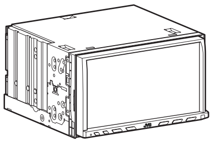
用於安裝和連接的零件清單

本機配備以下零件。
若發現缺少任何一件零件，請即刻聯絡您的分銷商。

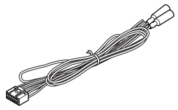
รายการ่วนประกอบำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้ หากมีสิ่งใดไม่ครบ กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายโดยทันที

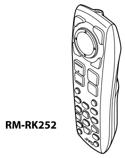
Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง



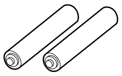
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束
ายเคเบิลกำลัง



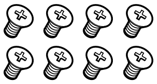
Remote controller
遙控器
รีโมตคอนโทรล



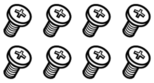
Batteries
電池
แบตเตอรี่



Flat head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
平頭螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)
สกรูหัวแบน (M5 x 8 มม)



Round head screws (M5 x 8 mm)
圓頭螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)
สกรูหัวกลม (M5 x 8 มม)



Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ

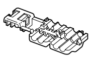
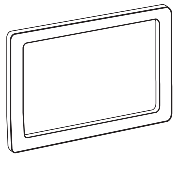


Plate for use with a Nissan car
用於日產汽車的框
แผ่นสำหรับใช้กับรถนิสสัน



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

安裝 (裝設、固定在儀表板內)

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。但是在實際安裝時，您應該根據您的汽車作適當的調整。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

安裝本機之前

- 當裝上本機時,必須按照指示使用配備的螺絲釘。如果使用其它的螺絲釘，相關零件可能會鬆脫或損壞。
- 當鎖緊螺絲釘或螺栓時，切記不要壓擠到任何連接電線。
- 當安裝上後，切記不要阻擋到後面板的風扇以維持適當的通風。

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม์เข้า)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปั ญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากับผู้ขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษั

- หากคุณไม่มั่นใจในวิธีการติดตั้งเครื่องเียงอย่างถูกวิธี โปรดให้ช่างผู้ชำนาญทำการติดตั้งเท่านัม

ก่อนการติดตั้งตัวเครื่อง

- เมื่อจะทำการติดตั้งตัวเครื่อง โปรดใช้สกรูที่แนบมาตามคำแนะนำ หากยึดเครื่องด้วยสกรูแบบอื่น อาจทำให้ชิ้นส่วนหลวมหรือเกิดความเสียหายได้
- เมื่อจะขันแน่นกรูหรือลักเกลียว ต้องระวังไม่ให้หนีบายเชื่อมต่อ
- กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่ามีได้ปิดกั้นพัดลมตรงแผงหน้ากากด้านหลัง เพื่อให้การระบายอากาศเป็นไปอย่างเหมาะสมเมื่อติดตั้ง

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.

Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 to 6.

4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

1 拆卸原本安裝在汽車內的音響系統，以及其裝配架。

備注: 請務必保留所有從您汽車拆卸的螺絲和零件做日後使用。

2 將 (從汽車拆卸的) 裝配架安上本機 (參閱下圖)。

3 執行必要的電路連接。
- 參閱第 3 至 6 頁。

4 使用在步驟 ***1*** 拆卸的螺絲安裝本機。

以下以豐田 (Toyota) 汽車安裝為例。請聯絡您的 JVC 汽車音響分銷商有關更多細節。

1 ถอดระบบเครื่องเสียงที่ติดตั้งในรถไว้ตั้งแต่แรก พร้อมทั้งแท่นรอง

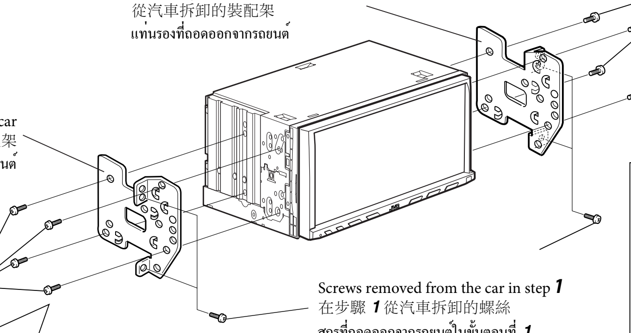
หมายเหตุ: ดูให้แน่ใจว่าเก็บสกรูและ
ชิ้นส่วนทั้งหมดที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์ของท่านไว้ใช้ต่อไป

2 ติดแท่นรอง (ที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์) เข้ากับชุดประกอบนี้ (ดูที่ด้านล่าง)

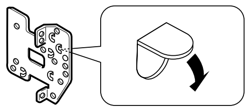
3 ดำเนินการต่อระบบไฟฟ้าที่จำเป็น
- ดูหน้า 3 ถึง 6

4 ติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้โดยใช้สกรูที่ถอดออกในขั้นตอนท ***1***

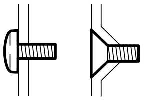
ตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้เป็นการติดตั้งในรถยนต์โตโยต้า สำหรับรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติม กรุณาปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC


Mounting bracket removed from the car
從汽車拆卸的裝配架
แท่นรองที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์
Supplied screws
配備螺絲
สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง
Mounting bracket removed from the car
從汽車拆卸的裝配架
แท่นรองที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์
Supplied screws
配備螺絲
สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง
Screws removed from the car in step 1
在步驟 1 從汽車拆卸的螺絲
สกรูที่ถอดออกจากรถยนต์ในขั้นตอนที่ 1

If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.
若有必要，請重新裝上凸緣。
หากจำเป็น ให้งอแผ่นยึด



Select the appropriate type fitting to your audio system space.
選擇適合您的音響系統安裝空間的型號。
เลือกแบบที่เหมาะสมกับพื้นที่ระบบเครื่องเสียง



Note: When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

備注: 安裝本機進裝配架時，請務必使用配備的螺絲 (M5 x 8 mm)。若使用比較長的螺絲，有關螺絲可能會損壞本機。

หมายเหตุ: ขณะติดตั้งเครื่องบนแท่นรอง ขอให้ดูให้แน่ใจว่าใช้สกรูที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง (M5 x 8 มม) หากใช้สกรูยาวกว่าที่ระบุอาจทำให้เครื่องเสียได้

When installing the unit in a Nissan car
當安裝本機於日產汽車時
เมื่อติดตั้งเครื่องในรถนิสสัน

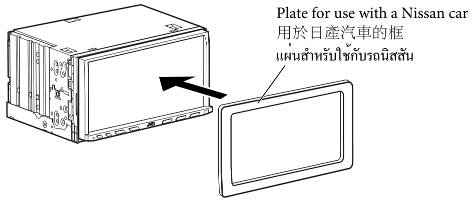
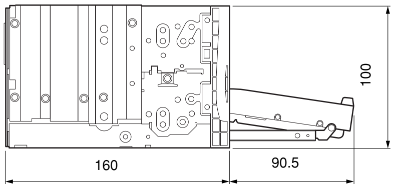


Plate for use with a Nissan car
用於日產汽車的框
แผ่นสำหรับใช้กับรถนิสสัน

Required space for the monitor ejection
拆卸屏幕所需之空間
พื้นที่ว่างที่ต้องการสำหรับดันจอภาพออก

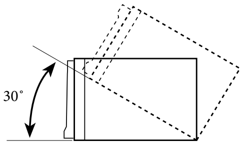


Unit: mm
單位: mm (毫米)
หน่วย: มม

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

將本機安裝在少於 30˚ 的角度，您必須考慮到屏幕可以在使用時彈出。

ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30˚ โดยคำนึงถึงเวลาจอมอนิเตอร์ดีดออกในระหว่างการใช้



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

電路連接

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，拔開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。

電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。

2 將天線的電線連接起來。

3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออก แล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

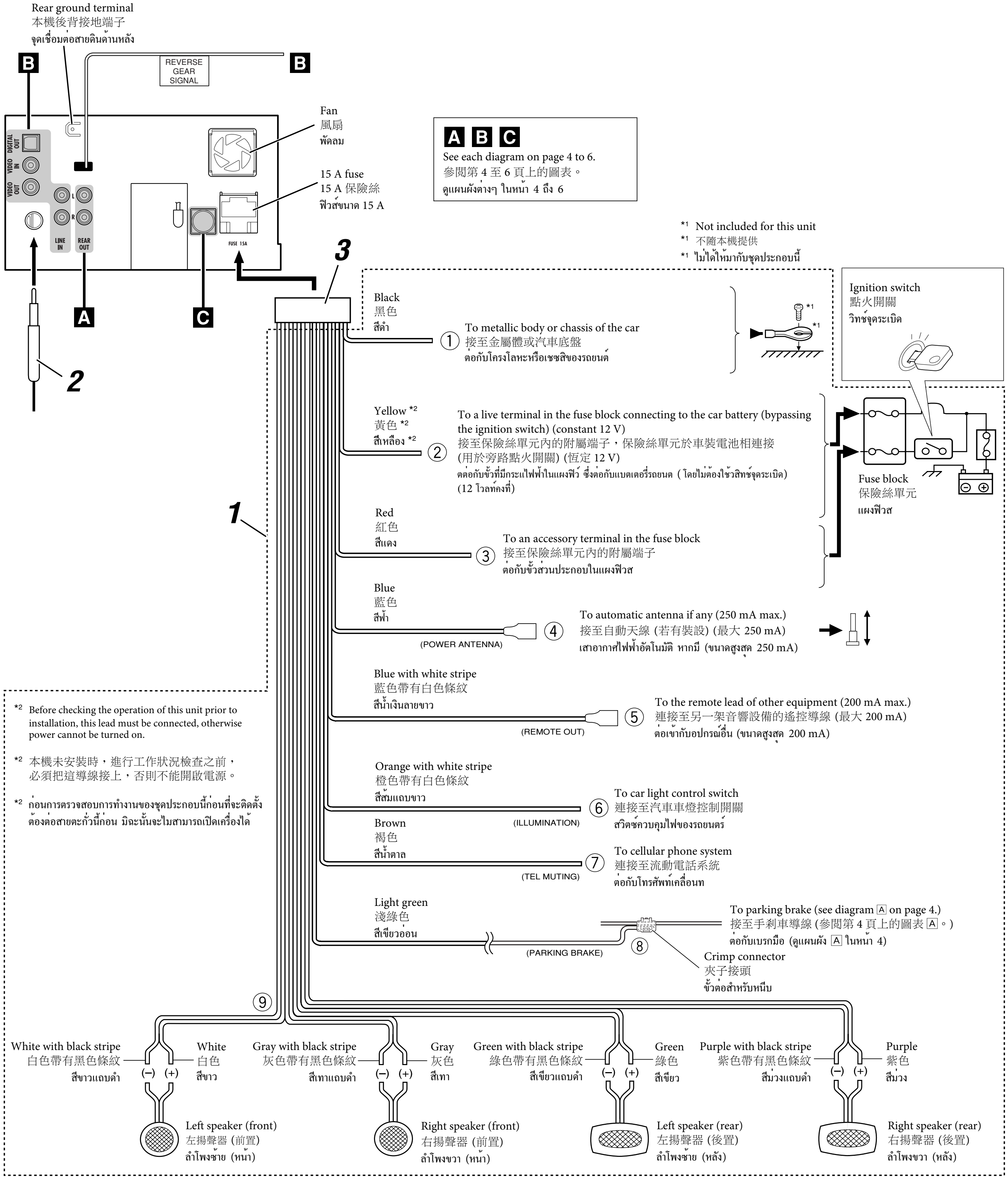
- **ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถังรถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง**

ก่อตทำกาตเชต่อมต่อ: ตตวจ อตกาตเดิต ายไฟใตตตยต์อย่างตะมัดตะวัอย่าให้ผิดพตาดใตกาตเชต่อมต่อชุดปตะกอตชุดตี กาตเชต่อมต่อผิดพตาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเสียหายต้ายแตงกัตชุดปตะ
กอตตี้ได้าตตะกั่วของ ายไฟ แตะของอุปกตต์ต่อเชต่อมจากตัวต งตตอาจมี ที่ไม่เหมตอตกัต

1 ต่อสายไฟีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง

2 เชื่อมต่อกับายอากาศ

3 สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้


Rear ground terminal
本機後背接地端子
จุดเชื่อมต่อสายดินด้านหลัง
B
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
B
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
Fan
風扇
พัดลม
15 A fuse
15 A 保險絲
ฟิวส์ขนาด 15 A
A B C
See each diagram on page 4 to 6.
參閱第 4 至 6 頁上的圖表。
ดูแผนผังต่างๆ ในหน้า 4 ถึง 6
A
C
2
3
1
Black
黑色
สีดำ
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
接至金屬體或汽車底盤
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชซสิของรถยนต์
*1
*1
Ignition switch
點火開關
วิทช์จุดระเบิด
Yellow *2
黃色 *2
สีเหลือง *2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子，保險絲單元於車裝電池相連接 (用於旁路點火開關) (恆定 12 V)
ตต่อกับขั้วที่มีกระแไฟฟ้าในแผงฟิว์ ซึ่งต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต (โดยไม่ต้องใช้วสิทช์จุดระเบิด) (12 โวลท์คงที่)
Fuse block
保險絲單元
แผงฟิวส
Red
紅色
สีแดง
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子
ต่อกับขั้วส่วนประกอบในแผงฟิวส
Blue
藍色
สีฟ้า
(POWER ANTENNA)
④ To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
接至自動天線 (若有裝設) (最大 250 mA)
เสาอากาศไฟฟ้าอัตโนมัติ หากมี (ขนาดสูงสุด 250 mA)
Blue with white stripe
藍色帶有白色條紋
สีน้ำเงินลายขาว
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤ To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
連接至另一架音響設備的遙控導線 (最大 200 mA)
ต่อเข้ากับอปกรณ์อื่น (ขนาดสูงสุด 200 mA)
Orange with white stripe
橙色帶有白色條紋
สีส้มแถบขาว
(ILLUMINATION)
⑥ To car light control switch
連接至汽車車燈控制開關
สวิตซ์ควบคุมไฟของรถยนตร์
Brown
褐色
สีน้ำตาล
(TEL MUTING)
⑦ To cellular phone system
連接至流動電話系統
ต่อกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนท
Light green
淺綠色
สีเขียวอ่อน
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑧
To parking brake (see diagram 🄰 on page 4.)
接至手刹車導線 (參閱第 4 頁上的圖表 🄰。)
ต่อกับเบรกมือ (ดูแผนผัง 🄰 ในหน้า 4)
Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ
⑨
White with black stripe
白色帶有黑色條紋
สีขาวแถบดำ
White
白色
สีขาว
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
左揚聲器 (前置)
ลำโพงซ้าย (หน้า)
Gray with black stripe
灰色帶有黑色條紋
สีเทาแถบดำ
Gray
灰色
สีเทา
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
右揚聲器 (前置)
ลำโพงขวา (หน้า)
Green with black stripe
綠色帶有黑色條紋
สีเขียวแถบดำ
Green
綠色
สีเขียว
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
左揚聲器 (後置)
ลำโพงซ้าย (หลัง)
Purple with black stripe
紫色帶有黑色條紋
สีม่วงแถบดำ
Purple
紫色
สีม่วง
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)
右揚聲器 (後置)
ลำโพงขวา (หลัง)

*1 Not included for this unit
*1 不隨本機提供
*1 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

*2 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไมสามารถเปิดเครื่องได้

ENGLISH

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

中文

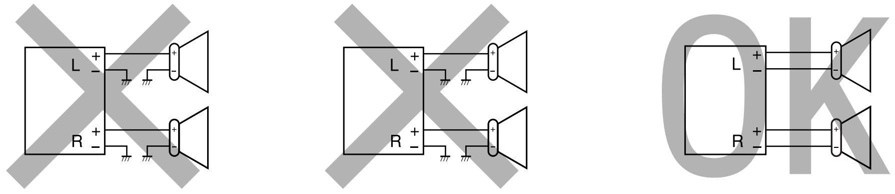
電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

ไทย

ข้อควรระวัง สำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้นชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเขากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจอบการเดินายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยียก่อน



A Connecting the parking brake lead

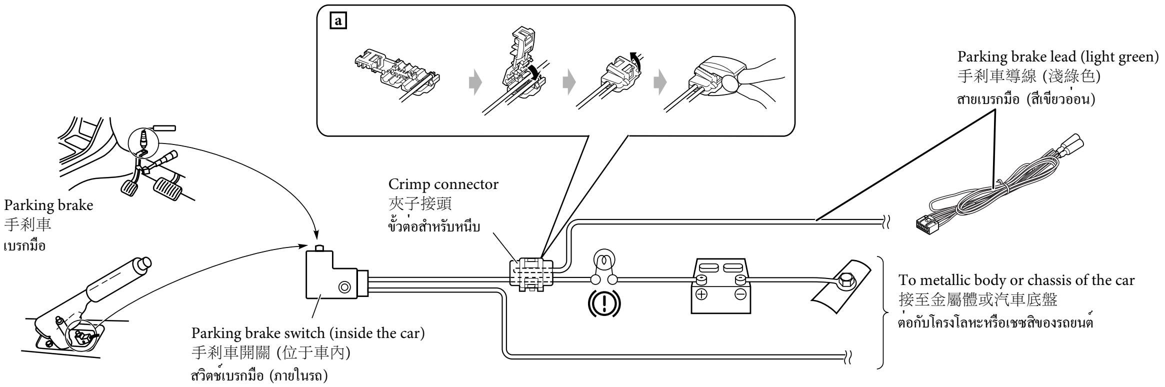
Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.

連接至手刹車導線

將手刹車導線連接至車內的手刹車系統。

ต่อสายเบรกมือ

ต่อสายเบรกมือกับระบบเบรกมือของรถยนต


a
Parking brake lead (light green)
手刹車導線 (淺綠色)
สายเบรกมือ (สีเขียวอ่อน)
Parking brake
手刹車
เบรกมือ
Crimp connector
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ
To metallic body or chassis of the car
接至金屬體或汽車底盤
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชซสิของรถยนต์
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
手刹車開關 (位于車內)
สวิตช์เบรกมือ (ภายในรถ)

A Connecting an external amplifier / 連接外部功率放大器 / การต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

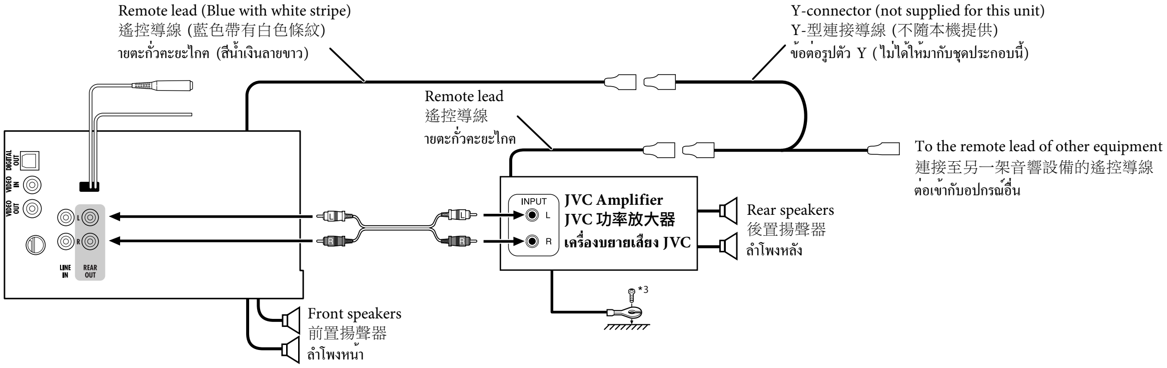
- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

您可以連接功率放大器來升級您的汽車音響系統。

- 您可以將本機的遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋) 連接到功率放大器，藉此為其供電。(要使用遙控導線連接其他設備，需單獨購置 Y 型連接導線。)
- 將揚聲器和本機拔開，再連接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器導線放置不用。
- 您可以關閉內建功率放大器，將音頻信號僅傳送到外接功率放大器，從而得到清晰的音質，並防止本機內部積聚熱量。參閱使用說明書的第 49 頁。

เพื่อคุณภาพเสียงที่ดีขึ้น ท่านสามารถต่อแอมพลิฟายเออร์เข้ากับระบบเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ได้

- ท่านสามารถจ่ายไฟให้กับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ได้ด้วยการต่อสายรีโมท (สีฟ้าแถบขาว) ของเครื่องกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ (หากต้องการต่อกับอุปกรณ์อื่นด้วยการใช้สายรีโมทต้องซื้อขั้วต่อรูปตัว Y แยกต่างหาก)
- ถอดสายลำโพงออกจากเครื่องแล้วต่อกับแอมปลิฟายเออร์ ปล่อยสายลำโพงทิ้งไว้ไม่ต้องใช้
- สามารถปิดสวิตช์แอมพลิฟายเออร์ในตัว แล้วส่งสัญญาณเสียงไปยังแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอกโดยเฉพาะ เพื่อให้ได้เสียงที่คมชัดและป้องกันไม่ให้เกิดความร้อนสะสมขึ้นภายในชุดประกอบ ดูที่หน้า 49 ของคำแนะนำในการใช้

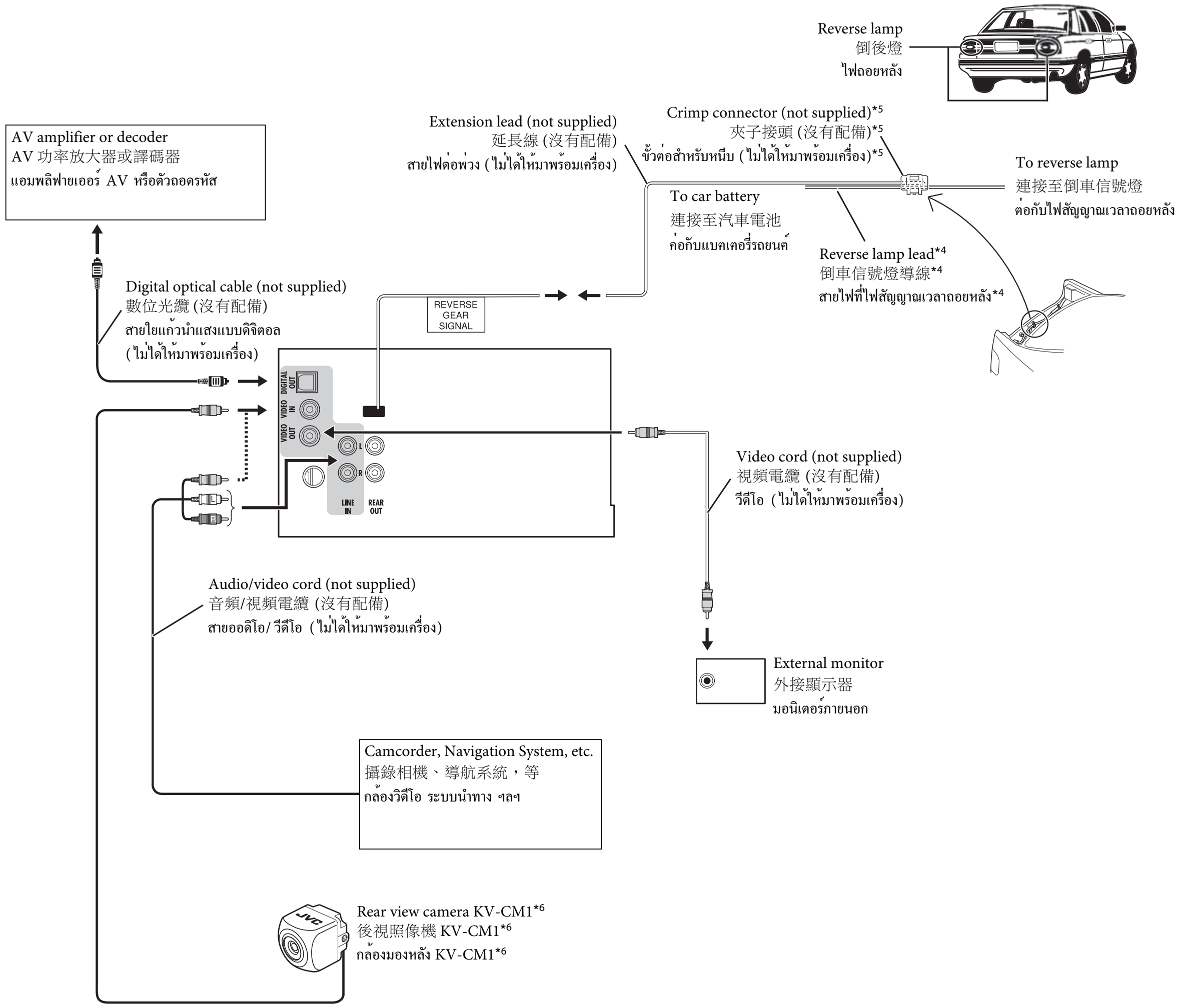

Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋)
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกต (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Y-型連接導線 (不隨本機提供)
ข้อต่อรูปตัว Y (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)
Remote lead
遙控導線
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกต
To the remote lead of other equipment
連接至另一架音響設備的遙控導線
ต่อเข้ากับอปกรณ์อื่น
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
JVC 功率放大器
เครื่องขยายเสียง JVC
Rear speakers
後置揚聲器
ลำโพงหลัง
*3
Front speakers
前置揚聲器
ลำโพงหน้า

[*3] **Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.**

[*3] 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋 (如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去)。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

[*3] ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเขากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ—ตรงส่วน ที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดดีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได

B Connections for external component playback / 連接到外接部件 / การเชื่อมต่อสำหรับการเล่นอุปกรณ์ภายนอก


Reverse lamp
倒後燈
ไฟถอยหลัง
Extension lead (not supplied)
延長線 (沒有配備)
สายไฟต่อพ่วง (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
夾子接頭 (沒有配備)*5
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)*5
To reverse lamp
連接至倒車信號燈
ต่อกับไฟสัญญาณเวลาถอยหลัง
AV amplifier or decoder
AV 功率放大器或譯碼器
แอมพลิฟายเออร์ AV หรือตัวถอดรหัส
To car battery
連接至汽車電池
ค่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์
Reverse lamp lead*4
倒車信號燈導線*4
สายไฟที่ไฟสัญญาณเวลาถอยหลัง*4
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
數位光纜 (沒有配備)
สายใยแก้วนำแสงแบบดิจิตอล
(ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Video cord (not supplied)
視頻電纜 (沒有配備)
วีดีโอ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
音頻/視頻電纜 (沒有配備)
สายออดิโอ/ วีดีโอ (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
External monitor
外接顯示器
มอนิเตอร์ภายนอก
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
攝錄相機、導航系統，等
กล้องวิดีโอ ระบบนำทาง ฯลฯ
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6
後視照像機 KV-CM1*6
กล้องมองหลัง KV-CM1*6
JVC

[*4] Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

[*5] Refer to a in diagram A on page 4.

[*6] Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[*4] 僅對應連接後視照像機至 VIDEO IN 插頭時。

[*5] 參閱 a 在圖 A 的第 4 頁。

[*6] 使用時，將 "Camera" 設定為 "AV Input" (參閱使用說明書的第 47 頁)。

[*4] ใช้เฉพาะเมื่อต่อกล้องมองหลังกับช่อง VIDEO IN

[*5] ดู a ในแผนผัง A ในหน้า 4

[*6] ตั้ง "AV Input" เข้ากับ "Camera" เมื่อต้องการใช้งาน (ดูหน้า 47 คำแนะนำ)

C Connections to the CD changer jack / 連接到 CD 換碟機插孔 / การเชื่อมต่อกับหัวต่อซีดีเชนเจอร์

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

連接外接部件時，另請參閱部件及轉換器之使用手冊。

小心：
連接外接部件之前，請確保關閉本機。

您可以將以下 JVC 部件連接到 CD 換碟器插孔。

JVC 部件	型號名稱
CD 換碟器 (CD-CH)	CH-X1500，等

您也可透過各種 JVC 轉換器連接以下部件。

- 連接線可能需要單獨購置。

部件	轉換器	型號名稱
藍牙裝置	藍牙轉換器	KS-BTA200
iPod	iPod 介面轉換器	KS-PD100
帶線路輸出插孔的可攜式音頻播放器	線路輸入轉換器	KS-U57
帶 3.5 毫米迷你音響插孔的可攜式音頻播放器	AUX 輸入轉換器	KS-U58

當連接多個部件時 (最多：2)，建議您依下方所示串聯部件。

เมื่อเชื่อมต่ออุปกรณ์ภายนอก ให้ดูข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอกและอะแดปเตอร์จากคู่มือที่ให้มาด้วย

ข้อควรระวัง:
ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอก กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าปิดเครื่องอยู่

ท่านสามารถเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบ JVC ต่อไปนี้เข้ากับช่องเสียบซีดีเชนเจอร์

ส่วนประกอบ JVC	ชื่อรุ่น
ซีดีเชนเจอร์ (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 ฯลฯ

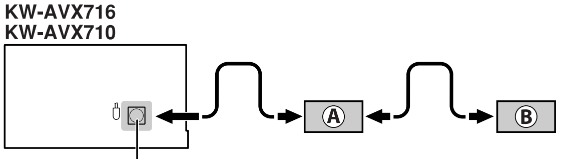
เชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ผ่านอะแดปเตอร์แบบต่างๆ ของ JVC ได้เช่นกัน

- อาจต้องซื้อสายเชื่อมต่อต่างหาก

ส่วนประกอบ	อะแดปเตอร์	ชื่อรุ่น
อุปกรณ์บลูทูธ	อะแดปเตอร์บลูทูธ	KS-BTA200
iPod	อินเทอร์เฟส อะแดปเตอร์สำหรับรุ่น iPod	KS-PD100
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมขั้วต่อ Line Output	อะแดปเตอร์ Line Input	KS-U57
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมช่องเสียบแบบ 3.5 มม. Stereo Mini	อะแดปเตอร์ AUX Input	KS-U58

เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบมากกว่าหนึ่งชิ้น (สูงสุดสองชิ้น) ขอแนะนำให้ท่านเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบแบบอนุกรมตามคำอธิบายข้างล่าง

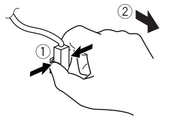
When connecting two components in series
當串聯兩個部件時
เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบสองชิ้นแบบอนุกรม



CD changer jack
CD 換碟器插孔
ช่องเสียบต่อของเครื่องเล่นซีด CD

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / 拆開連接器 / ปลดขั้วต่อ



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
抓緊連接器上部 (①)，然後將之拉出 (②)。
จับด้านบนของขั้วต่อให้แน่น (①) จากนั้นจึงดึงออก (②)

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPod 是 Apple Inc. (蘋果公司) 在美國及其他國家注冊的商標。

iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ

[*7] To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

[*7] 要使用這些部件，請正確設定外部輸入 (參閱使用說明書的第 47 頁)。

[*7] ในการใช้ส่วนประกอบเหล่านี้ ให้ตั้งค่าการรับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอกให้ถูกต้อง (ดูหน้า 47 คำแนะนำ)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**
  * 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？
- **電源不能接通。**
  * 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？
- **揚聲器沒有聲音。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？
- **聲音失真。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左 (L) ，右 (R) 端子的負極 "–" 是否共同接地？
- **噪音干擾音響。**
  * 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？
- **本機發熱。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左 (L) ，右 (R) 端子的負極 "–" 是否共同接地？
- **本機完全不能正確操作。**
  * 您有沒有重設本機？

การตรวจจอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

- **ฟิวส์ขาด**
  * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่
- **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
  * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
- **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
- **เสียงเพี้ยน**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
  * สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- **เสียงรบกวน**
  * มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องส่วนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่
- **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
  * สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- **เครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย**
  * ได้ทำการรีเซ็ตเครื่องหรือยัง

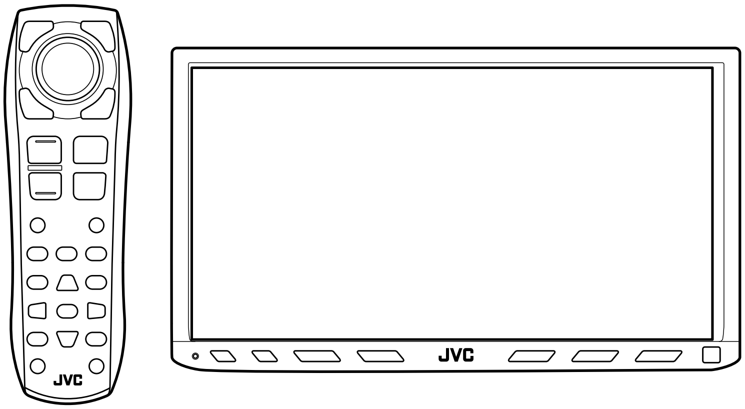
JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR

KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710

ALAT PENERIMA DVD DENGAN MONITOR

KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Untuk membatalkan tampilan demonstrasi, lihat halaman 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Untuk instalasi dan penyambungan, lihat buku pedoman terpisah.

INSTRUCTIONS
BUKU PETUNJUK

LVT1780-004A
[UN]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

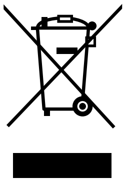
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

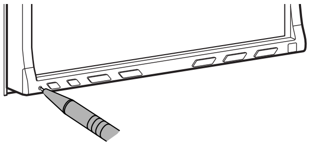
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.



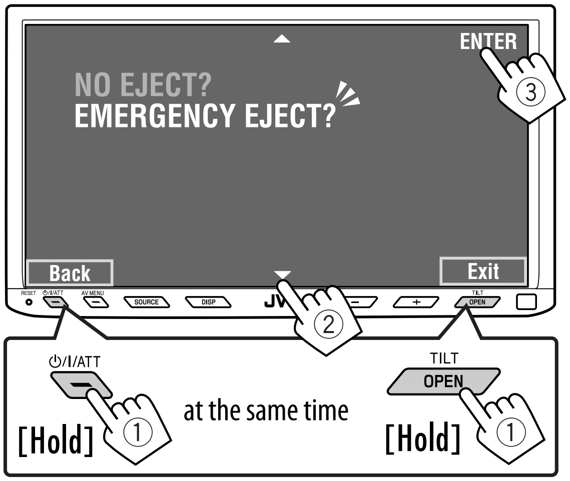
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the iPod........................ 36
Using other external components..... 38

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 41
Assigning titles to the sources 42
Menu operations 43

REFERENCES

Maintenance 52
More about this unit 53
Troubleshooting 60
Specifications 64

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 3)*1 ALL 3 3 4 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

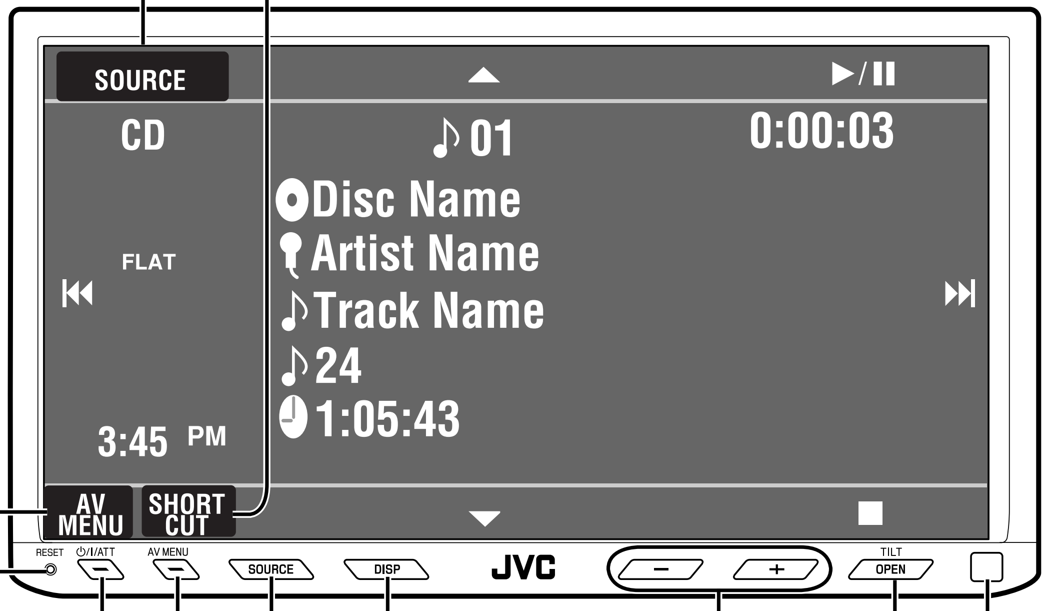
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 43

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
CD
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 43

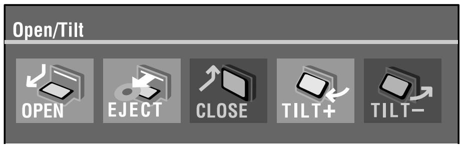
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

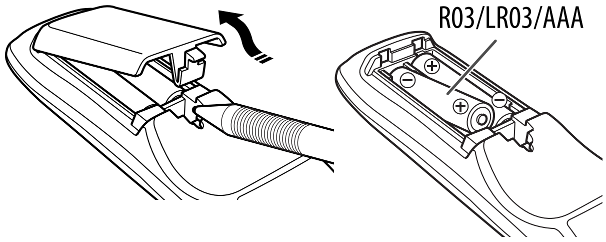
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

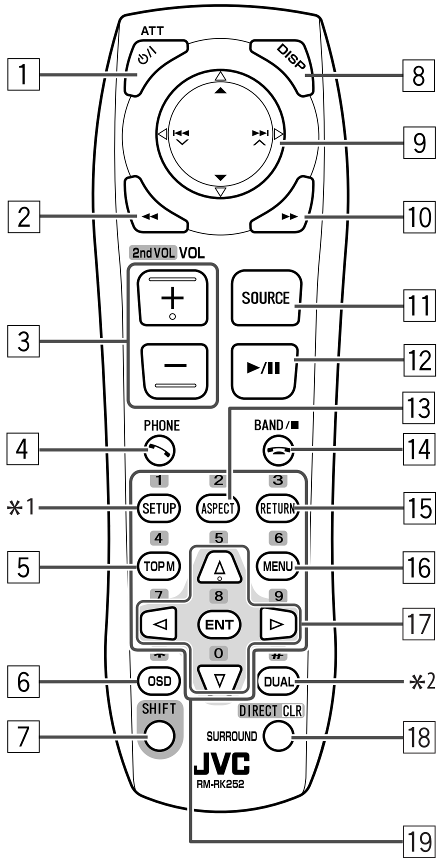
Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
*1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
*2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “*.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- I◀◀ / ▶▶I:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:
- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- I◀◀ / ▶▶I: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:
- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / I◀◀ / ▶▶I work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:
- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- I◀◀ / ▶▶I
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:
- I◀◀ / ▶▶I: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 "TUNER": Selects the bands.
"DISC": Stops playback.
"Bluetooth PHONE": Ends the call.
"Bluetooth AUDIO": Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for "CD-CH."

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for "DISC."
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as "SURROUND."

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- "TUNER": Selects the preset station directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*

*2 *Not used for this unit.*

*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

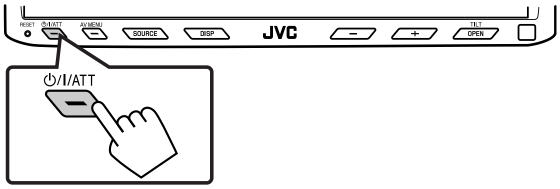
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

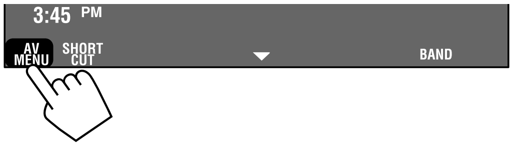
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 45)

❶ Turn on the power.

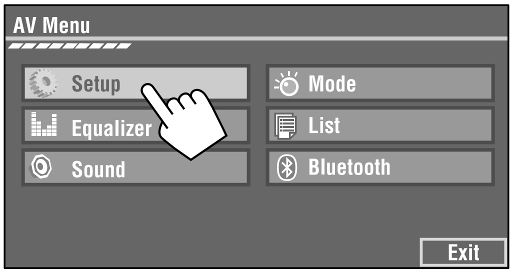

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.


3:45 PM

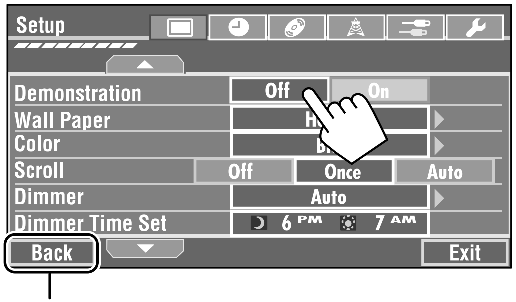
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

Select <**Off**>.


Setup

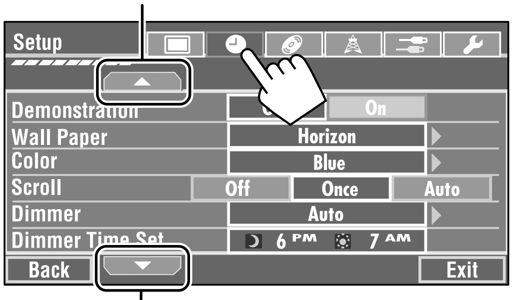
Demonstration: Off | On
Scroll: Off | Once | Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Wall Paper
Color
Back
Exit

Return to the previous screen.

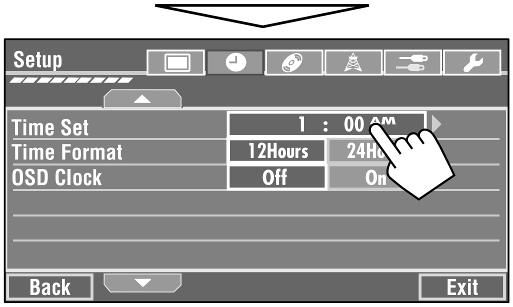
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

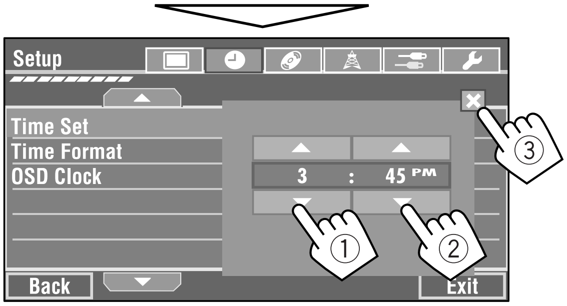

Setup

Demonstration: On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off | Once | Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup

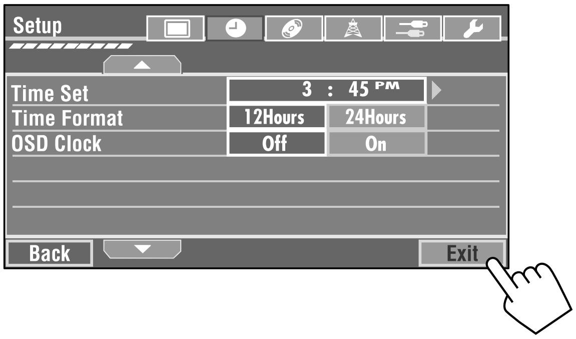
Time Set: 1 : 00 AM
Time Format: 12Hours | 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off | On


Setup

Time Set: 3 : 45 PM

Time Format
OSD Clock
①
②
③
Back
Exit

❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup

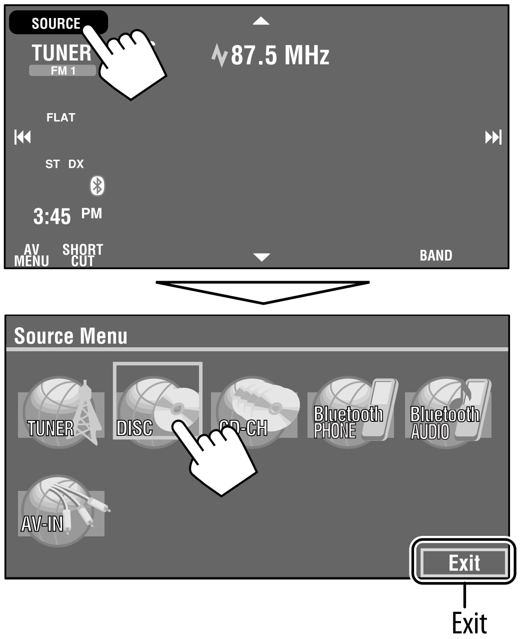
Time Set: 3 : 45 PM
Time Format: 12Hours | 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off | On

Common operations

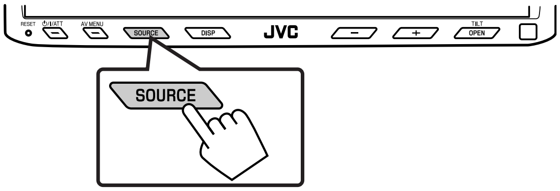
Selecting the playback source

- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 47).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit
Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
SOURCE

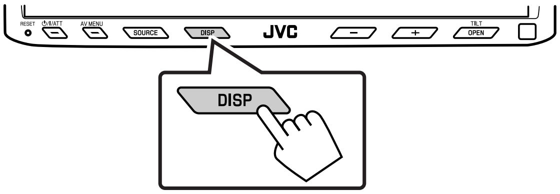
TUNER → **DISC (DVD/VCD/CD)** →**CD-CH, iPod,** or **EXT-IN** → **Bluetooth PHONE** → **Bluetooth AUDIO** → **AV-IN** → (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

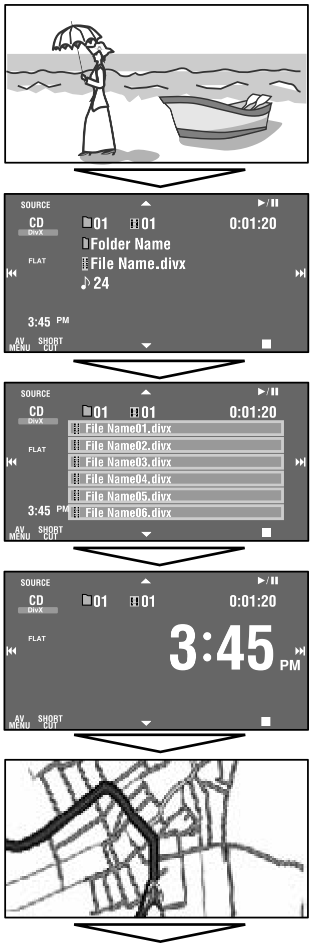
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
3:45 PM

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen

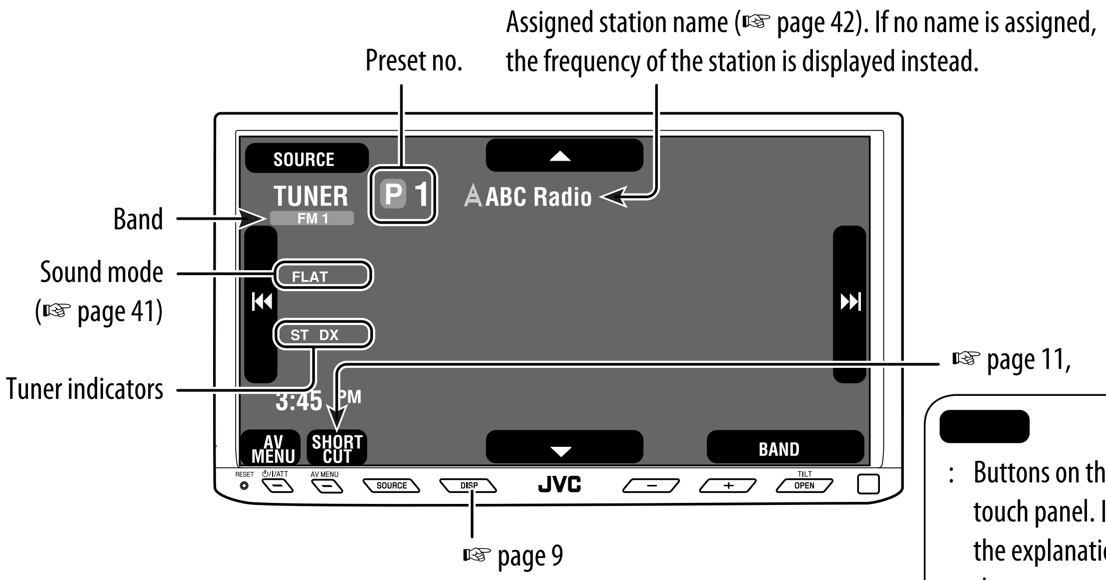
Track list

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 47)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 42). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 11,
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [   ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

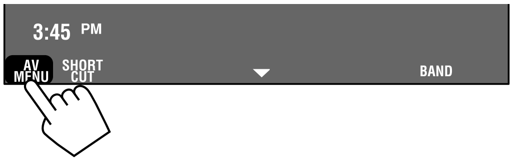
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➤FM1➤FM2➤FM3➤AM

❸ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◄◄]or [►►|] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

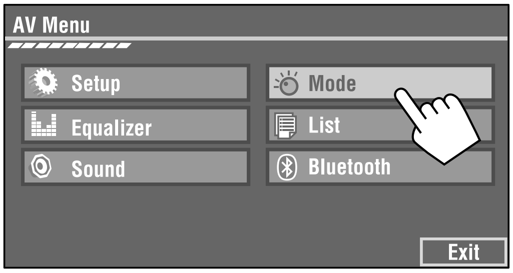
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

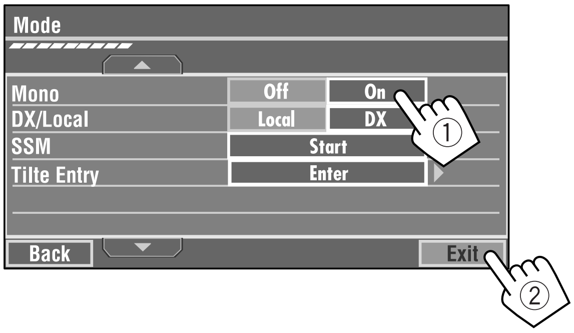

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Equalizer
Sound
Mode
List
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Tilte Entry
Enter
Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

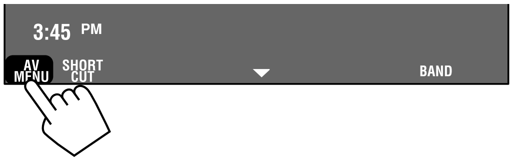
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

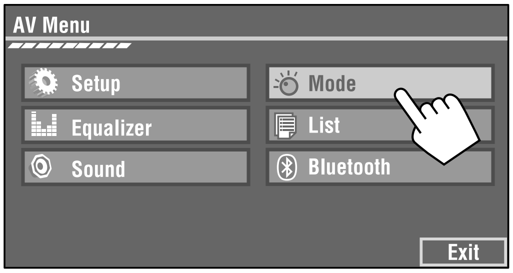
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 Press [AV MENU].

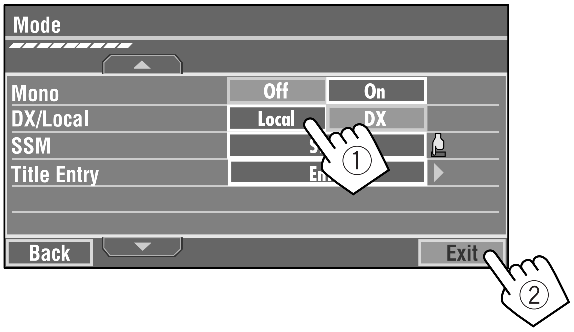

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

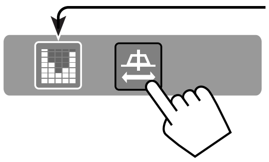
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

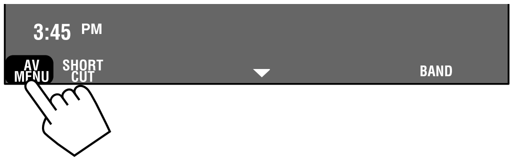
- You can also change <**IF Band Width**> setting (for details, ☞ page 47).
  <**IF Band Width**> menu can be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then..



FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

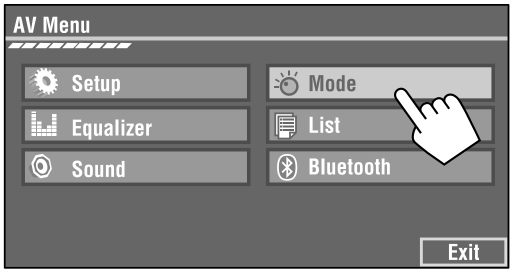
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 Press [AV MENU].

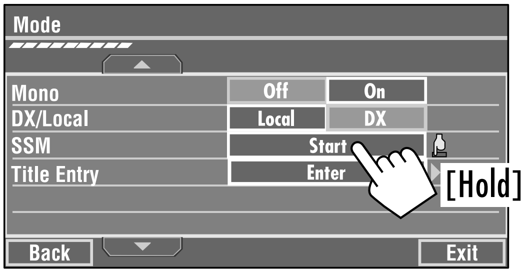

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

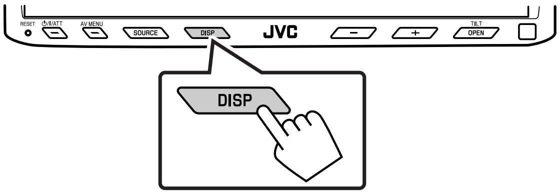

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

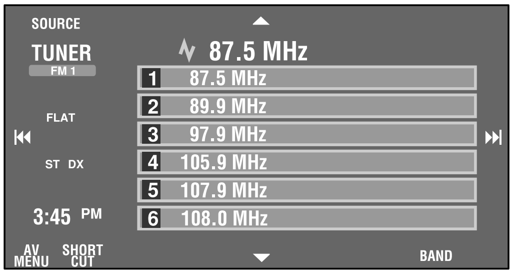
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

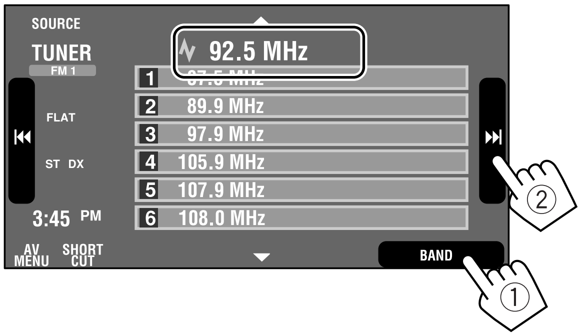
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 Display the Preset List.

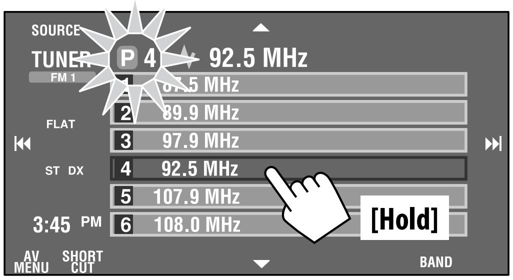

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 Tune in to a station you want to preset.


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
92.5 MHz
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

3 Select a preset number.

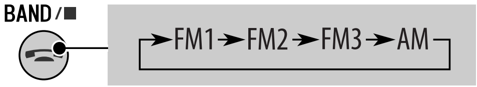

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
92.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

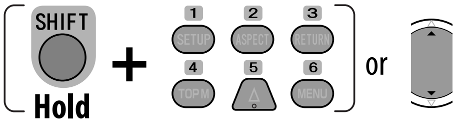
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

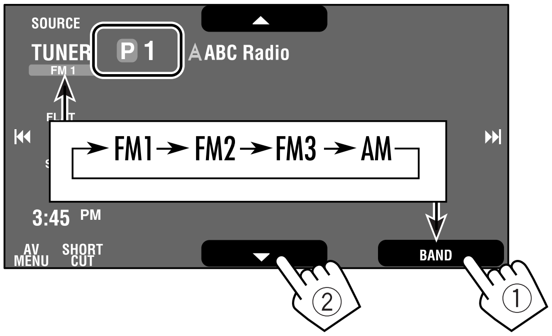

BAND/■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

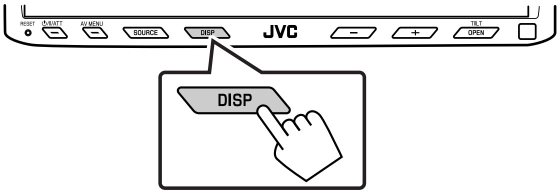
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

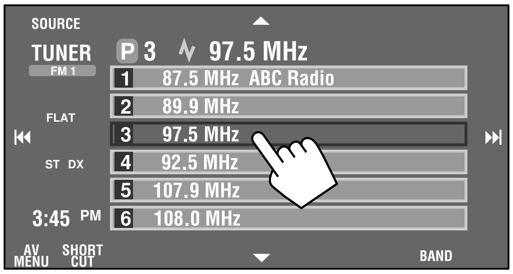

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 3
97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

Disc operations

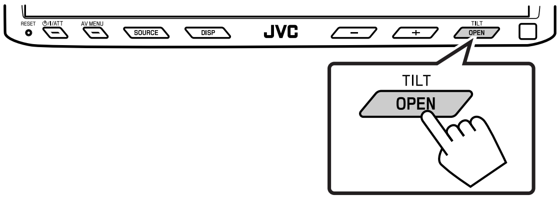
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

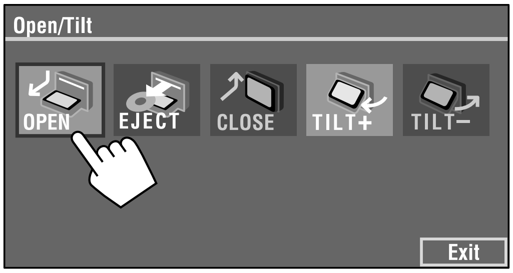
❶ Open the monitor panel.



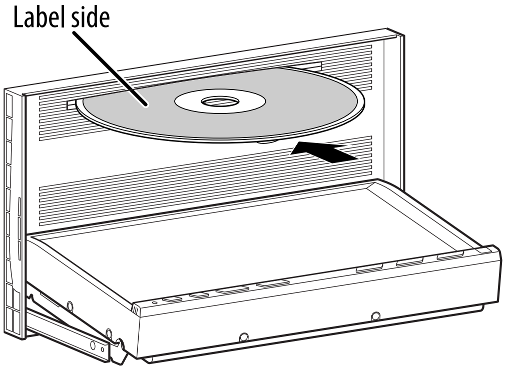
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.

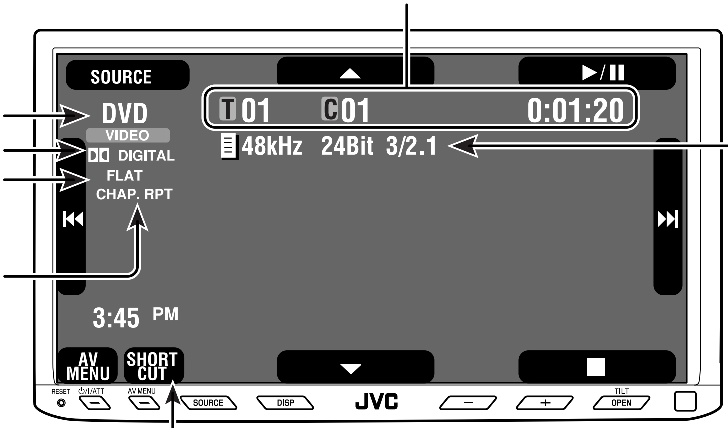
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 57)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR

DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T01
C01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Playback mode

Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.

☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

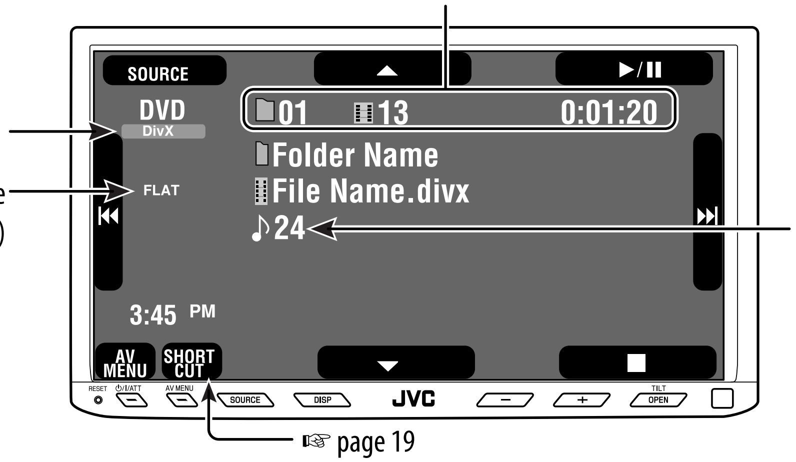
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX **MPEG** **JPEG**


SOURCE
▶/II
DVD
DivX
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.

Disc type

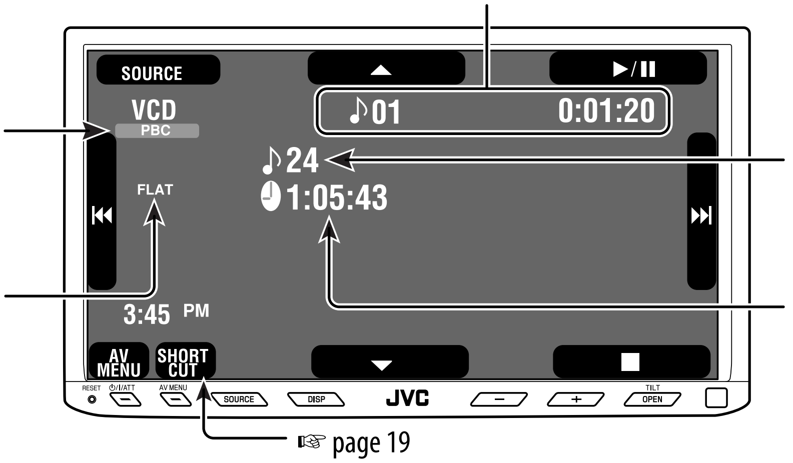
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 19

[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◄◄ ►►❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 [*1]
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD


SOURCE
▶/II
VCD
PBC
01
0:01:20
24
1:05:43
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Track no./Playing time

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

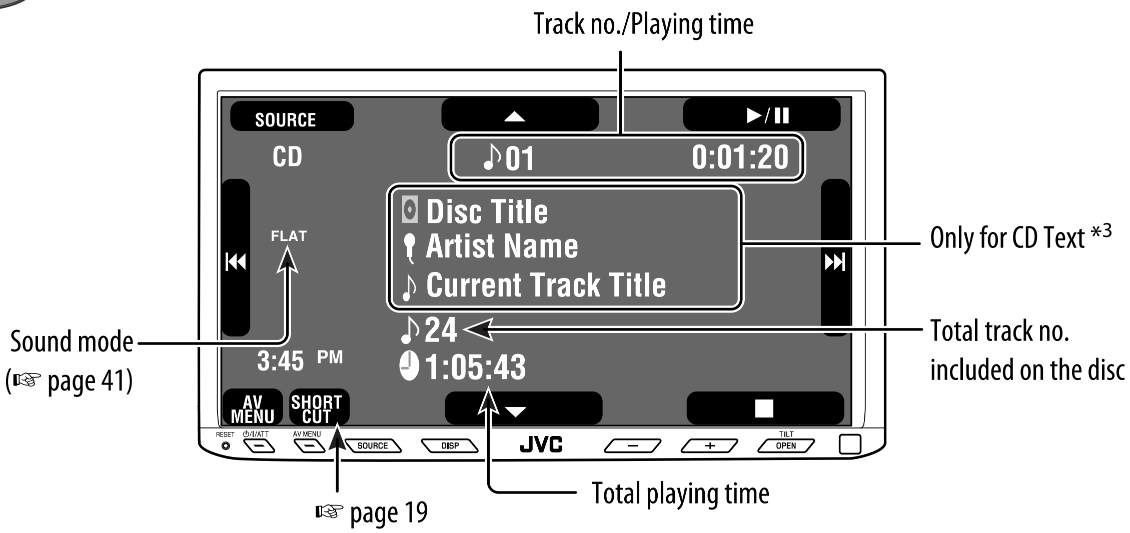
☞ page 19

[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◄◄ ►►❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search[*2]

[*1] *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*

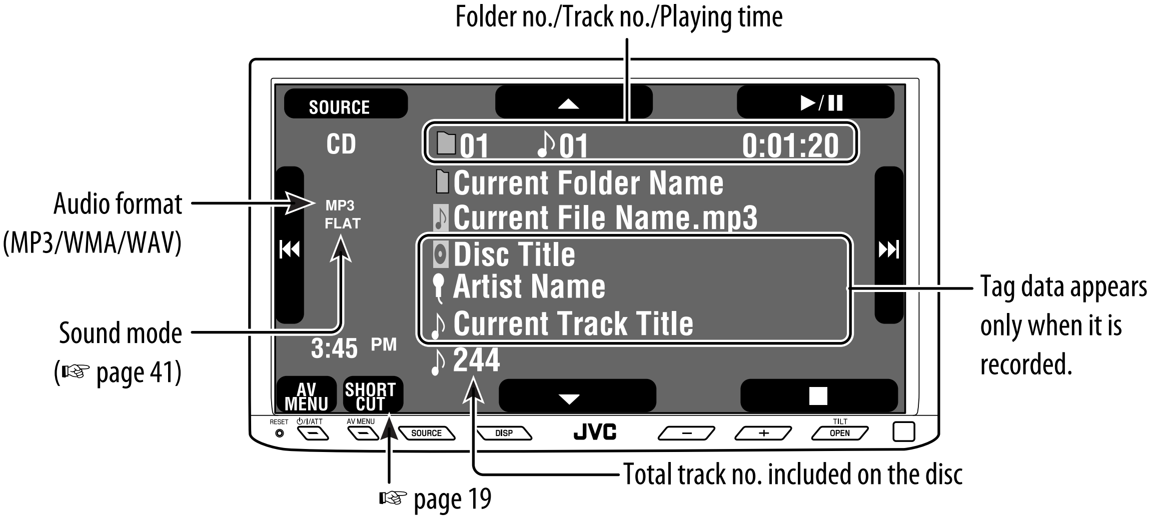
[*2] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
Only for CD Text *3
♪24
1:05:43
Total track no. included on the disc
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 19
Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪244
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
MP3
FLAT
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 19
Total track no. included on the disc

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

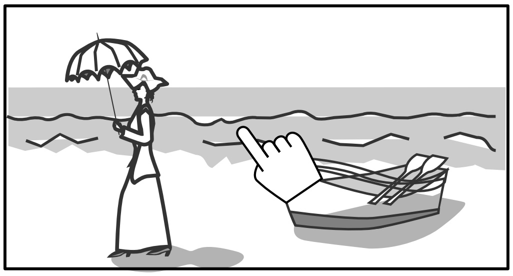
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

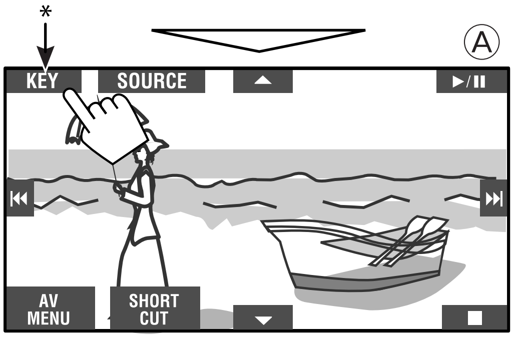
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

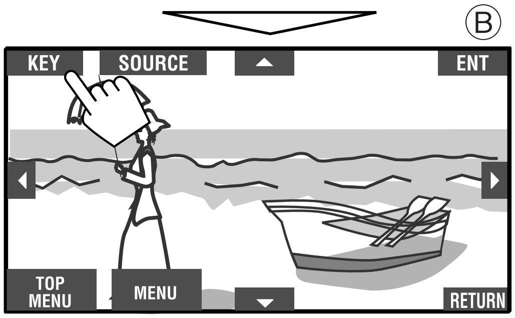
- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 45)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



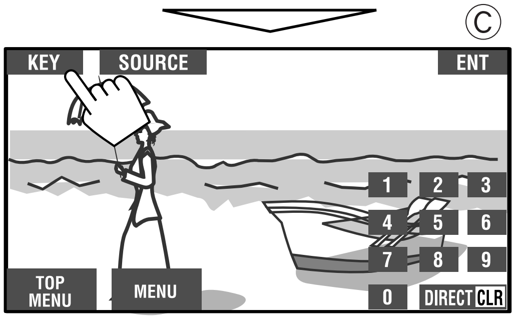
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[► / **II**]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[⏮ ⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◄ ► ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

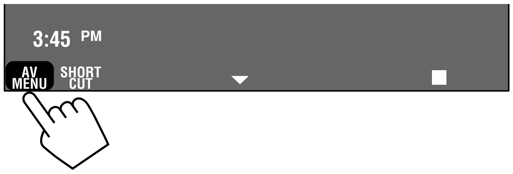
Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

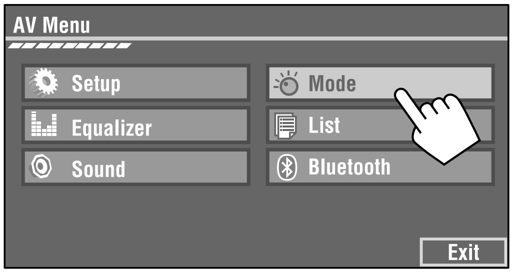
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

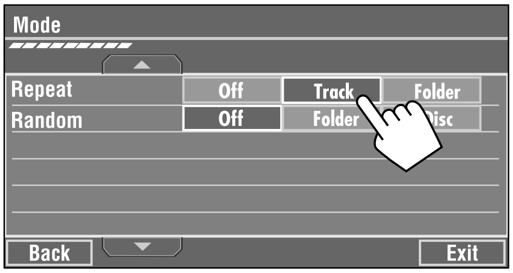

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

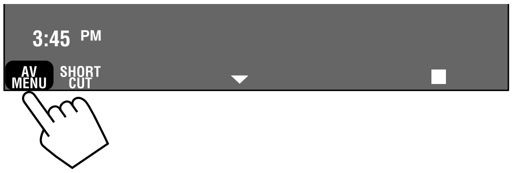
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

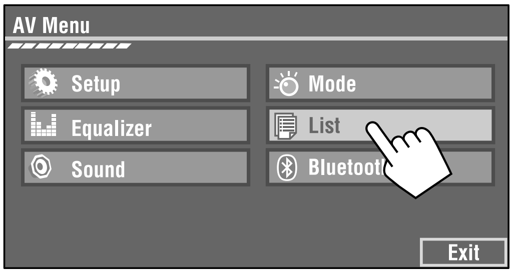
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

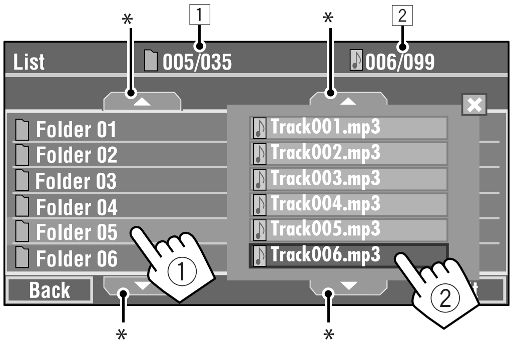

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select a folder (①), then a track (②).

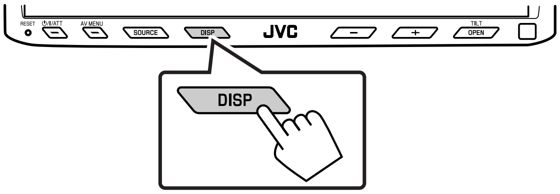

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

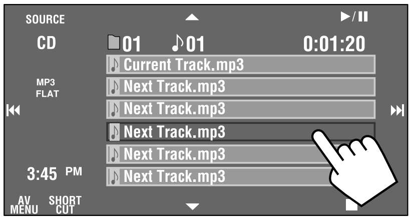
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

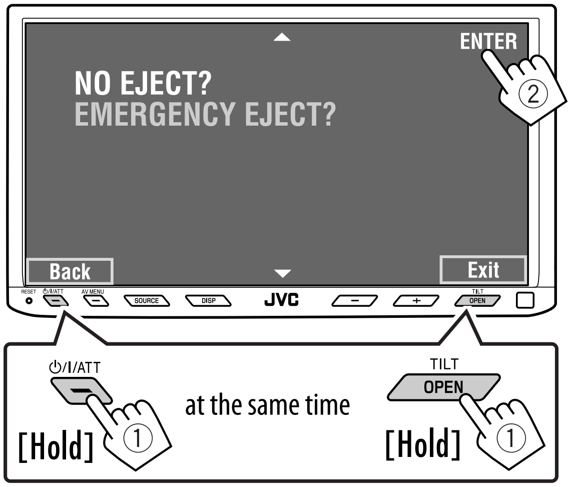

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

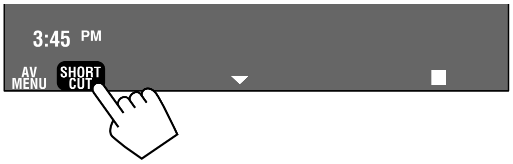

ENTER
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
②
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold] ①
[Hold] ①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

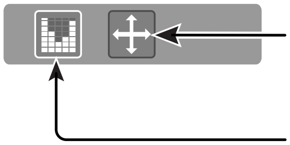
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

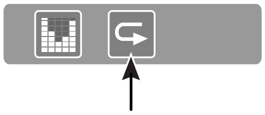
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 45)

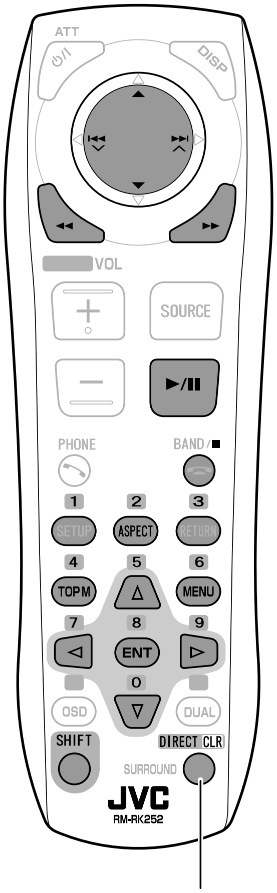
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
⏻/I
DISP
⏮
⏭
◀◀
▶▶
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD Video

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

▲▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR ➡ 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice ➡ 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1. 4 TOP M / 6 MENU
2. Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷
3. 8 ENT

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*
*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)

DVD VR

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*4] (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause[*5] (No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*6]

▲ ▼ : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

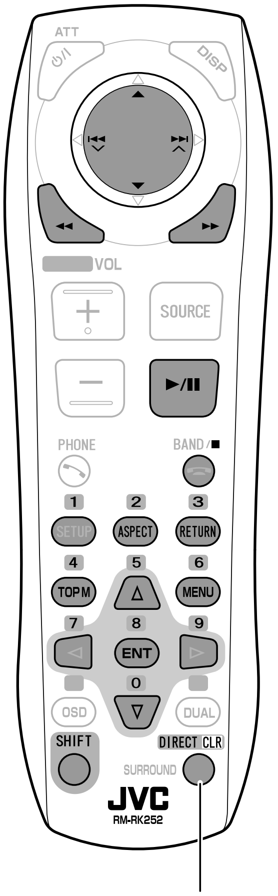
2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

3 8 ENT To erase the screen.

[*4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

[*5] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[*6] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
⏮
⏭
◄◄
►►
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5 ∆
6 MENU
7 ◁
8 ENT
9 ▷
0 ∇
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2 (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

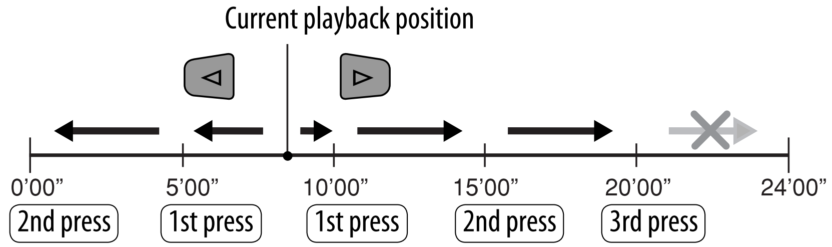
2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) ➡ ENT : Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0’00”
5’00”
10’00”
15’00”
20’00”
24’00”
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

*1 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3*

*2 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

⏮ ⏭ : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.
twice

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.

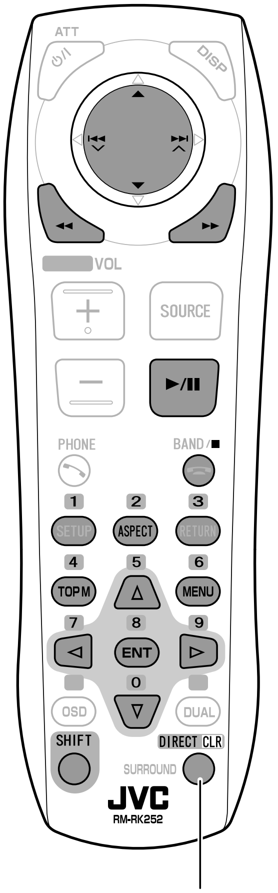
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track.

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*4

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select folder.

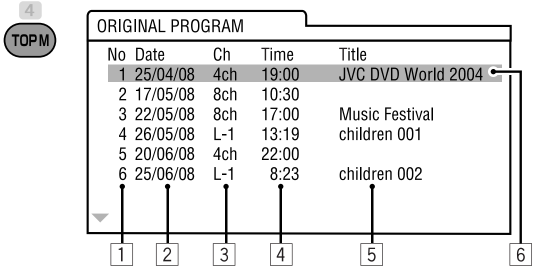
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

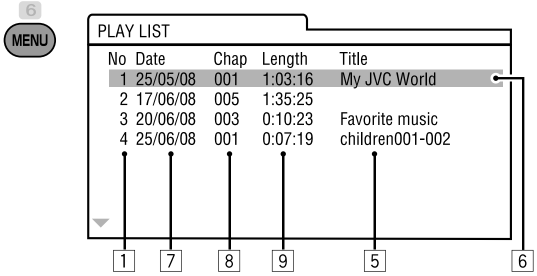
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

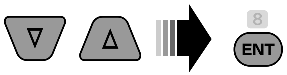
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



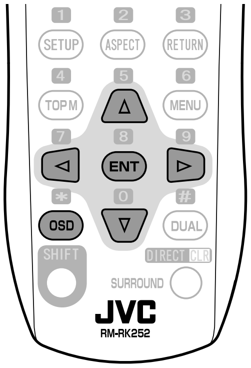
To erase the screen

- 1 Original Program/Playlist number
- 2 Recording date
- 3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
- 4 Start time of recording
- 5 Title of the program/playlist*
- 6 Highlight bar (current selection)
- 7 Creating date of playlist
- 8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
- 9 Playback time

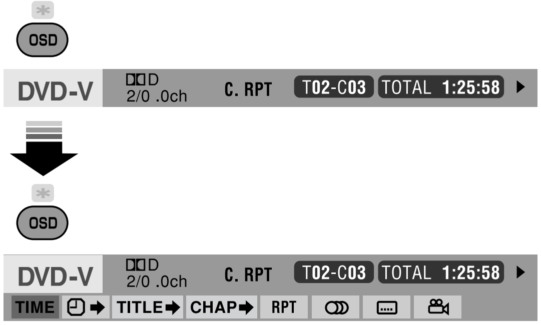
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

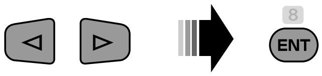

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
*
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT
CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)


*
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
*
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

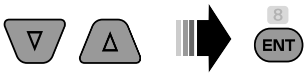
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

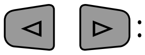


3 Make a selection.

If a pop-up menu appears...

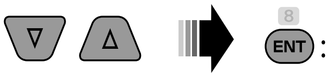


- For entering time/numbers...



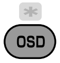
:

Move the entry position

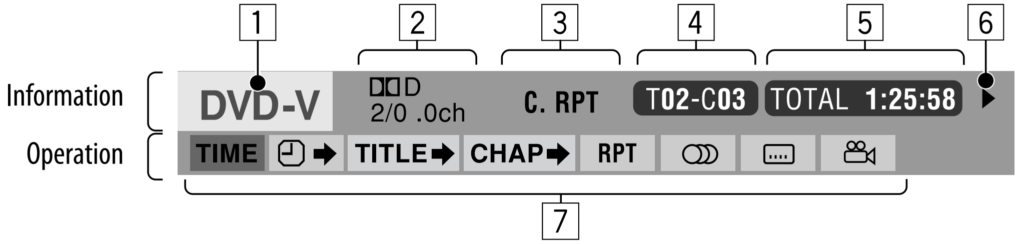


Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode [*1]

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track [*2]
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track [*2]

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙/❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
🕘➡	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play [*1]
RND	Random play [*1]
◎	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

[*1] ☞ *page 18*

[*2] *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

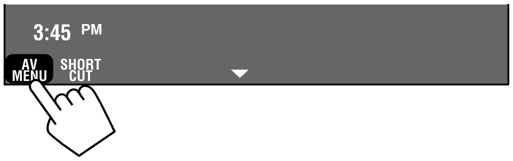
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

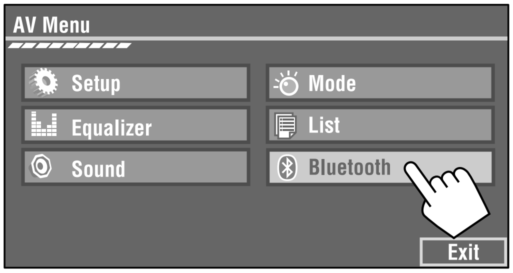
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

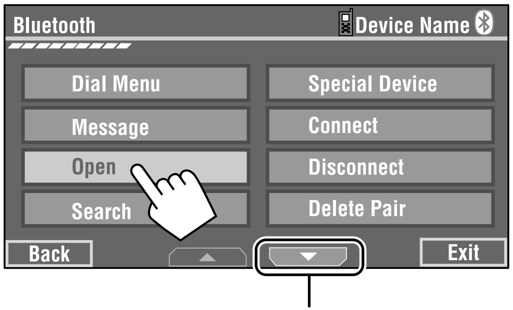

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

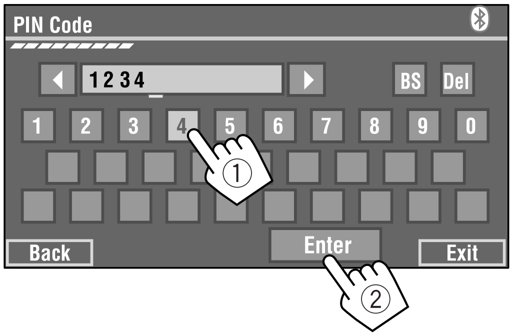

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.

Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 50 and 51).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].

The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.

- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].

The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].

- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

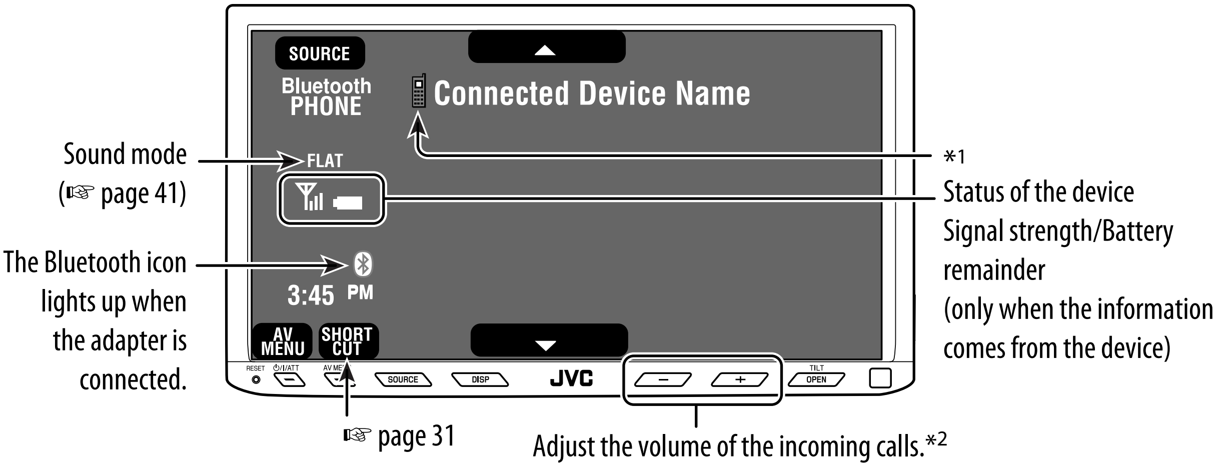
2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].

Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.
☞ page 31
Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2
*1
Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

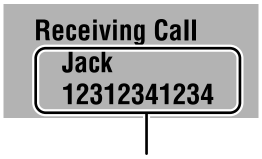
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 50 and 51

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 51)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 51)

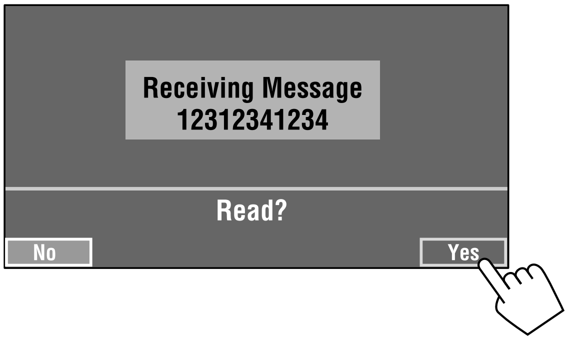
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 51)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

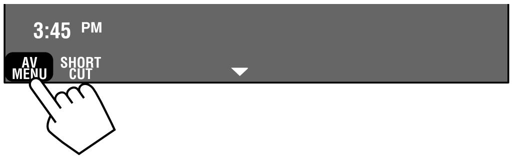
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 50)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 50 and 51)

To make a call

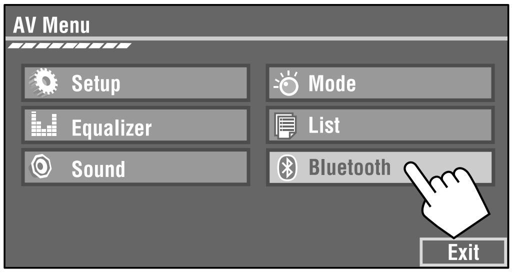
1



3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

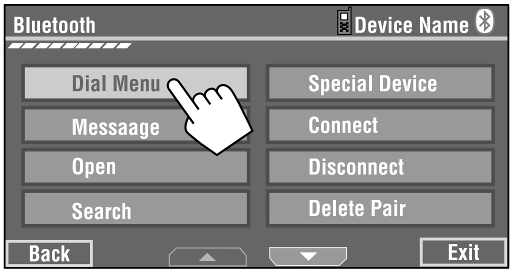
- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2



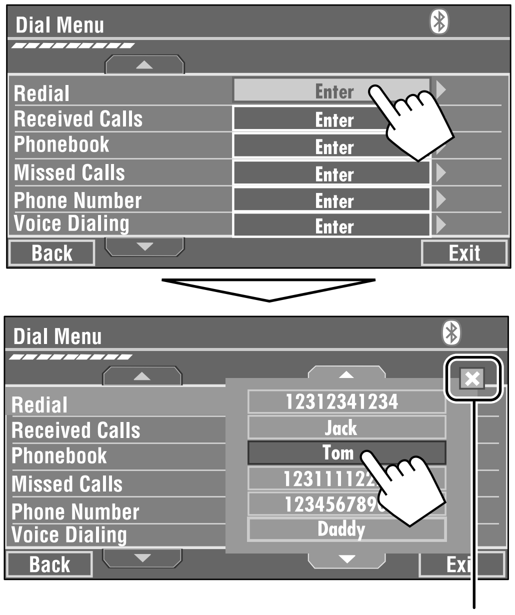
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**



Dial Menu
Redial
Enter
Received Calls
Enter
Phonebook
Enter
Missed Calls
Enter
Phone Number
Enter
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
12345678
Daddy
Back
Exi

Cancel

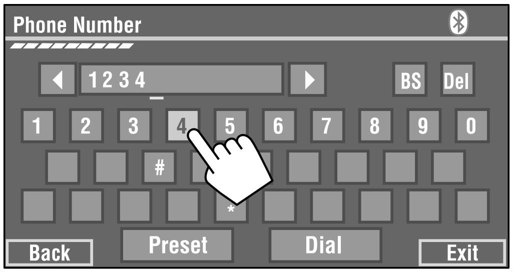
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

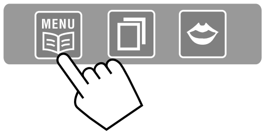
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

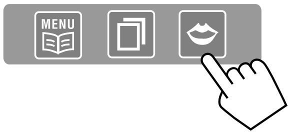
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

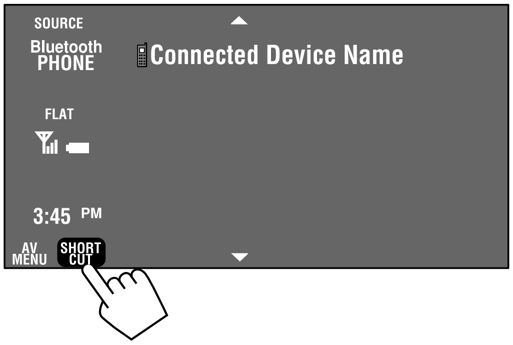
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



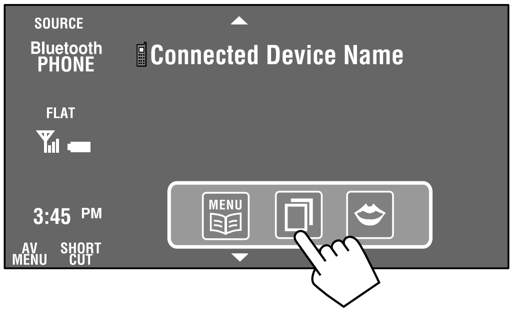
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

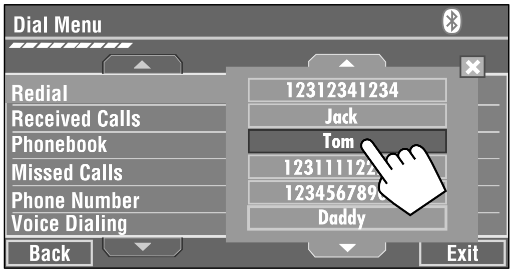
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

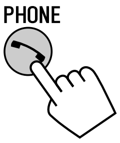
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
123456789
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



[Hold]

Presetting the phone numbers ■

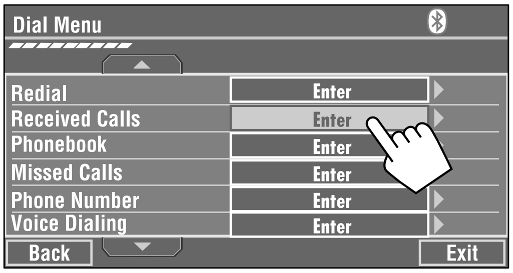
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

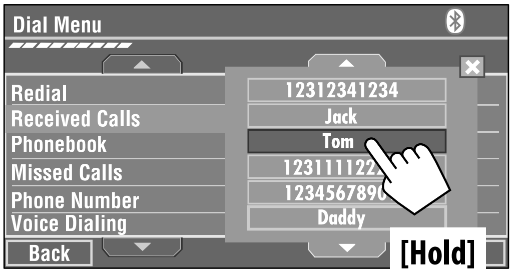
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

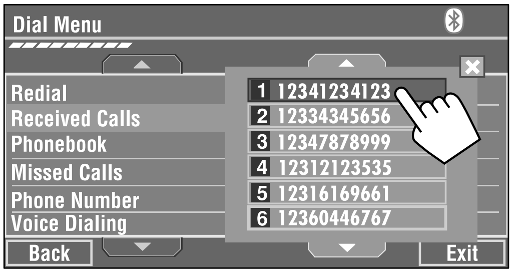

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111222
1234567890
Daddy
Back
[Hold]

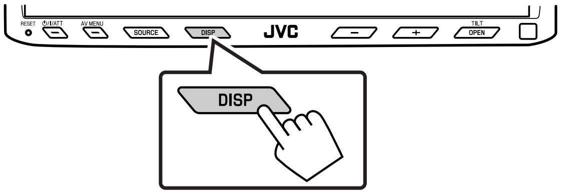
3 Select a preset number.

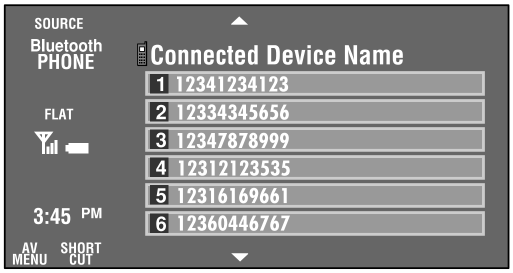

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

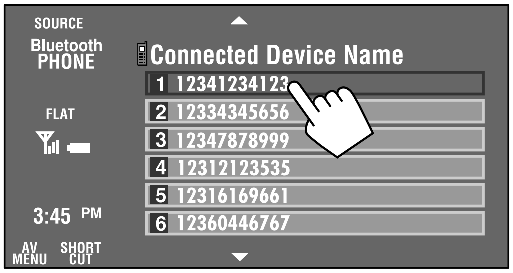
To call a preset number

1


RESET
ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.

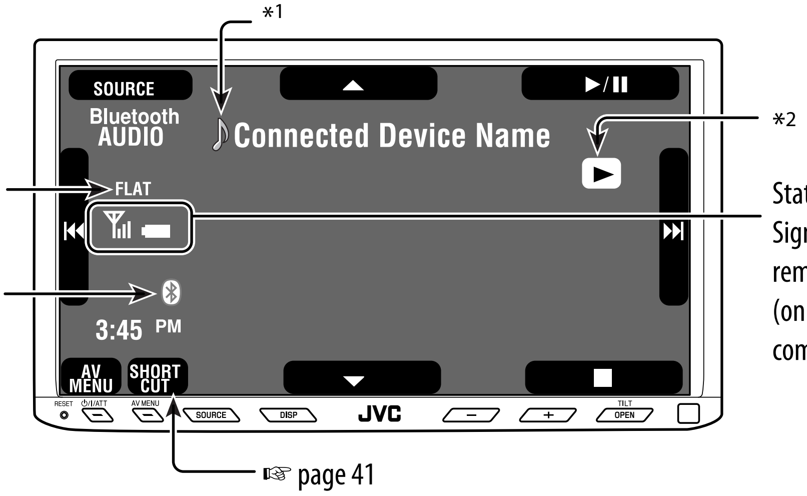
PHONE :
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).

BAND/■ : End the call.

2nd VOL VOL + / − : Adjust the volume.

SHIFT **[Hold]** + 1 SETUP 2 ASPECT 3 RETURN 4 TOP M 5 6 MENU : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
*2
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
☞ page 41

Sound mode
(☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[⏮ ⏭]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, 📱 appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

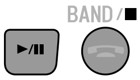
*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

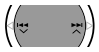
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

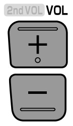
❷ **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.



: Start and pause playback.

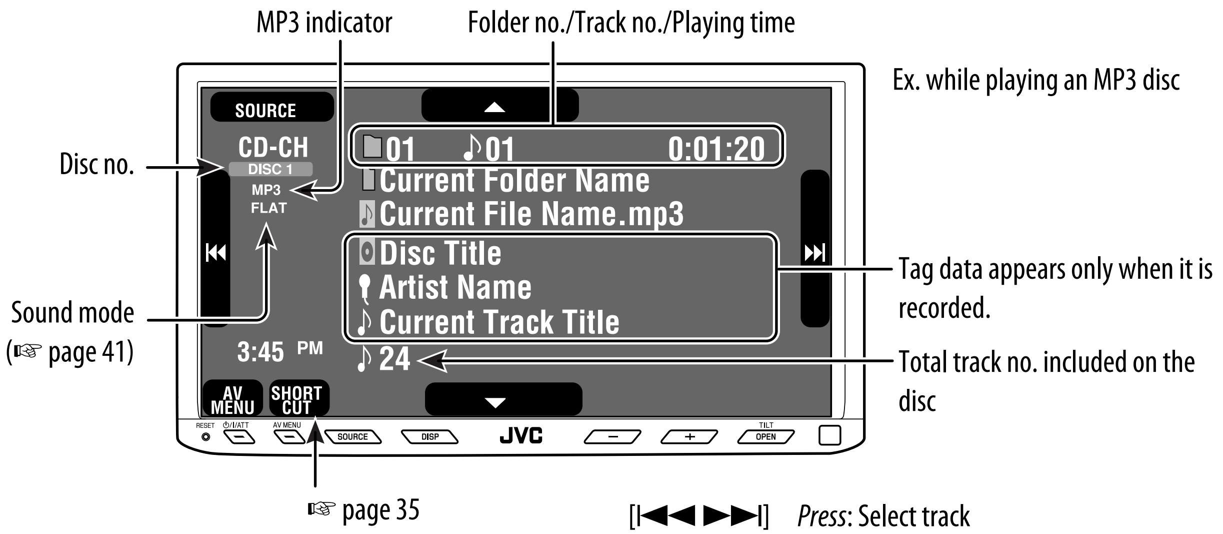

: Reverse/forward skip



: Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
♪24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 35

Ex. while playing an MP3 disc

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folders (only for MP3) *Hold*: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

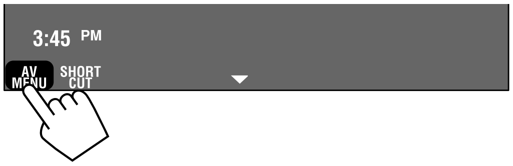
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

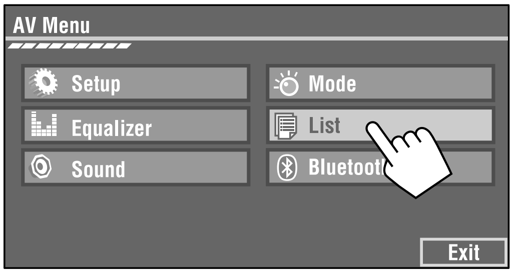
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

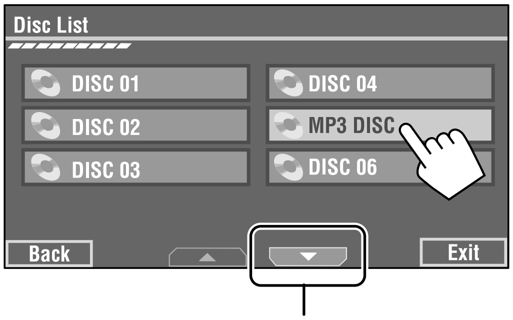

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

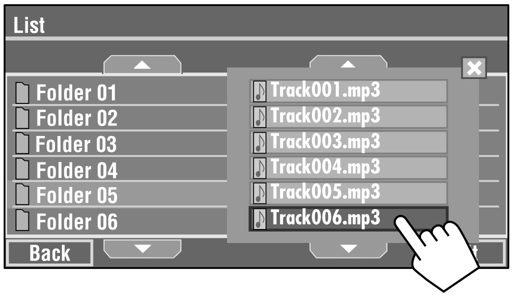

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

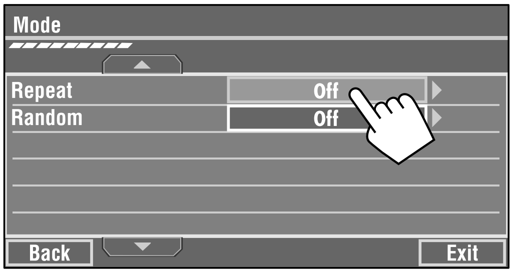
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

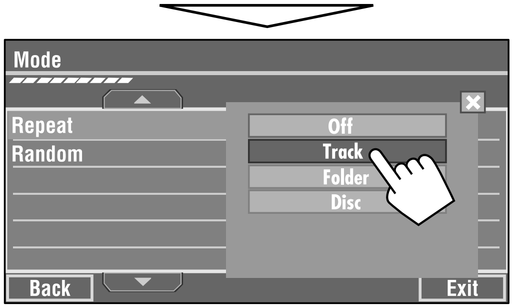
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].

3



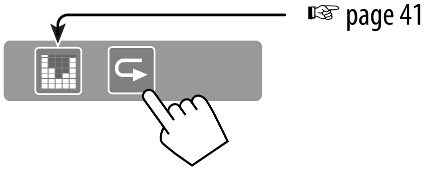


When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

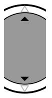
Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

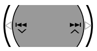
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



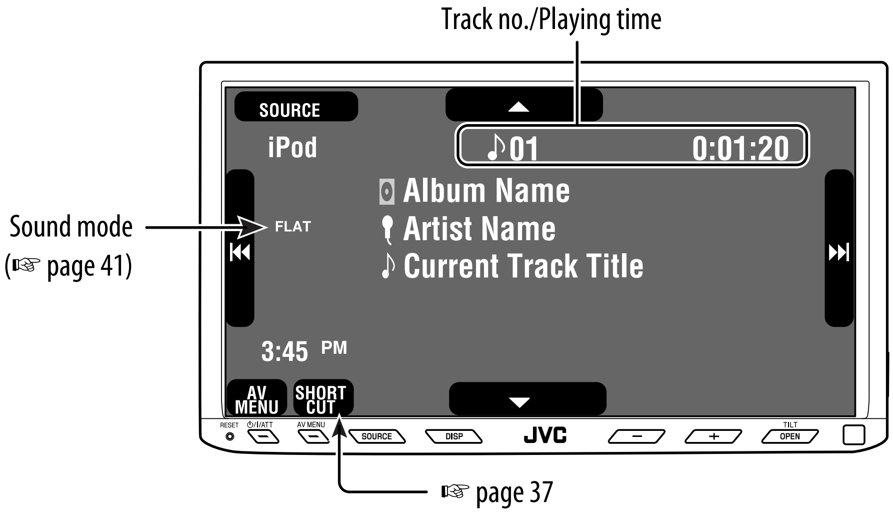
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

∇ △ : Select disc.


: Select folder (MP3 only).


- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
FLAT
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 37

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.
Press: Select an item.
Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

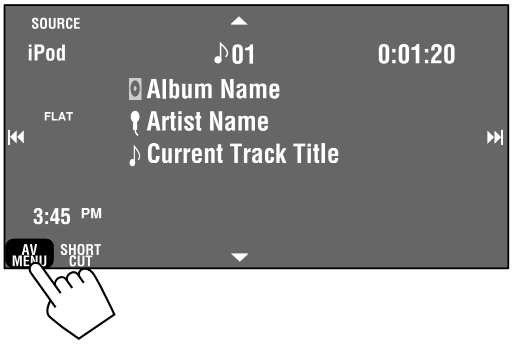
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

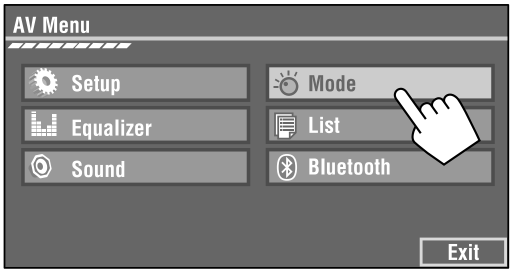
Selecting playback modes

1

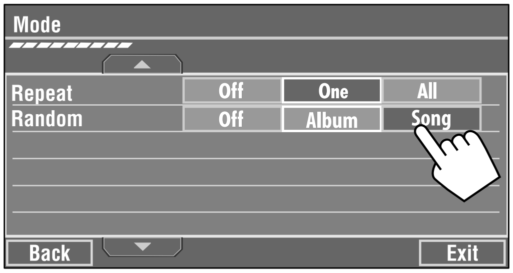

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Equalizer
Sound
Mode
List
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

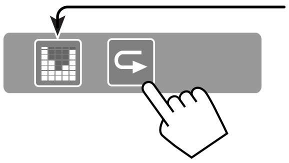
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

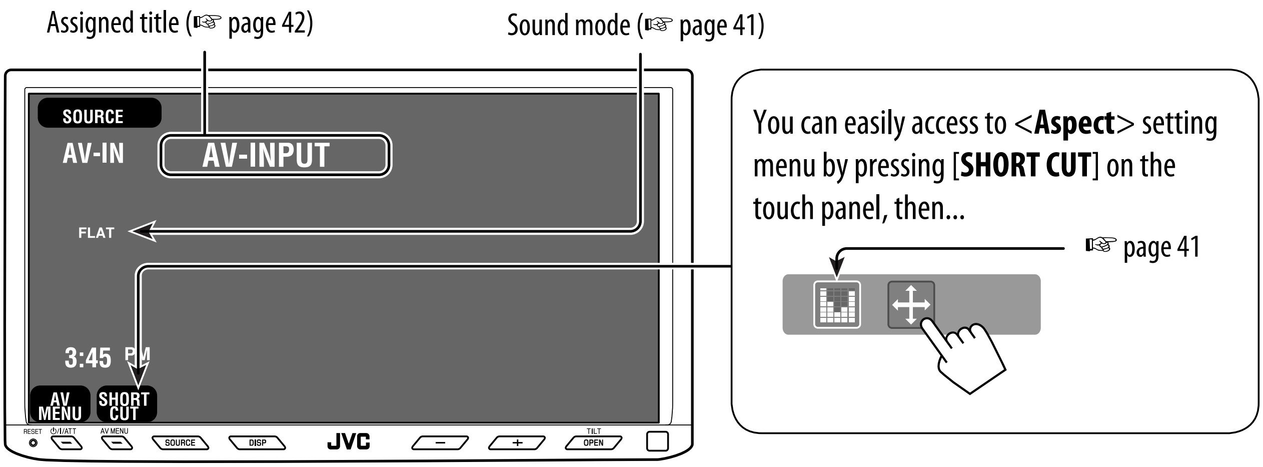
☞ page 41



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


Assigned title (☞ page 42)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

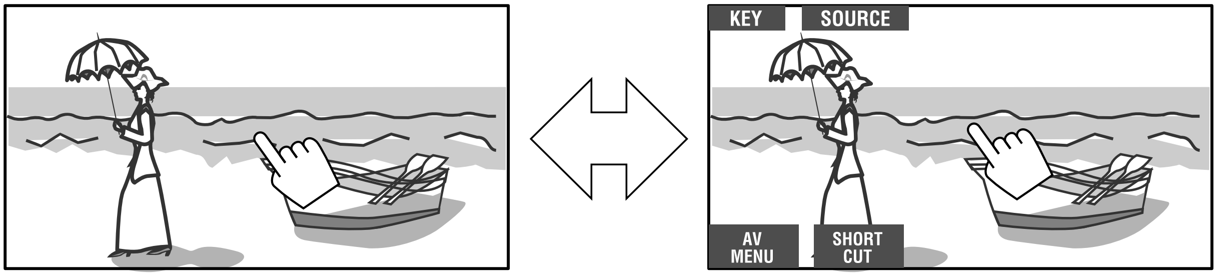
You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

☞ page 41
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)
   - You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture


KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

Navigation screen

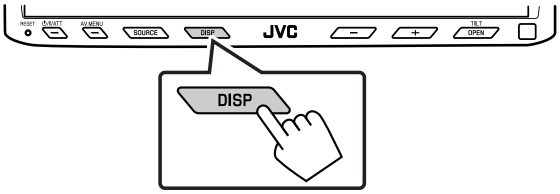
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 47)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

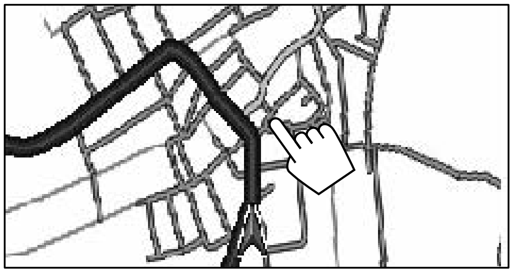


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 45)

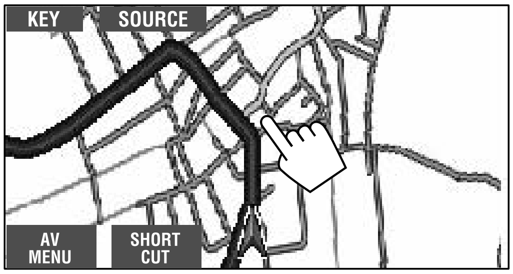
* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch the screen (center portion).

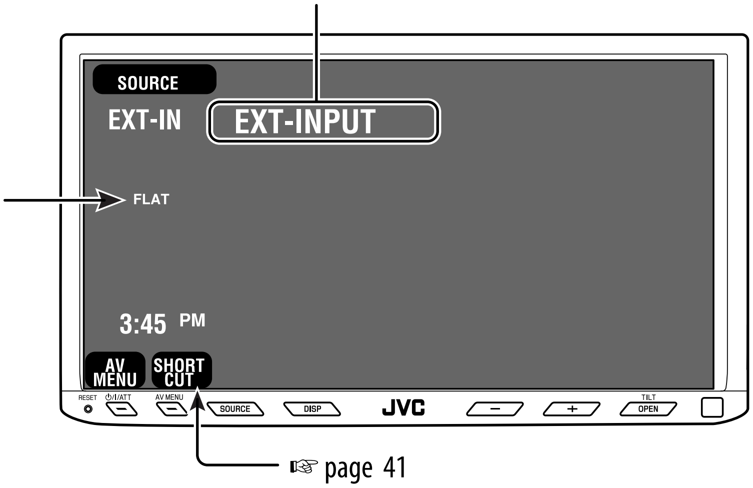
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 47)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 42)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

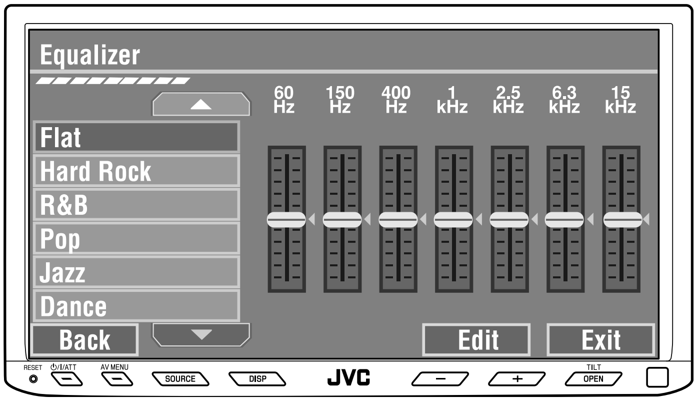
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

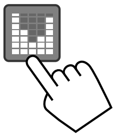
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

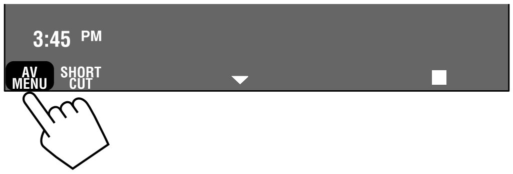
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

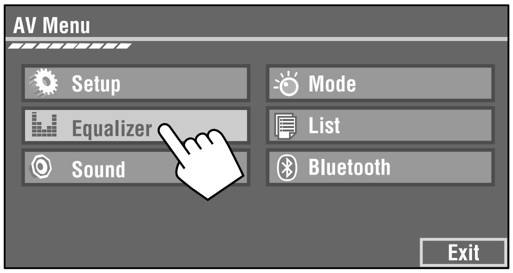


❶

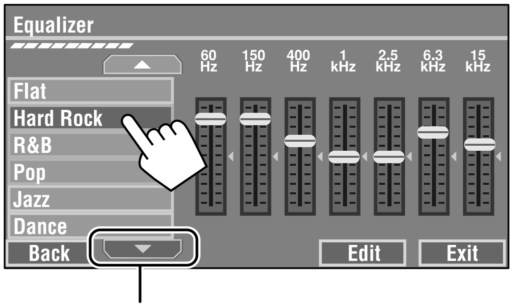

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

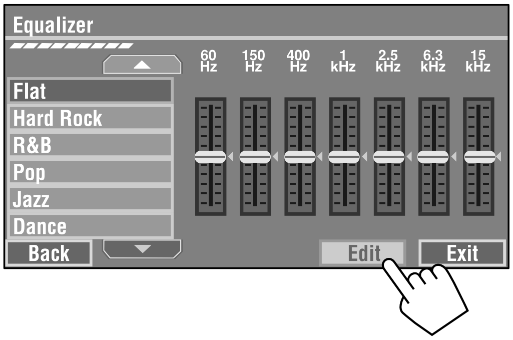
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 58.

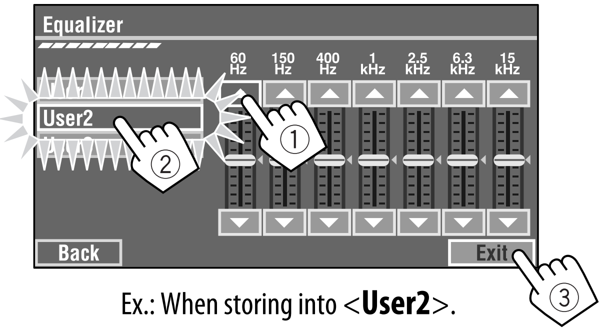
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

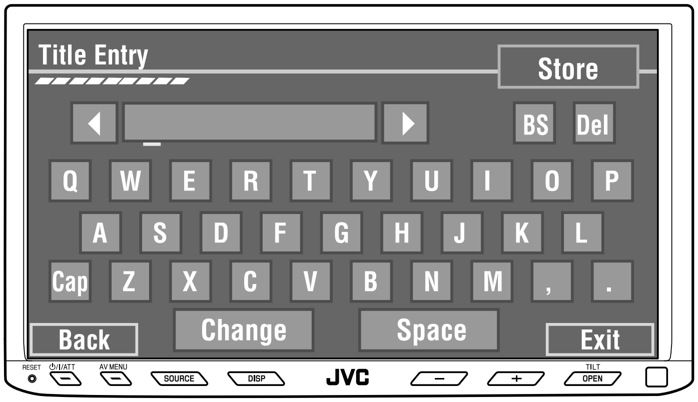

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
③
Back
Exit

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

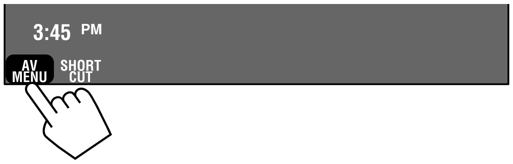
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

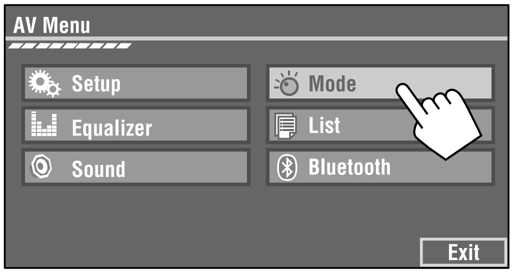
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

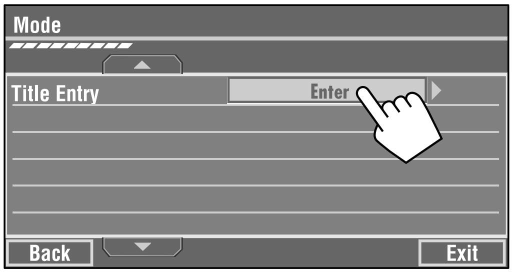
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

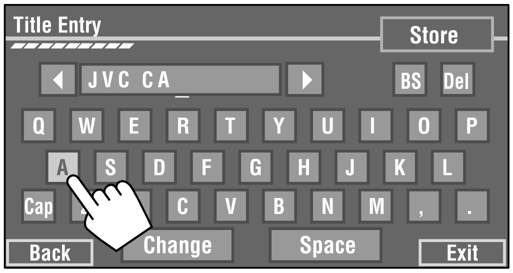

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

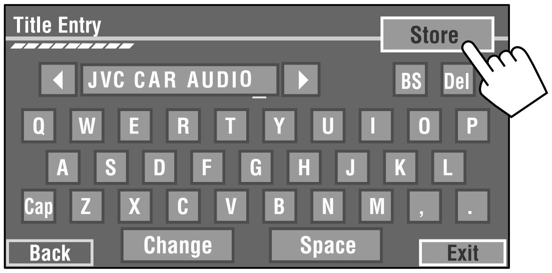
❸ Assign a title.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

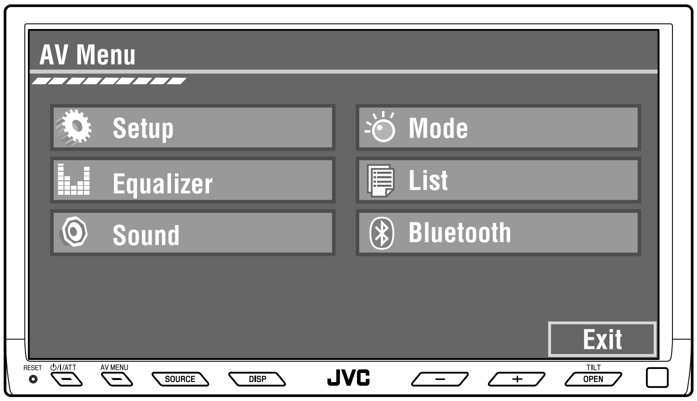
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 59).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

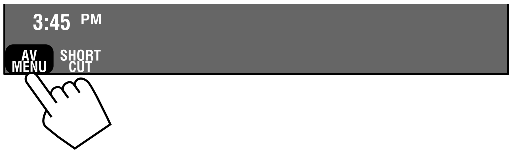

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

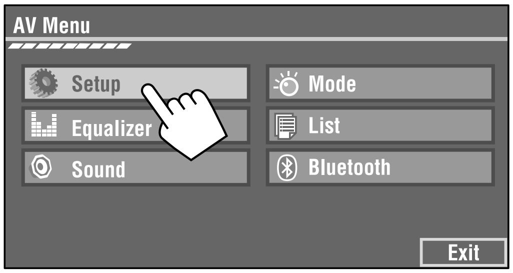
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

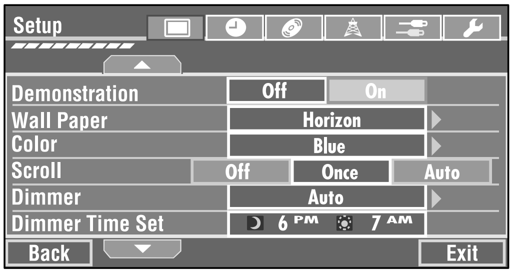
❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

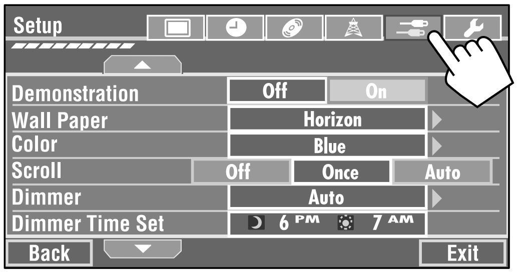
❷

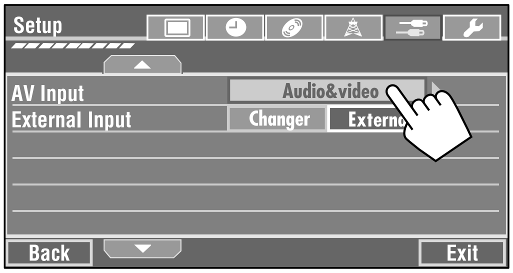

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

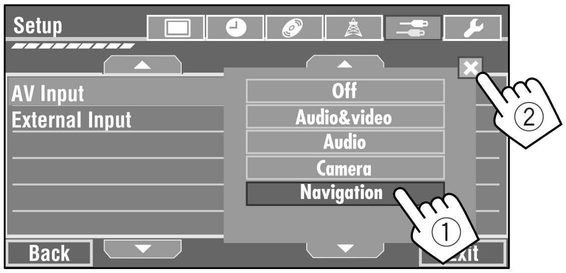

Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM
Setup
Back
Exit

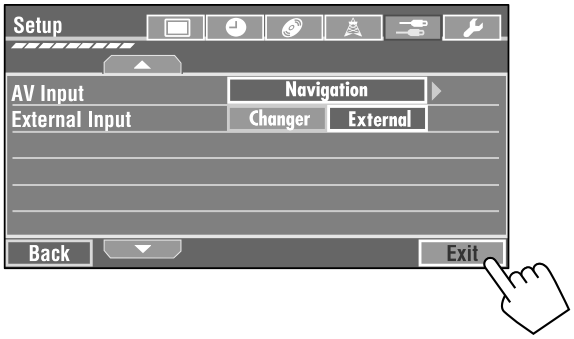
Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM
Setup
Back
Exit


AV Input: Audio&video
External Input: Changer / Externa
Setup
Back
Exit


AV Input
External Input
Setup
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
①
②
Back
Exit


AV Input: Navigation
External Input: Changer / External
Setup
Back
Exit

Setup

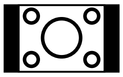
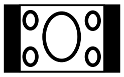
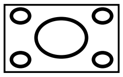
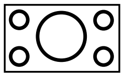
The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. (only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>, ☞ next page) • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

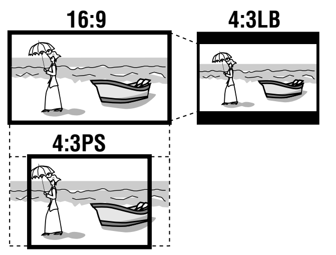
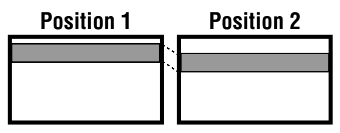
Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Display</td><td>Aspect*3</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Full:
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Language*4</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [59]</td></tr>
<tr><td>NTSC/PAL</td><td>Select the color system of the external monitor connected—NTSC, PAL.
• Turn off the power and turn it on again to make the new setting effective.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial 1:00AM ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8]
Off, On</td></tr>
</table>

---

[3] *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

[4] *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language***[1]	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Audio Language*[1]	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Subtitle*[1]	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Monitor Type*[1]  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*[1]  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*[1]	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*[1]	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*[1]	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 57) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*[1] *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input***2	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [38, 39] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***3 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*4	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***5: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 36] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [40] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.

*2 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*3 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*4 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*5 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

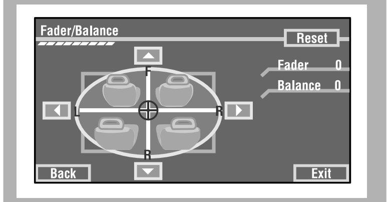
	Menu items	**Selectable settings, [reference page]**
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [41]

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader 0 Balance 0	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry	Only for FM/AM stations, “AV-IN,” and “EXT-IN.” ☞ [42]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 37]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 37]

*1 *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)

For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth[1]

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu [2]	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message[3]	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

[1] *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

[2] *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

[3] *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *[4]	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *[5]	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *[5]	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *[5]	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *[6]	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*[4] *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*[5] *Only for the cellular phone connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." Not selectable when "New Device" is selected.*

*[6] *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

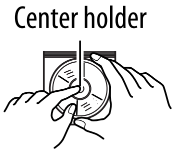
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



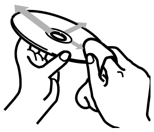
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

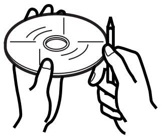
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

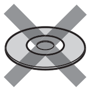
To play new discs



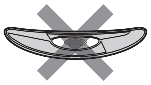
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

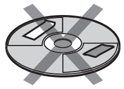
SingleCD—8 cm disc



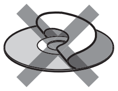
Warped disc



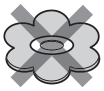
Sticker and sticker residue



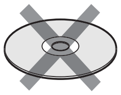
Stick-on label



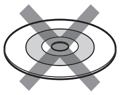
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  - * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

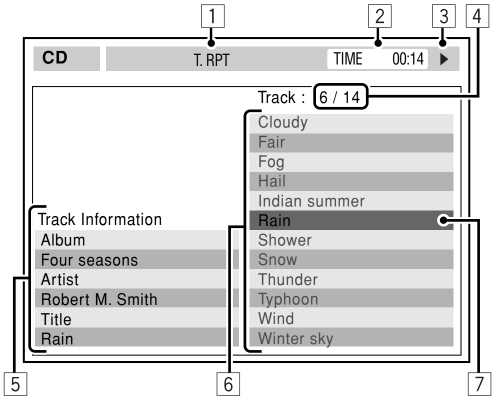
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

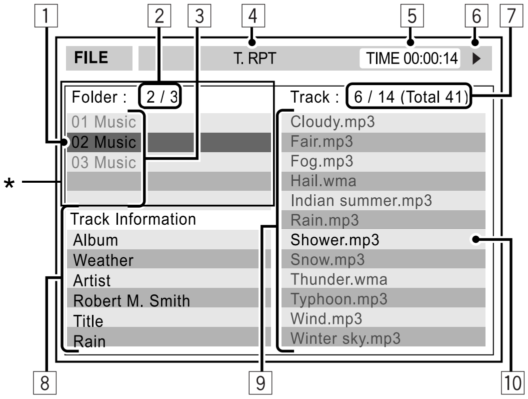
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
*
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
❓ : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *[1]
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *[2]

  *[1] When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *[2] It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 46)

<D. Audio Output> / **Playback disc**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 42)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 44)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and “Parking Brake” appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• “Eject Error” or “Loading Error” appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• “Region code error” appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “Not Support” appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 50)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

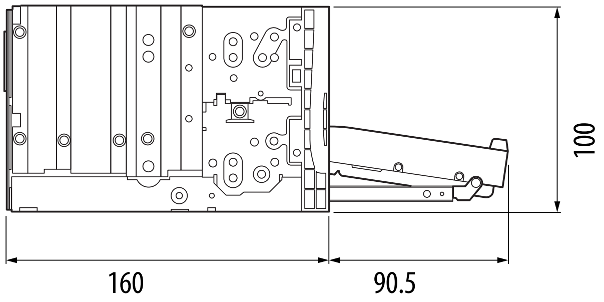
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "No Files" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC/PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	171 mm × 97 mm × 21 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.6 kg

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Ada MASALAH dengan cara pengoperasian?

Setel kembali unit Anda

Lihat halaman mengenai Bagaimana mereset unit anda

EN, IN

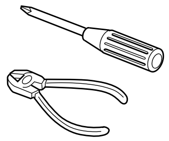
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1207MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KW-AVX716/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan



LVT1780-010A
[UN]

1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN, IN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

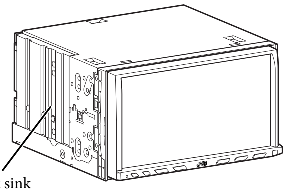
ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Endapan panas

INDONESIA

Unit ini didesain untuk beroperasi hanya pada sistem listrik **12 V DC yang di-ground NEGATIVE**. Jika kendaraan Anda tidak dilengkapi sistem ini, maka diperlukan alat pembalik tegangan yang dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.

PERINGATAN

- JANGAN menginstal unit apa pun atau menjalin kabel apa pun pada lokasi di mana;
  - unit dapat menghalangi pengoperasian roda kemudi dan tuas persneling, karena dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.
  - unit dapat menghalangi pengoperasian alat keselamatan seperti kantung udara, karena hal ini dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan yang fatal.
  - ini dapat menghalangi pandangan.
- JANGAN mengoperasikan unit apa pun sewaktu mengendalikan roda kemudi, karena hal ini dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.
- Pengemudi tidak boleh menonton ke monitor sewaktu mengemudi. Ini dapat mengakibatkan kecerobohan dan menyebabkan kecelakaan.
- Jika Anda harus mengoperasikan unit selagi mengemudi, pastikan Anda melihat ke sekeliling dengan cermat, karena kalau tidak, Anda bisa terlibat kecelakaan lalu lintas.
- Jika rem parkir tidak bekerja, terlihat tulisan "Parking Brake" berkedip pada monitor dan tidak ada pemutaran gambar yang akan ditunjukkan.
  - Peringatan ini hanya muncul apabila kabel rem parkir terhubung ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang dalam mobil.

Catatan mengenai sambungan listrik:
- Ganti sekring dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekring sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.
- Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω**).
  Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "Amplifier Gain" ("PENAMBAH PENGUAT") untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 49 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).
- Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.
- Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan unit ini.

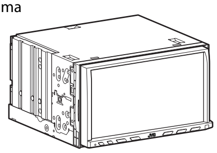
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit.
If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

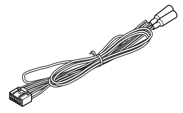
Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

Bagian-bagian berikut disediakan untuk unit ini.
Jika ada yang hilang, segera hubungi penyalur Anda.

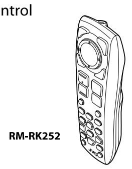
Main unit
Unit utama



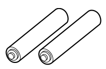
Power cord
Kabel listrik



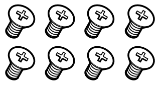
Remote controller
Remote kontrol



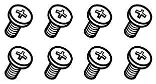
Batteries
Baterai



Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Sekrup-sekrup kepala datar (M5 × 8 mm)



Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Sekrup-sekrup kepala bulat (M5 × 8 mm)



Crimp connector
Konektor kerut

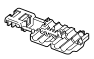
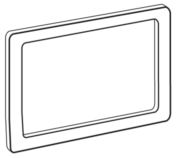
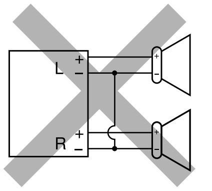


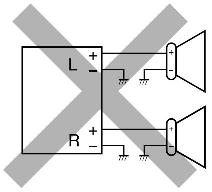
Plate for use with a Nissan car
Pelat untuk digunakan dengan mobil Nissan

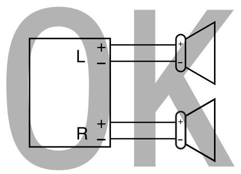


PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:
- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, unit tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil Anda.







INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

PEMASANGAN (DALAM BINGKAI TEMPATNYA)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan pemasangan yang khas. Namun, Anda harus melakukan penyesuaian pada mobil tertentu. Jika ada pertanyaan atau perlu informasi mengenai kit pemasangan, tanyakan kepada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau perusahaan yang menyediakannya.

- Jika Anda tidak tahu pasti cara memasang unit ini dengan benar, serahkan pemasangan kepada teknisi yang memenuhi syarat.

Sebelum memasang unit

- Apabila memasang unit, pastikan Anda menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang tersedia sebagaimana yang diinstruksikan. Jika menggunakan sekrup lain, komponen bisa menjadi longgar atau rusak.
- Sewaktu mengencangkan sekrup-sekrup atau baut, hati-hati, jangan sampai menjepit kabel sambungan yang manapun.
- Pastikan tidak ada yang menghalangi kipas pada panel belakang untuk menjaga aliran udara yang baik apabila kipas ini dipasang.

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.

Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 and 4.

4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

1 Copot sistem audio yang aslinya terpasang dalam mobil berikut braket montasi.

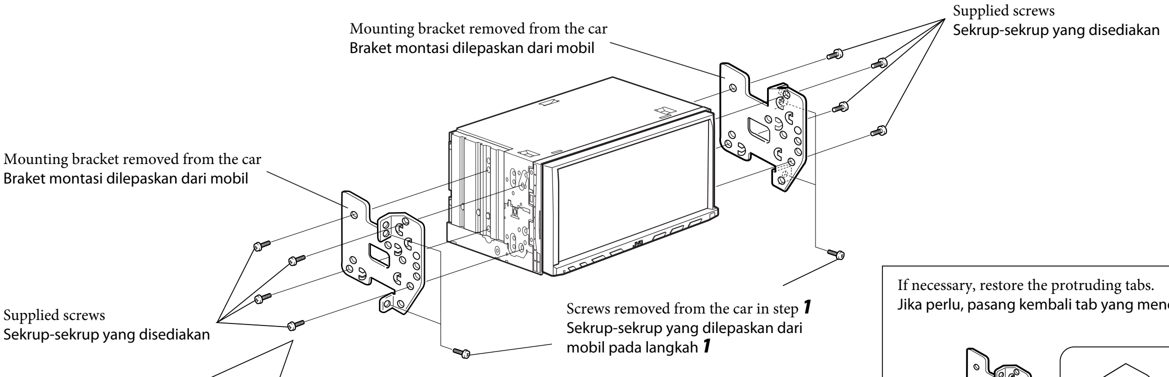
Catatan: Pastikan Anda menyimpan semua sekrup-sekrup dan komponen yang dilepaskan dari mobil untuk penggunaan di kemudian hari.

2 Pasangkan braket montasi (yang dilepaskan dari mobil) ke unit ini (lihat di bawah).

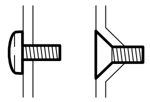
3 Lakukan koneksi listrik yang diperlukan.
- Lihat halaman 3 dan 4.

4 Pasang unit ini dengan menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang dilepaskan pada langkah ***1.***

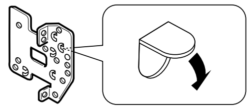
Berikut adalah contoh pemasangan pada mobil Toyota. Untuk rincian lebih lanjut, tanyakan kepada penyalur audio mobil JVC.


Supplied screws
Sekrup-sekrup yang disediakan
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Braket montasi dilepaskan dari mobil
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Braket montasi dilepaskan dari mobil
Supplied screws
Sekrup-sekrup yang disediakan
Screws removed from the car in step 1
Sekrup-sekrup yang dilepaskan dari mobil pada langkah 1

Select the appropriate type fitting to your audio system space.
Pilih tipe sambungan yang sesuai untuk ruang sistem audio Anda.



If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.
Jika perlu, pasang kembali tab yang menonjol keluar.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Catatan : Apabila memasang unit pada braket montasi, pastikan Anda menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang disediakan (M5 x 8 mm). Jika menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang lebih panjang, bisa merusak unit.

When installing the unit in a Nissan car
Apabila memasang unit dalam mobil Nissan

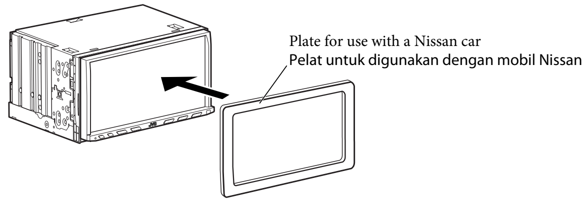
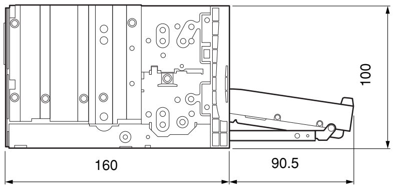


Plate for use with a Nissan car
Pelat untuk digunakan dengan mobil Nissan

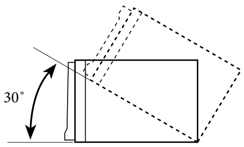
Required space for the monitor ejection
Ruang yang diperlukan untuk pengeluaran monitor



Unit: mm
Unit: mm

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

Pasang unit tersebut pada sudut kurang dari 30˚, perhitungkan bahwa monitor akan keluar ketika sedang digunakan.



TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  - * Have you reset your unit?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

- **Sekring meledak.**
  - * Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?
- **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
  - * Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?
- **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
  - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?
- **Suara terdistorsi.**
  - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?
  - * Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?
- **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
  - * Apakah terminal tanahan belakang tersambung ke casis mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?
- **Alat penerima ini menjadi panas.**
  - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?
  - * Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?
- **Alat penerima ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
  - * Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) alat penerima anda?

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

INDONESIA

SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang unit.

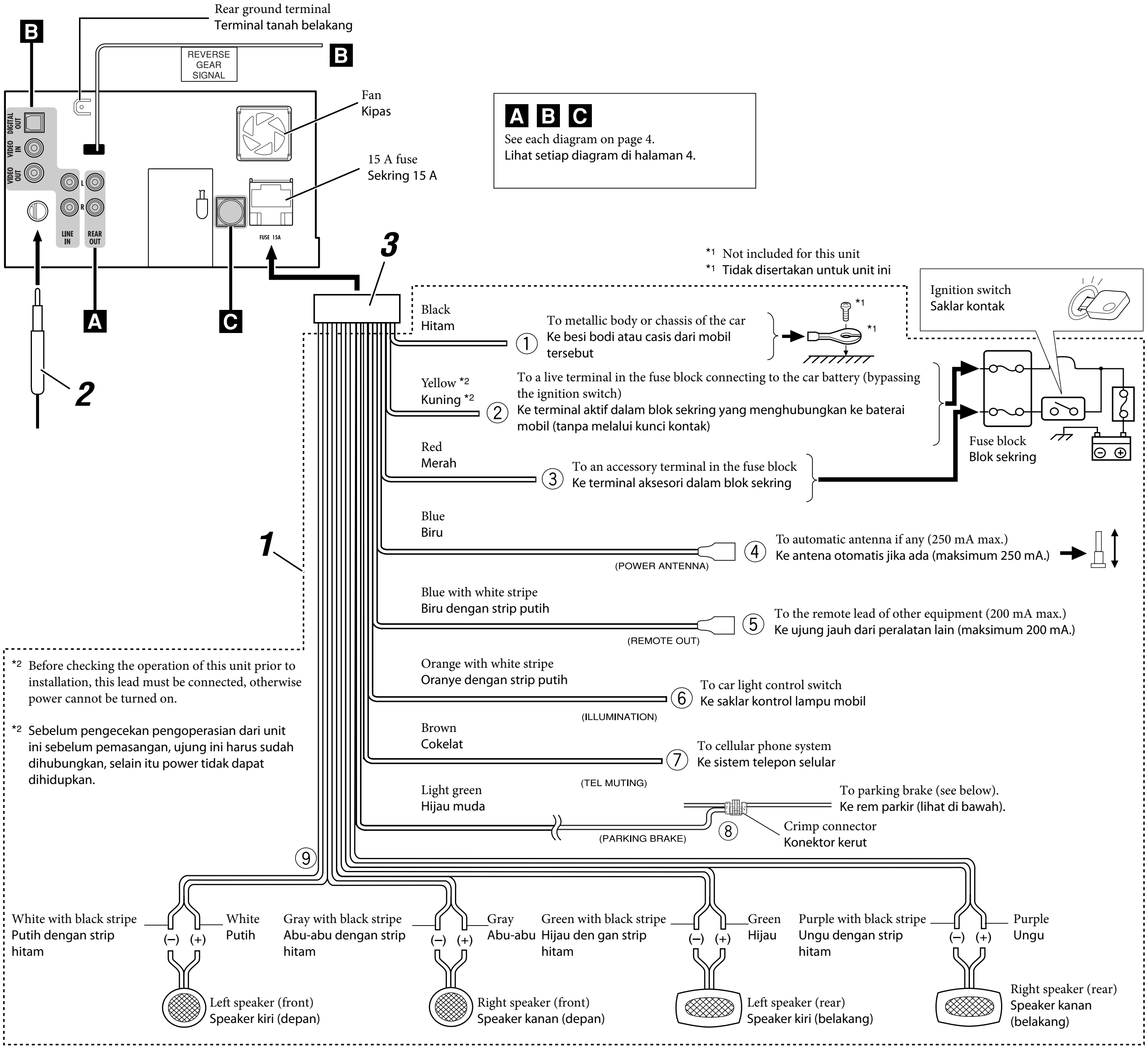
- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan unit ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Sebelum penyambungan: Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada unit.
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

1 Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.

2 Sambungkan kabel antena.

3 Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke unit.


B
Rear ground terminal
Terminal tanah belakang
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
B
Fan
Kipas
15 A fuse
Sekring 15 A
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
A
C
2
3
1
Black
Hitam
To metallic body or chassis of the car
Ke besi bodi atau casis dari mobil tersebut
①
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Saklar kontak
Yellow *2
Kuning *2
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch)
Ke terminal aktif dalam blok sekring yang menghubungkan ke baterai mobil (tanpa melalui kunci kontak)
Fuse block
Blok sekring
Red
Merah
③
To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
Ke terminal aksesori dalam blok sekring
Blue
Biru
(POWER ANTENNA)
④
To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
Ke antena otomatis jika ada (maksimum 250 mA.)
Blue with white stripe
Biru dengan strip putih
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤
To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
Ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain (maksimum 200 mA.)
Orange with white stripe
Oranye dengan strip putih
(ILLUMINATION)
⑥
To car light control switch
Ke saklar kontrol lampu mobil
Brown
Cokelat
(TEL MUTING)
⑦
To cellular phone system
Ke sistem telepon selular
Light green
Hijau muda
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑧
To parking brake (see below).
Ke rem parkir (lihat di bawah).
Crimp connector
Konektor kerut
⑨
White with black stripe
Putih dengan strip hitam
White
Putih
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Speaker kiri (depan)
Gray with black stripe
Abu-abu dengan strip hitam
Gray
Abu-abu
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
Speaker kanan (depan)
Green with black stripe
Hijau den gan strip hitam
Green
Hijau
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
Speaker kiri (belakang)
Purple with black stripe
Ungu dengan strip hitam
Purple
Ungu
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)
Speaker kanan (belakang)

A B C
See each diagram on page 4.
Lihat setiap diagram di halaman 4.

*1 Not included for this unit
*1 Tidak disertakan untuk unit ini

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

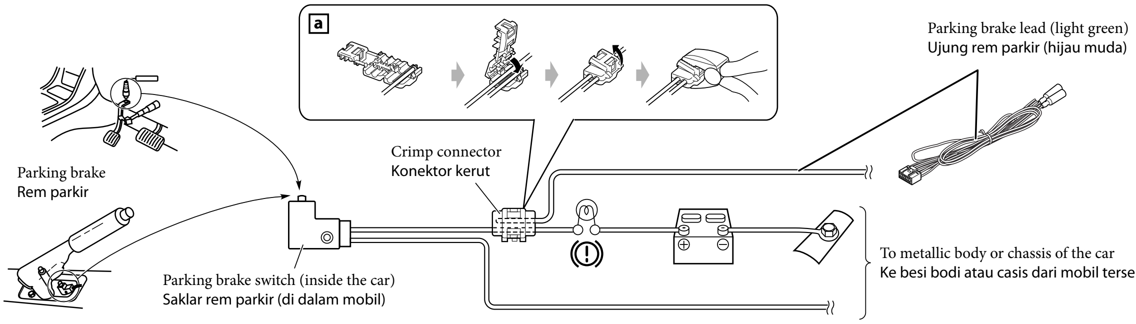
*2 Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari unit ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.

A Connecting the parking brake lead

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.

Menghubungkan ujung rem parkir

Menghubungkan ujung rem parkir ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang dalam mobil.


a
Parking brake lead (light green)
Ujung rem parkir (hijau muda)
Parking brake
Rem parkir
Crimp connector
Konektor kerut
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Saklar rem parkir (di dalam mobil)
To metallic body or chassis of the car
Ke besi bodi atau casis dari mobil tersebut

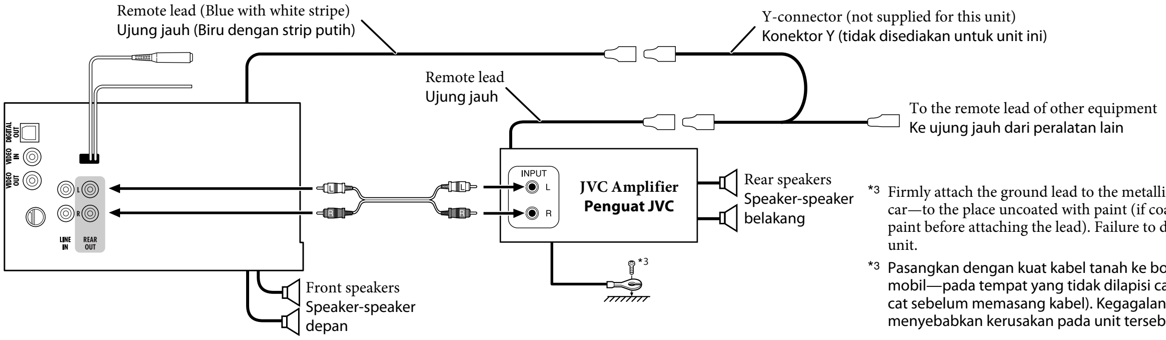
A Connecting an external amplifier / Penyambungan penguat eksternal

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.

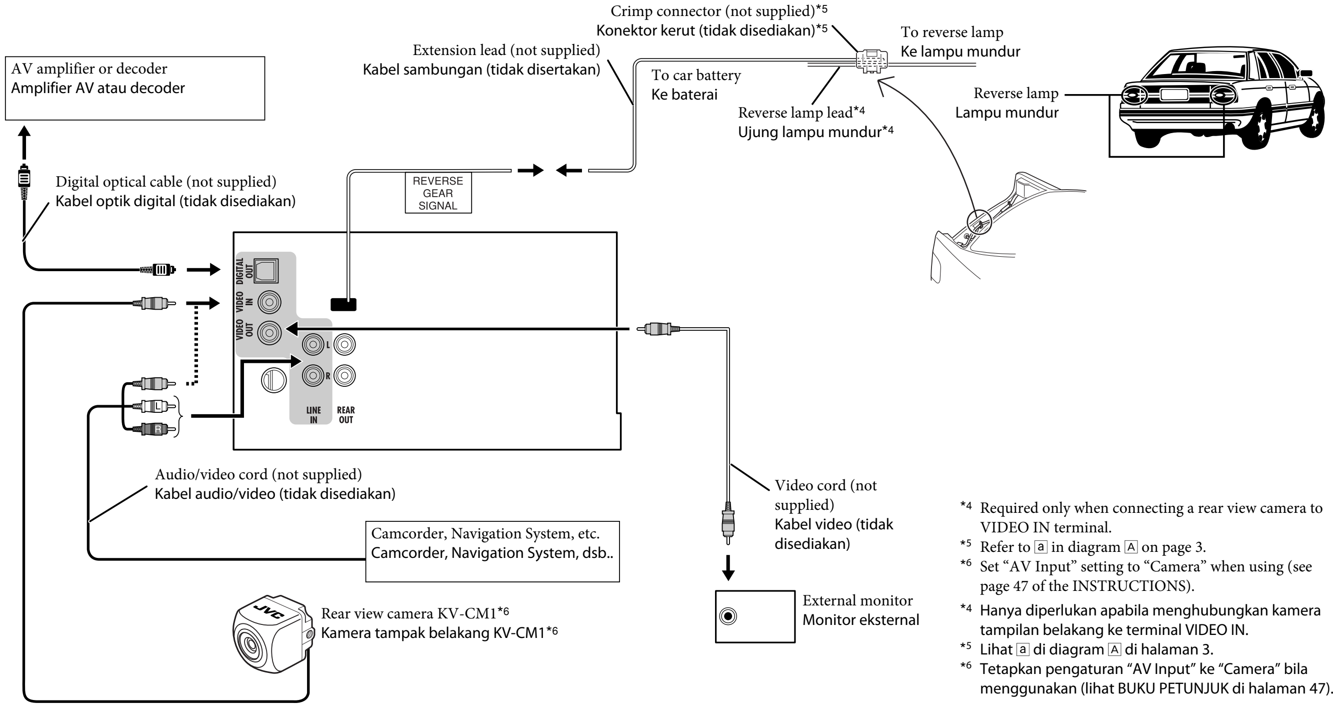
- Anda dapat mengalirkan daya listrik ke amplifier dengan menghubungkan kabel penyambung (warna biru dengan strip putih) unit ini ke amplifier. (Untuk menghubungkan peralatan lain dengan menggunakan kabel penyambung, konektor Y harus dibeli secara terpisah.)
- Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari unit ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari unit ini tidak digunakan.
- Anda dapat mematikan amplifier built-in dan mengirimkan sinyal audio hanya ke amplifier eksternal untuk mendapatkan suara yang bersih dan mencegah penimbunan panas di bagian dalam unit. Lihat BUKU PETUNJUK di halaman 49.


Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Ujung jauh (Biru dengan strip putih)
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Konektor Y (tidak disediakan untuk unit ini)
Remote lead
Ujung jauh
To the remote lead of other equipment
Ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
Penguat JVC
Rear speakers
Speaker-speaker belakang
*3
Front speakers
Speaker-speaker depan

*3 Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*3 Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada unit tersebut.

B Connections for external component playback / Koneksi untuk pemutaran komponen eksternal


Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
Konektor kerut (tidak disediakan)*5
To reverse lamp
Ke lampu mundur
Extension lead (not supplied)
Kabel sambungan (tidak disertakan)
AV amplifier or decoder
Amplifier AV atau decoder
To car battery
Ke baterai
Reverse lamp
Lampu mundur
Reverse lamp lead*4
Ujung lampu mundur*4
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Kabel optik digital (tidak disediakan)
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Kabel audio/video (tidak disediakan)
Video cord (not supplied)
Kabel video (tidak disediakan)
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
Camcorder, Navigation System, dsb..
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6
Kamera tampak belakang KV-CM1*6
External monitor
Monitor eksternal

*4 Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

*5 Refer to a in diagram A on page 3.

*6 Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*4 Hanya diperlukan apabila menghubungkan kamera tampilan belakang ke terminal VIDEO IN.

*5 Lihat a di diagram A di halaman 3.

*6 Tetapkan pengaturan "AV Input" ke "Camera" bila menggunakan (lihat BUKU PETUNJUK di halaman 47).

C Connections to the CD changer jack / Koneksi ke jack CD changer

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

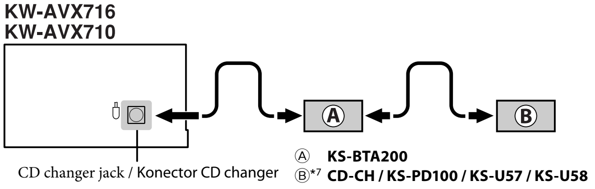
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series / Bila menghubungkan dua komponen dalam rangkaian


KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710
Ⓐ
Ⓑ
CD changer jack / Konector CD changer

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bila menghubungkan komponen eksternal, rujuk juga buku petunjuk yang dibekalkan untuk komponen dan adaptor.

Peringatan:
Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa unit sudah dimatikan.

Anda dapat menghubungkan komponen JVC berikut ini ke jack CD changer.

Komponen JVC	Nama model
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, dsb.

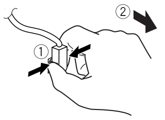
Anda juga dapat menghubungkan komponen berikut ini melalui berbagai adaptor JVC.

- Kabel koneksi mungkin harus dibeli secara terpisah.

Komponen	Adaptor	Nama model
Perangkat Bluetooth	Adaptor Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptor interface untuk iPod	KS-PD100
Audio player portabel dengan jack line output	Adaptor line input	KS-U57
Audio player portabel dengan jack stereo mini 3,5 mm	Adaptor AUX input	KS-U58

Bila menghubungkan beberapa komponen (maksimum: dua), dianjurkan agar anda menghubungkan komponen dalam rangkaian seperti dijelaskan di bawah.

To disconnect the connector / Untuk memutuskan konektor



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Pegang erat konektor (①) lalu tarik keluar (②).

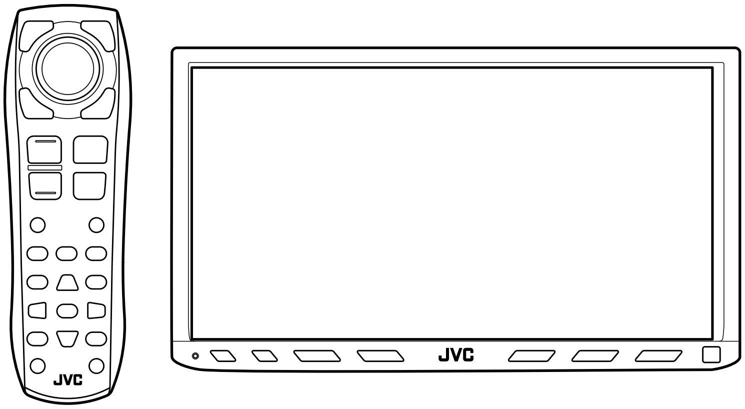
*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*7 Untuk menggunakan komponen ini, lakukan pengaturan masukan eksternal yang benar (lihat halaman 47 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).

iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Inc., terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan di negara-negara lain.

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR

KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1780-001A
[A]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

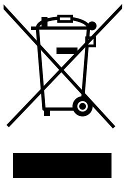
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

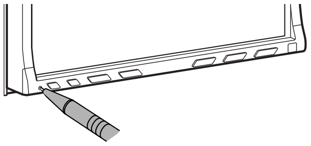
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.



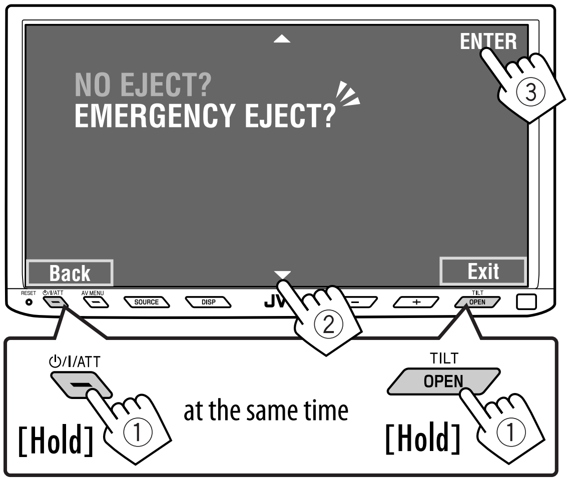
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc


ENTER
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
③
Back
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
TILT
OPEN
②
⏻/I/ATT
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold] ①
[Hold] ①

- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the iPod........................ 36
Using other external components..... 38

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 41
Assigning titles to the sources 42
Menu operations 43

REFERENCES

Maintenance.................................... 52
More about this unit 53
Troubleshooting.............................. 60
Specifications.................................. 64

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 4)*1 ALL 4 3 4 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

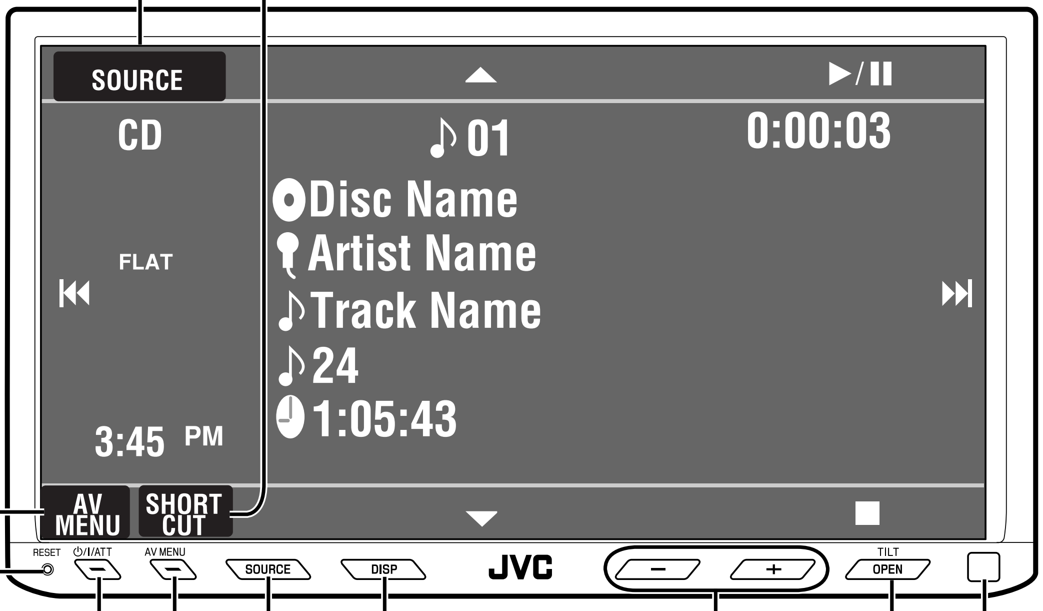
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 43

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
CD
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
♪Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

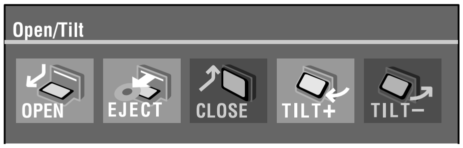
Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 43

- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

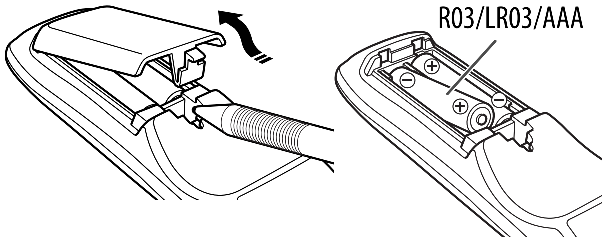
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

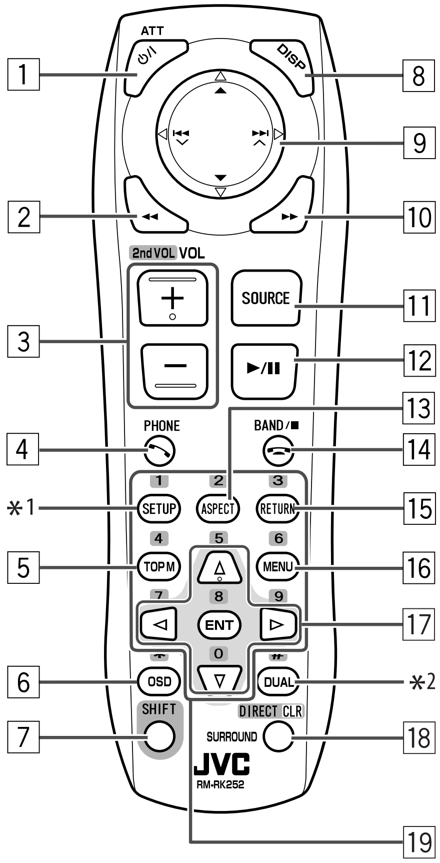
Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
*1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
*2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “✱.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**

- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  - – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  - – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:

- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  - – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  - – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:

- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:

- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  - – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  - – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:

- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:

- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 “TUNER”: Selects the bands.
“DISC”: Stops playback.
“Bluetooth PHONE”: Ends the call.
“Bluetooth AUDIO”: Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for “CD-CH.”

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for “DISC.”
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as “SURROUND.”

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- “TUNER”: Selects the preset station directly.

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*

*2 *Not used for this unit.*

*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

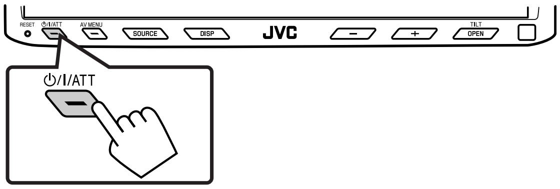
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

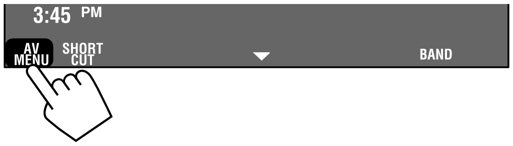
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 45)

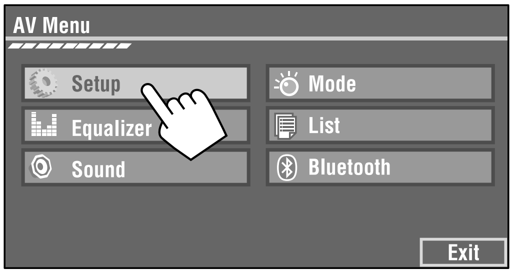
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

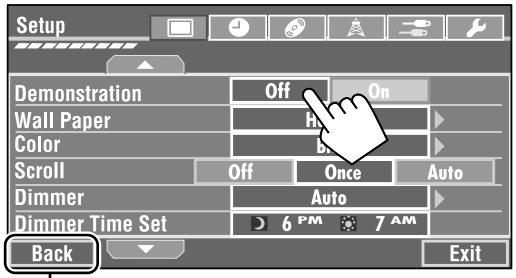

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

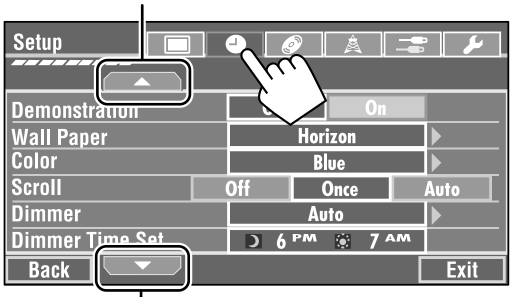
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

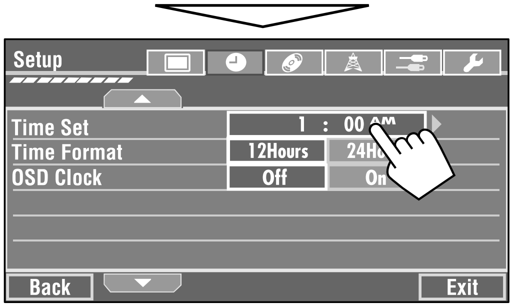
Return to the previous screen.

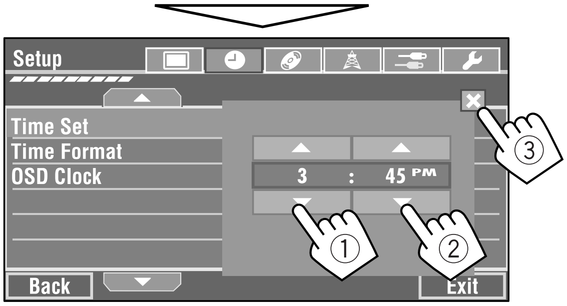
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

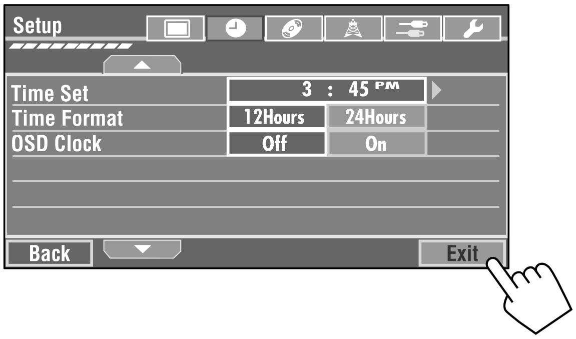

Setup
Demonstration: On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set: 1 : 00 AM
Time Format: 12Hours / 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off / On


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
3 : 45 PM
①
②
③
Back
Exit

❻ Finish the procedure.

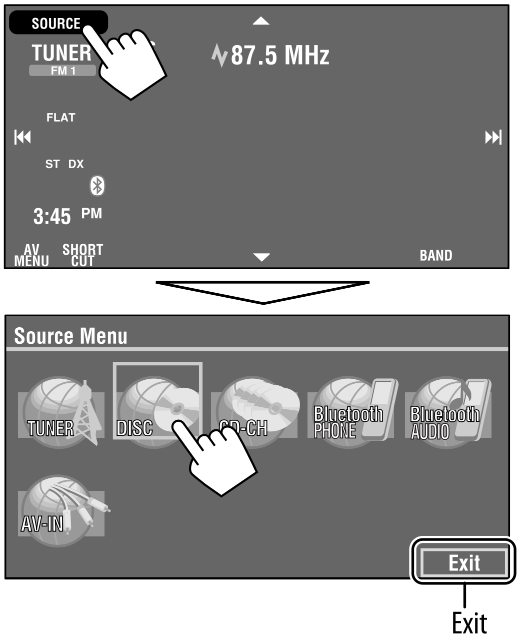

Setup
Time Set: 3 : 45 PM
Time Format: 12Hours / 24Hours
OSD Clock: Off / On

Common operations

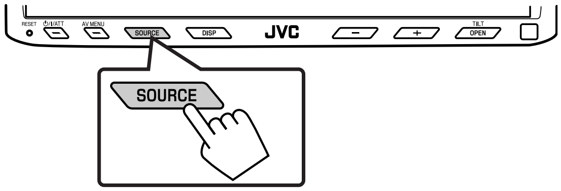
Selecting the playback source

- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 47).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit
Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
SOURCE

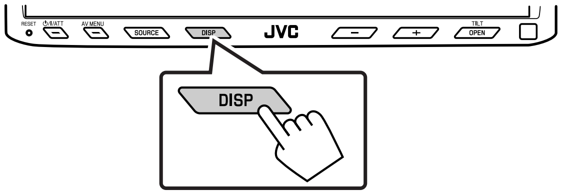
TUNER → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) →CD-CH, iPod, or **EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN →** (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

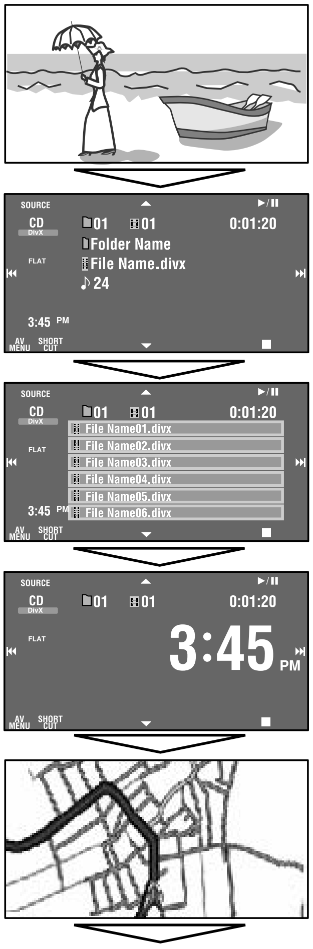
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
3:45 PM

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen

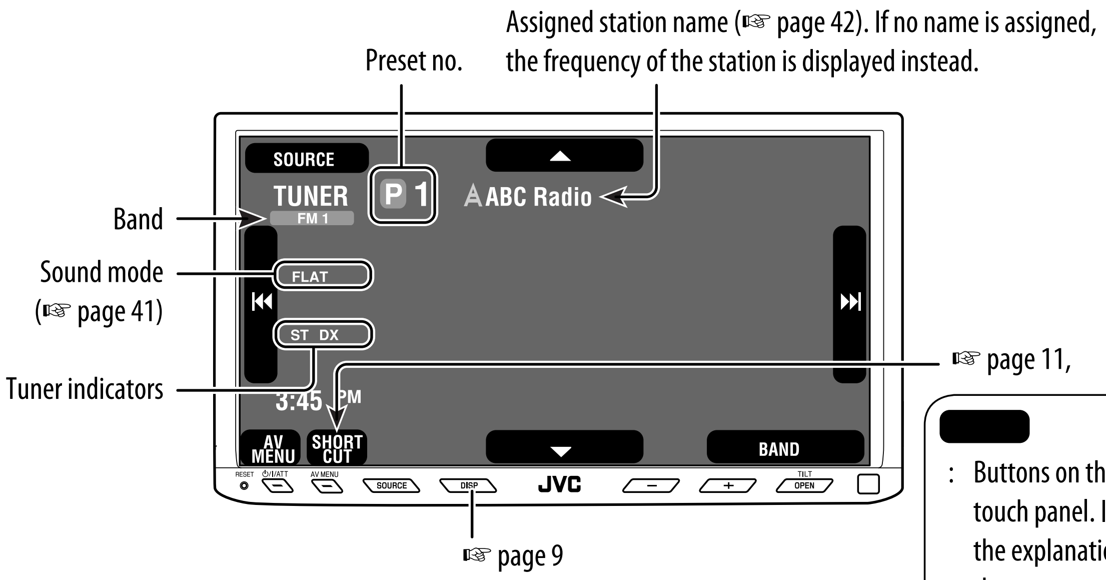
Track list

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 47)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 42). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 11,
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
JVC

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

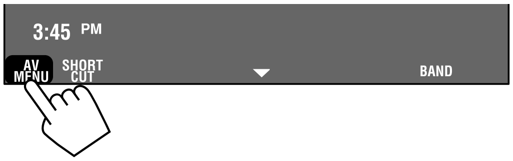
❷ **Press [BAND].** →FM1→FM2→FM3→AM

❸ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◀◀]or [▶▶|] until “Manual Search” appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

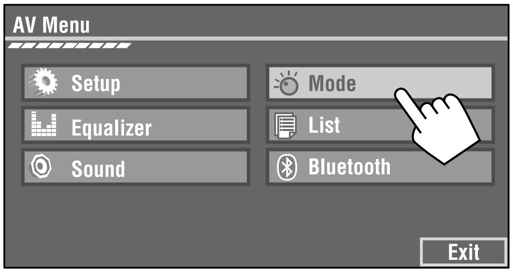
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

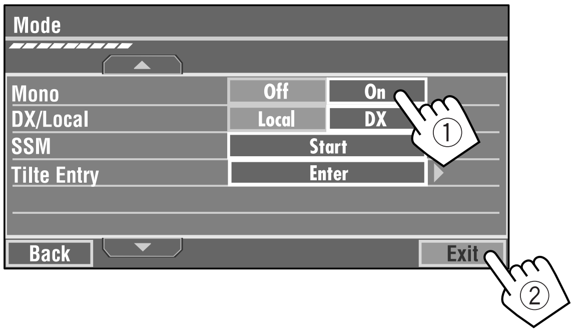

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Tilte Entry
Enter
Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

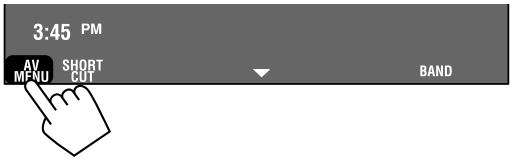
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

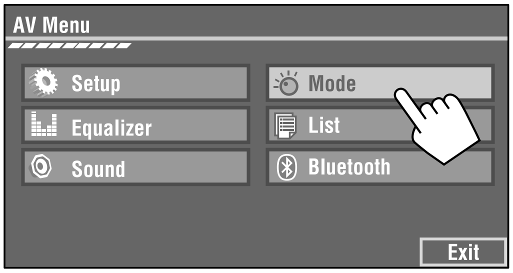
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

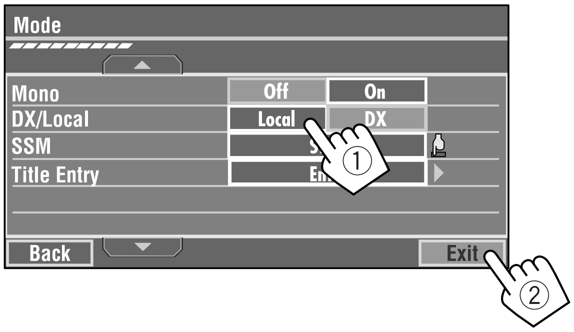

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

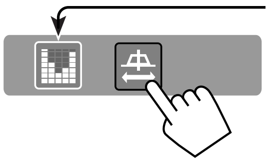
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

- You can also change <**IF Band Width**> setting (for details, ☞ page 47).
  <**IF Band Width**> menu can be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then..

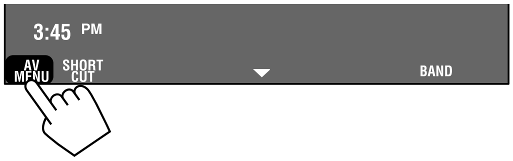


☞ page 41

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

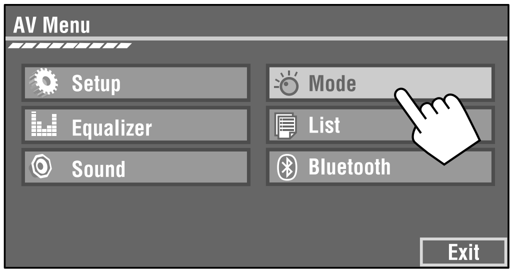
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

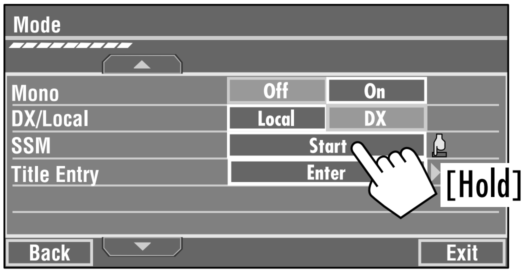

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

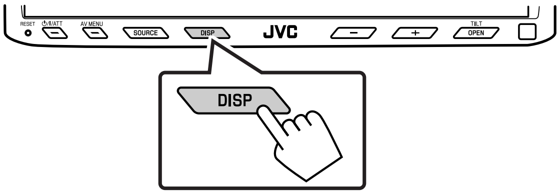

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

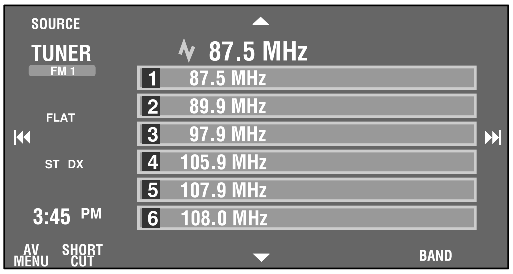
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

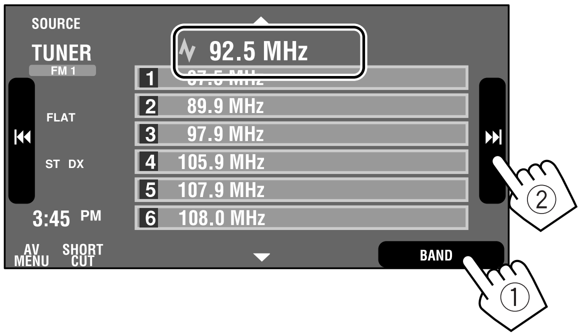
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 Display the Preset List.

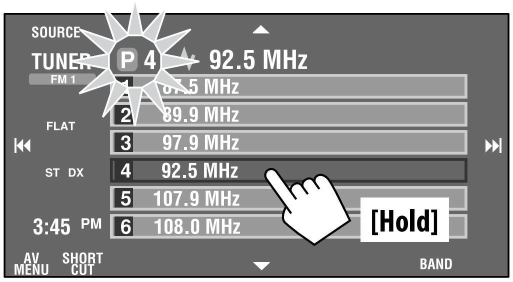

RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 Tune in to a station you want to preset.


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
92.5 MHz
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

3 Select a preset number.

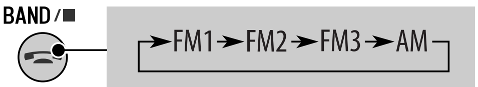

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
92.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

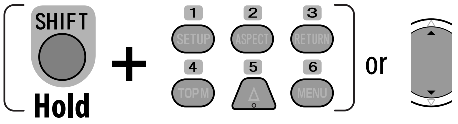
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

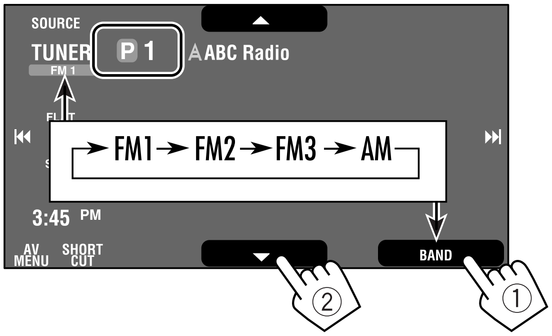

BAND /■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

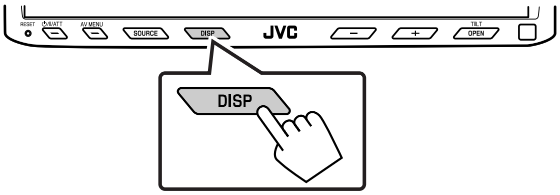
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

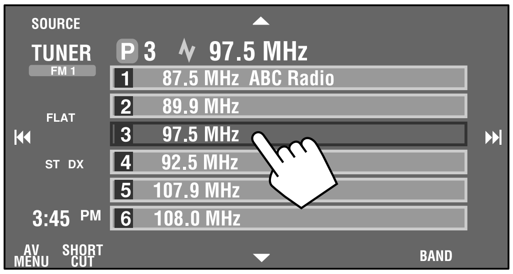

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 3
97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

Disc operations

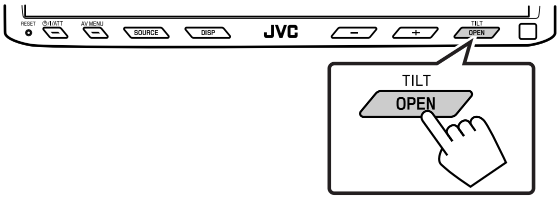
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

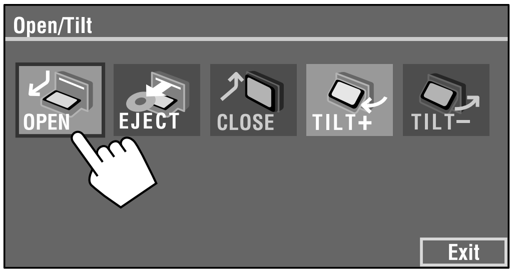
❶ Open the monitor panel.



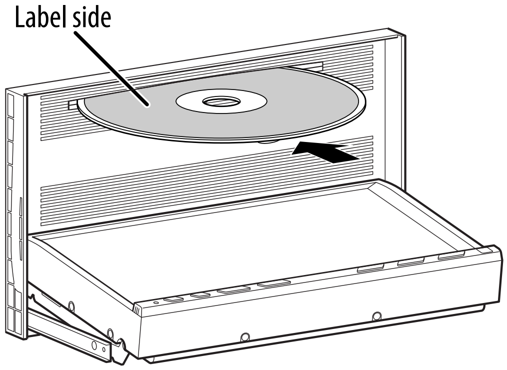
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

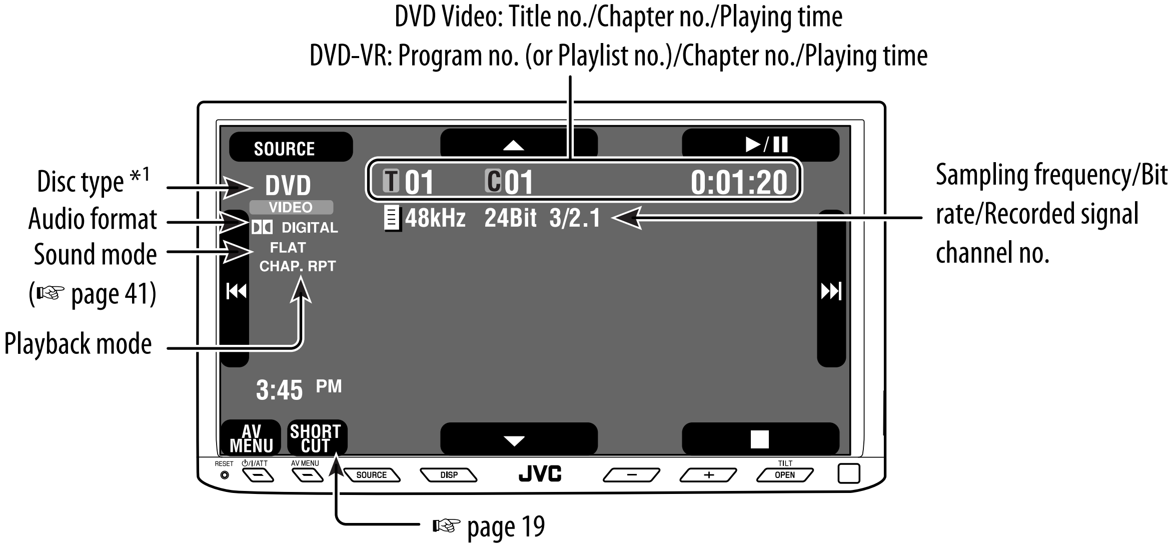
When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 57)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T 01
C 01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

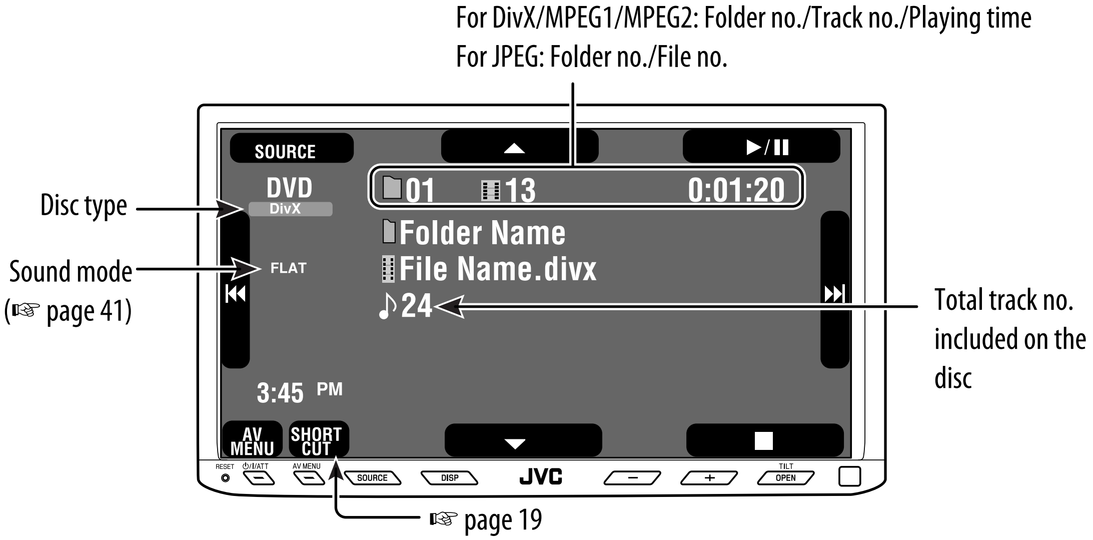
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

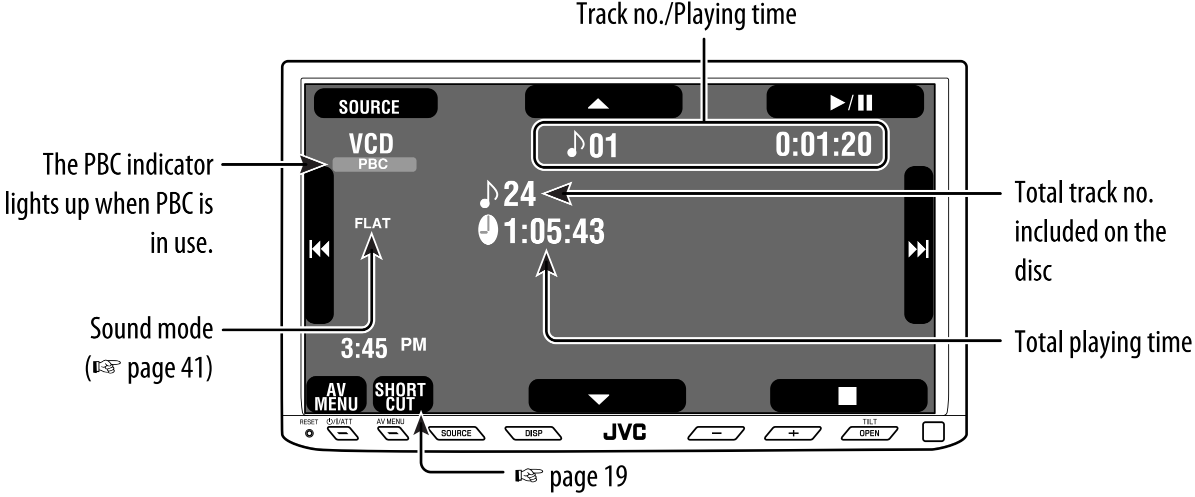
- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX MPEG JPEG


For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.
Disc type
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 19
SOURCE
DVD
DivX
FLAT
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD


Track no./Playing time
The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Total track no. included on the disc
Total playing time
☞ page 19
SOURCE
VCD
PBC
FLAT
♪01
0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
JVC

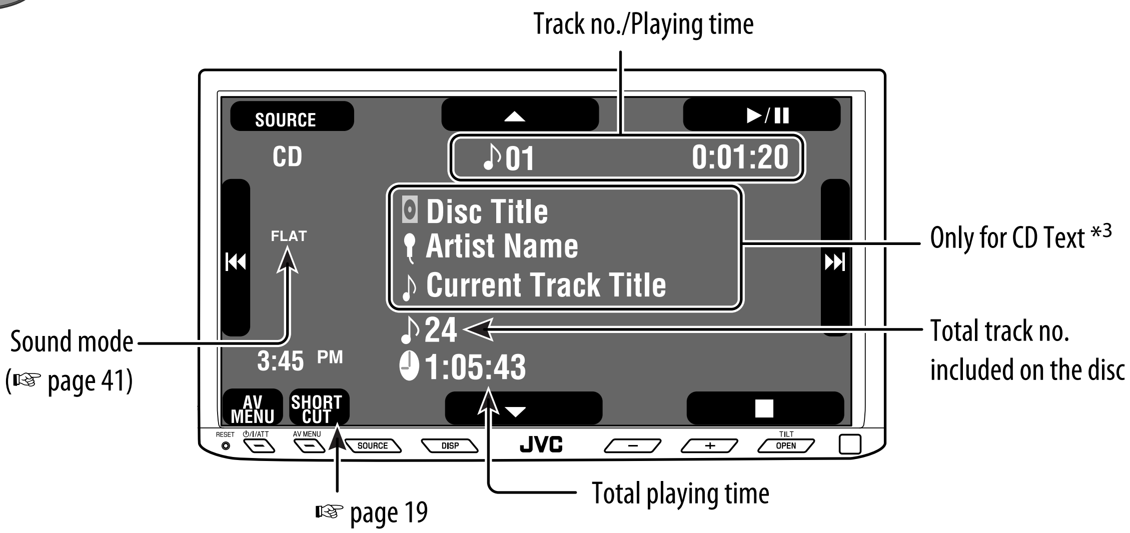
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

---

*1 *Search speed: ▶▶1 ⇨ ▶▶2*

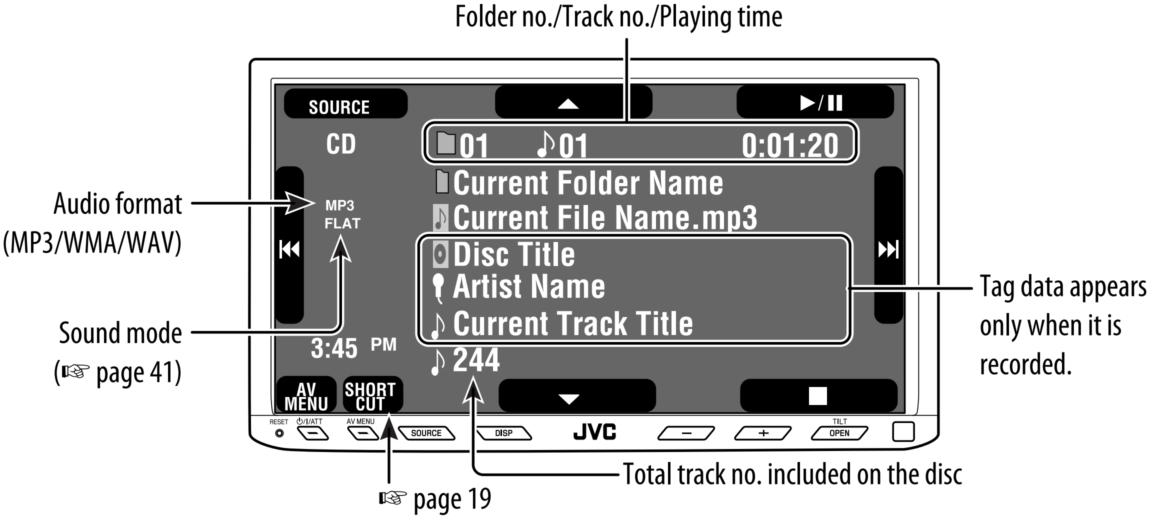
*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
▲
▶/❚❚
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Only for CD Text *3
FLAT
♪24
Total track no. included on the disc
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
3:45 PM
1:05:43
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Total playing time
☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


Folder no./Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
CD
▲
▶/❚❚
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)
MP3
FLAT
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
3:45 PM
♪244
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

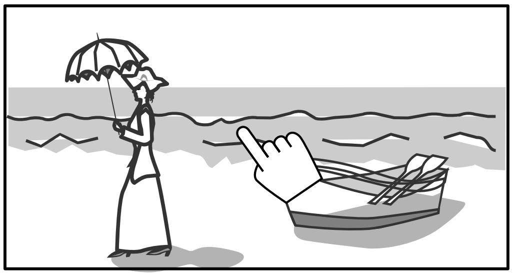
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

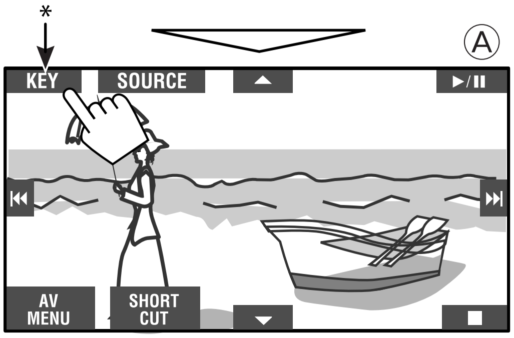
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

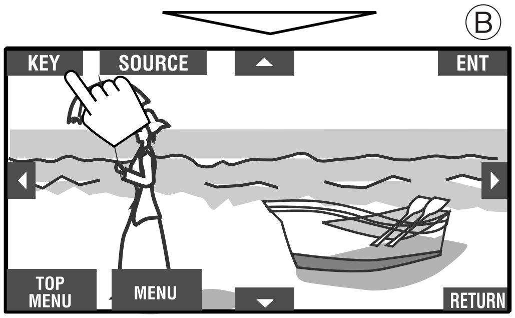
- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 45)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



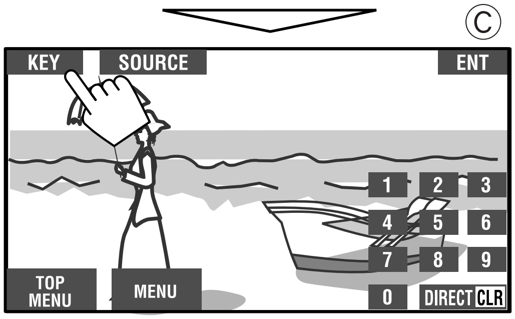
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

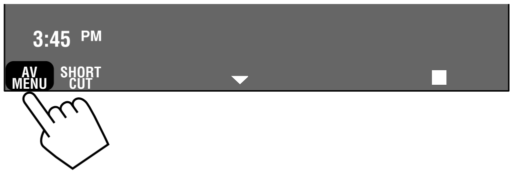
Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

Selecting playback modes

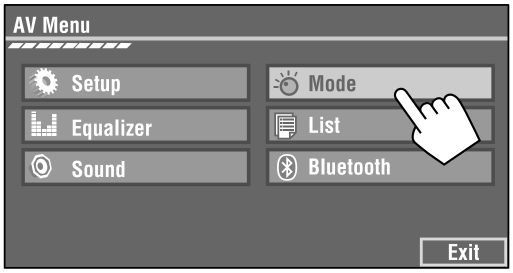
You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

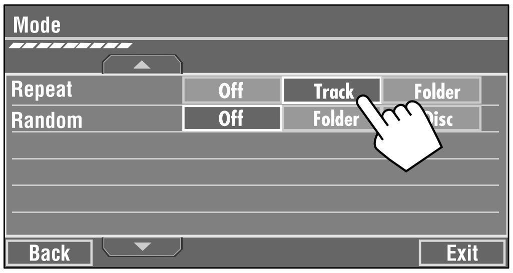

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

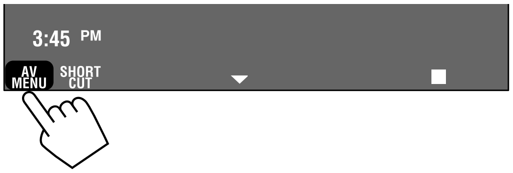
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*[1]	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*[1] **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*[1] *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

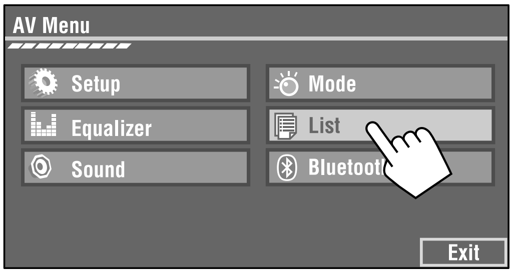
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/ Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

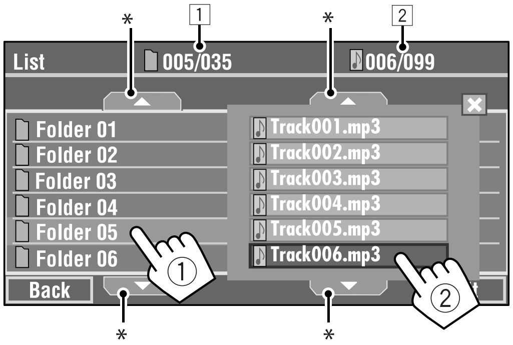

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select a folder (①), then a track (②).

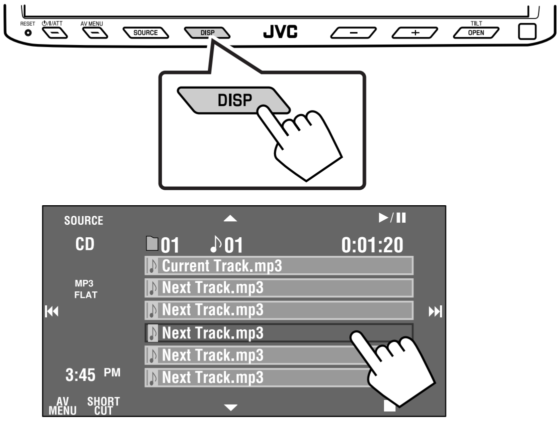

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

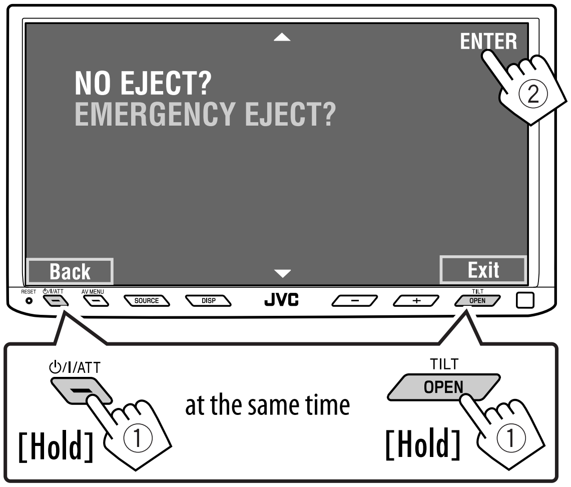
You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP
SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

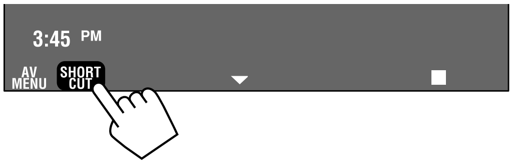

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
[Hold]
①
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

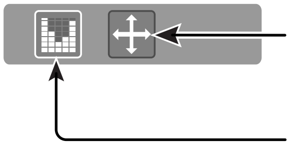
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

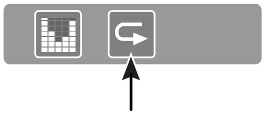
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 45)

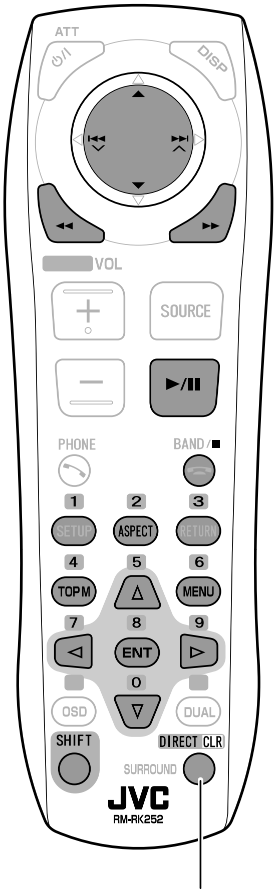
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
⏻/I
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/❚❚
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/❚❚ : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*3] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ ... 9 ▷) ➡ ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ Δ ◁ ▷

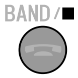
3 8 ENT

[*1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

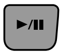
[*2] *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

[*3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

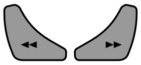
You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)



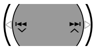
: Stop playback.

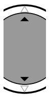


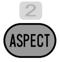
: Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).


: Reverse/forward search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*5 (No sound can be heard.)

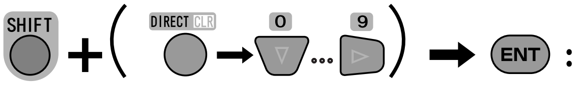
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

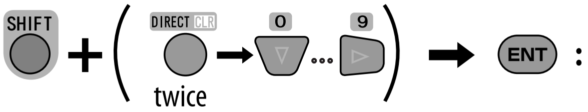

: *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*6


: Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

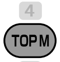


: Select aspect ratio.

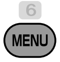

SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
0
9
ENT
: Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).


SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
0
9
twice
ENT
: Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

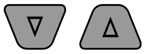
Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

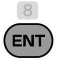
1 

: For Original Program



: For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. 

3 

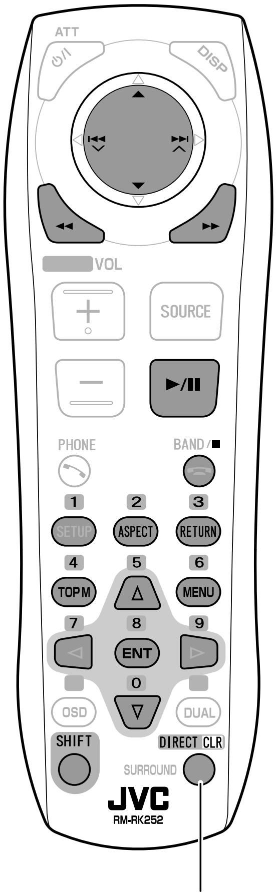
To erase the screen.

---

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*5 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*6 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOPM
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search[*1] (No sound can be heard.)

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search[*2] (No sound can be heard.)

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

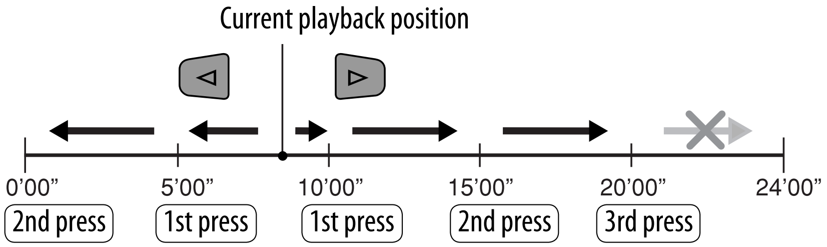
2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ … 9 ▷) → ENT : Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1 4 TOPM / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

[*1] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

[*2] *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

⏮ ⏭ : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) → ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)

- Reverse slow motion does not work.

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT : Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1. BAND/■
2. Select the desired track.
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) → ENT

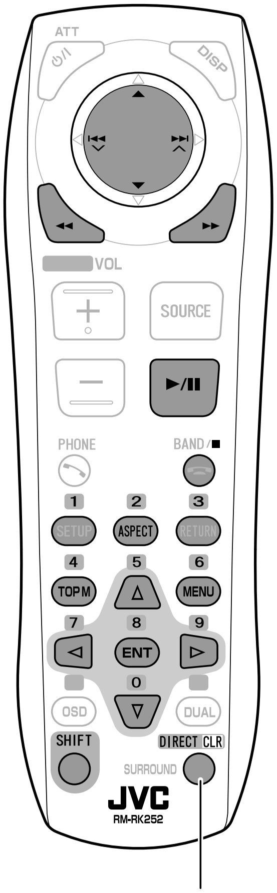
- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

---

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select track.

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/ WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*4

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select folder.

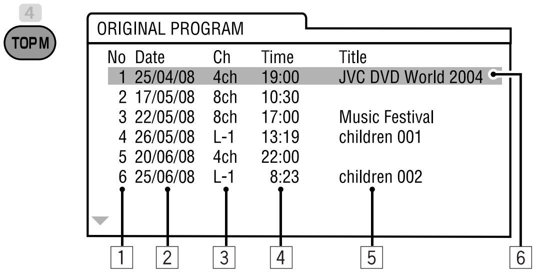
*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

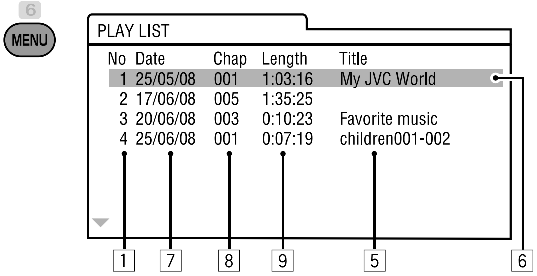
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

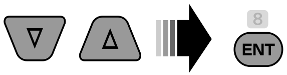
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



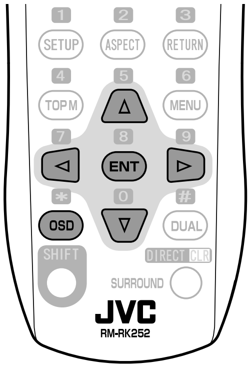
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

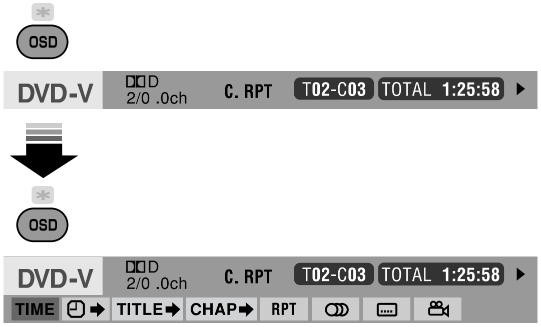
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

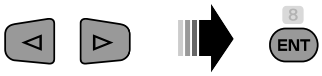

SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)


OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

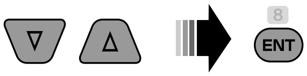
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

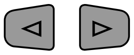


3 Make a selection.

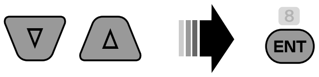
If a pop-up menu appears...



- For entering time/numbers...


:

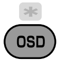
Move the entry position



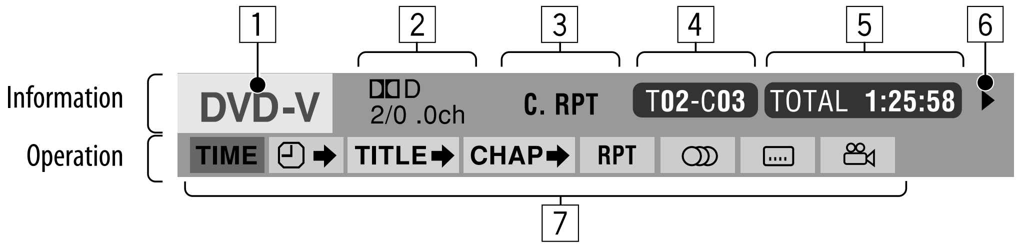
:

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode *1

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track *2
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track *2

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙/❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❙❙	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
🕒➜	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➜	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➜	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➜	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play *1
RND	Random play *1
ꝏ	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

---

*1 ☞ *page 18*

*2 *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

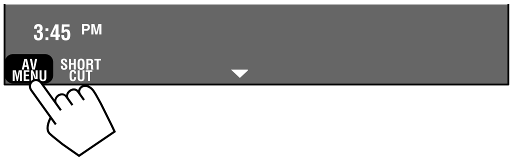
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

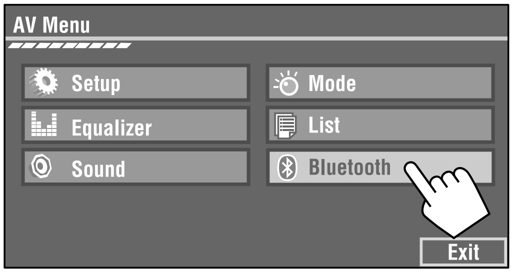
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

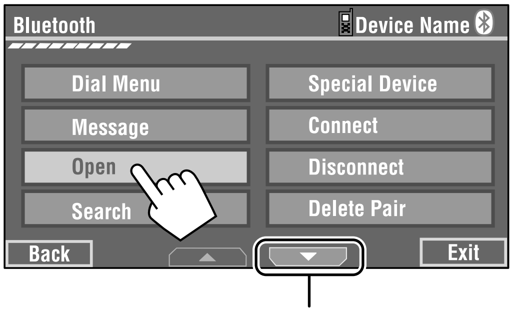

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

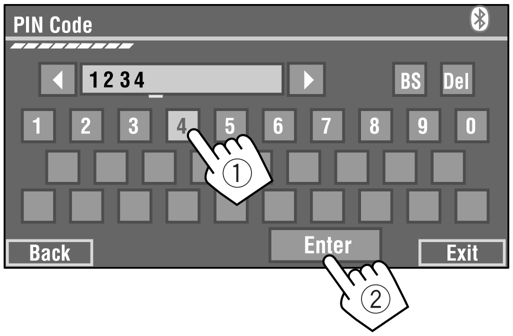

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
②
Exit

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 50 and 51).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

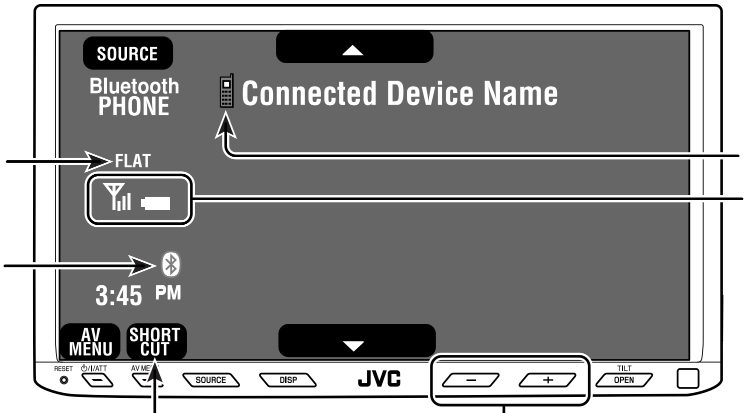
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone



Sound mode (☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

☞ page 31

*1 Status of the device Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device)

Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, 📱 appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

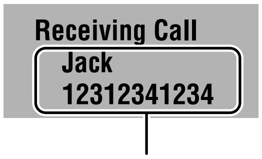
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 50 and 51

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE" automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 51)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 51)

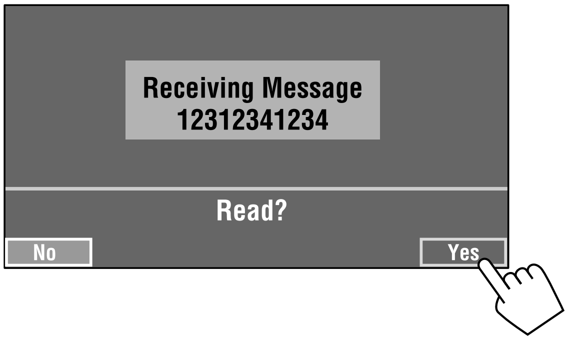
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 51)


Receiving Message
12312341234
Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

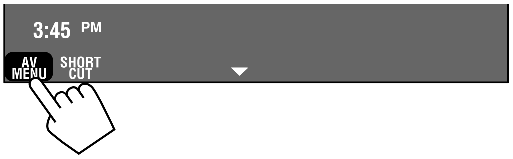
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 50)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 50 and 51)

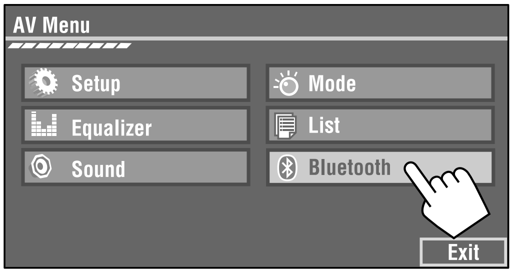
To make a call

1

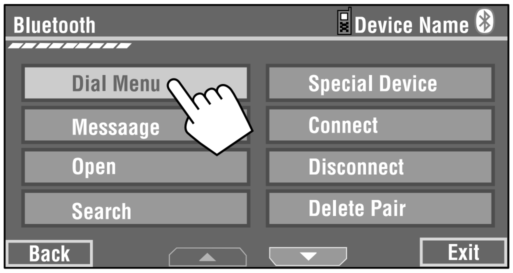

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

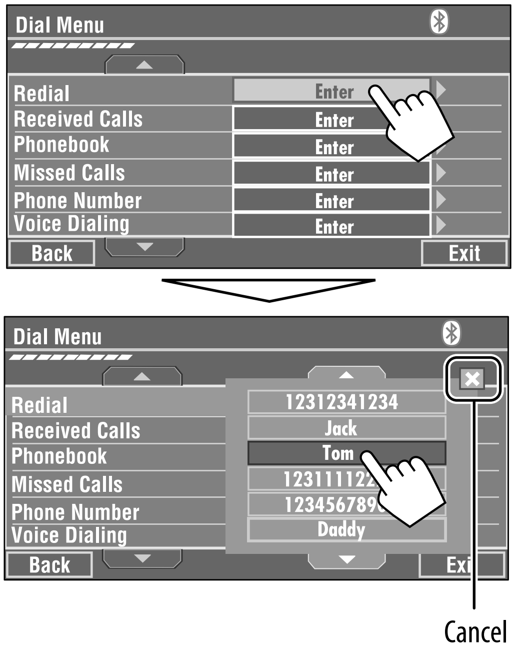
2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Messaage
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
Dial Menu
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
123456789
Daddy
Cancel

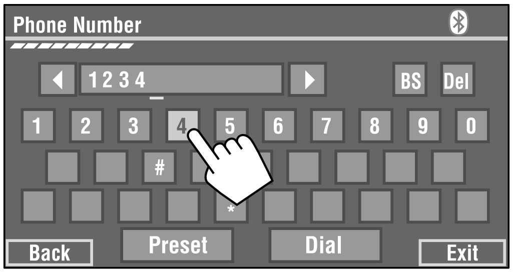
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

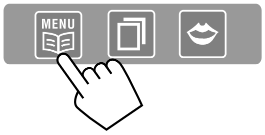
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

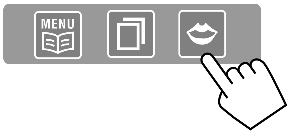
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

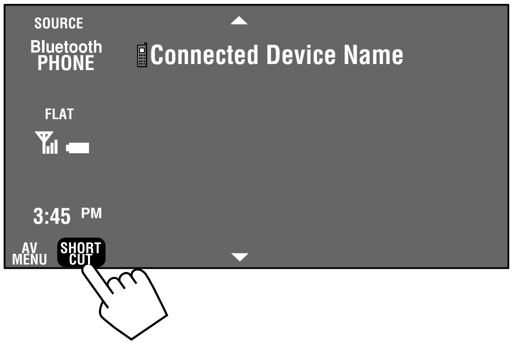
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



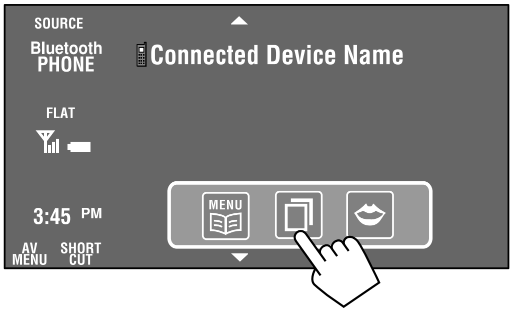
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

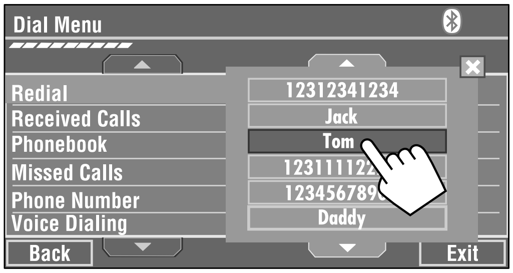
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

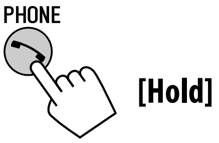
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
1231111122
1234567890
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



Presetting the phone numbers ■

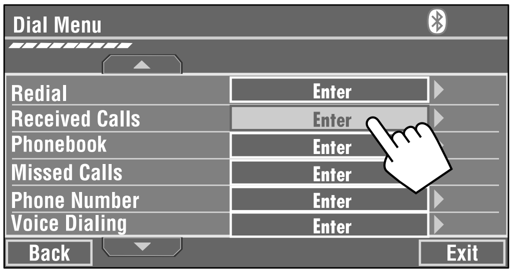
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

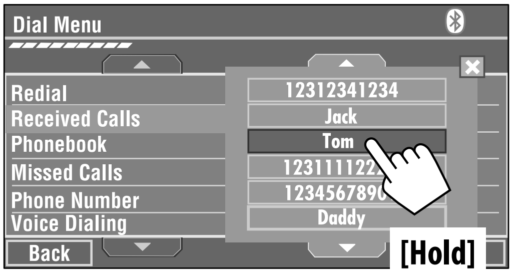
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

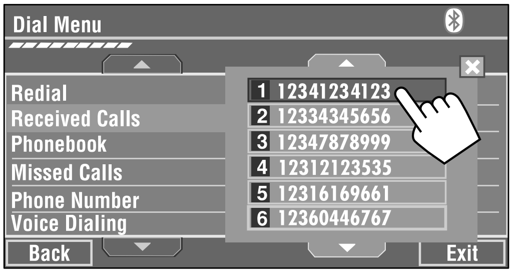

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
1234567890
Daddy
Back
[Hold]

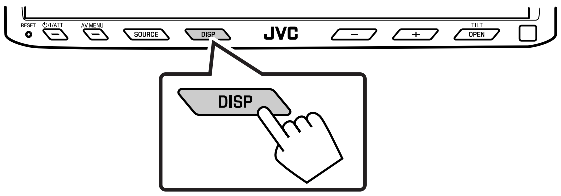
3 Select a preset number.

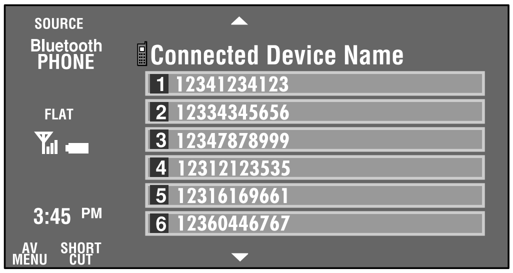

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

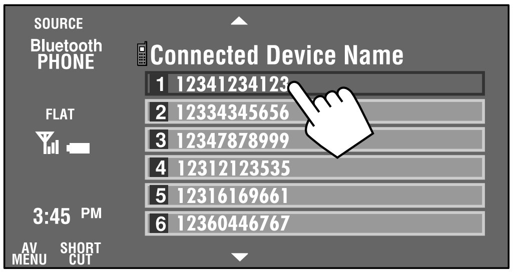
To call a preset number

1


RESET
ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

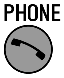

SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

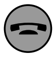
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.

PHONE

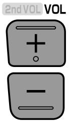


:
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).

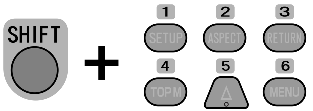
BAND/■



: End the call.

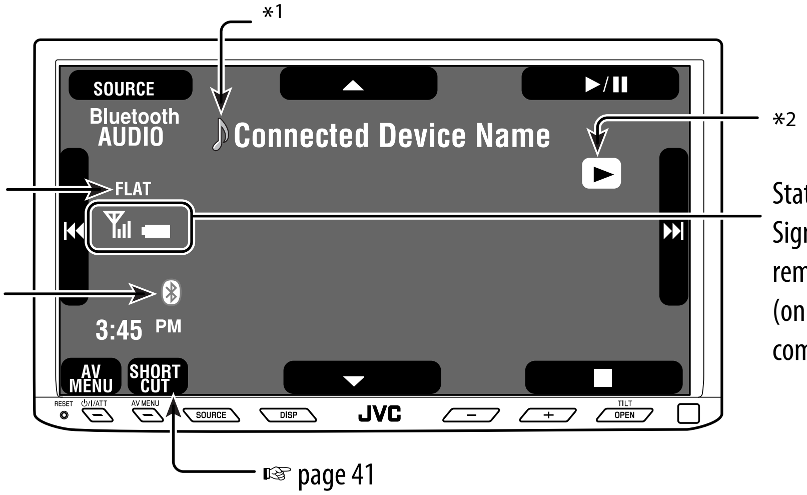


: Adjust the volume.


SHIFT
+
1
2
3
4
5
6
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU

[Hold] : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player


*1
SOURCE
Bluetooth AUDIO
♪Connected Device Name
▶/❚❚
*2
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 41

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

Status of the device
Signal strength/Battery remainder
(only when the information comes from the device)

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

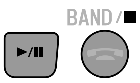
*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*
*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*
*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)

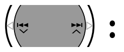
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Start playback.**

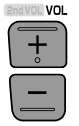
You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.



: Start and pause playback.



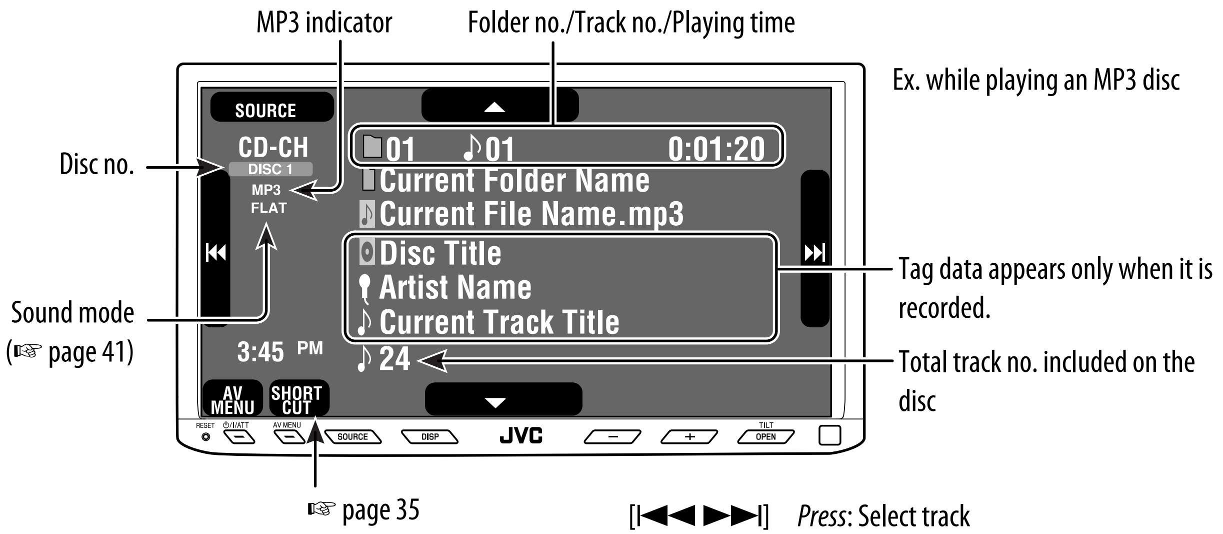
: Reverse/forward skip



: Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Ex. while playing an MP3 disc
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01
01
0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
☞ page 35

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|] *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search

[▲ ▼] *Press*: Select folders (only for MP3)
Hold: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

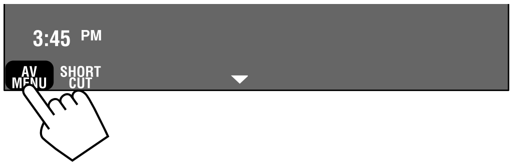
Preparation:

Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

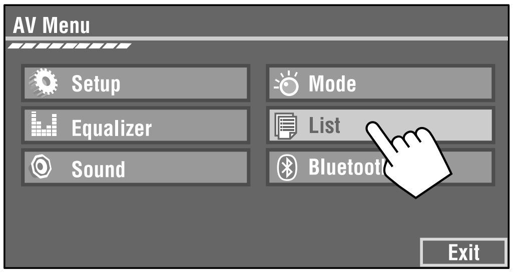
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

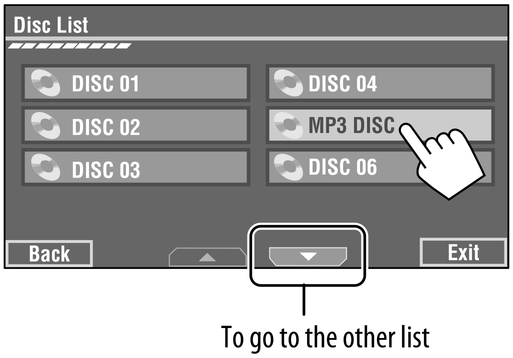

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

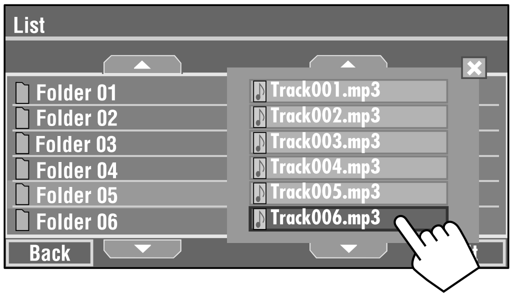
❸ **Display the Disc List.**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit
To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

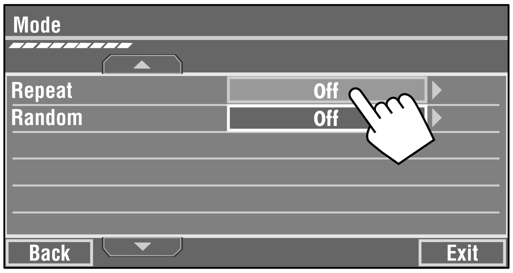
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

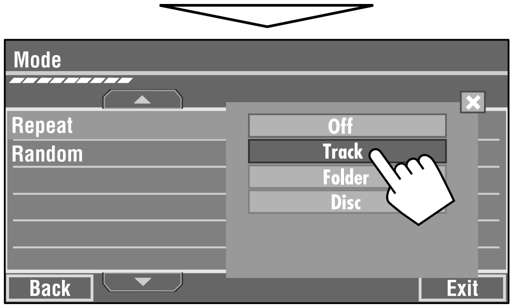
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 **Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.**

2 **Press [Mode].**

3





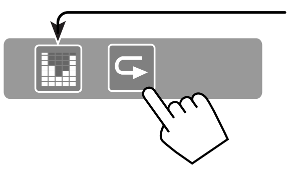
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

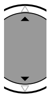
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

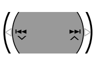
☞ page 41



You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

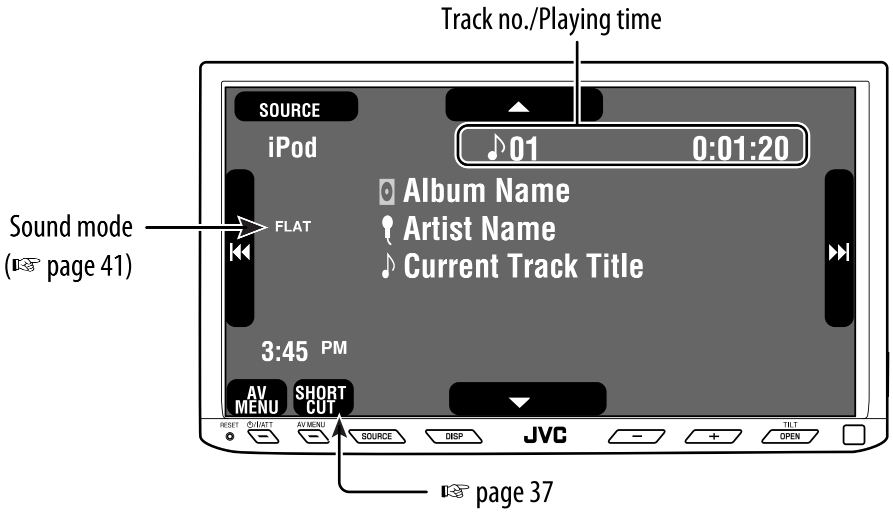
∇ ∆ : Select disc.

 : Select folder (MP3 only).



- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
☞ page 37
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
FLAT
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [I◀◀] or [▶▶I] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.

"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.

- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.

Press: Select an item.

Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

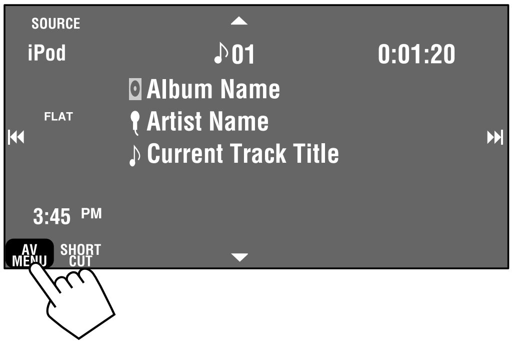
3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.

- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

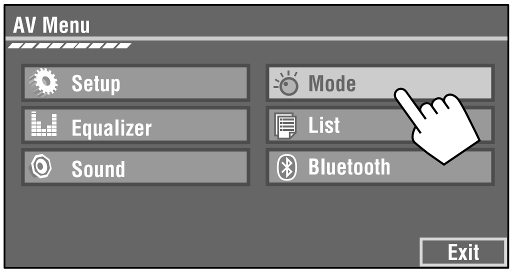
Selecting playback modes

1

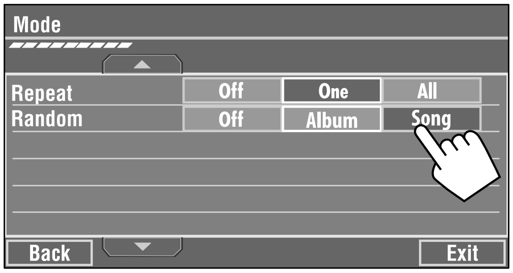

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
♪ Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

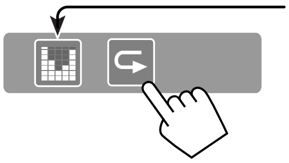
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

☞ page 41



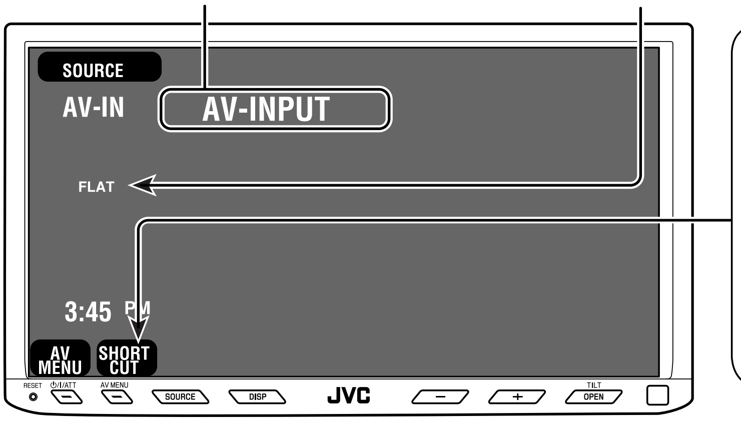
Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.

Assigned title (☞ page 42)

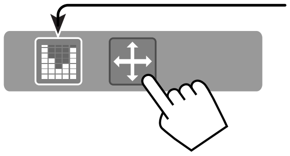
Sound mode (☞ page 41)



SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

☞ page 41



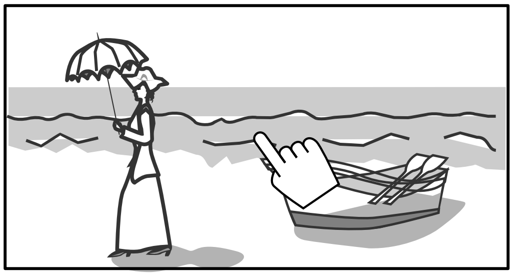
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

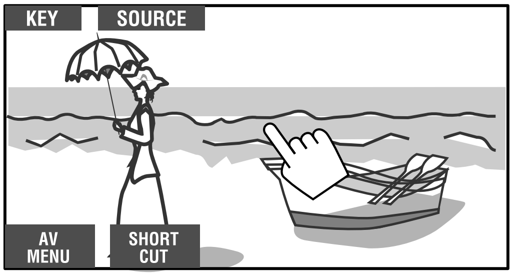
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture



Touch the screen (center portion).



KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is “AV-IN.”

Navigation screen

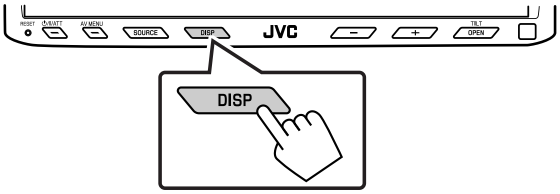
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 47)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

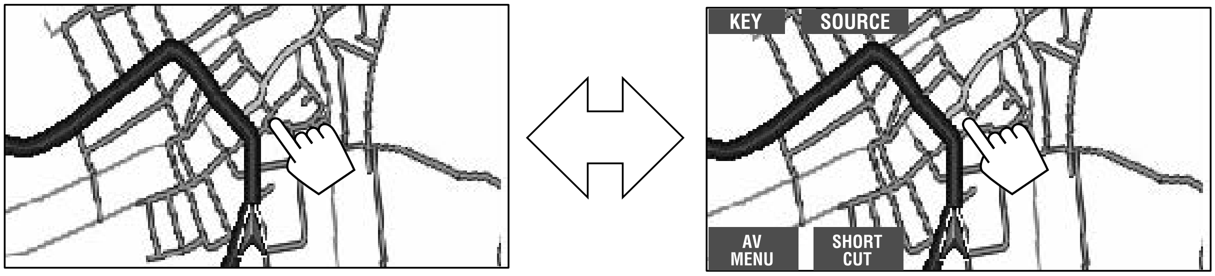


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 45)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

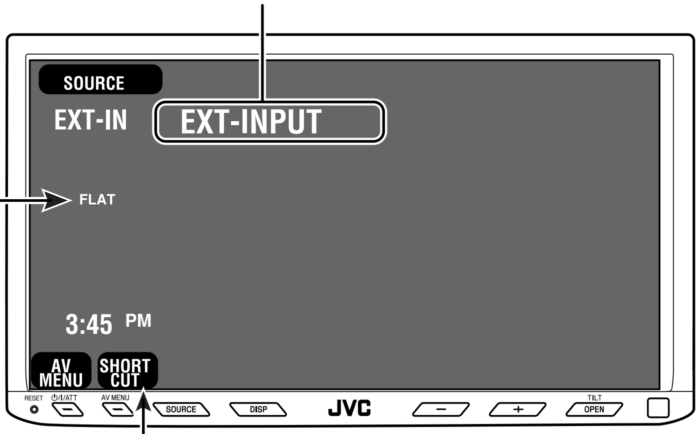
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 47)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 42)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

Preparation:

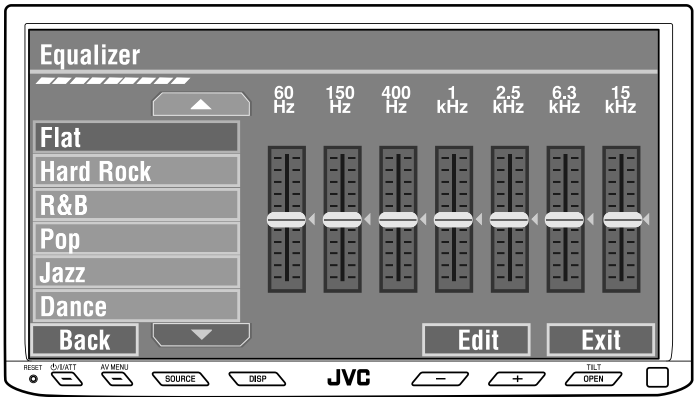
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

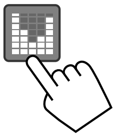
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

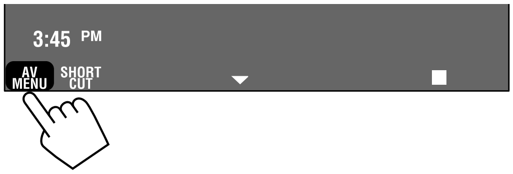
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

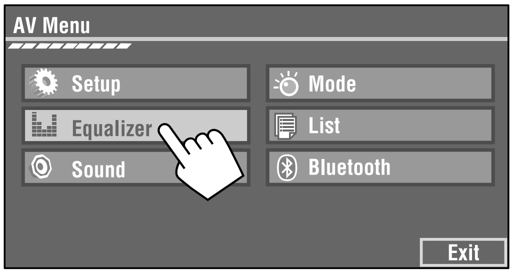


❶

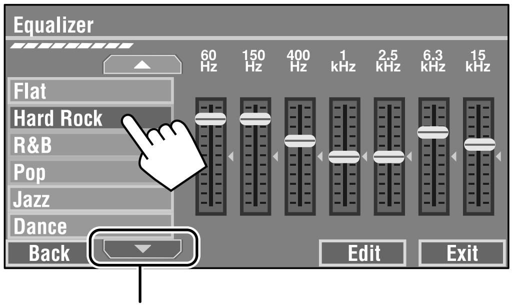

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

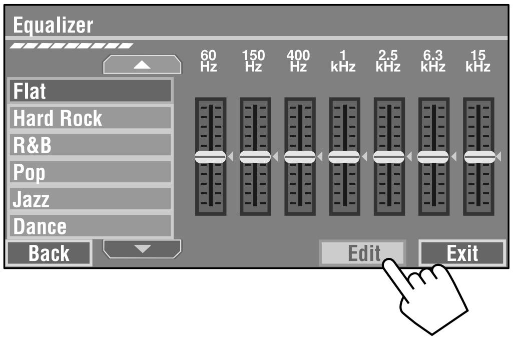
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 58.

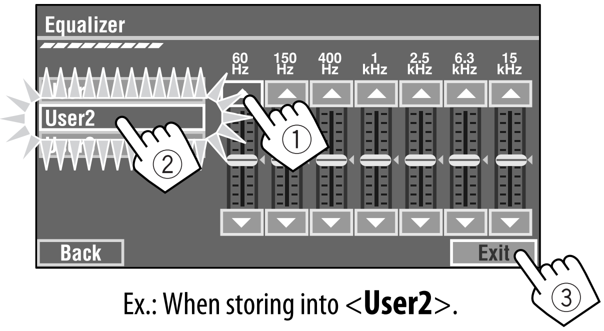
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

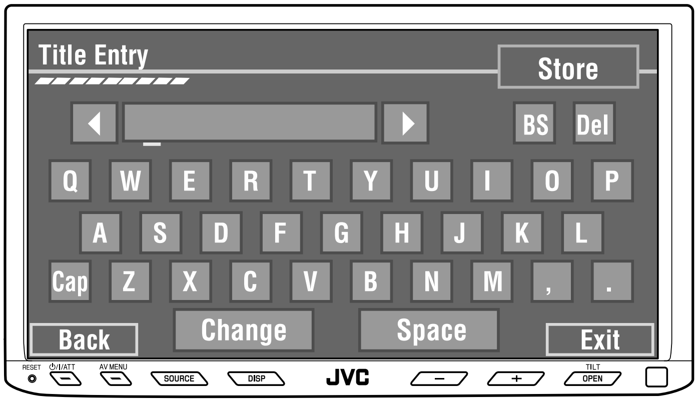

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
Back
Exit
③

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

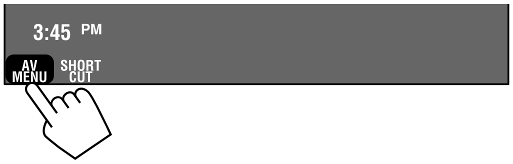
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

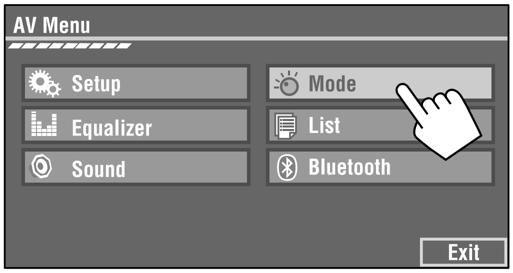
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

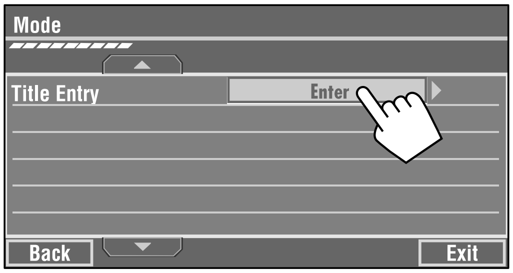
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

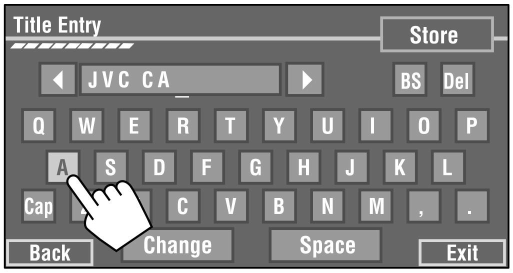

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

❸ Assign a title.

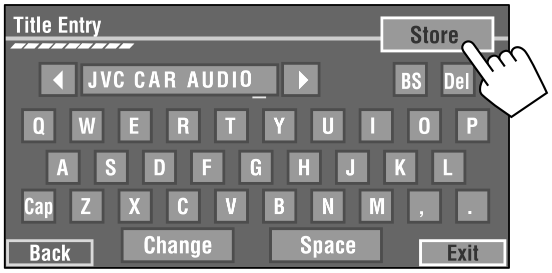

Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CA_

You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 59).

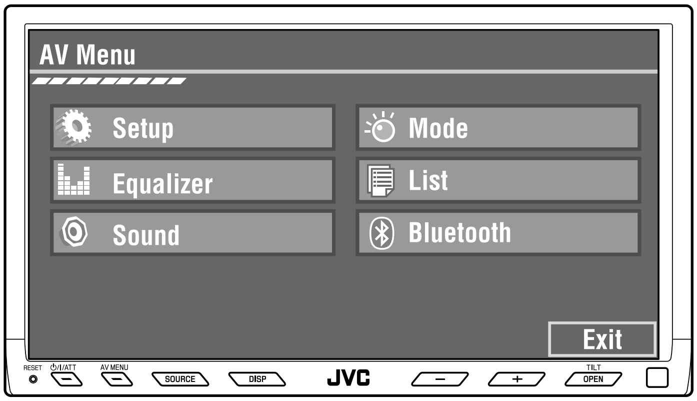
- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

JVC CAR AUDIO_

Menu operations

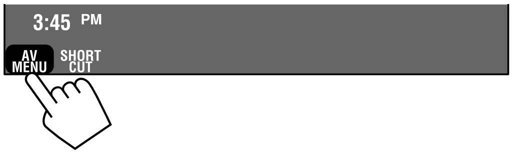

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

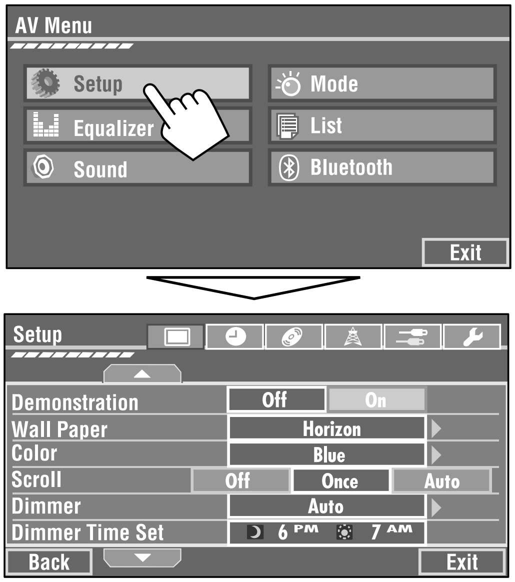
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

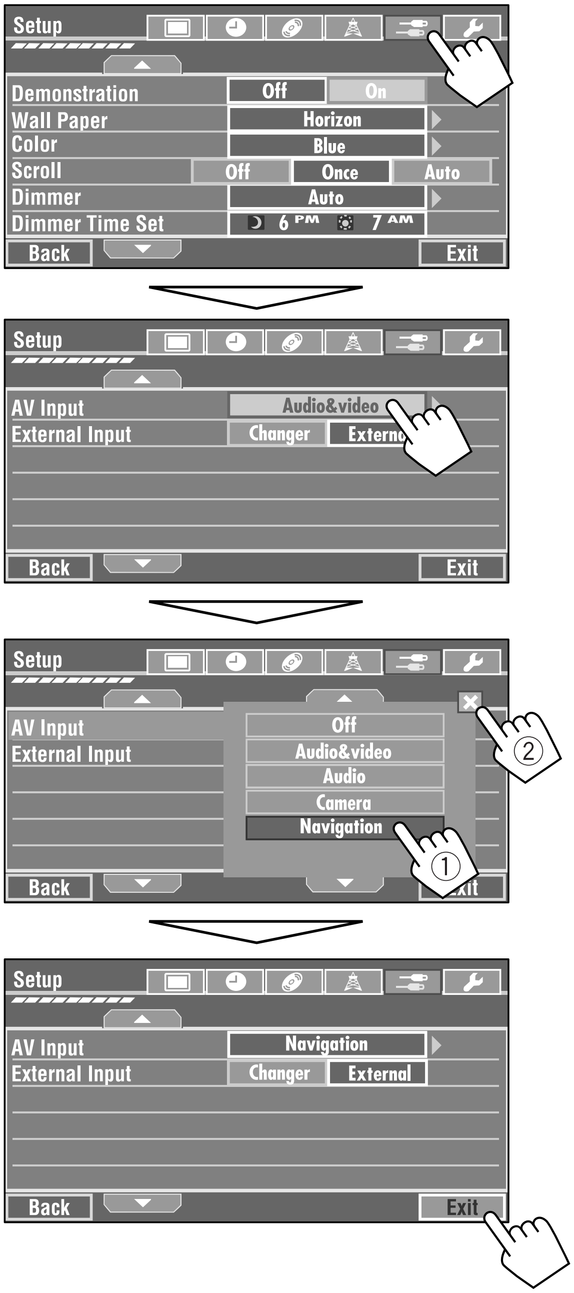
❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Non-available items will be shaded.

❸


Setup
Back
Exit
①
②

Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

AV Input: Audio&video
External Input: Changer / External

AV Input / External Input: Off / Audio&video / Audio / Camera / Navigation

AV Input: Navigation
External Input: Changer / External

Setup

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

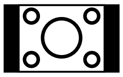
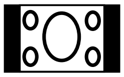
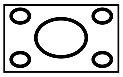
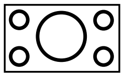
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.[1] **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust[2]	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. (only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>, ☞ next page) • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

---

[1] *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

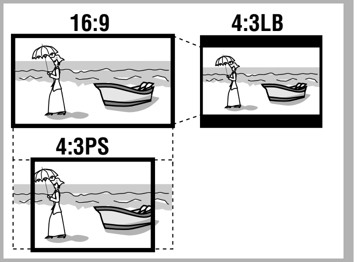
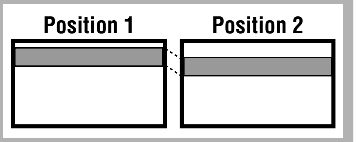
[2] *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

Initial: **<u>Underlined</u>**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Display</td><td>Aspect*3</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Full:</u>
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Language*4</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
<u>English</u>, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [59]</td></tr>
<tr><td>NTSC/PAL</td><td>Select the color system of the external monitor connected—NTSC, <u>PAL</u>.
• Turn off the power and turn it on again to make the new setting effective.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial <u>1:00AM</u> ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
<u>12Hours</u>, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8]
<u>Off</u>, On</td></tr>
</table>

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language*1	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
Audio Language*1	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
Subtitle*1	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
Monitor Type*1 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
OSD Position*1 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] **1**: Higher position **2**: Lower position
File Type*1	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
DivX Regist. (Registration)*1	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
D. Audio Output*1	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 57) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*1 *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***[1]	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*[1]	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input***[2]	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [38, 39] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***[3] : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*[4]	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***[5]: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 36] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [40] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.

*[2] *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*[3] *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*[4] *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*[5] *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

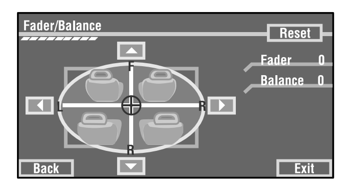
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [41]

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry	Only for FM/AM stations, “AV-IN,” and “EXT-IN.” ☞ [42]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 37]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 37]

*1 *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For “DISC”: Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)

For “CD-CH”: Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for "New Device." Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

*1 *Selectable only for "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO." Select a device (or "New Device") before operating the menu.*

*2 *Only for the device connected for "Bluetooth PHONE."*

*3 *Selectable only when the source is "Bluetooth PHONE" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying “Receiving Message.” To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for “Bluetooth PHONE.”*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.” Not selectable when “New Device” is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

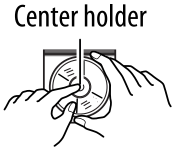
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



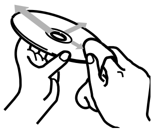
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

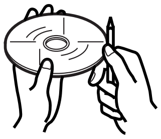
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

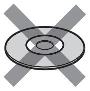
To play new discs



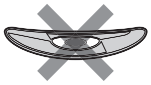
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

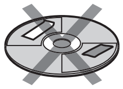
SingleCD—8 cm disc



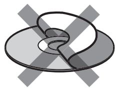
Warped disc



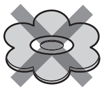
Sticker and sticker residue



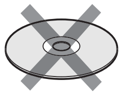
Stick-on label



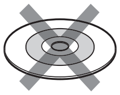
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  - * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

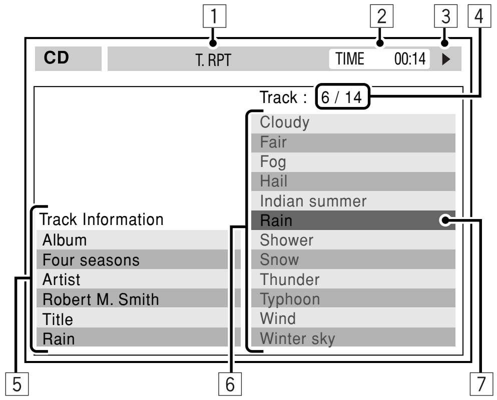
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

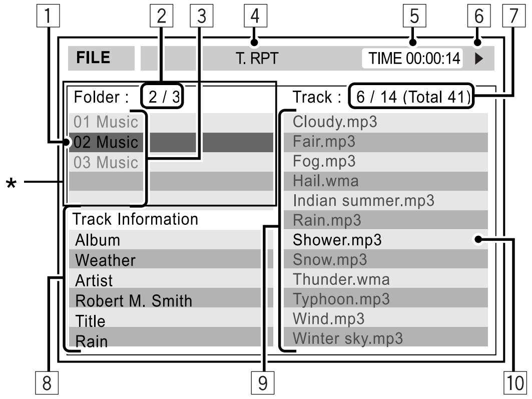
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1. Selected playback mode
2. Elapsed playing time of the current track
3. Operation status
4. Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5. Track information
6. Track list
7. Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  - – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  - – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  - – iPod mini
  - – iPod photo
  - – iPod nano *[1]
  - – iPod video (5th Generation) *[2]

  *[1] When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.

  *[2] It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 46)

Playback disc	**<D. Audio Output>**	**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 42)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	*	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 44)
	• “Position Error Push Open Key” appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• “Mecha Error Push Reset” appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• “No Signal” appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 50)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

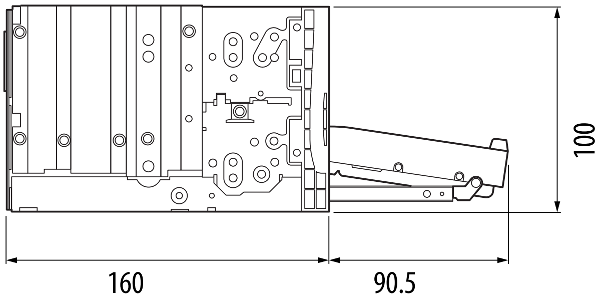
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• “No Disc” appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “No Magazine” appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• “Disconnect” appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• “No Files” appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• “Reset 01” – “Reset 07” appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• “Reset 08” appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC/PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	171 mm × 97 mm × 21 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.6 kg

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

EN

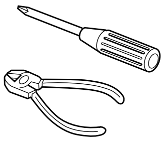
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1207MNMMDWJEIN

KW-AVX716/KW-AVX710

Installation/Connection Manual

LVT1780-007A
[A]



1207MNMMDWJEIN
EN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

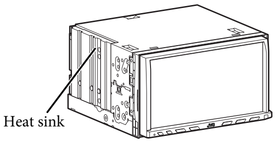
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - – This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

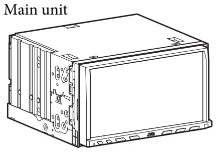
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

Main unit



Power cord

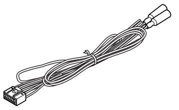
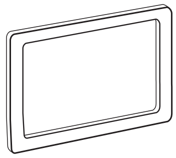
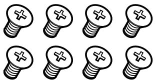


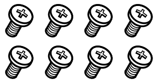
Plate for use with a Nissan car



Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)

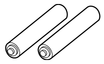


Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)

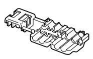


Remote controller

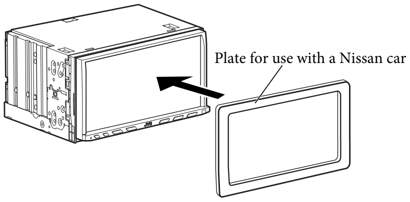
Batteries



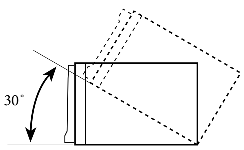
Crimp connector



When installing the unit in a Nissan car



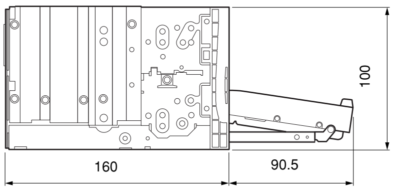
Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.



TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

Required space for the monitor ejection



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

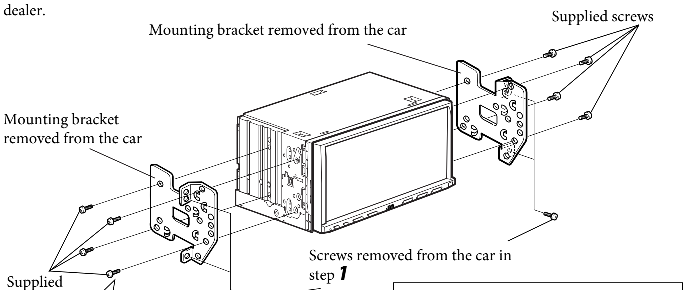
1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

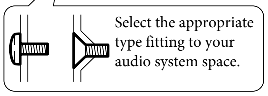
2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See page 2.

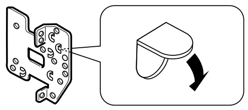
4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.


Supplied screws
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Supplied screws
Screws removed from the car in step 1


Select the appropriate type fitting to your audio system space.

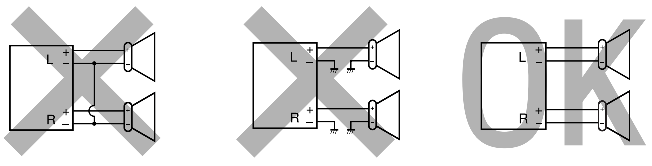
If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.



Note: When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

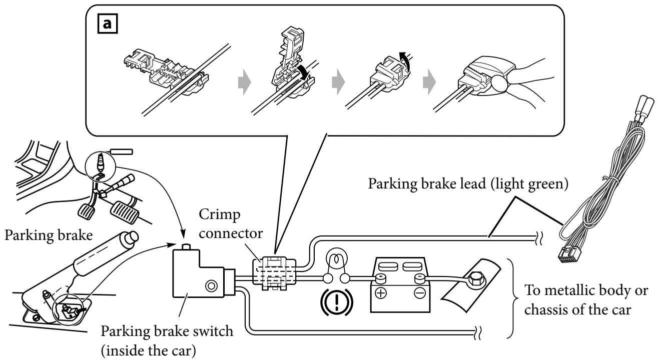
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



A Connecting the parking brake lead

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.


a
Parking brake lead (light green)
Parking brake
Crimp connector
To metallic body or chassis of the car
Parking brake switch (inside the car)

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

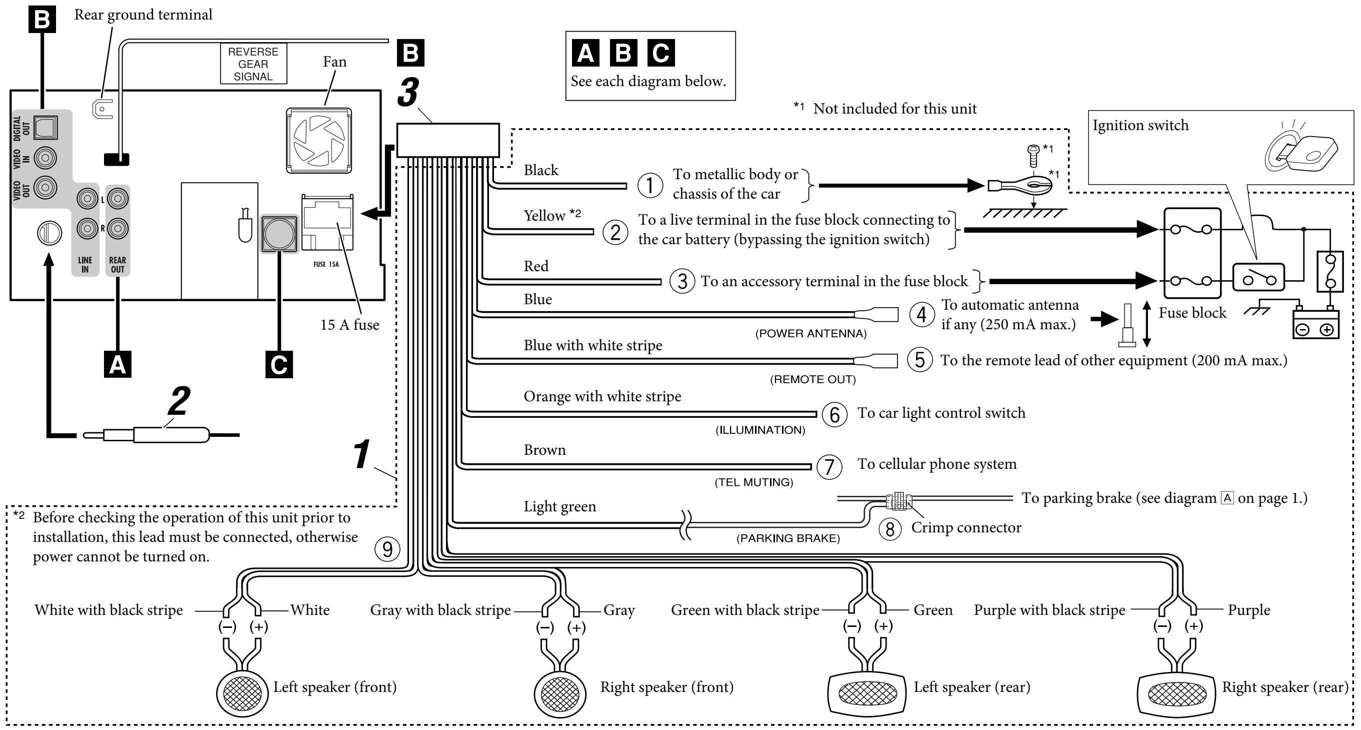
- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.


B
Rear ground terminal
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Fan
B
3
A B C
See each diagram below.
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
15 A fuse
A
C
2
1
Ignition switch
Black
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
*1
*1
Yellow *2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch)
Red
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
Blue
(POWER ANTENNA)
④ To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
Fuse block
Blue with white stripe
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤ To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
Orange with white stripe
(ILLUMINATION)
⑥ To car light control switch
Brown
(TEL MUTING)
⑦ To cellular phone system
Light green
(PARKING BRAKE)
To parking brake (see diagram Ⓐ on page 1.)
⑧ Crimp connector
⑨
White with black stripe
White
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Gray with black stripe
Gray
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
Green with black stripe
Green
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
Purple with black stripe
Purple
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)

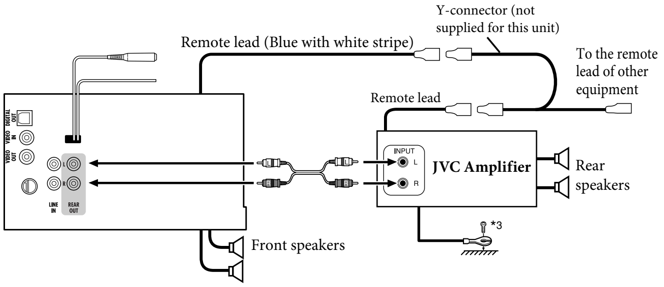
*1 Not included for this unit

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

A Connecting an external amplifier

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS.


Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
To the remote lead of other equipment
Remote lead
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
LINE IN
REAR OUT
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
Rear speakers
*3
Front speakers

*3 Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

C Connections to the CD changer jack

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

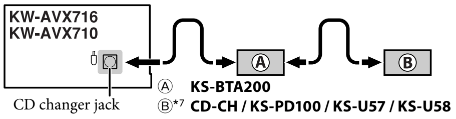
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

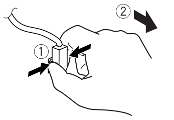
When connecting two components in series


KW-AVX716
KW-AVX710
Ⓐ
Ⓑ
CD changer jack
Ⓐ KS-BTA200
Ⓑ*7 CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58

*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

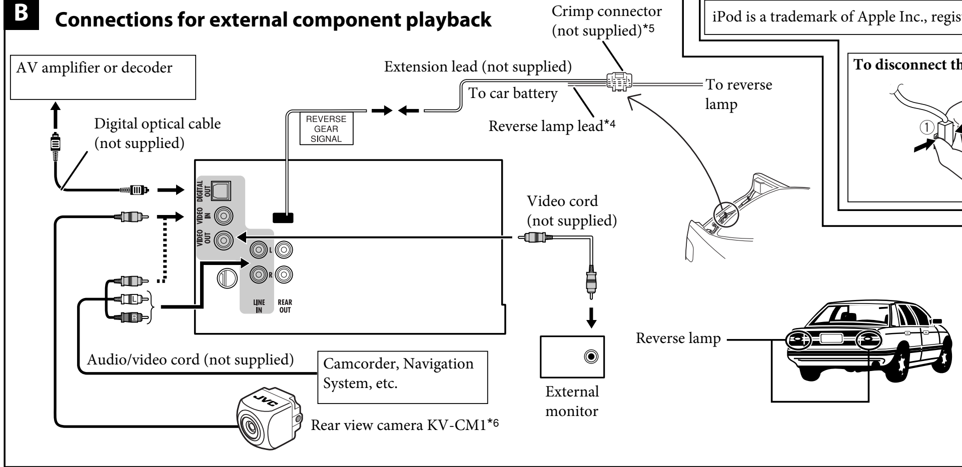
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

To disconnect the connector



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).

B Connections for external component playback


Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
AV amplifier or decoder
Extension lead (not supplied)
To car battery
To reverse lamp
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Reverse lamp lead*4
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Video cord (not supplied)
Reverse lamp
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
External monitor
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6

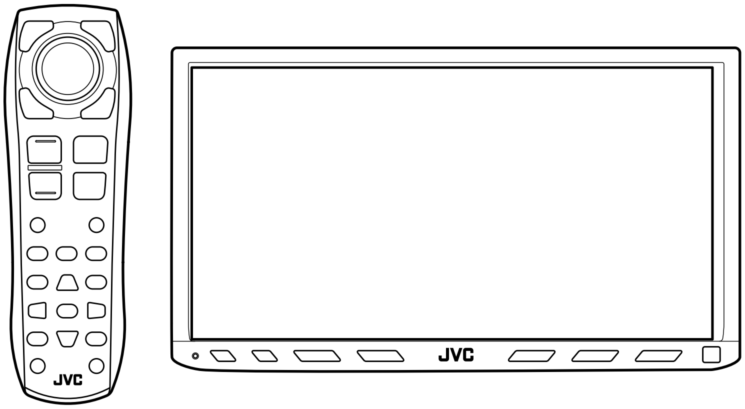
*4 Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.

*5 Refer to ⓐ in diagram Ⓐ on page 1.

*6 Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR

KW-AVX714



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

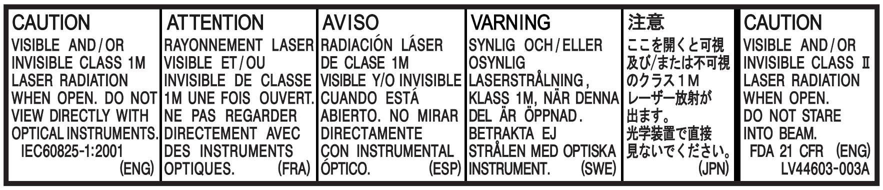
INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1780-012A
[UI]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.



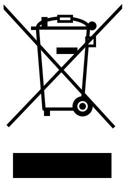
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS Ⅱ LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

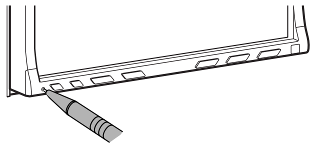
WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.



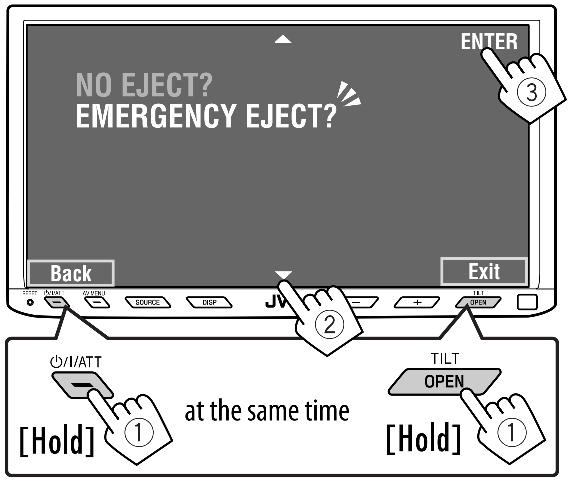
[European Union only]

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *If this does not work, reset the unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Playable disc types 4
Basic operations—Monitor panel/touch panel........... 5
Basic operations—Remote controller (RM-RK252) 6

OPERATIONS

Before operating the unit 8
Common operations 9
Listening to the radio 10
Disc operations 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Bluetooth® operations—Cellular phone/audio player 27
Listening to the CD changer.............. 34
Listening to the iPod........................ 36
Using other external components..... 38

SETTINGS

Sound equalization.......................... 41
Assigning titles to the sources 42
Menu operations 43

REFERENCES

Maintenance 52
More about this unit 53
Troubleshooting 60
Specifications 64

Playable disc types

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc.	Playable
DVD	DVD Video (Region Code: 5)*1 ALL 5 5 6 3 4 5 6	✓OK
	DVD Audio	✗NO
	DVD-ROM	
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW*2, +R/+RW*3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	
	DVD+VR	
	DVD-RAM	
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)/DTS-CD	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	SVCD (Super Video CD)	✗NO
	CD-ROM	
	CD-I (CD-I Ready)	
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	JPEG	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	AAC	✗NO
	MPEG4	

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*
DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs.*
+RW double layer discs are not playable.

Caution for DualDisc playback

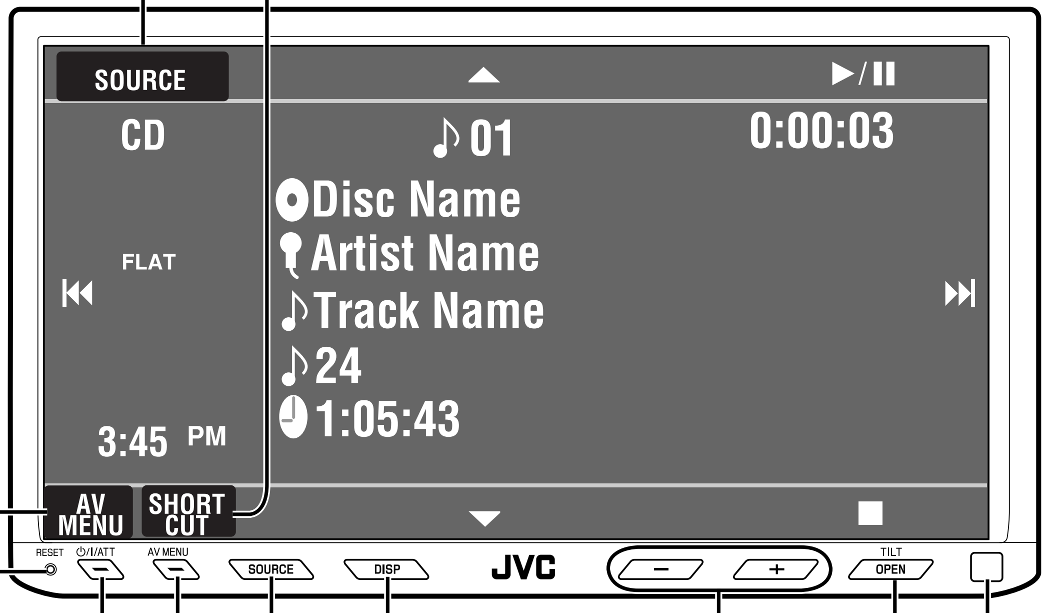
The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations — *Monitor panel/touch panel*

Display <AV Menu> screen. ☞ page 43

Display <Source Menu> screen. ☞ page 9

Display and erase the Short Cut windows.
Available functions vary among the sources. For details, see each source operation section.


SOURCE
▲
▶/❚❚
CD
♪01
0:00:03
Disc Name
Artist Name
♪Track Name
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
⏮
⏭
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
−
+
TILT
OPEN

Adjust the volume.

Remote sensor

Change the display information.

Change the sources. ☞ page 9

Display <AV Menu> screen.
☞ page 43

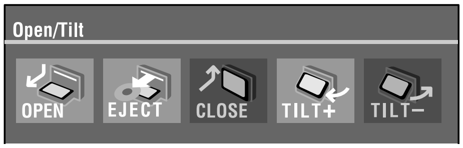
- **Display <Open/Tilt> menu.**
- **Eject the disc and display <Open/Tilt> menu.** [Hold]
- **Close the monitor panel when <Open/Tilt> menu is displayed.**

- **Turn on the power.**
- **Turn off the power.** [Hold]
- **Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).**

Reset the unit.
- Use only when the internal system malfunctions.

- In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].
- For details on the touch panel operations, see each source operation section.

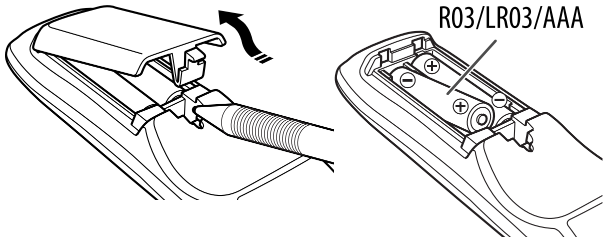
<Open/Tilt> menu


Open/Tilt
OPEN
EJECT
CLOSE
TILT+
TILT−

- **[OPEN]**: Open the monitor panel.
- **[EJECT]**: Eject the disc.
- **[CLOSE]**: Close the monitor panel.
- **[TILT +/–]**: Tilt the monitor panel.
- **[Exit]**: Erase this screen.
- Shaded icons cannot be used.

Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the battery


R03/LR03/AAA

Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

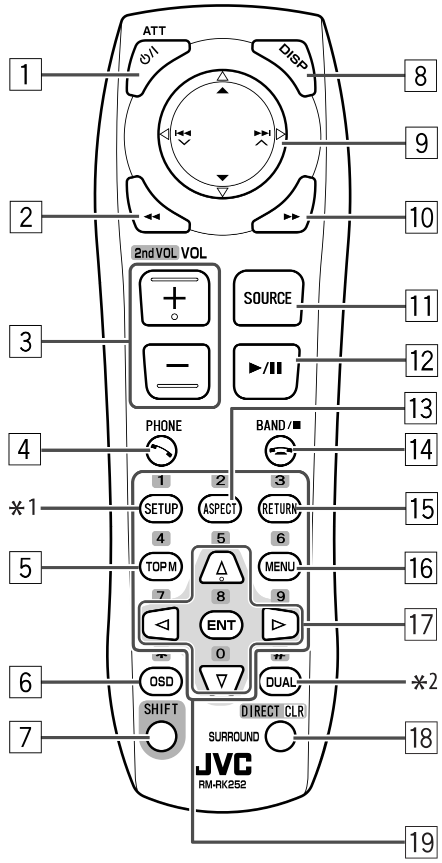
Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

- If the range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace both batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Main elements and features


1
2
3
4
✳1
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
✳2
18
19
ATT
DISP
2nd VOL VOL
SOURCE
PHONE
BAND/■
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
TOP M
MENU
ENT
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held (while the power is on).

2
- Reverse search
- Reverse slow motion (during pause)

3 Adjusts the volume level.
- Does not function as “2nd VOL.”

4
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

5
- DVD/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.

6 Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as “✳.“

7 Functions with other buttons (see 18 and 19).

8 Changes the display information.

9 **For disc operations:**

- ▲ / ▼:
  DVD: Selects the title.
  DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  Other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders.
- ⏮ / ⏭:
  – *Press briefly*: reverse skip/forward skip
  – *Press and hold*: reverse search/forward search

For FM/AM operations:

- ▲ / ▼: Selects the preset stations.
- ⏮ / ⏭: Functions to search for stations.
  – *Press briefly*: Auto Search
  – *Press and hold*: Manual Search

For Apple iPod operations:

- ▼: Starts playback/pauses
- ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭ work as menu selecting buttons).

In the main menu:

- ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
- ▼: Confirms the selection.
- ⏮ / ⏭
  – *Press briefly*: Selects an item.
  – *Press and hold*: Skips ten items at a time.

For Bluetooth operations:

- ⏮ / ⏭: reverse skip/forward skip (for audio player operation)

10
- Forward search
- Forward slow motion (during pause)

11 Selects the source.

12 **For disc operations:**
Starts playback/pauses.
For Bluetooth operations:
- Answers incoming calls.
- Starts playback/pauses. (for audio player operation).

13 Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

14 “TUNER”: Selects the bands.
“DISC”: Stops playback.
“Bluetooth PHONE”: Ends the call.
“Bluetooth AUDIO”: Starts playback/pauses.

15 VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16
- DVD Video/DivX 6: Shows the disc menu.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.

17
- Makes selection/settings.
- ◁ / ▷: Skips back or forward by five minutes for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2.
- △ / ▽: Changes discs for “CD-CH.”

18*3
- Switches number entry mode for “DISC.”
- Erases the misentry after entering a wrong number.
- Does not function as “SURROUND.”

19*3 Number buttons
- Enters numbers.
- “TUNER”: Selects the preset station directly.

---

*1 *Functions as a number button only (see 19).*
*2 *Not used for this unit.*
*3 *Functions when pressed with SHIFT.*

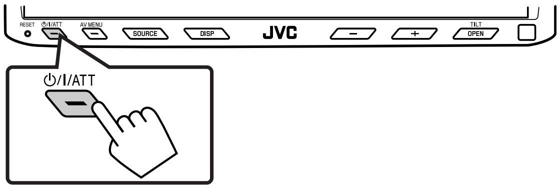
Before operating the unit

You can cancel the demonstration on the screen and set the clock.

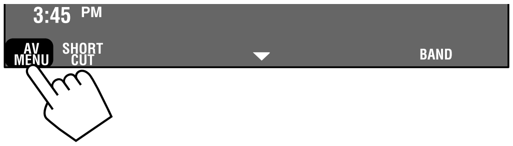
- Non-available items will be shaded on the AV Menu screens.

Indication language:
In this manual, English indications are used for purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language. (☞ page 45)

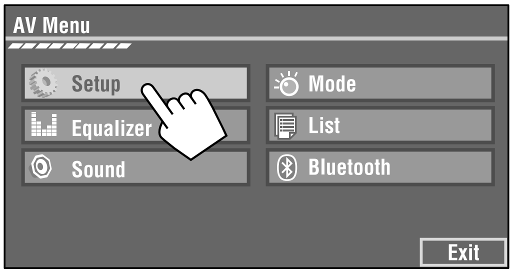
❶ Turn on the power.


RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
⏻/I/ATT

❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

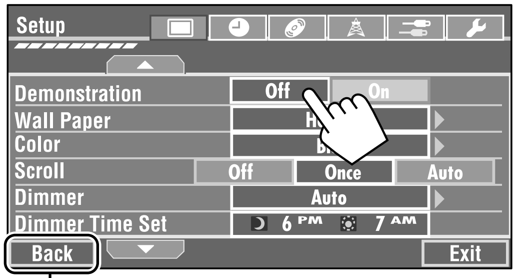

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

❸ Display <Setup> menu.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ Cancel the demonstration.

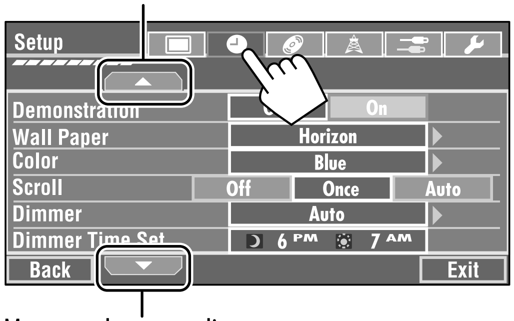
Select <**Off**>.


Setup
Demonstration
Off
On
Wall Paper
Color
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

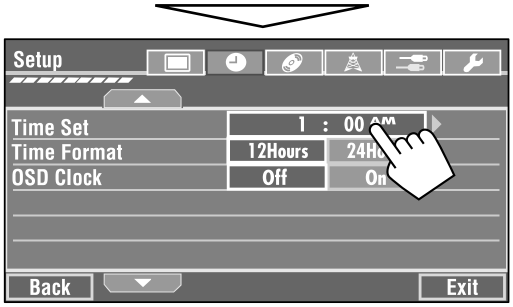
Return to the previous screen.

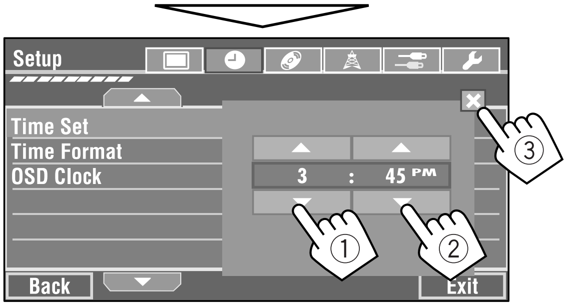
❺ Set the clock settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

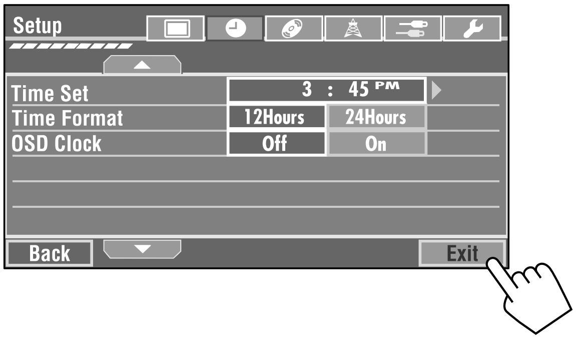

Setup
Demonstration
On
Wall Paper
Horizon
Color
Blue
Scroll
Off
Once
Auto
Dimmer
Auto
Dimmer Time Set
6 PM
7 AM
Back
Exit

Moves to the succeeding menu page


Setup
Time Set
1 : 00 AM
Time Format
12Hours
24Ho
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit


Setup
Time Set
Time Format
OSD Clock
3 : 45 PM
①
②
③
Back
Exit

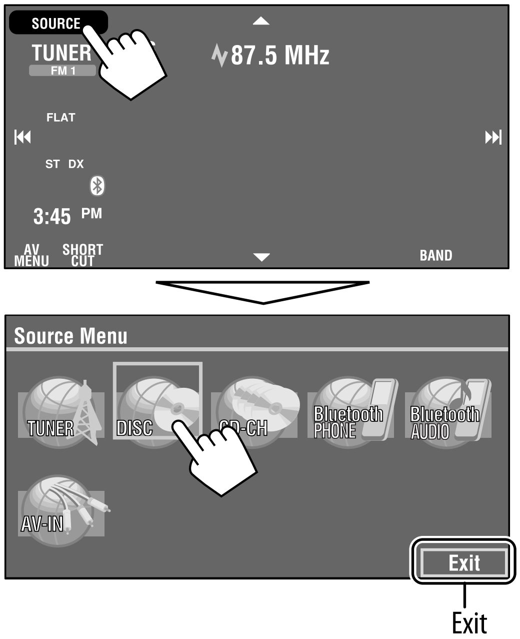
❻ Finish the procedure.


Setup
Time Set
3 : 45 PM
Time Format
12Hours
24Hours
OSD Clock
Off
On
Back
Exit

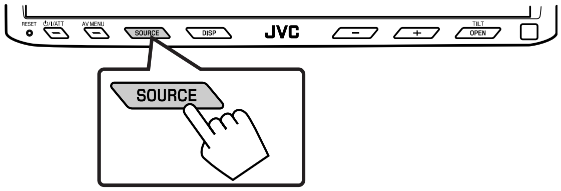
Selecting the playback source

- Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made (☞ page 47).

On the touch panel:


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
Source Menu
TUNER
DISC
CD-CH
Bluetooth PHONE
Bluetooth AUDIO
AV-IN
Exit
Exit

On the monitor panel:


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
SOURCE

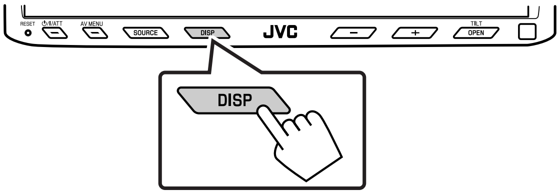
TUNER → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) →CD-CH, iPod, or **EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN →** (back to the beginning)

- You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

Changing the display information

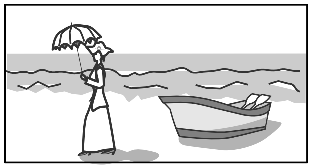
- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

On the monitor panel only:

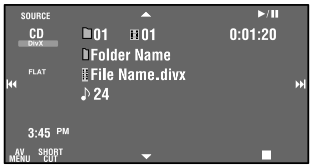

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT OPEN
DISP

- Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

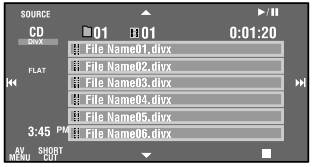
Ex. When the playback source is a DivX disc.



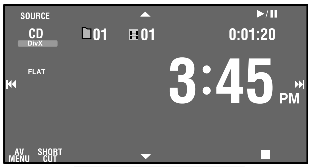
Playback picture screen (only for video sources)


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Source information screen


SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
File Name01.divx
File Name02.divx
File Name03.divx
File Name04.divx
File Name05.divx
File Name06.divx
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Track list

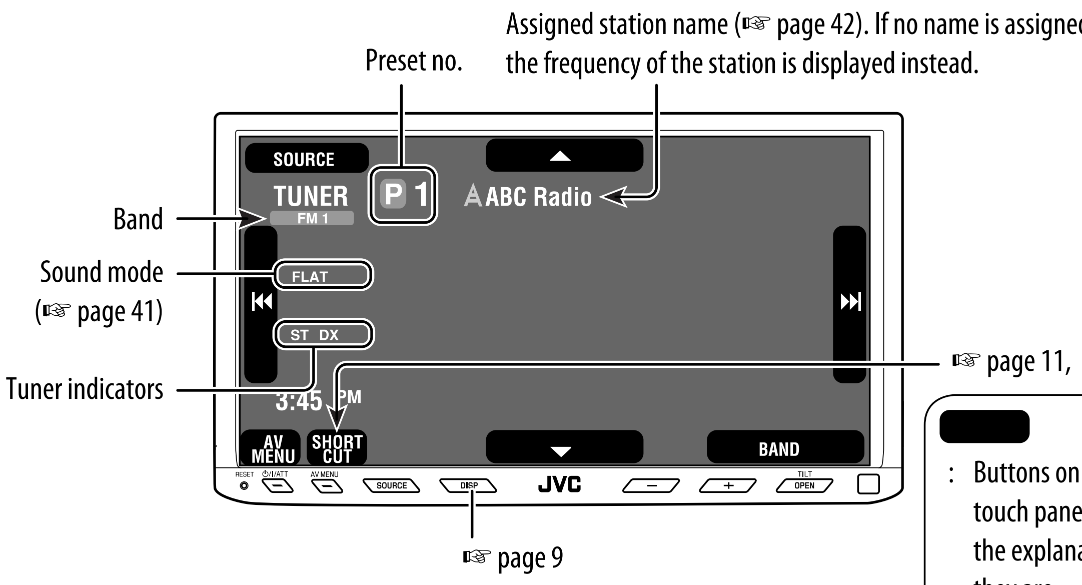

SOURCE
CD
DivX
01
01
0:01:20
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Clock time in large numbers

Navigation screen (When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>) (☞ page 47)

Back to the beginning

Listening to the radio


Preset no.
Assigned station name (☞ page 42). If no name is assigned, the frequency of the station is displayed instead.
Band
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Tuner indicators
☞ page 11,
☞ page 9
SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

: Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

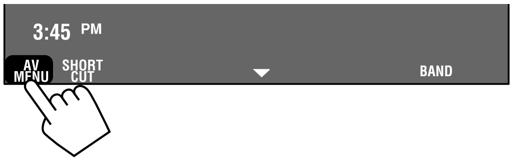
❷ **Press [BAND].** ➛FM1➛FM2➛FM3➛AM

❸ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [|◀◀]or [▶▶|] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

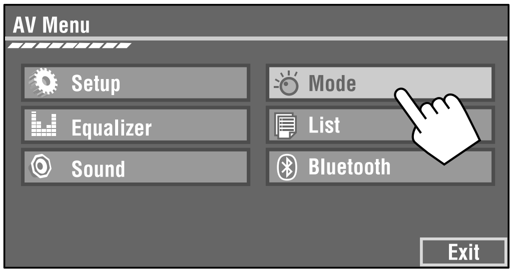
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 **Press [AV MENU].**

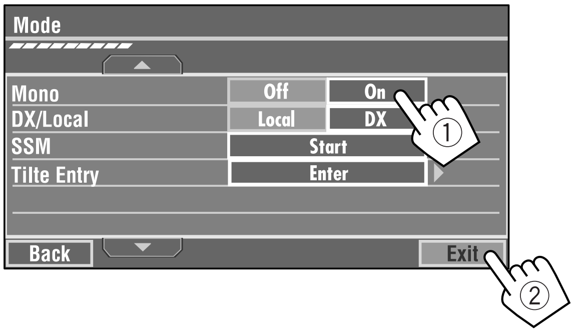

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 **Press [Mode].**


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Tilte Entry
Enter
Back
Exit
①
②

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

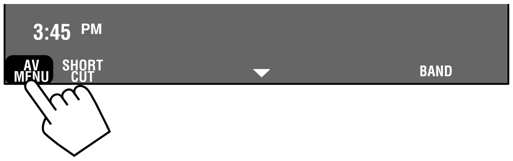
- The MONO indicator lights up.

To restore stereo effect, select **<Off>.**

Tuning in to stations with sufficient signal strength

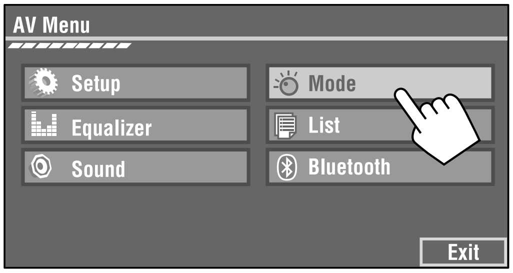
This function works only for FM bands. Once you have activated this function (selected <**Local**>), it always works when searching for FM stations.

1 Press [AV MENU].

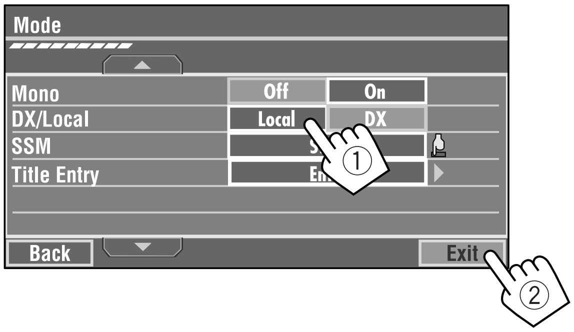

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

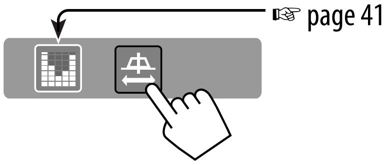
3


Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Title Entry
①
Back
Exit
②

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

- The DX indicator goes off, then the LO indicator lights up.

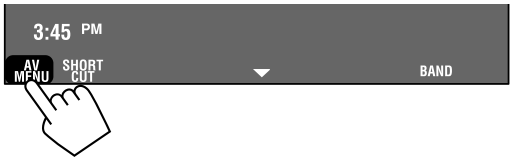
- You can also change <**IF Band Width**> setting (for details, ☞ page 47).
  <**IF Band Width**> menu can be accessed by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then..



FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

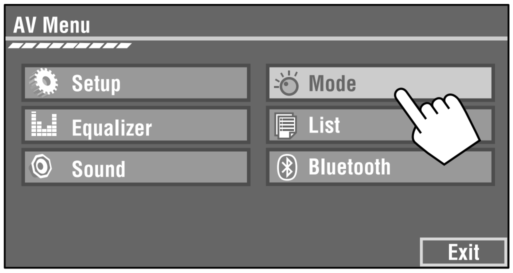
This function works only for FM bands.
You can preset six stations for each band.

1 Press [AV MENU].

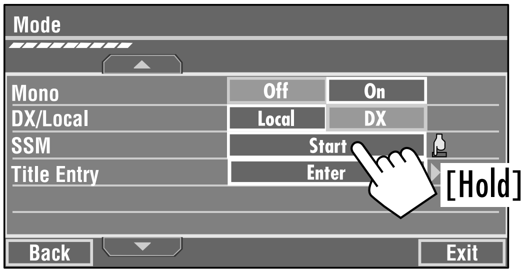

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

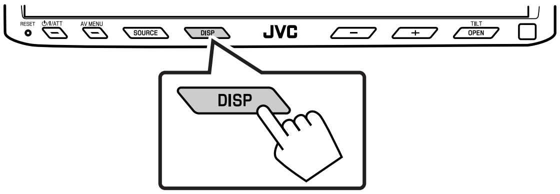

Mode
Mono
Off
On
DX/Local
Local
DX
SSM
Start
Title Entry
Enter
[Hold]
Back
Exit

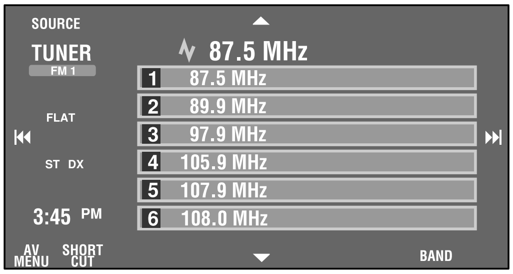
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

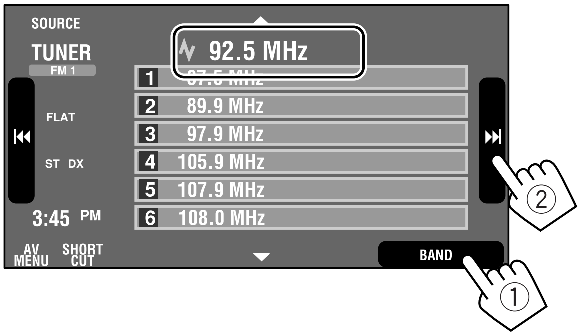
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 **Display the Preset List.**

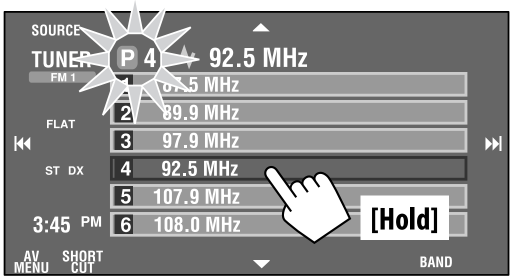

RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
87.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

2 **Tune in to a station you want to preset.**


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
92.5 MHz
1
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 105.9 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

3 **Select a preset number.**

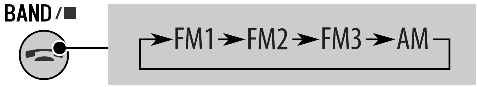

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 4
92.5 MHz
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.9 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
[Hold]

The station selected in step **2** is now stored in preset number 4.

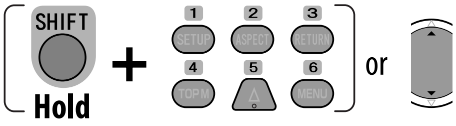
Selecting a preset station

On the remote:

1

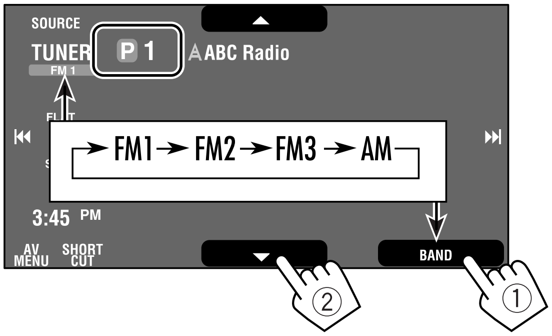

BAND /■
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2


SHIFT
Hold
+
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
or

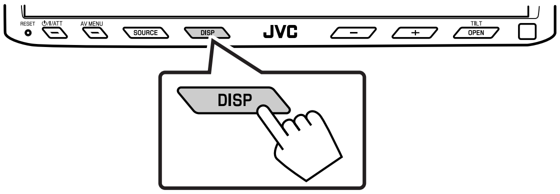
On the unit:

- **To select directly on the touch panel**

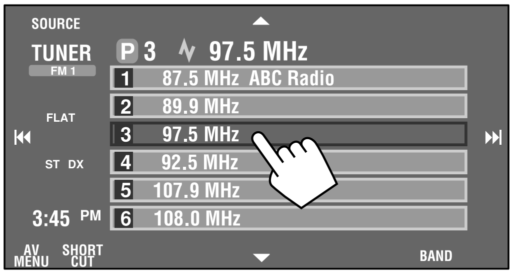

SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 1
ABC Radio
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND
②
①

- **To select from the Preset List**

1


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP

2


SOURCE
TUNER
FM 1
P 3
97.5 MHz
1 87.5 MHz ABC Radio
2 89.9 MHz
3 97.5 MHz
4 92.5 MHz
5 107.9 MHz
6 108.0 MHz
FLAT
ST DX
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
BAND

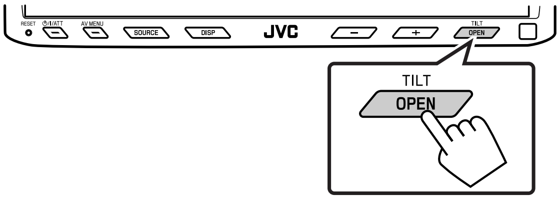
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for some discs: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

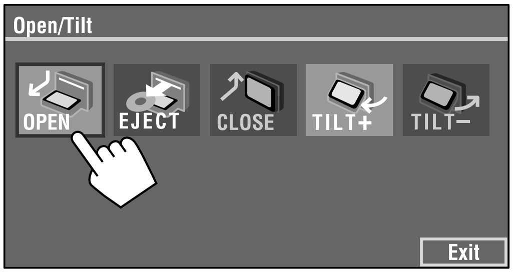
❶ Open the monitor panel.



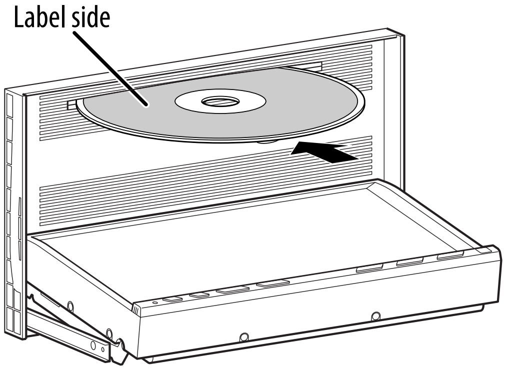
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷ Press [OPEN].



❸ Insert a disc.



Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**CLOSE**].

Caution:

Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Caution on volume setting:

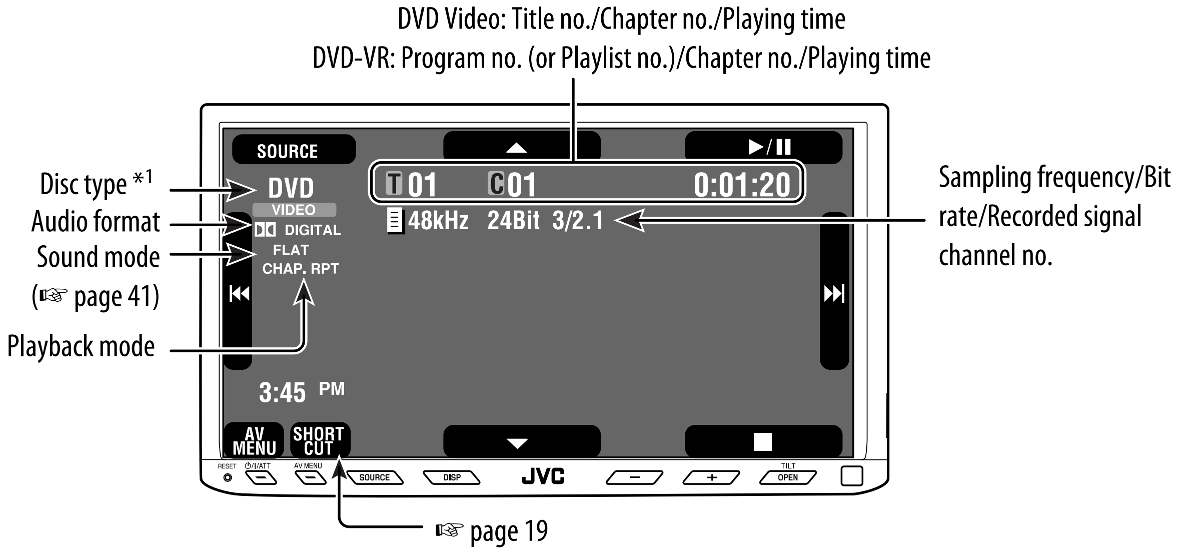
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (☞ also page 57)

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (☞ page 9)

DVD Video DVD VR


DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
Disc type *1
Audio format
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
Playback mode
Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
☞ page 19
SOURCE
DVD
VIDEO
DIGITAL
FLAT
CHAP. RPT
T01
C01
0:01:20
48kHz 24Bit 3/2.1
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❙◀◀ ▶▶❙]	*Press*: Select chapter *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2
[▲ ▼]	Select title/program/playlist

*1 *DVD-VR also indicates either PRG (program) or PLAY (playlist) playback.*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

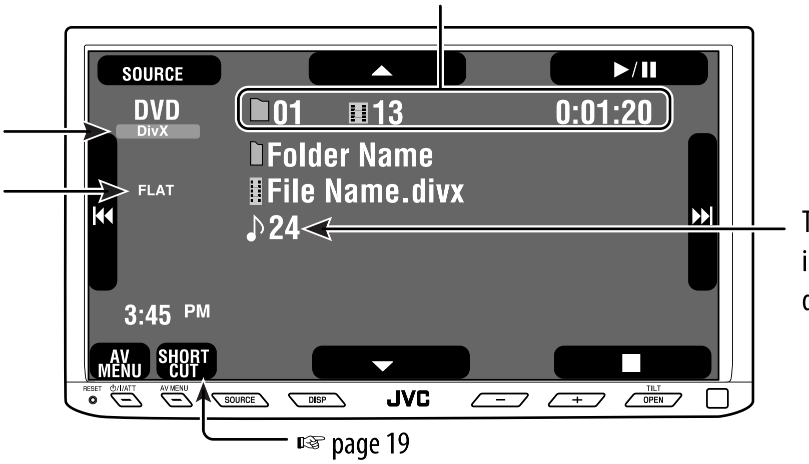
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback pictures on the screen).

While playing the following discs, press DISP.

- Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information (☞ page 9).

DivX MPEG JPEG

For DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
For JPEG: Folder no./File no.


SOURCE
▲
►/❚❚
DVD
DivX
01
13
0:01:20
Folder Name
File Name.divx
♪24
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Disc type

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

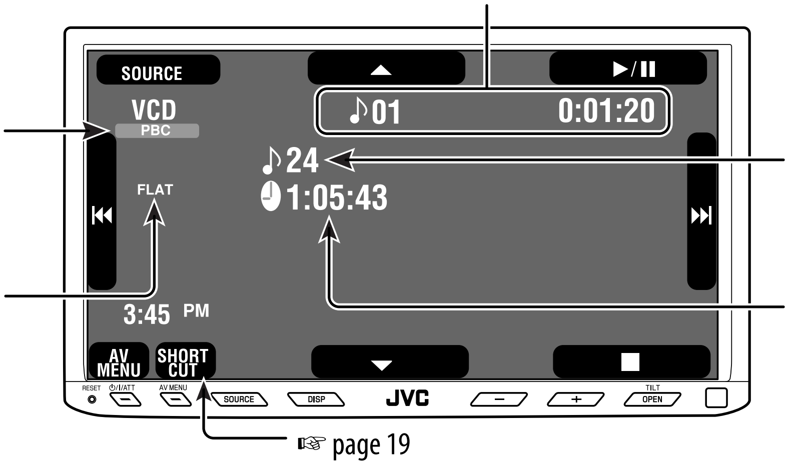
Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 19

[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search for DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 *1
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

VCD

Track no./Playing time


SOURCE
▲
►/❚❚
VCD
PBC
♪01
0:01:20
♪24
1:05:43
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
▼
■
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The PBC indicator lights up when PBC is in use.

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Total track no. included on the disc

Total playing time

☞ page 19

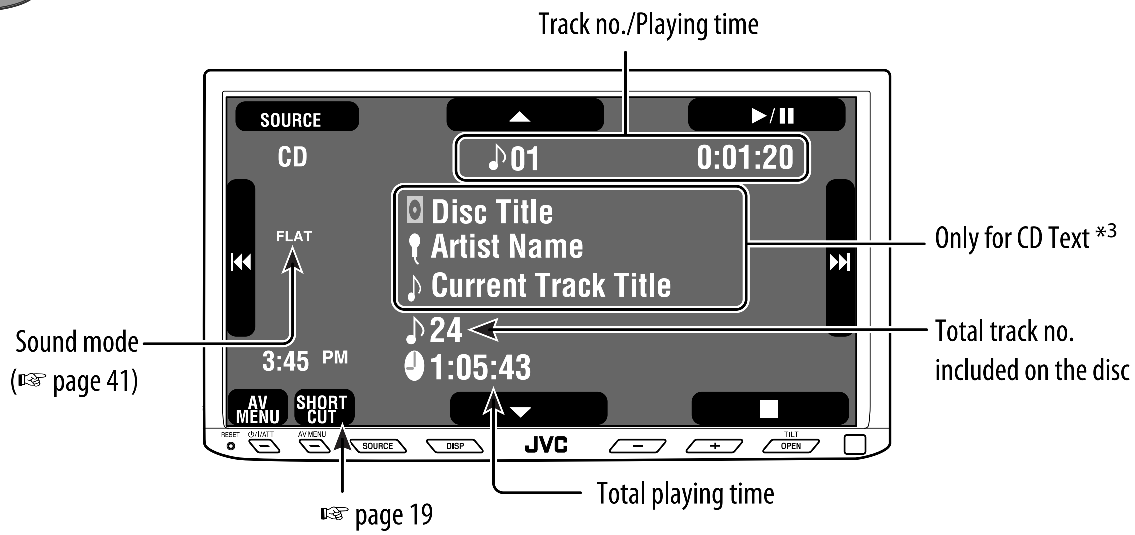
[► / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[|◀◀ ▶▶|]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*2

---

*1 *Search speed: ►►1 ⇨ ►►2*

*2 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

CD


SOURCE
CD
FLAT
♪01 0:01:20
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪24
1:05:43
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Track no./Playing time

Only for CD Text *3

Total track no. included on the disc

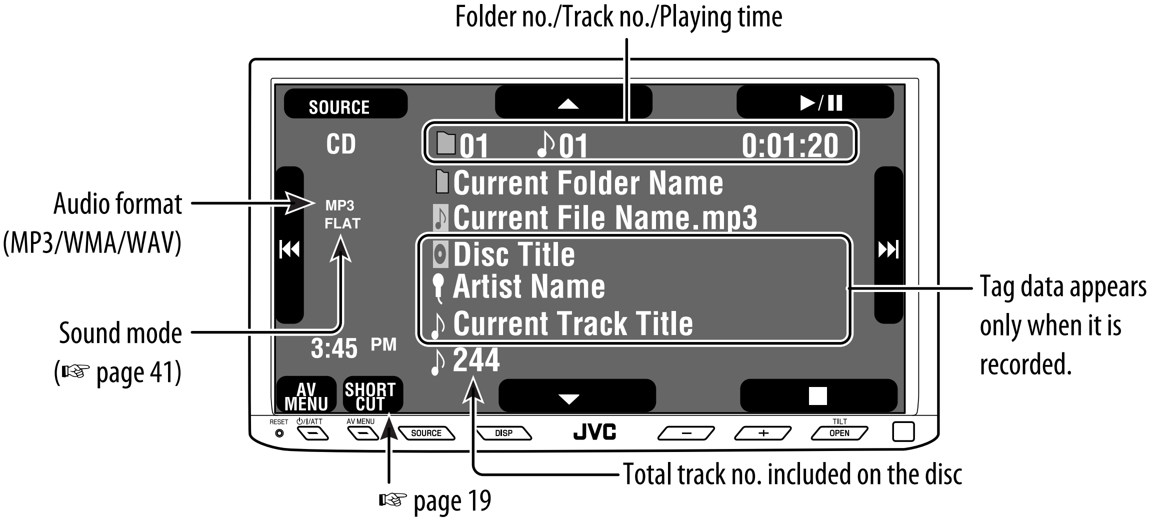
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

☞ page 19

Total playing time

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❘◀◀ ▶▶❘]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4

MP3/WMA/WAV


SOURCE
CD
MP3
FLAT
01 ♪01 0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
♪244
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Folder no./Track no./Playing time

Audio format (MP3/WMA/WAV)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

Tag data appears only when it is recorded.

Total track no. included on the disc

☞ page 19

[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[❘◀◀ ▶▶❘]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search*4
[▲ ▼]	*Press*: Select folder *Hold*: Display Folder list

---

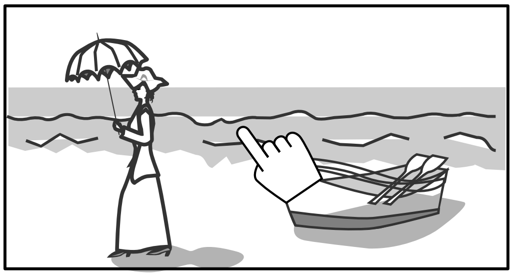
*3 *"No Name" appears for conventional CDs.*

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

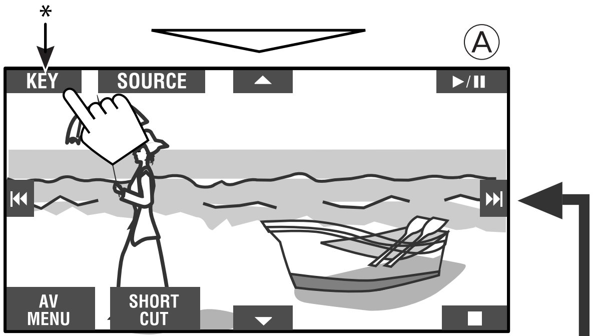
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

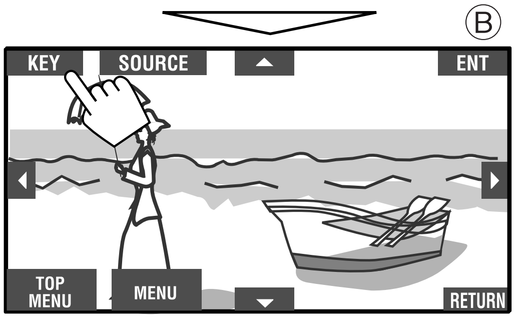
- While the operation buttons are displayed, aspect ratio is fixed to <**Full**>. (☞ page 45)
- If no operation is done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



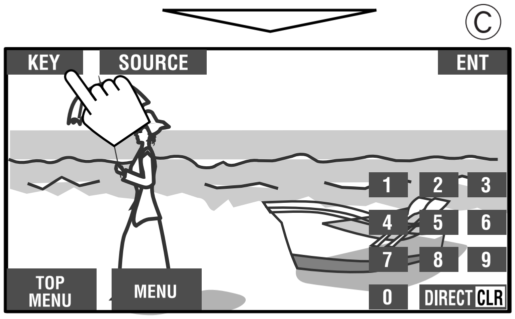
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To erase the operations, touch the screen again.

☞ pages 20 to 24 on how the operation buttons particularly work for a variety of the discs

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Display <**Source Menu**> screen
[**AV MENU**]	Display <**AV Menu**> screen
[**SHORT CUT**]	Display the Short Cut buttons
[▶ / ❚❚]	Start and pause playback
[■]	Stop playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲ ▼]	Select folders

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

* *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen.*

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD/DivX menu operation playback

[◀ ▶ ▲ ▼]	Select the menu items
[**ENT**]	Confirm the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Display the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Return to the previous menu or display the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**DIRECT CLR**]	• Switch between chapter/track entry and title/group/folder entry • Erase the last entry when you enter a wrong number
[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENT**]	Enter numbers

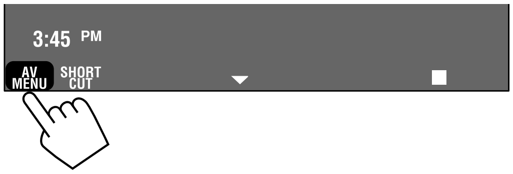
Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENT**]

Selecting playback modes

You can use the following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

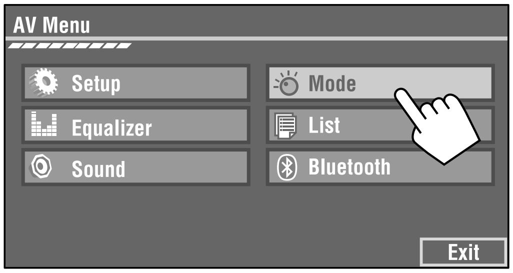
Ex.: To select Track Repeat

1

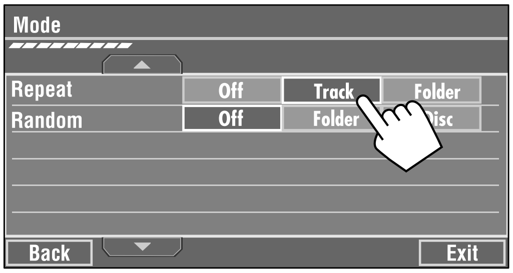

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3


Mode
Repeat
Off
Track
Folder
Random
Off
Folder
Disc
Back
Exit

When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

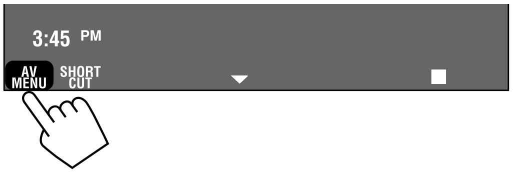
Disc type	Repeat	Random
DVD Video	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Title**: Repeats current title	—
DVD VR	**Chapter**: Repeats current chapter **Program**: Repeats current program (not available for Playlist playback)	—
DivX MPEG	**Track**: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
JPEG	**Folder**: Repeats current folder	—
VCD	**Track**: Repeats current track (PBC not in use)	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks (PBC not in use)
CD	**Track**: Repeats current track*1	**Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks
MP3/WMA/WAV	**Track**: Repeats current track*1 **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc (All)**: Randomly plays all tracks

*1 *You can also use [**SHORT CUT**] to turn on and off Track Repeat.*

Selecting tracks on the list

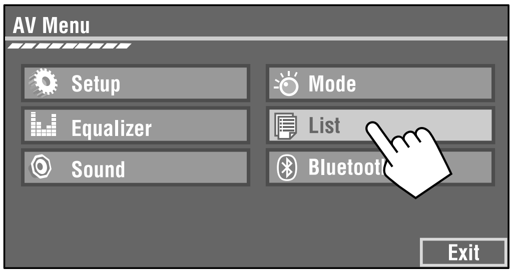
If a disc includes folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.

1

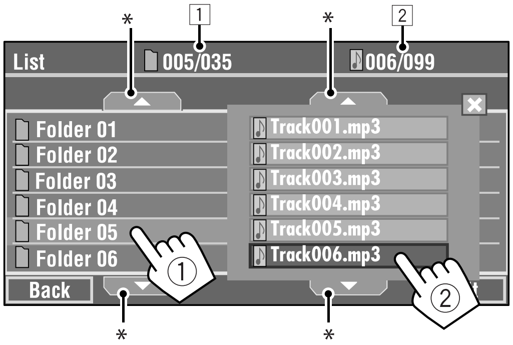

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 **Select a folder (①), then a track (②).**

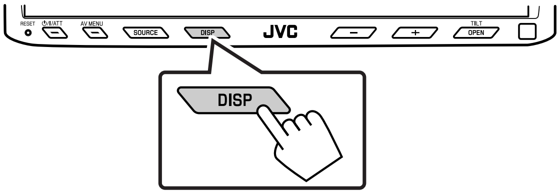

*
1
*
2
List
005/035
006/099
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back
①
②
*
*

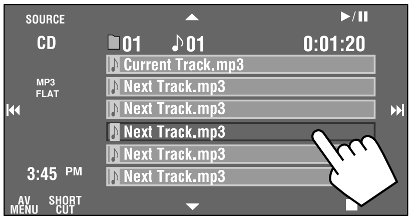
Selected track starts playing. (* Press to move to the previous/next pages of the list)

1 Current folder list number/total folder list number

2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder

You can easily access the Track List by pressing DISP on the monitor panel.

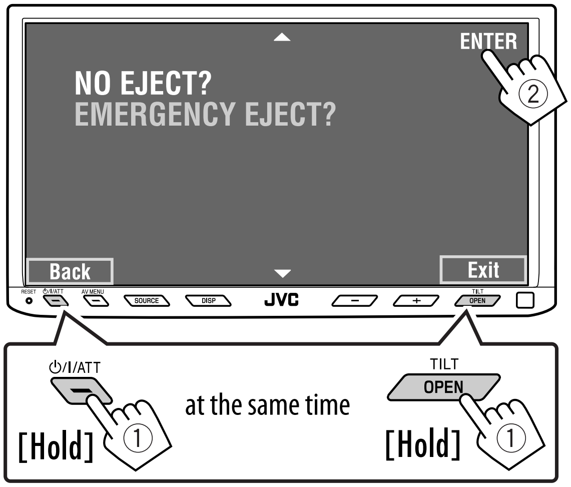

SOURCE
DISP
JVC
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
CD
01
01
0:01:20
Current Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
Next Track.mp3
MP3
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Selected track starts playing.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

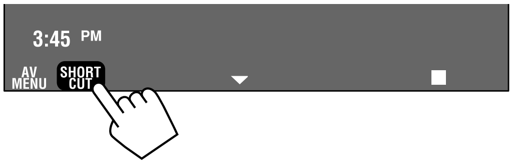

ENTER
②
NO EJECT?
EMERGENCY EJECT?
Back
Exit
JVC
⏻/I/ATT
[Hold]
①
at the same time
TILT
OPEN
[Hold]
①

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.

Using Short Cut Icons

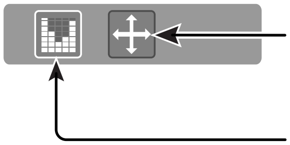
You can easily access the some frequently used functions by using [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel.

1


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

2

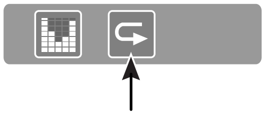
- For video software:



Aspect ratio (☞ page 45)

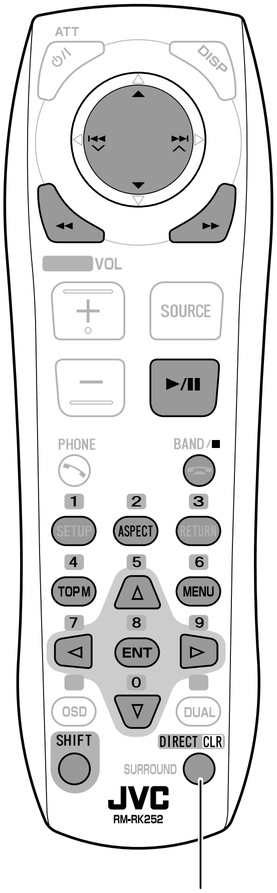
Sound mode (☞ page 41)

- For audio software:



Turn on or off Track Repeat (Repeat play: ☞ page 18)

Operations using the remote controller—RM-RK252


ATT
⏻/I
DISP
⏮
⏭
◀◀
▶▶
VOL
SOURCE
+
−
▶/❚❚
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
∆
MENU
7
8
9
◁
ENT
▷
0
OSD
∇
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DVD Video

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/❚❚ : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)
Slow motion during pause*2 (No sound can be heard.)

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*3 (No sound can be heard.)

∆ ∇ : Select title (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select chapter.
Select title (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ∇ … 9 ▷) → ENT :
Select title (during playback or pause).

Using menu driven features

1 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆ ◁ ▷

3 8 ENT

*1 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*2 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

You can change the following items using the on-screen bar—audio language, audio stream, audio channel, subtitle language, view angle, etc. (☞ pages 25 and 26)

DVD VR

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
Forward slow motion during pause*5 (No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

|◄◄ ►►| : *Press*: Select chapter (during playback or pause).
Hold: Reverse/forward search*6

▲ ▼ : Select program.
Select playlist (during playback or pause).

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT : Select chapter.
Select program (when not playing).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 … 9) ➡ ENT : Select program/playlist (during playback or pause).

Using Original Program/Playlist screens (☞ page 25)

1 4 TOP M : For Original Program
6 MENU : For Playlist

2 Select an item you want to start playback. ∇ ∆

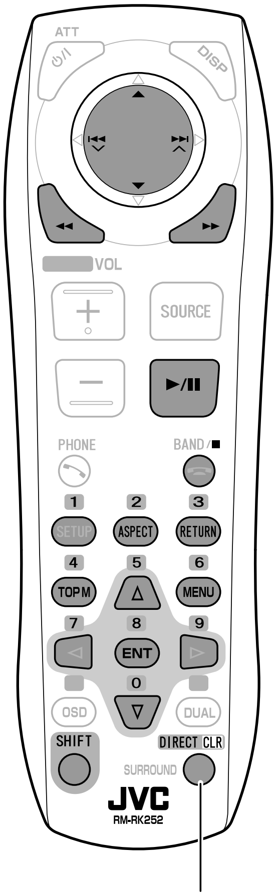
3 8 ENT : To erase the screen.

---

*4 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*5 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*6 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
►/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1 SETUP
2 ASPECT
3 RETURN
4 TOP M
5
6 MENU
7
8 ENT
9
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

DivX MPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*1 (No sound can be heard.)

(|◄◄ ►►|) : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search*2 (No sound can be heard.)

▲▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

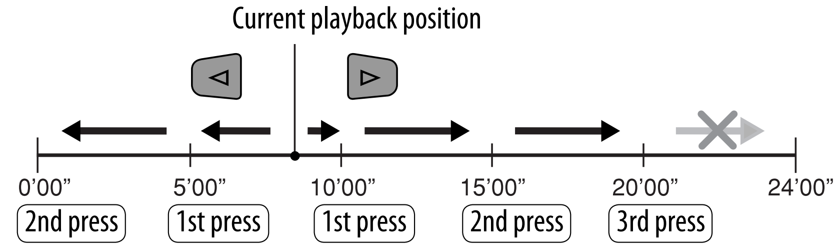
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ▽ ... 9 ▷) → ENT :

Select folder.

While playing...

Reverse/advance the scenes by five minutes.


Current playback position
◁
▷
0'00"
5'00"
10'00"
15'00"
20'00"
24'00"
2nd press
1st press
1st press
2nd press
3rd press

For DivX6: Using menu driven features

1. 4 TOP M / 6 MENU
2. Select an item you want to start playback. ▽ △ ◁ ▷
3. 8 ENT

*1 *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2 ⇨ ►►3

*2 *Search speed:* ►►1 ⇨ ►►2

JPEG

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause. (Slide show: each file is shown for a few seconds.)
Shows the current file until you change it if pressed during Slide show.

⏮ ⏭ : Select file.

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select file (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR twice → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select folder.

VCD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

►/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◄◄ ►► : Reverse/forward search*3
Forward slow motion during pause*4
(No sound can be heard.)
- Reverse slow motion does not work.

⏮ ⏭ : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*5 (No sound can be heard.)

2 ASPECT : Select aspect ratio.

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT : Select track.

During PBC playback...

SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT :
Select an item on the menu.
To return to the previous menu, press 3 RETURN

To cancel PBC playback

1 BAND/■

2 Select the desired track.

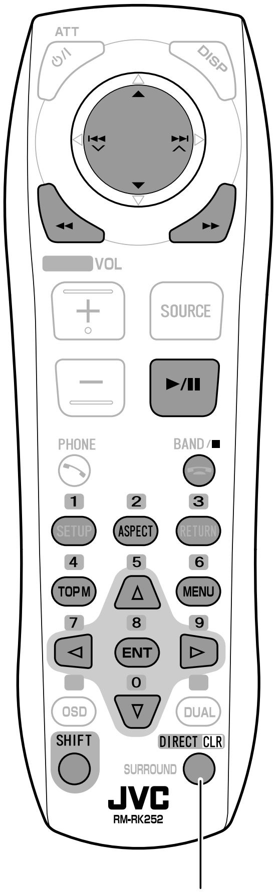
SHIFT + (DIRECT CLR → 0 ... 9) → ENT

- To resume PBC, press 4 TOP M / 6 MENU

*3 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*4 *Slow motion speed: 1/32 ⇨ 1/16 ⇨ 1/8 ⇨ 1/4 ⇨ 1/2*

*5 *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*


ATT
DISP
VOL
SOURCE
▶/II
PHONE
BAND/■
1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
0
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

Also functions as CLR (clear): Erases a misentry if pressed while holding SHIFT.

CD

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*[1]

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*[2]

SHIFT + (DIRECT → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track.

*[1] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*[2] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

MP3/WMA/WAV

BAND/■ : Stop playback.

▶/II : Start playback/pause (if pressed during playback).

◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward search*[3]

(⏮ ⏭) : *Press*: Select track.
Hold: Reverse/forward search*[4]

▲ ▼ : Select folder.

SHIFT + (DIRECT → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select track (within the same folder).

SHIFT + (DIRECT twice → 0 … 9) → ENT :
Select folder.

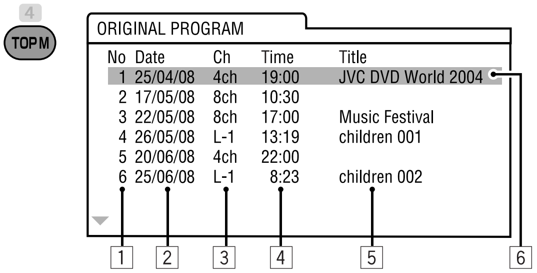
*[3] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60*

*[4] *Search speed: x2 ⇨ x10*

Using the list screens

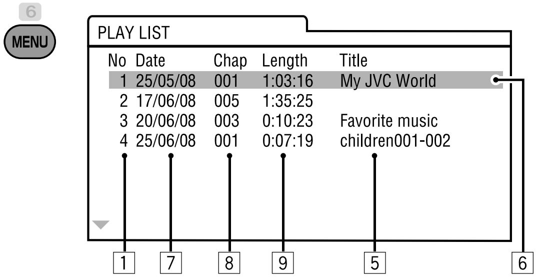
You can use Original Program or Playlist screen anytime while playing DVD-VR with its data recorded.

1 Display the Original Program/Playlist screen.


4
TOP M
1
2
3
4
5
6

ORIGINAL PROGRAM

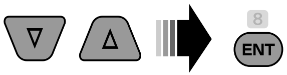
No	Date	Ch	Time	Title
1	25/04/08	4ch	19:00	JVC DVD World 2004
2	17/05/08	8ch	10:30	
3	22/05/08	8ch	17:00	Music Festival
4	26/05/08	L-1	13:19	children 001
5	20/06/08	4ch	22:00	
6	25/06/08	L-1	8:23	children 002


6
MENU
1
7
8
9
5
6

PLAY LIST

No	Date	Chap	Length	Title
1	25/05/08	001	1:03:16	My JVC World
2	17/06/08	005	1:35:25	
3	20/06/08	003	0:10:23	Favorite music
4	25/06/08	001	0:07:19	children001-002

2 Select an item you want.



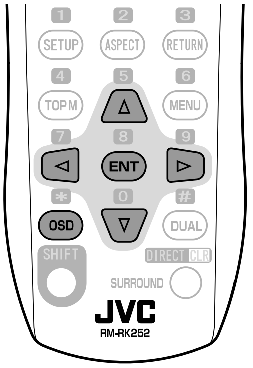
To erase the screen

1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

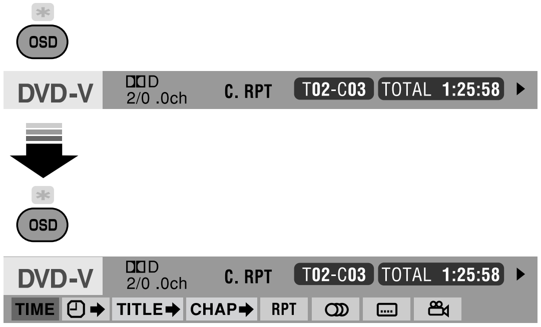
* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the screen using the remote controller, while playing the following discs—DVD/VCD/DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG.

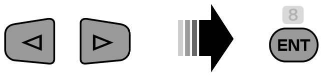

1
2
3
SETUP
ASPECT
RETURN
4
5
6
TOP M
MENU
7
8
9
ENT
*
0
#
OSD
DUAL
SHIFT
DIRECT CLR
SURROUND
JVC
RM-RK252

1 Display the on-screen bar. (☞page 26)


OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
OSD
DVD-V
2/0 .0ch
C. RPT
T02-C03
TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME
TITLE
CHAP
RPT

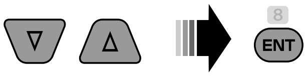
Ex. For DVD-Video

2 Select an item.

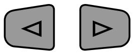


3 Make a selection.

If a pop-up menu appears...

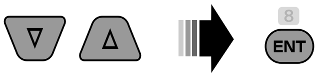


- For entering time/numbers...



:

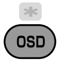
Move the entry position



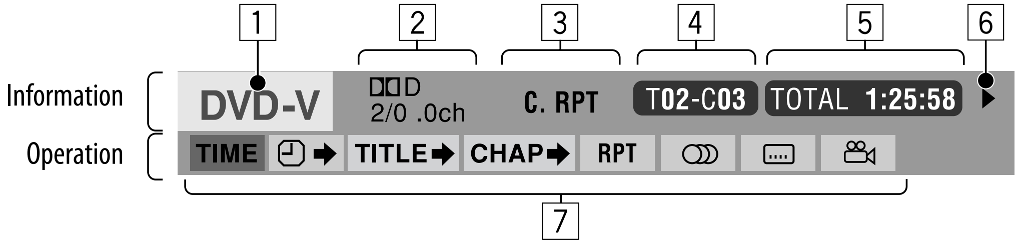
:

Select a number

To remove the on-screen bar



On-screen bar



Above example is of DVD Video. Items shown on the bar vary due to the disc type.

1 Disc type

2
- DVD: Audio signal format
- VCD: PBC

3 Playback mode [*1]

DVD Video:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
T. RPT:	Title repeat

DVD-VR:

C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
PG. RPT:	Program repeat

DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
F. RPT:	Folder repeat
F. RND:	Folder random
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

JPEG:

F. RPT:	Folder repeat

VCD:

T. RPT:	Track repeat
A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T02-C03	Current title/chapter
PG001 C001	Current program/chapter
PL001 C001	Current Playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for others)
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track [*2]
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track [*2]

6 Playback status

▶	Play
◀◀/▶▶	Reverse/forward search
◀❙/❙▶	Reverse/forward slow-motion
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
⏲➔	Time Search (Specify a certain scene by entering time.)
TITLE➔	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➔	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➔	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play [*1]
RND	Random play [*1]
⚭	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
▭	Change or erase the subtitle language
🎥	Change the view angle

[*1] ☞ *page 18*

[*2] *Not applicable for DVD-VR*

Bluetooth® operations — Cellular phone/audio player

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth Adapter (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to see the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("Bluetooth PHONE" and "Bluetooth AUDIO").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

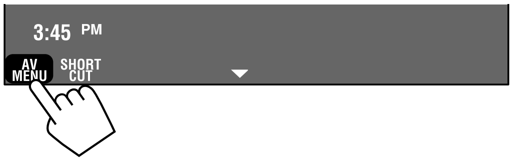
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

To register using <Open>

Preparation:

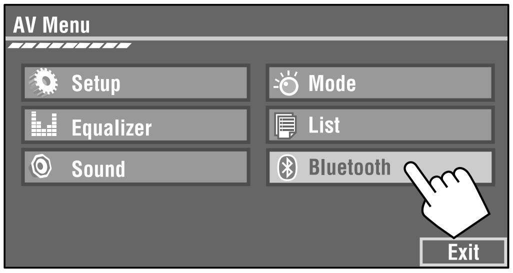
Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 • Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

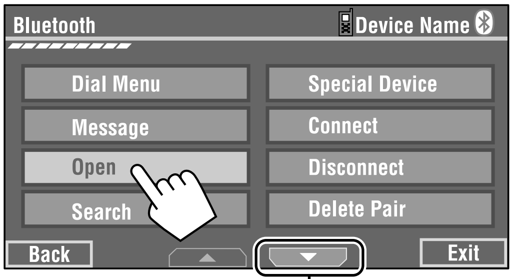

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3

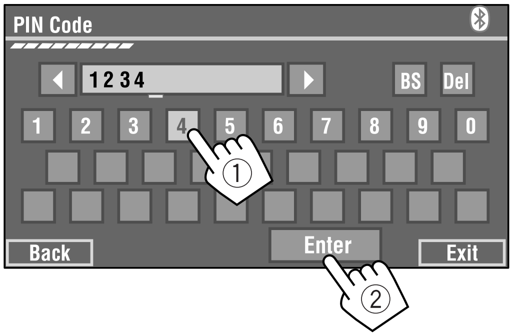

Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

Go to other menu items

4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)* code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*


PIN Code
1234
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
①
Back
Enter
Exit
②

Continued on the next page

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only.

- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Enter**]: Confirms the entry.

5 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen.
Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> (or activate <**Auto Connect**>) to connect the same device from next time (☞ the following, and pages 50 and 51).

To register using <Search>

- Make sure "New Device" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it.

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Search].
The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.)

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
- Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

6 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen.

Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

To connect a special device <Special Device>

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Bluetooth].

3 Press [Special Device].
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

4 Select a device you want to connect.

5 Use <Open> (or <Search>) to connect.

To connect/disconnect a registered device

1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Connect] or [Disconnect].
- Select <**Connect**> to connect the selected device.
- Select <**Disconnect**> to disconnect the selected device.

To delete a registered device

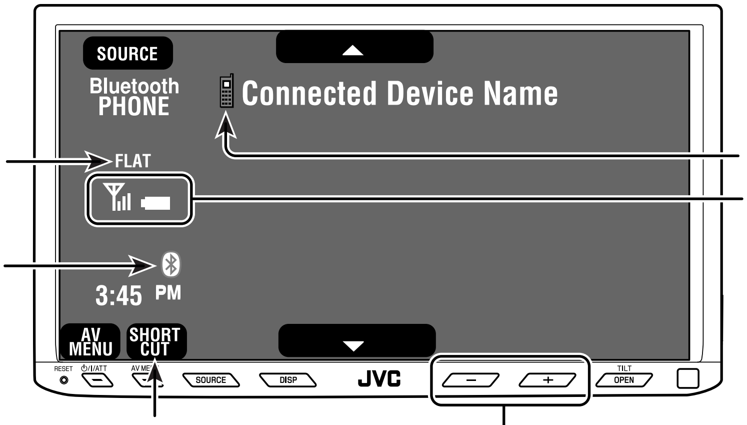
1 Select "Bluetooth PHONE" or "Bluetooth AUDIO," then select a registered device you want to delete.

2 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Press [Delete Pairing].
Confirmation screen appears. Press [**Yes**].

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone



Sound mode (☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

*1 Status of the device Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 31

Adjust the volume of the incoming calls.*2

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[**AV MENU**]	Hold: Activates <Voice Dialing> function
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device (“New Device” appears when a new device can be registered.)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected,* 📱 *appears.*

*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the other sources.*

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].** (☞ page 9)

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [AV MENU].**

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

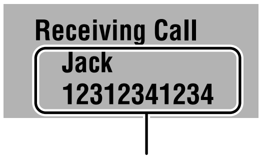
❸ **Press [Bluetooth].**

❹ **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu).**

☞ pages 50 and 51

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to “Bluetooth PHONE” automatically.



Receiving Call
Jack
12312341234

Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (☞ page 51)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call

- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.

To end the call

- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I /ATT or +/–).
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.

- You can adjust the microphone volume. (☞ page 51)

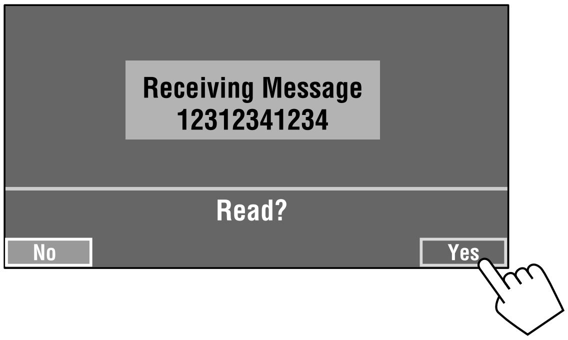
When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...

The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (☞ page 51)



Receiving Message
12312341234

Read?

To read the message, press **[Yes].**
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press **[No].**

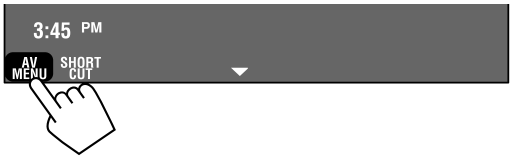
- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (☞ page 50)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...

Access the message list to read messages. (☞ pages 50 and 51)

To make a call

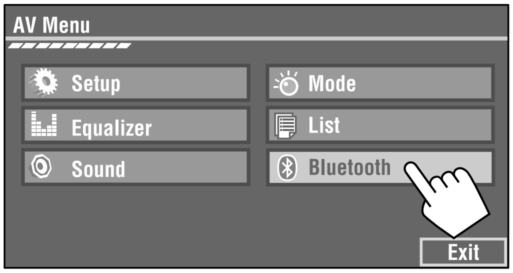
1



3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

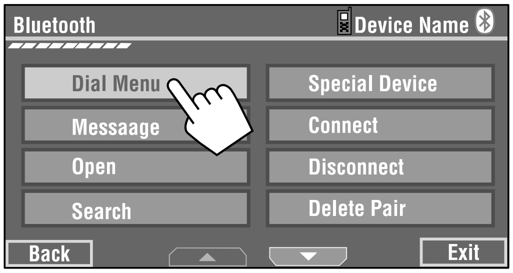
- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2



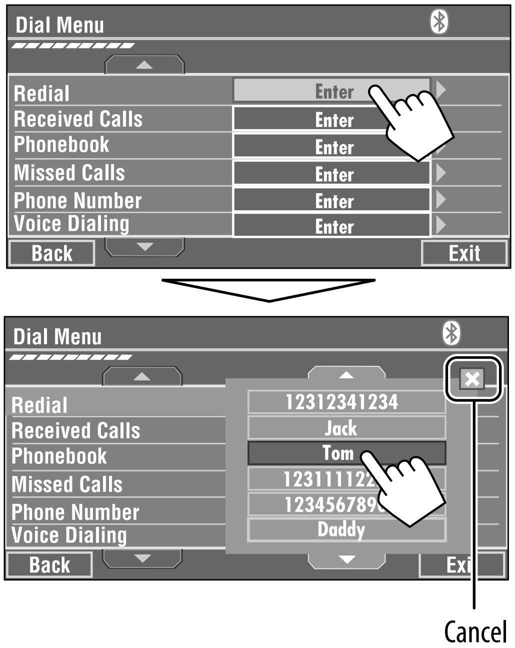
AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3



Bluetooth
Device Name
Dial Menu
Special Device
Message
Connect
Open
Disconnect
Search
Delete Pair
Back
Exit

4 **Select a calling method, then call.**



Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Back
Exit
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
123456789
Daddy
Cancel

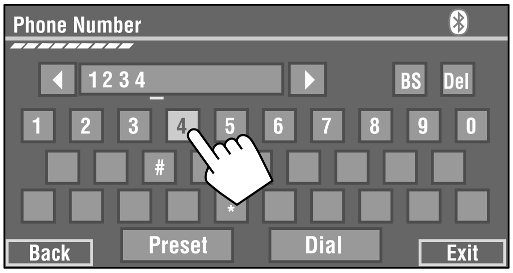
Redial	Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed.
Received Calls	Shows the list of the received calls.
Phonebook	Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone.
Missed Calls	Shows the list of the missed calls.
Phone Number	Shows the phone number entry screen → "Entering a phone number" (☞ page 31).
Voice Dialling	(Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): → Speak the name you want to call.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/I/ATT or +/–).

Entering a phone number

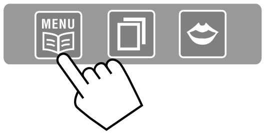
- You cannot use the remote controller to enter phone numbers.


Phone Number
1 2 3 4
BS
Del
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#
*
Back
Preset
Dial
Exit

You can enter [**0**] – [**9**], [*], [#] (up to 32 numbers)

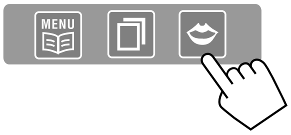
- [**BS**]: Erases the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erases the character on the cursor.
- [**Preset**]: Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. (☞ page 32)
- [**Dial**]: Calls the entered number.

- You can easily access <**Dial Menu**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



You can also access <**Dial Menu**> by holding SOURCE on the monitor panel.

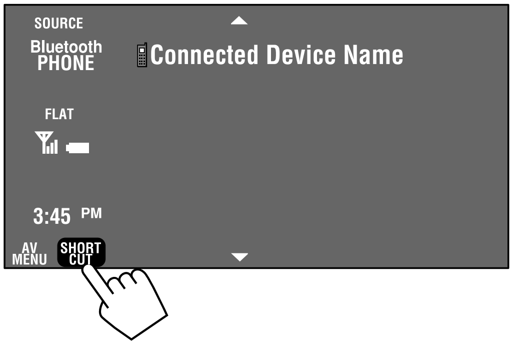
- You can easily activate <**Voice Dialing**> by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...



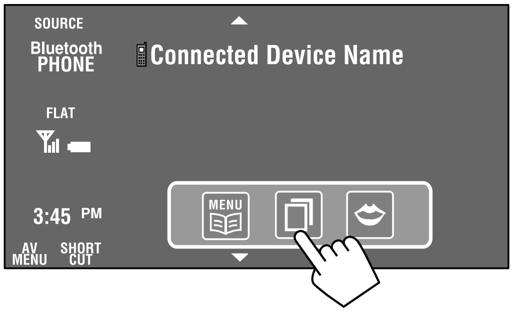
You can also activate <**Voice Dialing**> by holding [**AV MENU**].

To redial previously dialed numbers

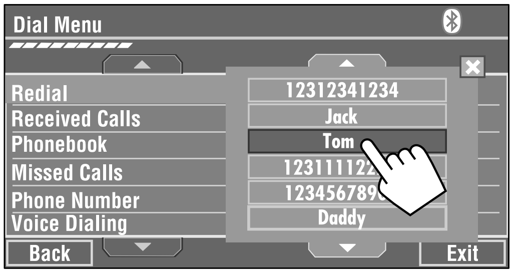
1


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

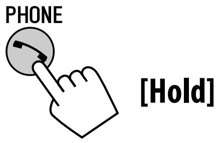
2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
Connected Device Name
FLAT
3:45 PM
MENU
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

3


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
12345678
Daddy
Back
Exit

When using the remote controller, you can display <**Redial**> menu anytime .



Presetting the phone numbers ■

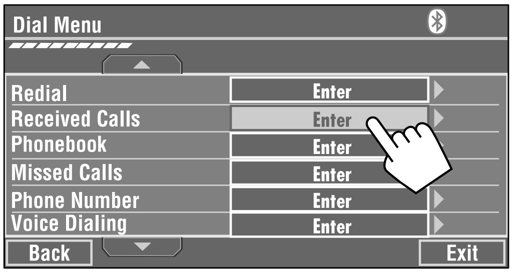
You can preset up to six phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.

① Press [**AV MENU**] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

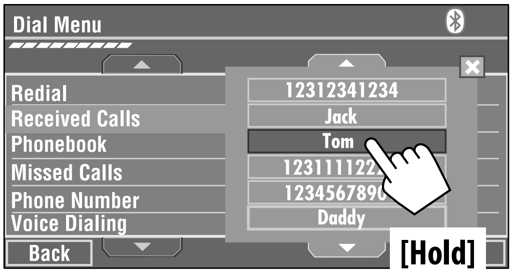
② Press [**Bluetooth**].

③ Press [**Dial Menu**], then...

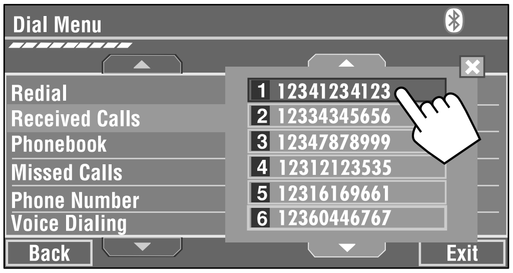

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Enter
Back
Exit

Ex.: Selecting <**Received Calls**>

2 Select a telephone number to store.


Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
12312341234
Jack
Tom
12311112
1234567890
Daddy
Back
[Hold]

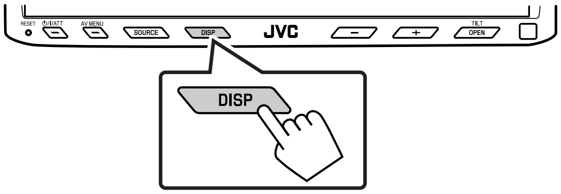
3 Select a preset number.

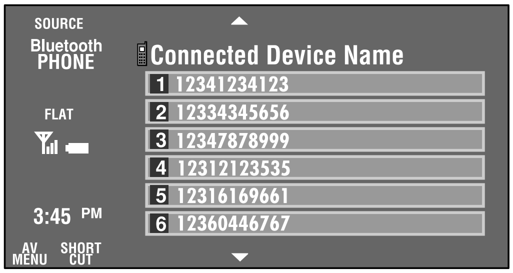

Dial Menu
Redial
Received Calls
Phonebook
Missed Calls
Phone Number
Voice Dialing
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767
Back
Exit

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

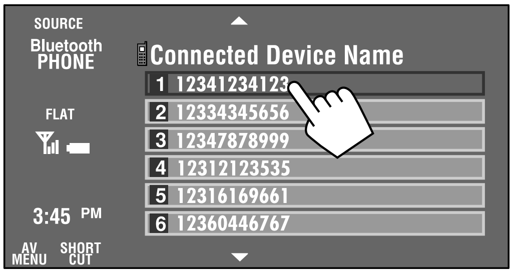
To call a preset number

1


RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
DISP


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

2


SOURCE
Bluetooth PHONE
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Connected Device Name
1 12341234123
2 12334345656
3 12347878999
4 12312123535
5 12316169661
6 12360446767

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth phone operations.

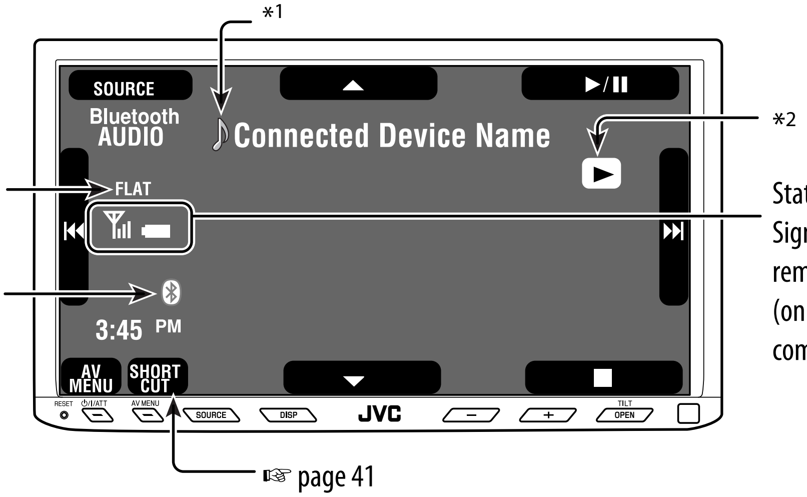
PHONE ☎ :
- Display <**Dial Menu**> screen/Answer the incoming call.
- Display the <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held (regardless of the current source).

BAND/■ ☎ : End the call.

2nd VOL VOL + − : Adjust the volume.

SHIFT **[Hold]** + 1 2 3 4 5 6 : Make a call to the preset numbers.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



*1

*2

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

The Bluetooth icon lights up when the adapter is connected.

Status of the device Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device)

☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[▶ / ❚❚] [■]	Start and pause playback
[I◀◀ ▶▶I]	Reverse/forward skip
[▲ ▼]	Select the registered device ("New Device" appears when a new device can be registered.*3)

*1 *When a cellular phone with audio function is connected, 📱 appears.*

*2 *Indicates the button pressed. It may be different from the operation status.*

*3 *You cannot select "New Device" when a Bluetooth audio player is connected.*

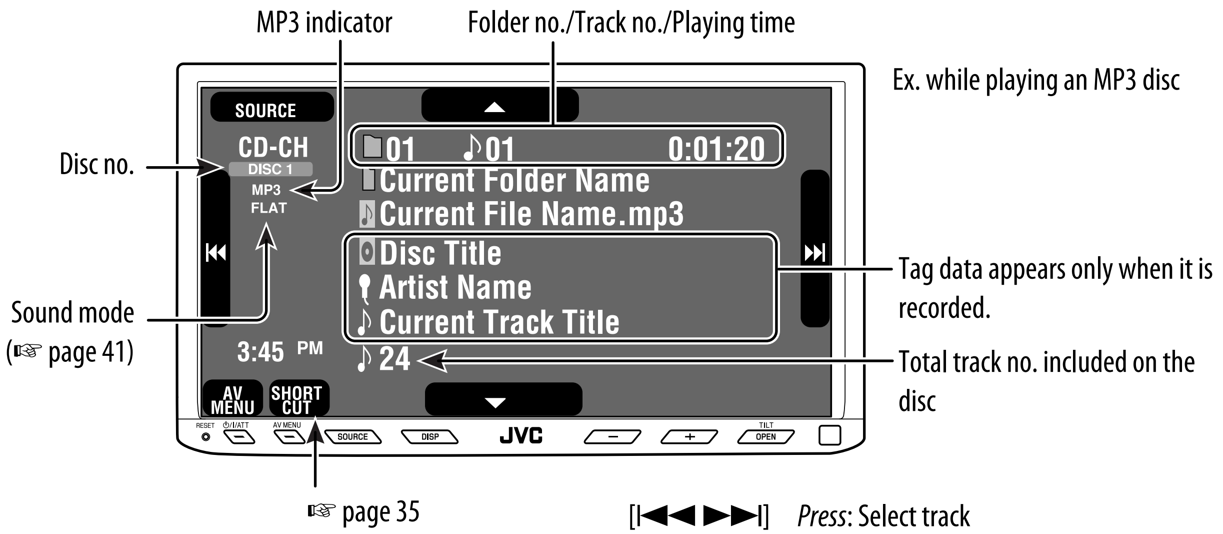
1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].** (☞ page 9)
   - You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.
2. **Start playback.**

You can use the following buttons on the remote controller for the Bluetooth audio operations.

►/II BAND/■ :	Start and pause playback.
I◄◄ ►►I :	Reverse/forward skip
2nd VOL VOL + − :	Adjust the volume.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>

Listening to the CD changer


MP3 indicator
Folder no./Track no./Playing time
Ex. while playing an MP3 disc
Disc no.
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
SOURCE
CD-CH
DISC 1
MP3
FLAT
01
01
0:01:20
Current Folder Name
Current File Name.mp3
Disc Title
Artist Name
Current Track Title
3:45 PM
24
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
Tag data appears only when it is recorded.
Total track no. included on the disc
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 35

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[|◀◀ ▶▶|] *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/forward search

[▲ ▼] *Press*: Select folders (only for MP3)
Hold: Display Disc list

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

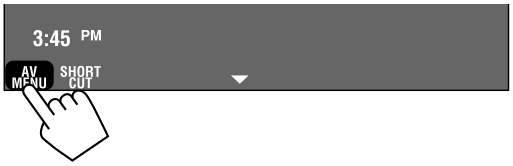
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].** (☞ page 9)

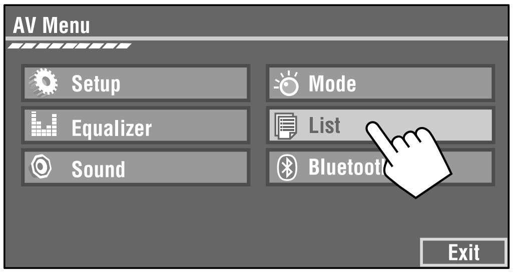
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷

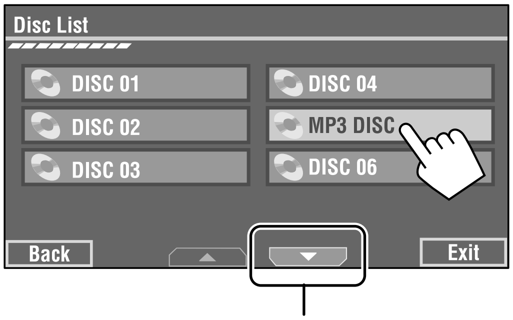

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❸ **Display the Disc List.**

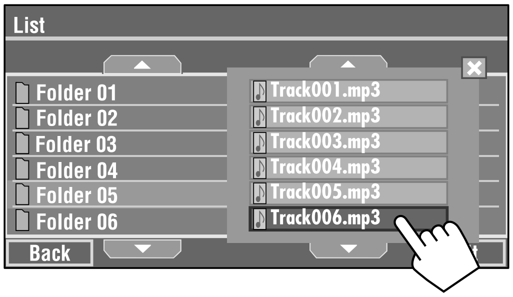

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**


Disc List
DISC 01
DISC 04
DISC 02
MP3 DISC
DISC 03
DISC 06
Back
Exit

To go to the other list

- If you select an MP3 disc, the Track list of the current folder appears. You can select a track and start playing. (☞ also page 19)


List
Folder 01
Folder 02
Folder 03
Folder 04
Folder 05
Folder 06
Track001.mp3
Track002.mp3
Track003.mp3
Track004.mp3
Track005.mp3
Track006.mp3
Back

- If you select a folder on the list, you can start playing the first track of the folder.

Selecting playback modes

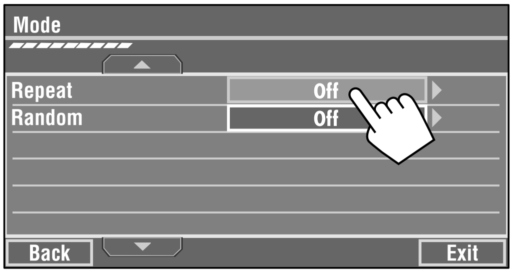
You can use following playback modes—Repeat or Random.

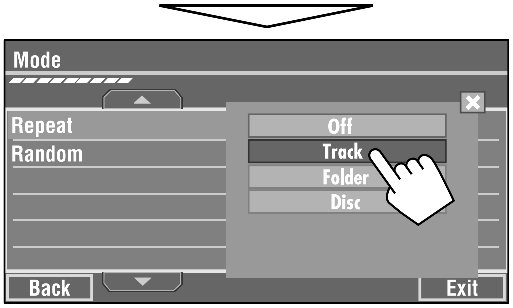
Ex.: To select Track Repeat for an MP3 disc

1 Press [AV MENU] on the touch panel or AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2 Press [Mode].

3





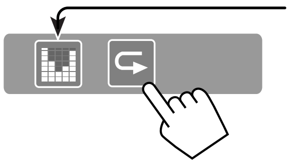
When one of the playback modes is selected, the corresponding indicator lights up on the source information screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

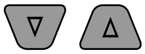
Disc type	Repeat	Random
	Track: Repeats current track **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs
	Track: Repeats current track **Folder**: Repeats all tracks of the current folder **Disc**: Repeats all tracks of the current disc	**Folder**: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Disc**: Randomly plays all tracks of the current disc **All**: Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs

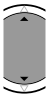
You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

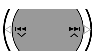
☞ page 41



You can use the following buttons on the remote controller to operate the CD changer.

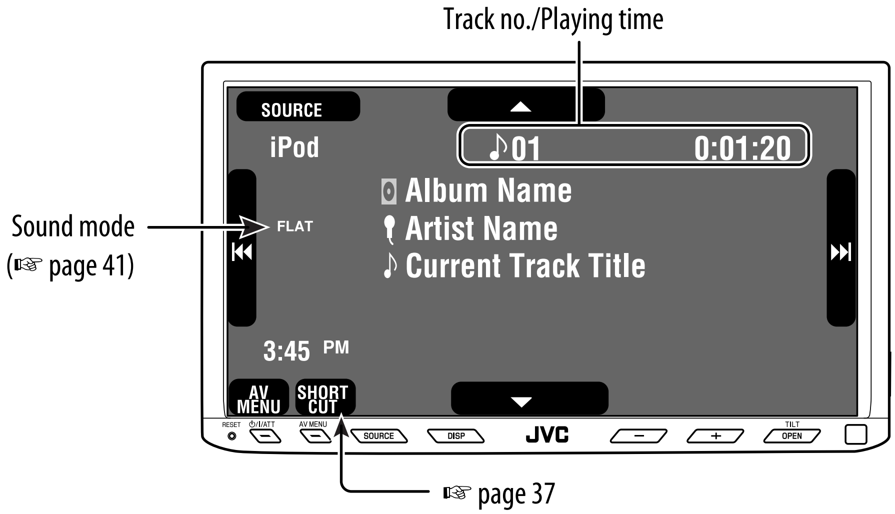
 : Select disc.

 : Select folder (MP3 only).



- *Press*: Select track.
- *Hold*: Reverse/forward search

Listening to the iPod


Track no./Playing time
SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
Sound mode
(☞ page 41)
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 37

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

[⏮ ⏭]	*Press*: Select track *Hold*: Reverse/forward search
[▲]	Enter player's menu
[▼]	Start playback/pause • To resume, press again.

It is required to connect the Interface adapter for iPod (KS-PD100) to the CD changer jack on the rear.

Preparation:

Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod]** (☞ page 9)

Playback starts automatically.

- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the player's menu

1 Press [▲] to enter the player's menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about five seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.
Press: Select an item.
Hold: Skip ten items at a time if there are more than ten items.

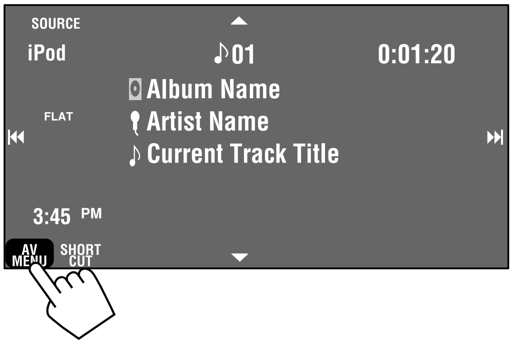
Playlists ←→ **Artists** ←→ **Albums** ←→ **Songs** ←→ **Genres** ←→ **Composers** ←→ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [▼] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [▲].

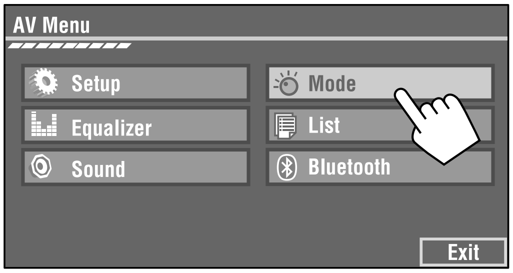
Selecting playback modes

1

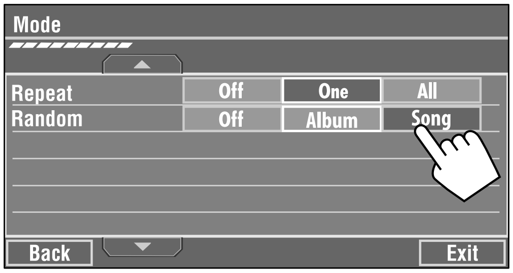

SOURCE
iPod
♪01
0:01:20
Album Name
Artist Name
Current Track Title
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

2


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

3 Select an appropriate option.


Mode
Repeat
Off
One
All
Random
Off
Album
Song
Back
Exit

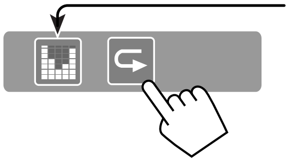
Repeat	**One**:	Functions the same as "Repeat One."
	All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All."
Random	**Album**:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums."
	Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs."

- When the playback modes are selected, the corresponding indicators light up alternately on the screen.

To cancel, select <**Off**>.

You can easily turn on or off Track Repeat by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

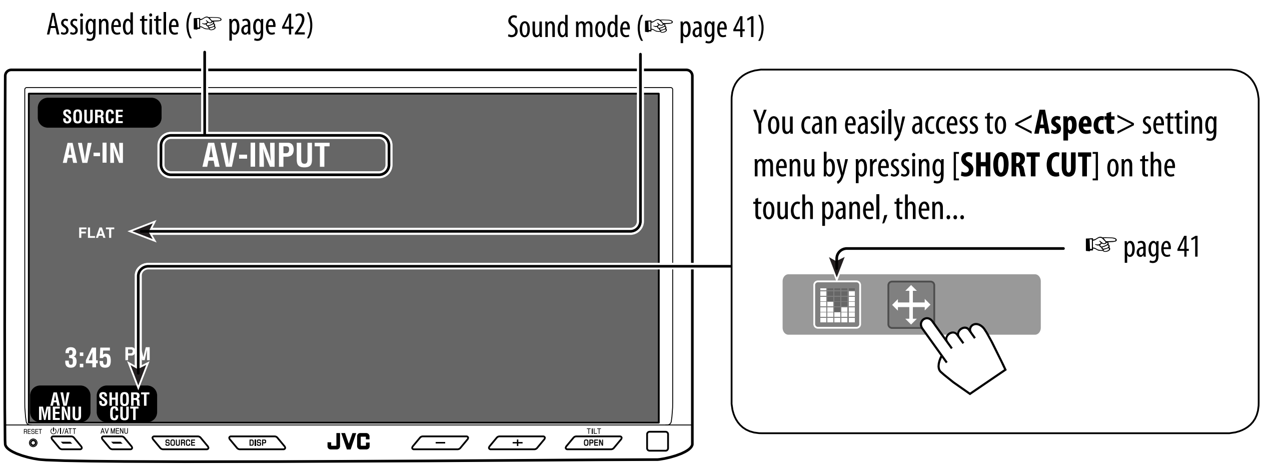
☞ page 41



Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN terminals.


Assigned title (☞ page 42)
Sound mode (☞ page 41)
SOURCE
AV-IN
AV-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN
☞ page 41

You can easily access to <**Aspect**> setting menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

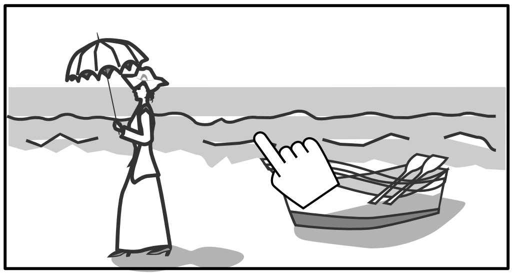
▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].
These buttons also work when they are not shown on the touch panel (while watching the playback picture).

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].** (☞ page 9)

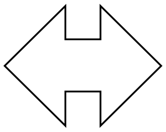
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

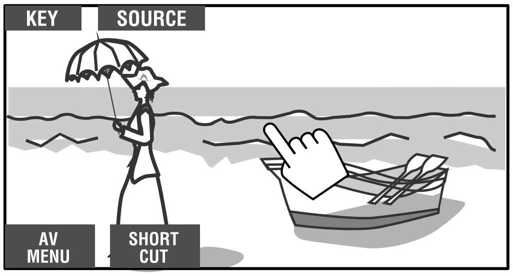
❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while watching the playback picture



Touch the screen (center portion).




KEY
SOURCE
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

Touch the screen (center portion).

- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- [**KEY**] does not work when the source is "AV-IN."

Navigation screen

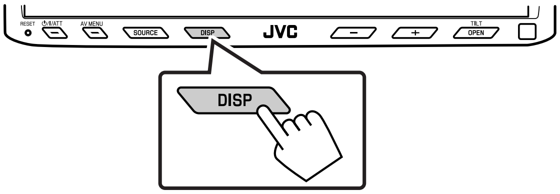
You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN terminal so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:

Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (☞ page 47)

To view the navigation screen (and listen to the navigation guidance*)

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (☞ page 9)

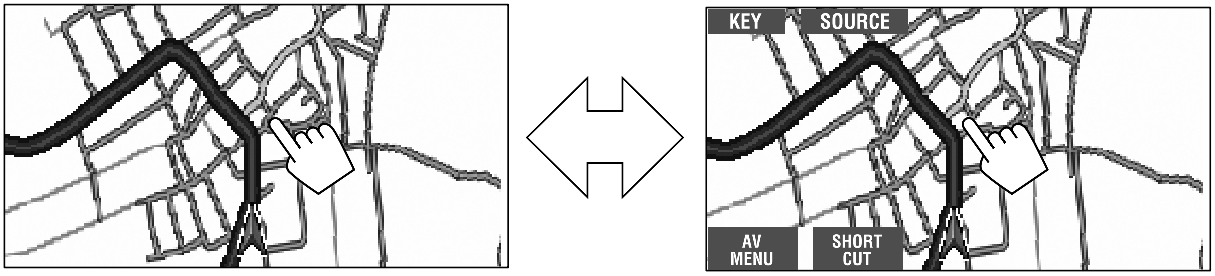


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (☞ page 45)

* *If your Navigation System is equipped with the voice guidance function.*

To display the operation buttons (☞ page 17) while viewing the navigation screen

- The operation buttons displayed on the screen vary among the playback sources.



Touch the screen (center portion).

Touch the screen (center portion).

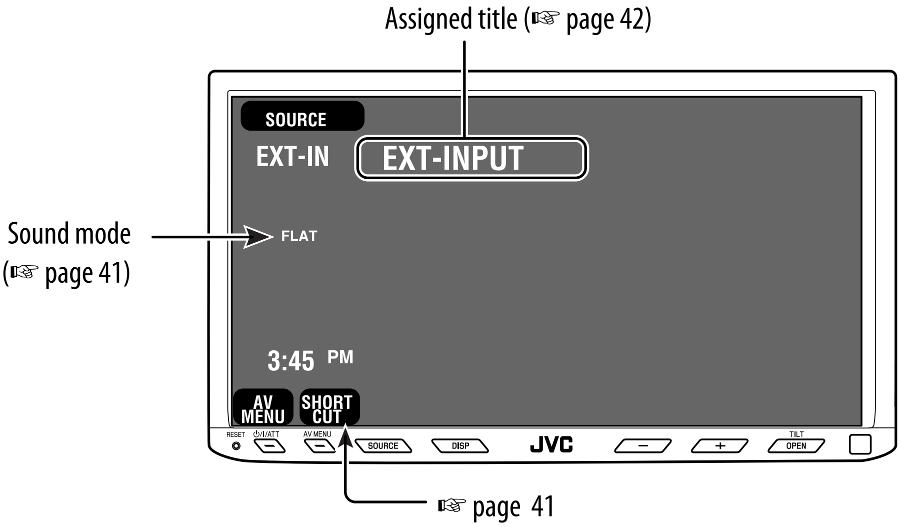
- If no operations are done for about five seconds, the operation buttons disappear.
- The above buttons except [**KEY**] also work when they are not shown on the screen (while viewing the navigation screen).

When <Navigation> is selected for <AV Input> (☞ page 47)

- You can use the source "AV-IN" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN terminals.
- Some status messages such as volume level will not appear on the screen.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).


SOURCE
EXT-IN
EXT-INPUT
FLAT
3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

Assigned title (☞ page 42)

Sound mode (☞ page 41)

☞ page 41

▬ : Buttons on the touch panel. In the explanation, they are indicated inside [ ].

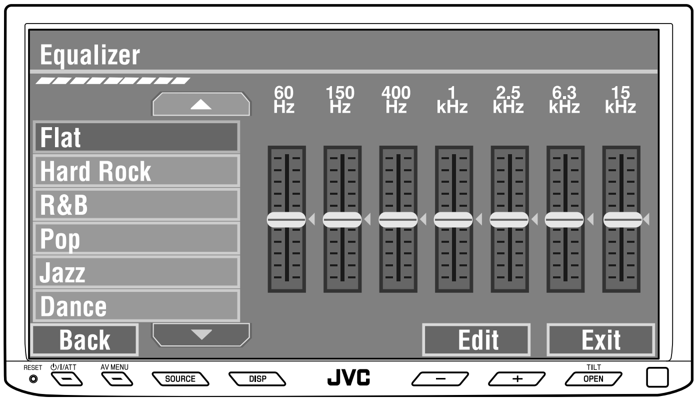
Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (☞ page 47)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].** (☞ page 9)

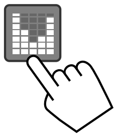
- You can also use SOURCE on the monitor panel. Press it repeatedly.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

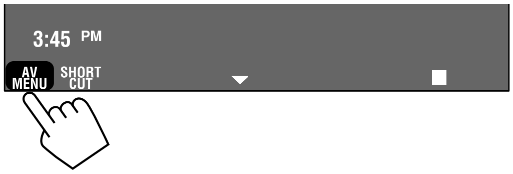
Sound equalization


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit
RESET
⏻/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

While playing back any source other than "Bluetooth PHONE," you can easily access <**Equalizer**> menu by pressing [**SHORT CUT**] on the touch panel, then...

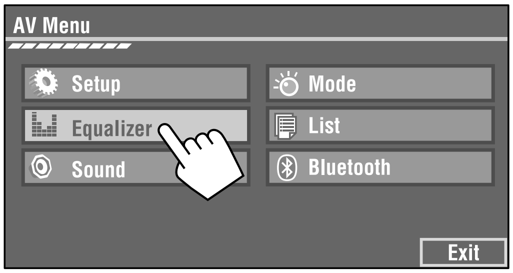


❶

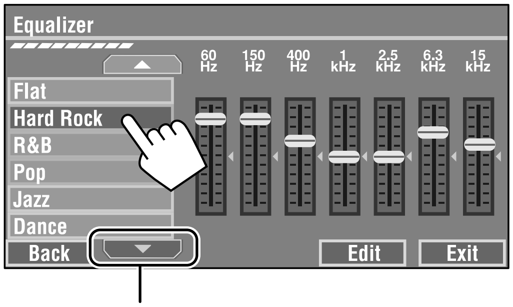

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit

❸ **Select a sound mode.**


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

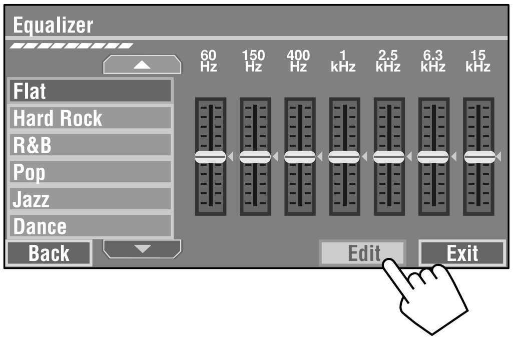
Move to other six sound modes

- For preset values of each sound mode, ☞ page 58.

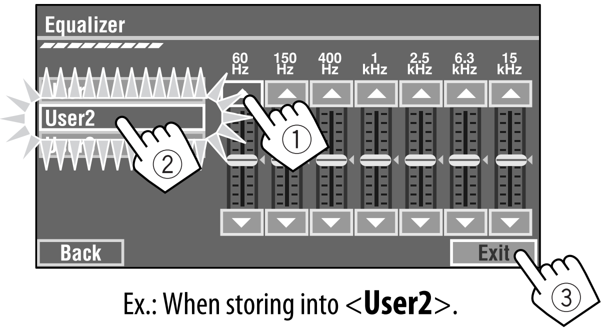
Storing your own adjustments

You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Repeat steps ❶ and ❷, then in step ❸...

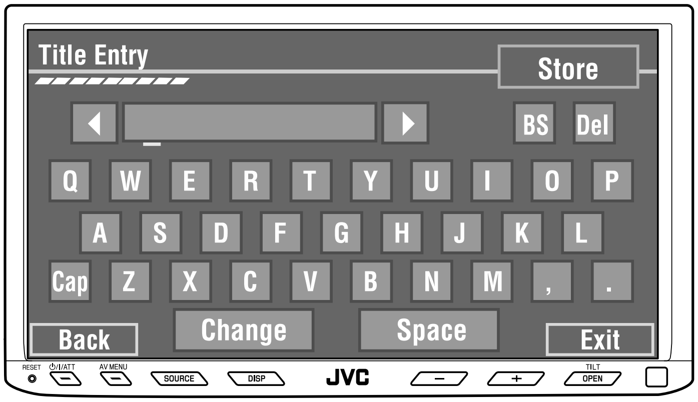

Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
Flat
Hard Rock
R&B
Pop
Jazz
Dance
Back
Edit
Exit

2 Adjust (①), then store (②).


Equalizer
60 Hz
150 Hz
400 Hz
1 kHz
2.5 kHz
6.3 kHz
15 kHz
User2
①
②
Back
Exit
③

Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Assigning titles to the sources


Title Entry
Store
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit
RESET
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

In the explanation, buttons on the touch panel are indicated inside [ ].

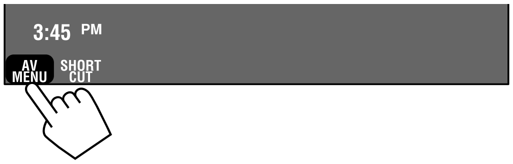
You can assign titles as follows.

FM/AM stations	Up to 16 characters—up to 30 stations.
AV-IN **EXT-IN**	Up to 16 characters

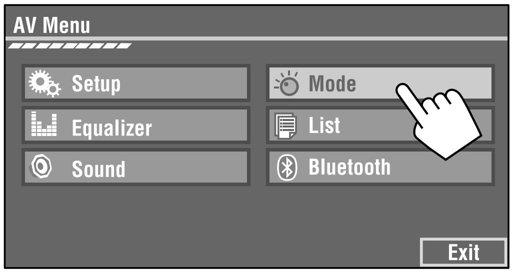
❶ Select the source. (☞ page 9)

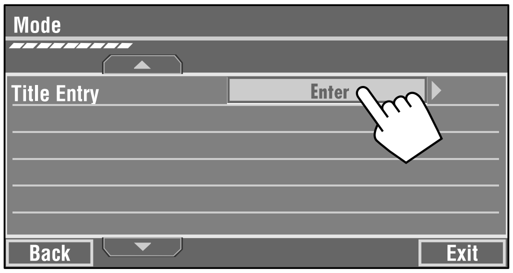
- For FM/AM stations: Select the band, then tune into a station.

❷ Display <Title Entry> screen.

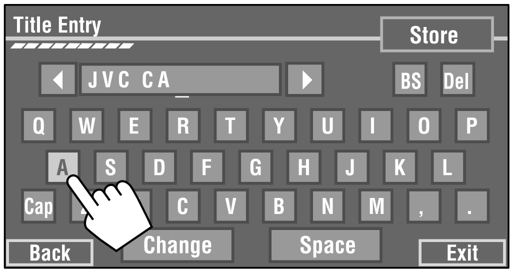

3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.


AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Mode
Title Entry
Enter
Back
Exit

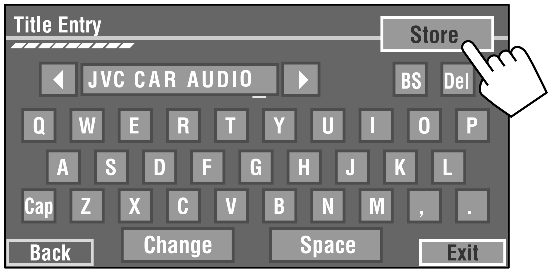
❸ Assign a title.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CA_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

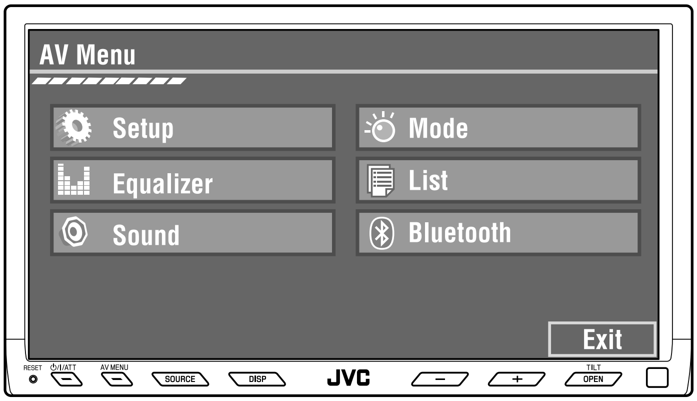
You can enter up to 16 characters (for available characters, ☞ page 59).

- [**Store**]: Confirm the entry.
- [◄/►]: Move the cursor.
- [**BS**]: Erase the character before the cursor.
- [**Del**]: Erase the character on the cursor.
- [**Cap**]: Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- [**Change**]: Change the character set.
- [**Space**]: Enter a space.

❹ Finish the procedure.


Title Entry
Store
JVC CAR AUDIO_
BS
Del
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Cap Z X C V B N M , .
Back
Change
Space
Exit

Menu operations

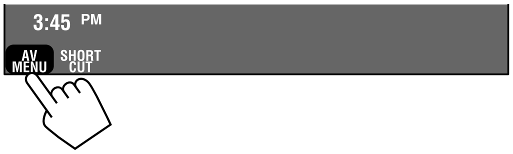

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit
RESET
⏻/I/ATT
AV MENU
SOURCE
DISP
JVC
TILT
OPEN

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures. Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting window, but just selecting an option will change the setting.

- The display indications may change according to change of the specifications.

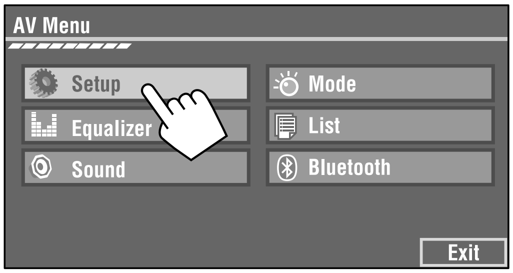
Ex.: Changing the <**AV Input**> setting

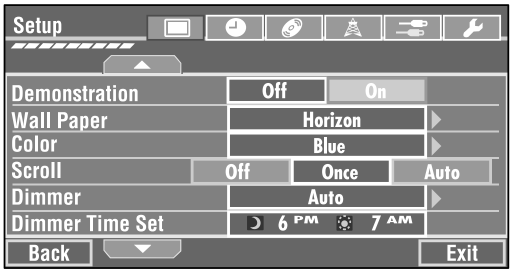
❶


3:45 PM
AV MENU
SHORT CUT

- You can also use AV MENU on the monitor panel.

❷

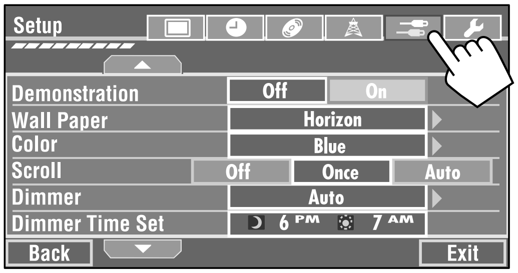

AV Menu
Setup
Mode
Equalizer
List
Sound
Bluetooth
Exit


Setup
Back
Exit

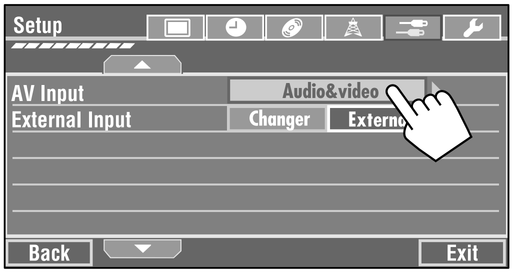
Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM

Non-available items will be shaded.

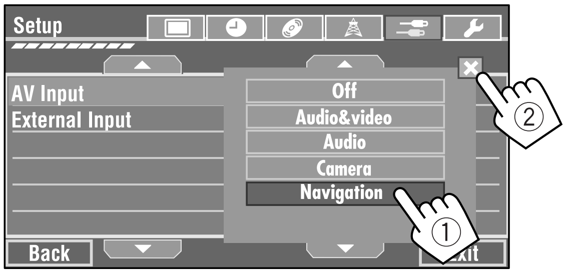
❸

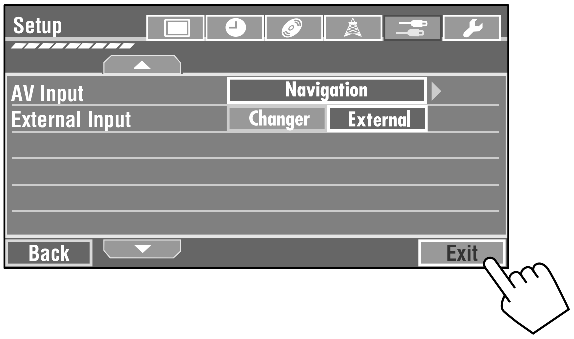

Setup
Back
Exit

Demonstration: Off / On
Wall Paper: Horizon
Color: Blue
Scroll: Off / Once / Auto
Dimmer: Auto
Dimmer Time Set: 6 PM 7 AM


Setup
Back
Exit

AV Input: Audio&video
External Input: Changer / Externa


Setup
AV Input
External Input
Off
Audio&video
Audio
Camera
Navigation
①
②
Back
Exit


Setup
Back
Exit

AV Input: Navigation
External Input: Changer / External

Setup

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

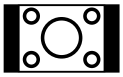
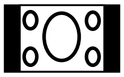
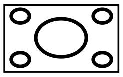
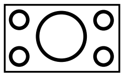
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Display	**Demonstration**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen.
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. **Horizon, Metal, Art, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	**Off**: Cancels. **Once**: Scrolls the disc information once. **Auto**: Repeats scrolling (five-second intervals). • Holding DISP on the monitor panel scrolls the information regardless of this setting.
	Dimmer	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates dimmer. **Auto**: Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.*1 **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting below.
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On/Off times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. **1** (bright), **2** (middle), **3** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust brightness of the screen. **–15** (darkest) to **+15** (brightest); Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust*2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "DISC" (common) and the other for "AV-IN." **–15** to **+15**; Initial **0** **Bright**: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. **Contrast**: Adjust the contrast. **Color**: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. **Tint**: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural. (only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>, ☞ next page) • Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust.

---

*1 *The ILLUMINATION lead connection is required. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "DISC" (the inserted disc must contain pictures or movies) or "AV-IN."*

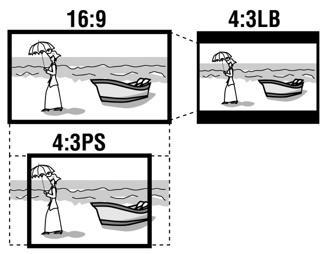
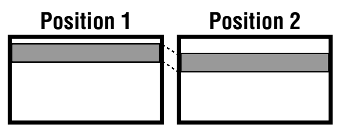
Initial: **Underlined**

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Menu items</th><th>Selectable settings, [reference page]</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Display</td><td>Aspect*3</td><td>You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.
<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th></tr>
<tr><th>4:3</th><th>16:9</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regular:
For 4:3 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Full:
For 16:9 original pictures</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto:</td><td colspan="2">• For “DISC”: Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match to the incoming signals.
• For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <Regular>.</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Language*4</td><td>Select the indication language shown on the screen.
English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português
• The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. ☞ [59]</td></tr>
<tr><td>NTSC/PAL</td><td>Select the color system of the external monitor connected—NTSC, PAL.
• Turn off the power and turn it on again to make the new setting effective.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Clock</td><td>Time Set</td><td>Initial 1:00AM ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Format</td><td>Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system.
12Hours, 24Hours ☞ [8]</td></tr>
<tr><td>OSD Clock</td><td>When <On> is selected, the clock time is displayed on the playback picture. ☞ [8]
Off, On</td></tr>
</table>

---

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *After you change the indication language setting, turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Menu Language***[1]	Select the initial disc menu language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Audio Language*[1]	Select the initial audio language; Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Subtitle*[1]	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (**Off**); Initial **English** (☞ also page 58).
	Monitor Type*[1]  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. 16:9 : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. **4:3 LB** (Letterbox)/**4:3 PS** (Pan Scan): Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3. • Refer to the illustrations on the left to see how the pictures are shown on the screen.
	OSD Position*[1]  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. ☞ [25] 1: Higher position **2**: Lower position
	File Type*[1]	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. **Audio**: Plays back audio files. **Still Picture**: Plays back JPEG files. **Video**: Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. **Audio&Video**: Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration)*[1]	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	D. Audio Output*[1]	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (☞ also page 57) **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, or MPEG Audio.

*[1] *Selectable only for "DISC." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Disc	**Down Mix***1	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT terminals. **Dolby SR** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)*1	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. **Auto**: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. **On**: Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	**Auto**: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) **Wide**: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input***2	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN terminals. ☞ [38, 39] **Off**: Select when no component is connected ("AV-IN" is skipped while selecting the source). **Audio&Video**: Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. **Audio**: Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. **Camera***3 : Select when connecting a rear view camera. **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System.
	External Input*4	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. **Changer/iPod***5: CD changer or iPod. ☞ [34, 36] **External**: Any other than the above. ☞ [40] • For connecting the Bluetooth adapter, this setting is not required. It is automatically detected.

*2 *Not selectable when "AV-IN" is selected as the source.*

*3 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <Full> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the control panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

*4 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*5 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

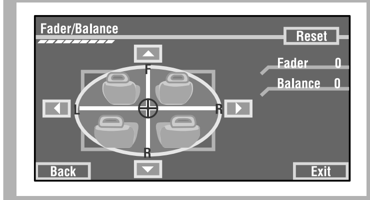
	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Others	**Beep**	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	**Off**: Cancels. **Muting1**, **Muting2**: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Power LED Flash	**Off**: Cancels. **On**: When the ignition is turned off, the lamp on the ⏻/I/ATT button flashes.
	TouchPanel Sens.	Change the sensitivity of the touch panel. As the number decreases, sensitivity becomes higher. **1**/**2**/**3**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. ☞ [3]

Equalizer

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User1/User2/User3 ☞ [41]

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Fader/Balance  Fader/Balance Reset Fader 0 Balance 0 F L R R Back Exit	Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers. • Upmost—front only (F6) • Downmost—rear only (R6) When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (**0**). Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers. • Leftmost—left only (L6) • Rightmost—right only (R6) Initial **0**
Volume Adjust	Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00** • You can make the adjustments separately for DVD and other discs.
Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. **Off**: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. **Low**: VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) **High**: VOL 00 to 50

Mode*1

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mono	Only for FM. (**Off**, **On**) ☞ [10]
DX/Local	Only for FM. (**Local**, **DX**) ☞ [11]
SSM	Only for FM. Press and hold to start SSM. ☞ [11]
Title Entry	Only for FM/AM stations, "AV-IN," and "EXT-IN." ☞ [42]
Repeat	☞ [18, 35, 37]
Random	☞ [18, 35, 37]

*1 *Items listed under <**Mode**> vary among the playback sources.*

List

For "DISC": Folder List and Track List (☞ page 19)

For "CD-CH": Disc List, Folder List, and Track List (☞ page 34)

- For the other playback sources, you can display a list by pressing DISP on the monitor panel. (☞ page 9)

Bluetooth*1

The procedure for setting an item is shown on page 43.

Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Dial Menu *2	Select the method to make a call. ☞ [30]
Message*3	You can read a message from the following message histories. **Unread**: Messages you have not read. **Read**: Messages you have read. **Unsent**: Messages you have not sent. **Sent**: Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.
Open	☞ [27]
Search	☞ [28]
Special Device	Only for “New Device.” Shows the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish Bluetooth connection. Select a device you want to connect. • After selecting the device, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> (☞ page 27 or 28) for connection. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> (☞ below) from the next time.
Connect	Only for the registered devices. After selecting a device from among the registered devices (☞ pages 27 and 28), establish the connection with it.
Disconnect	Only for the device being connected. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Delete the registered devices.

*1 *Selectable only for “Bluetooth PHONE” or “Bluetooth AUDIO.” Select a device (or “New Device”) before operating the menu.*

*2 *Only for the device connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.”*

*3 *Selectable only when the source is “Bluetooth PHONE” and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

When operating the Bluetooth device, refer also to the instructions supplied with the device.

	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Settings	**Auto Connect** *4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... **Off**: No Bluetooth device. **Last**: The last connected Bluetooth device. **Order**: The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer *5	**Off**: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. **On**: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. **Reject**: The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info *5	**Auto**: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying “Receiving Message.” To read the message, ☞ page 30. **Manual**: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting *5	Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter. **01**/**02**/**03**
	Version *6	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for “Bluetooth PHONE.”*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for “Bluetooth PHONE.” Not selectable when “New Device” is selected.*

*6 *If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>*

Maintenance

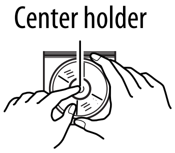
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



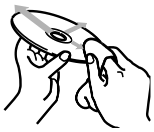
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

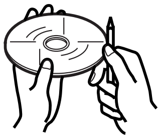
To keep discs clean



A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

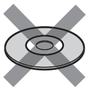
To play new discs



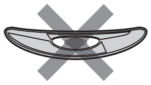
New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

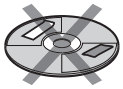
SingleCD—8 cm disc



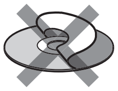
Warped disc



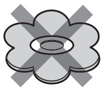
Sticker and sticker residue



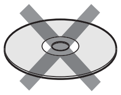
Stick-on label



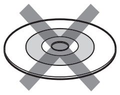
Unusual shape



C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)



Transparent or semi-transparent on its recording area



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and Playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720 x 576 pixels or less.
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Continued on the next page

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.
  - * <.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders.
- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/ program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/ MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

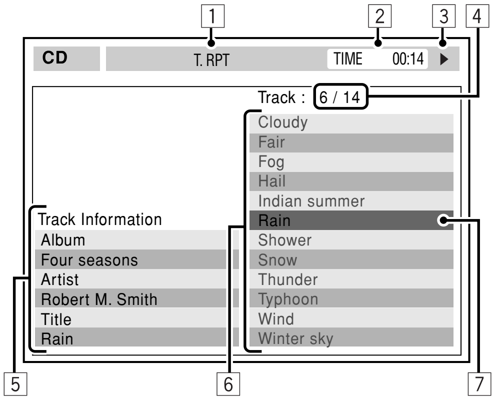
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  - Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

■ Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

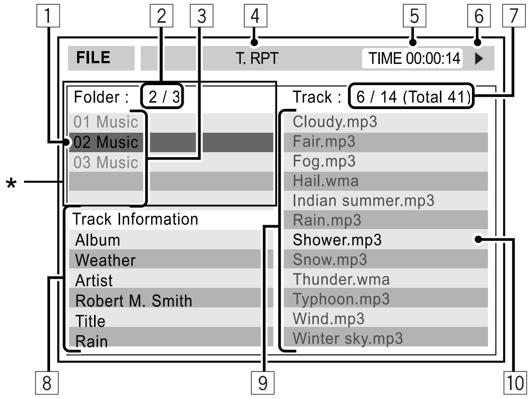
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
FILE
T. RPT
TIME 00:00:14
Folder : 2 / 3
01 Music
02 Music
03 Music
*
Track : 6 / 14 (Total 41)
Cloudy.mp3
Fair.mp3
Fog.mp3
Hail.wma
Indian summer.mp3
Rain.mp3
Shower.mp3
Snow.mp3
Thunder.wma
Typhoon.mp3
Wind.mp3
Winter sky.mp3
Track Information
Album
Weather
Artist
Robert M. Smith
Title
Rain
8
9
10

1	Current folder (highlighted bar)
2	Current folder number/total folder number
3	Folder list
4	Selected playback mode
5	Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6	Operation status
7	Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8	Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9	Track list
10	Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**: The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (☞ page 28)
- **Error**: Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**: No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**: The unit is updating the phone book and/or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**: The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**: Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

📱 : Cellular phone
🏠 : Household phone
🏢 : Office
☎ : General
? : Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (☞ page 34), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod operations

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano *1
  – iPod video (5th Generation) *2
  *1 When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.
  *2 It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the adapter connected to this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the screen. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (☞ page 46)

<D. Audio Output> **Playback disc**		**Output signals**		
		<Stream>	**<Dolby D>**	**<PCM>**
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **DTS**	DTS bitstream		
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Preset equalizing values

Frequency Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Characters shown on the screen

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (☞ page 42)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	=
?	@	`	space										

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (☞ page 45)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö
Õ	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß
Þ	Ŋ	Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ
İ	Ĳ	ð		

á	à	â	ä	ã
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ğ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó
ò	ô	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ű	ŵ	ý	ŷ	ž
ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ŧ	ŀ	ı	ĳ	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	”	#	$	%
&	’	(	)	`
=	–	+	∗	/
@	?	;	:	

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS Digital Out” are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX, DivX Ultra Certified, and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.
- Official DivX® Ultra Certified product
- Plays all versions of DivX® video (including DivX® 6) with enhanced playback of DivX® media files and the DivX® Media Format
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections. • DTS sound cannot be reproduced through the analog terminals (Speaker out/REAR OUT).
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (☞ page 44)
	• “Position Error Push Open Key” appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press OPEN/TILT.
	• “Mecha Error Push Reset” appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
	• “No Signal” appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN terminal. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only +/– (volume) and OPEN/TILT work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (☞ page 12)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (☞ page 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (☞ page 19)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. (☞ Installation/Connection Manual)
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (☞ page 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (☞ page 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from that played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select <**Open**> on the unit to connect the device. (☞ page 27)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (☞ pages 28, 50)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the player connected for "Bluetooth PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "New Device" cannot be selected for "Bluetooth AUDIO."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "New Device," disconnect it. (☞ page 28)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

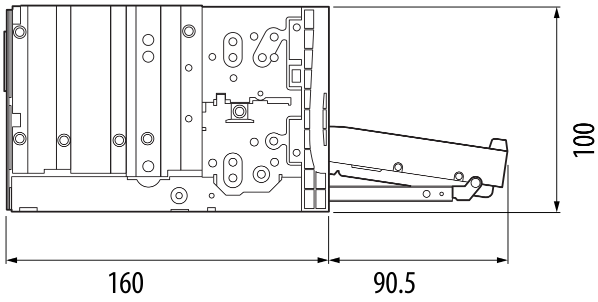
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (☞ page 3)
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "No Files" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (☞ page 44)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level REAR OUT:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		NTSC/PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, Reverse gear signal, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	35 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		93 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		95 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	171 mm × 97 mm × 21 mm
	Mass (approx.):		2.6 kg

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

EN

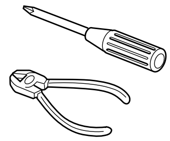
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KW-AVX714

Installation/Connection Manual

LVT1780-013A
[UI]



0108MNMMDWJEIN
EN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

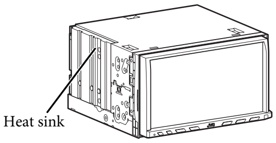
This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on electrical connections:

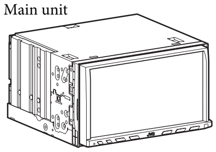
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

Main unit



Power cord

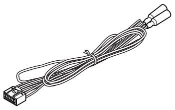
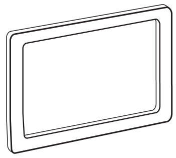
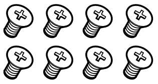


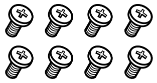
Plate for use with a Nissan car



Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)

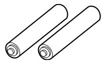


Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)

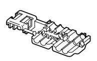


Remote controller

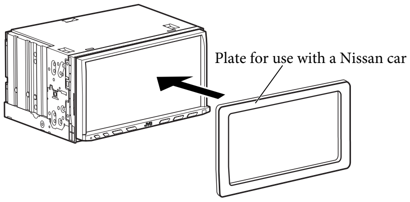
Batteries



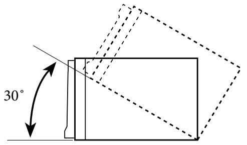
Crimp connector



When installing the unit in a Nissan car



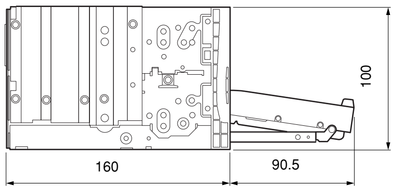
Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.



TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

Required space for the monitor ejection



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

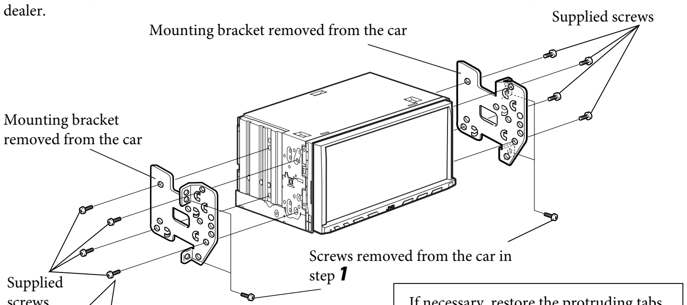
1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See page 2.

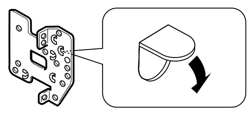
4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.


Supplied screws
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Mounting bracket removed from the car
Screws removed from the car in step 1
Supplied screws
Select the appropriate type fitting to your audio system space.

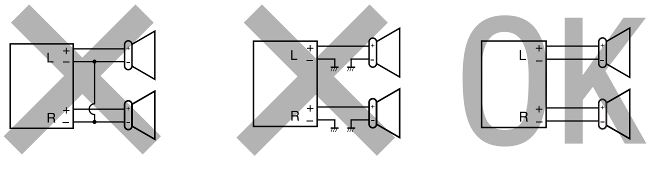
Note: When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 x 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.



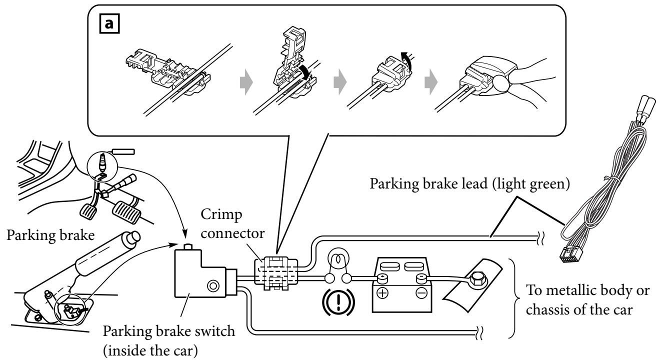
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



A Connecting the parking brake lead

Connect the parking brake lead to the parking brake system built in the car.


a
Parking brake lead (light green)
Crimp connector
Parking brake
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
To metallic body or chassis of the car

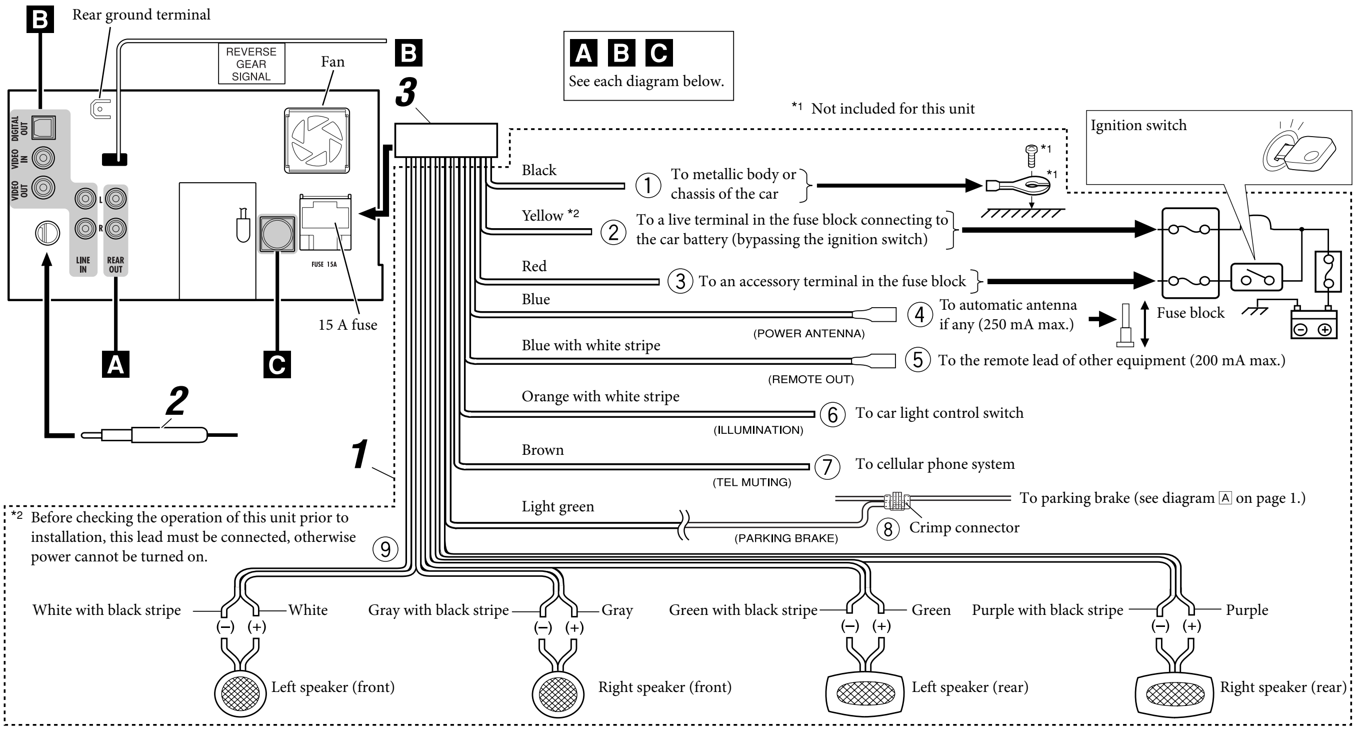
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.


B
Rear ground terminal
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Fan
B
3
A B C
See each diagram below.
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
FUSE 15A
15 A fuse
A
C
2
1
Black
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Yellow *2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch)
Red
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
Fuse block
Blue
(POWER ANTENNA)
④ To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
Blue with white stripe
(REMOTE OUT)
⑤ To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
Orange with white stripe
(ILLUMINATION)
⑥ To car light control switch
Brown
(TEL MUTING)
⑦ To cellular phone system
Light green
(PARKING BRAKE)
To parking brake (see diagram A on page 1.)
⑧ Crimp connector
⑨
White with black stripe
White
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Gray with black stripe
Gray
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
Green with black stripe
Green
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
Purple with black stripe
Purple
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)

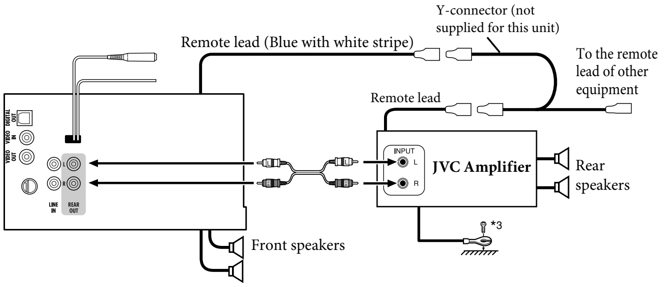
*1 Not included for this unit

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

A Connecting an external amplifier

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- You can supply the power to the amplifier by connecting the remote leads (blue with white stripe) of this unit to the amplifier. (To connect other equipment using the remote leads, Y-connectors need to be separately purchased.)
- Disconnect the speakers from the unit, and connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier to get clear sound and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 49 of the INSTRUCTIONS.


Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
To the remote lead of other equipment
Remote lead
INPUT
L
R
JVC Amplifier
Rear speakers
*3
Front speakers
LINE IN
REAR OUT

*3 Firmly attach the ground lead to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the lead). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

C Connections to the CD changer jack

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

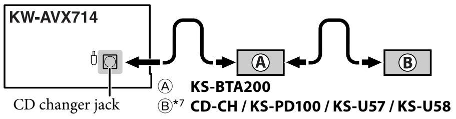
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series

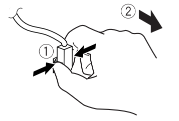

KW-AVX714
CD changer jack
A
B

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

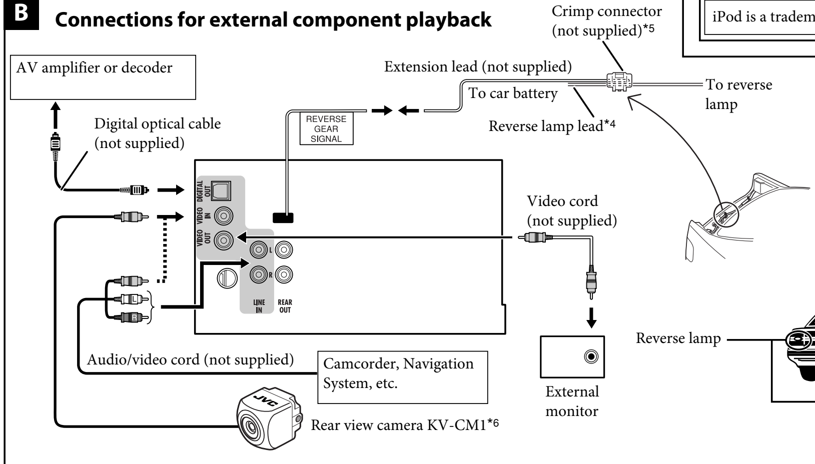
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

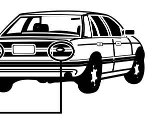
To disconnect the connector



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).

B Connections for external component playback


Crimp connector (not supplied)*5
AV amplifier or decoder
Extension lead (not supplied)
To car battery
To reverse lamp
Digital optical cable (not supplied)
REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL
Reverse lamp lead*4
DIGITAL OUT
VIDEO IN
VIDEO OUT
L
R
LINE IN
REAR OUT
Video cord (not supplied)
Audio/video cord (not supplied)
Camcorder, Navigation System, etc.
External monitor
Reverse lamp
Rear view camera KV-CM1*6



*4 Required only when connecting a rear view camera to VIDEO IN terminal.
*5 Refer to a in diagram A on page 1.
*6 Set "AV Input" setting to "Camera" when using (see page 47 of the INSTRUCTIONS).